

Manual for

FOMA® N902iX

'06.8

HIGH-SPEED



Quick Search/Contents/Safety Precautions	
Getting Started	
Making/Receiving Phone Calls	
Making/Receiving Videophone Calls	
Push-to-Talk	
Using the Phonebook	
Tone/Display/Lighting Settings	
Security Settings	
Camera	
i-mode/i-motion	
Mail	
Music Channel/Music Playback	
i-appli	
i-channel	
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa	
Full Browser	
Display/Edit/Organization/	
Other Useful Functions	
Network Services	
Data Communication	
Entering Text	
Appendix/External Devices/Troubleshooting	
Index/Quick Manual	

DoCoMo

W-CDMA System

Thank you for choosing the FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED.

Please read this manual and users guides that came with the battery pack and other devices carefully before and during use so that you can use your FOMA terminal correctly. If you have any inquiries regarding this manual, contact the number listed in “For inquiries” on the back cover.

FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED is your efficient partner. Please use it carefully and habitually.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- The FOMA network operates using radio waves. In a place where the reception is very poor, such as in a tunnel, in a building and under the ground, or out of range, you cannot make a phone call. You may also have difficulty making a phone call from upper floors of tall buildings, even if there is no obvious physical obstruction. And even if the reception is good (i.e. the signal strength indicator shows 3 bars) and you do not move during a call, you may still find that your call is cut off.
- When you use your FOMA terminal in public places, particularly where it is crowded or quiet, take care not to disturb people around you.
- Since the FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, there is always a risk that your call is wiretapped by a third party. However, the W-CDMA system automatically supports the tapping prevention for all calls. Even if a third party succeeds in intercepting your call, only incomprehensible noise will be heard.
- The FOMA terminal communicates via radio waves by converting voices into digital signals. If you move into an area where the reception is poor, the digital signals may not be accurately decoded and what you hear may differ slightly from what it actually is.
- It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on your FOMA terminal. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of use of TLS/SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation or warranty as for security in the use of TLS/SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of TLS/SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any damage or loss.
Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrusted Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan Co., Ltd., RSA Security Japan Ltd., SECOM Trust.net Co., Ltd.
- The FOMA terminal is available in FOMA Plus-Area and FOMA HIGH-SPEED-Area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

For the first-time user of the FOMA terminal

If you have never used any of the FOMA models, read this manual in the following steps. Doing so will help you understand the preparation and basic operations for using the FOMA terminal.

1. Attach and charge the battery pack (p.40)
2. Turn on the FOMA terminal, make the initial settings, and check your own number (p.44)
3. Check the functions of the phone keys (p.24)
4. Check the meanings of icons appearing on the screen (p.28)
5. Check how to use the menus (p.31)
6. Check how to make/receive a call (p.49)

The latest information about this manual can be downloaded from the DoCoMo website.

- To download “Manual for FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED (PDF file)”, access the following:
<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html>

* The URL and the contents of the site are subject to change without notice.

How to Use This Manual

● To look up a function in this manual

This manual offers you the following methods to find a page describing the function or service you want to know.



See the next page for more details.

Looking up in the Index ●●●●●●●● p.500

If you know the name of the function or service or if it is displayed on the screen, refer to the Index.

Looking up in the Quick Search ●●●●●● p.4

The Quick Search offers plain descriptions of often-used or useful functions.

Looking up in the Cover Index ●●●●●●●● Cover

Use the Cover Index to flip over the page.

Looking up in the Table of Contents ●●●●●●●● p.6

Refer to the Table of Contents categorizing the functions.

Looking up in the Functions ●●●●●●●●●● p.8

Refer to the Functions to find new or useful functions.

Looking up in the Menu Function List ●●●●●●●● p.454

The pages list the menu functions displayed in the menus of the FOMA terminal.

Looking up in the Quick Manual ●●●●●●●●●● p.508

The Quick Manual offers brief descriptions of the basic functions. You can tear it out and take it with you.

- In this manual for FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED, the FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED is described as the FOMA terminal.
- This manual describes functions that use a miniSD memory card. To use these functions, the miniSD memory card is required. miniSD Memory Card → p.371
- It is prohibited to reprint the whole or part of the contents of this manual without permission.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.

How to Use This Manual (continued from the previous page)

This page takes for example how to look up the “Display setting” function.

Looking up in the Index

If you know the name of the function or service or if it is displayed on the screen, refer to the Index.

→Find “Display setting”

Secret mode	161	Text	450	Display setting	137
Certificate	235	copyright	20	Font	140
Certificate host	237	copy/cut text	450	Guide	28
Chaku-moji	55	create/edit/delete folders		Image display	141
Chaku-motion/Chaku-Uta®	211	bookmark	222	image (My picture)	344
Chaku-Uta-Full®		data box	381	mail	264
play	228	mail	271	MessageR/MessageF	234
save	228	miniSD	381	Own number	48
Chance capture	198	ToruCa	329	PDF	388
Change CHR code	217			phonebook image	140
change window	452			ToruCa	264, 328
changing voice call/		data box	342	website	216, 221, 334
videophone call	52, 85	data communication	435	Display design	143
Character input set	441	data link software	475	Display home	217
Mode 1(5-touch)	441	DC adapter	42	Display setting	91, 137
Mode 2(2-touch)	442	Deactivate		display software info	310
Mode 3(T9 input)	442	i-opp1 standby screen	319	displaying	
Character stamp	355	deactivate i-opp1 standby screen	319	Mail	264
Chara-den	88, 364	Deco-mail	251	ToruCa	264
action	365	Decoration	91	Disp. PH-book image	140

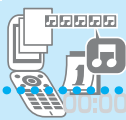
Looking up in the Quick Search

The Quick Search offers plain descriptions of often-used or useful functions.

→Find “Change standby screen”

Change display or ring melody

- Set clock **p.46** Set time
- Set ring tone to specific party **p.122** Discern connect/Discern group
- Change ring melody **p.128** Select ring tone
- Mute keypad tone **p.132** Keypad sound
- Set silent mode **p.134** Manner mode
- Change standby screen **p.137** Display setting
- Display calendar on standby screen **p.139**
- Change color or pattern of incoming call lamp **p.147** Incoming call lamp



Looking up in the Cover Index

Find the page describing the function in the order “Cover” → “Chapter page (first page of the chapter)” → “Description page”. The chapter page describes the detailed table of contents.

Quick Search/Contents/Safety	
Precaution	
Getting Started	
Making/Receiving Phone Calls	
Making/Receiving Videophone Calls	
Push-to-Talk	
Using	
Tone/Display/Lighting	
Security Settings	
Camera	
i-mode/i-motion	
Mail	
Music Channel	



Charging	132	Charge sound	132
Having a FOMA Terminal Warn you Before a Call Drops Out		Quality alarm	132
Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mails		Mail/Msg. ring time	133
Enabling Tones to Ring Through the Earphone and Speaker		Earphone	133
Muting the FOMA Terminal's Tone		Manner mode	134
Customizing Manner Mode		Manner mode set	135
Display/Lighting settings			
Changing the Display Settings		Display setting	137
Displaying Phonebook Images When you Receive Calls		Disp. PH-book image	140
Setting the Image Display Mode		Image display	141

This manual uses illustrations or marks to explain how to operate the function so that you can use the FOMA terminal correctly.

Function name
This name is described in the index.

Indicates that the menu can be displayed by pressing  then   .

Menu No. → p.454

Describes the settings at the time of purchase or contract, subscription requirement, etc. of the function or service.

Describes the operation on each step.

Indicates the icon on the main menu. The icon appears on selection using .

Describes the options displayed on the screen (some options may not appear in some cases).

Describes the useful information or advice about the operations.

Shows the screen at the time of the operation. Compare it with the screen when you operate.

Shows each chapter.

Describes each option and its operation.

Indicates that the descriptions go on to the next page.

Page number

Continued on next page

137

Changing the Display Settings

Default setting

Stand-by display: HX <STAND-BY> Wake-up display: HX <READY>
Dialing: HX <DIALING> Calling: HX <CALLING> V-phone Dialing: HX <DIALING>
V-phone Calling: HX <CALLING> Mail sending: HX <SENDING>
Full receiving: HX <RECEIVING> Check new messages: HX <CHECKING>

Use this procedure to show your favorite images such as the photographed or downloaded on a screen (e.g. standby, dialing or receiving).

- If you set i-motion programs including video and voice for a ring tone and the receiving screen respectively, a FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for a ring tone.
- If you set a file other than i-motion including video and voice for a ring tone and set an i-motion including video and voice for the receiving screen, a FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the receiving screen.
- An i-motion with voice only (e.g. singer's voice) cannot be set for the receiving screen.
- Some i-motion programs cannot be selected, e.g. if the size is QVGA.

1. Press  to display "Display" ▶ "Display setting"

The "Display setting" screen appears.

2. Select any item

"a file other than i-motion is set for the receiving screen, set a ring tone as required"

Stand-by display

Wake-up display

Dialing

Calling

NOTE

Flash movies can be set in "Select calling disp." or "Select receiving disp.", but the tone set in "Select ring tone" sounds as the ring tone.

When the receiving image settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned. → p.139

You cannot set images for the dialing and receiving screens for Push-to-Talk calls.

Changing the standby screen image" → p.138

Specifies a message or image shown when a FOMA terminal is turned on.

OFF

Does not show a message or image.

Message

Enter a message

A message can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters.

My picture

Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.

Inbox

Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.

Camera

Sets a pre-installed image.

Pre-installed

Sets an original animation.

Original animation

Sets an original animation.

Sets the image shown when you make a voice call. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.

Inbox

Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.

Camera

Sets a pre-installed image.

Pre-installed

Sets an original animation.

Original animation

Sets a ring tone and screen for receiving voice calls

Select ring tone

"Changing the Ring Tone" → p.128

Select calling disp.

"Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails" → p.138

137

* The contents and page numbers above may differ from the actual ones in this manual.

- The screens shown as examples in this manual are displayed when "English" is set for "バイリンガル" (Select language). Set "English" for "バイリンガル" (Select language) beforehand. → p.45
- In this manual, "OFF" is set to the "Stand-by display" and white background/black characters are used in order to make the screens clear. Also, the parts of the operating instruction screens that need an explanation are shown close up.
- This manual mainly explains the operations with the default settings. If you change the settings, the contents displayed on your FOMA terminal may differ from those on this manual.
- The screens inserted in this manual are only the images, which may look different from the actual screens.
- This manual describes "Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli supporting IC Card function" as "Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli".

Quick Search

- Go to the page when you want to learn how to operate the function.

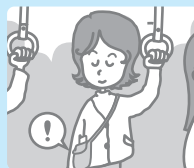
Useful functions for talking

- Do/do not notify your party of your caller ID **p.47** Caller ID Notification
- Switch voice call to videophone call **p.52**
- Hold the current call **p.51** Holding
- Adjust the volume during a call **p.69** Volume



When you cannot answer incoming call

- Hold incoming call **p.70** Answer hold
- Have your party record voice message **p.75** Record message
- Set voice mail **p.424**



Change display or ring melody

- Set clock **p.46** Set time
- Set ring tone to specific party **p.122** Discern connect/Discern group
- Change ring melody **p.128** Select ring tone
- Mute keypad tone **p.132** Keypad sound
- Set silent mode **p.134** Manner mode
- Change standby screen **p.137** Display setting
- Display calendar on standby screen **p.139**
- Change color or pattern of incoming call lamp **p.147** Illumination
- Change font or thickness **p.148** Font



Master camera

- Change the size of image to shoot **p.185**
- Change shutter sound **pp.188, 195**
- Use zoom or light **pp.199, 200**
- Display the shot **p.344** My picture
- Save image to miniSD memory card **p.352**
- Print the shot **p.393** PictBridge print



Master mail

- Send Deco-mail **p.251** Deco-mail
- Send image or melody **p.255** Attach Melody/Image/Movie/I-motion/ToruCa
- Learn emotion-expressing mail **p.260**



Audio functions

- Use Music Channel **p.294** Music Channel
- Listen to music **p.298** Music player



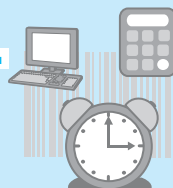
Use your phone without worries

- Lock your FOMA terminal that is not in your hand **p.159** Omakase Lock
- Prevent others from viewing the phonebook data **p.161** Secret mode/Secret data only mode
- Lock key operation when folded **p.170** External keys guard
- Reject unidentified call **p.174** Call setting w/o ID
- Reject call if the party is not stored in phonebook **p.175** Reject unknown



Miscellaneous

- Easily access the functions you often use **p.35** Original menu
- Save battery life **p.142** Backlight (Power saver mode)
- Read QR code or bar code **p.200** Bar code reader
- Use miniSD memory card **p.371**
- Communicate with PC or another FOMA terminal **p.382** Infrared data exchange/OBEX
- Use as alarm clock **p.403** Alarm clock
- Use as calculator **p.415** Calculator
- Update software **p.489** Software Update
- Update security **p.493** Scanning function



For more information about other operation guides, see "How to Use This Manual". → p.1
Also, "Quick Manual" instructs you how to operate the often-used functions. → p.509

Contents

How to Use This Manual	1
Quick Search	4
Contents	6
Functions of the FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED	8
Mastering the FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED!	10
Safety Precautions	12
Handling with Care	18
Intellectual Property Right	20
Main Components and Optional Equipment	22

Getting Started 23

- Component Names and Functions
- Icons on the Display and Image Display
- Main menu · Using menus
- Launcher mode on the main menu
- Inserting/Removing the Battery Pack
- Charging a FOMA Terminal
- Turning a FOMA terminal on/off
- Initial setting · Set time
- Caller ID Notification etc.

Making/Receiving Phone Calls 49

- Making/Receiving Calls
- Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call
- Chaku-moji · Redial · Pause dials
- WORLD CALL · Hands-free
- In-car Hands-free · Received calls
- Volume · Answer hold
- Public mode (Driving mode/Power OFF)
- Record message, etc.

Making/Receiving Videophone Calls 79

- Making/Receiving a Videophone Call
- Using Chara-den · Remote monitoring, etc.

Push-to-Talk 97

- What is Push-to-Talk?
- Making/Receiving a Push-to-Talk Call
- PushTalk phonebook · PushTalk setting, etc.

Using the Phonebook 109

- Adding phonebook entries
- Group setting · Search phonebook
- Copy a phonebook · Discern connect, etc.

Tone/Display/Lighting Settings 127

- Select ring tone · Vibrator · Keypad sound
- Charge sound · Mail/Msg. ring time
- Manner mode · Display setting · Backlight
- Menu display set · Neuropointer
- Illumination/Illumination in talk
- Desktop icon · 3D display setting, etc.

Security Settings 155

- Security codes · PIN Code · Lock all
- Omakase Lock · Secret mode · Secret folder
- PIM lock · Keypad dial lock · Mail security
- Restrictions · Reject unknown, etc.

Camera 179

- Photo mode · Continuous mode
- Framed photography · Movie mode
- Bar code reader · Access reader, etc.

i-mode/i-motion 209

- What is i-mode? · i-mode menu · View site
- My Menu · i-mode password
- Internet access · Bookmark
- Phone To/Mail To/Web To functions
- Message service · What is i-motion?
- Downloading i-motion, etc.

Mail 241

- What is i-mode Mail?
- Composing and sending i-mode message
- Deco-mail · Emotion-expressing mail
- Receive option · Check new messages
- i-motion mail · Chat mail
- SMS (Short Message), etc.

Music Channel/Music Playback 293

- What is Music Channel?
- Setting/Playing programs
- Music player, etc.

i-ϕpli 307

- What is an i-ϕpli? · Downloading i-ϕpli
- i-ϕpli standby screen
- Upgrading an i-ϕpli, etc.

i-channel 321

- What is i-channel?
- Displaying Channel list
- i-Channel setting, etc.

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa 325

- What is Osaifu-Keitai?
- Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-ϕpli
- What is ToruCa? · Acquiring ToruCa
- Viewing ToruCa
- IC card lock, etc.

Full Browser 333

- Displaying Website Designed for PC
- Full Browser screen
- Full Browser settings, etc.

Display/Edit/Organization 341

- Displaying images · Playing Movies/i-motion
- Edit Images · Edit movie
- Recording Chara-den · Play melody
- miniSD memory card
- Infrared data exchange function
- Displaying PDF document
- Printing images, etc.

Other Useful Functions 397

- Multi Access · Multitask · Assist key
- Alarm setting · Alarm clock · Schedule
- To Do list · Own number · Call data
- Calculator · Text memo · Auto dial setting
- Reset settings · Initialize, etc.

Network Services 423

- Voice Mail service · Call Waiting
- Call Forwarding · Nuisance Call Blocking
- Caller ID Request · Dual Network Service
- Multi Number, etc.

Data Communication 435

Entering Text 439

- Switching character input method
- Enter kanji/hiragana/katakana/alphabetic or numeric character
- Enter text in 2-touch input mode
- Enter text in T9 input mode
- Common phrases · Own dictionary
- Download dictionary, etc.

Appendix/External Devices/ Troubleshooting 453

- Menu function list
- Data Stored at the Time of Purchase
- Symbols, special characters and pictographs
- Smiley face symbols · Kuten Codes
- Options and accessories
- Data Link Software or movie playing software
- Troubleshooting · Error Message
- Software Update · Scanning function
- Main specifications
- Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of mobile phones, etc.

Index/Quick Manual 499

- Index
- Quick Manual

Functions of the FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED

FOMA is the name of DoCoMo's service based on the W-CDMA system approved as one of the global standards for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

i-mode

i-mode is an online service that allows you to use i-mode menu site (program) or i-mode compatible site or to send and receive mail by using the i-mode terminal display.

● i-mode is a pay service you need to apply for.

• i-mode	→ p.210	• i-motion mail	→ p.264	• i-channel	→ p.321
• i-mode mail	→ p.242	• i-appli	→ p.308		
• i-motion	→ p.237	• i-shot	→ p.245		

p.209

High connection speed

The FOMA terminal is compatible with FOMA high-speed area, allowing download speed of up to 3.6Mbps and uplink speed of up to 384kbps.

Music Channel

This service delivers music programs of your choice automatically to the FOMA terminal at night. By setting a music program that is offered through IP (information service providers), a program up to about one hour is automatically delivered to the FOMA terminal. Programs are updated regularly. Enjoy music in your commuting hours or any time you want.

p.294

Chaku-Uta®/ Chaku-Uta-Full®*

You can download a whole music from online music distribution website. You can play the downloaded music and set it as a ring tone.

*: "Chaku-Uta" and "Chaku-Uta-Full" are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

pp.211, 228

Deco-mail/Omakase Deco-mail

You can compose and send expressive mail by changing the font color, size, or the background color for the message, or by inserting a Deco-mail picture or a photo shot with the built-in camera.

You can also use the Omakase Deco-mail, which automatically adds the best decoration to the message body according to its contents.

p.251

ToruCa

ToruCa is an electronic card that can be acquired via Osaifu-Keitai, which can be used as an ad, restaurant card, coupon, etc. ToruCa can be acquired by a reader/writer or downloaded from a site, and can be easily exchanged via mail, infrared data exchange or external memory.

p.327

Osaifu-Keitai

Downloading Osaifu-Keitai i-appli enables you to transmit electronic cash into the IC Card of your FOMA terminal, to check the account balance or transaction history, or to use your FOMA terminal as an airline ticket or as a point card. The FOMA terminal can be used as "Osaifu-Keitai", which makes your life more convenient.

p.326

Videophone/Chara-den

You can talk to the other party imaging his/her face or switch to the rear camera to show your surroundings to the other party. The FOMA terminal supports Chara-den that can display a character substituting for the image of yourself. You can also switch voice call to videophone call without cutting the call. The other party's voice comes out of the speaker according to the settings at the time of purchase, which means that you can start talking immediately.

p.79

Multi access

Multi access function allows you to use a call, packet communication and SMS at the same time, which means that you can talk on the phone during i-mode communication or send/receive mail during the talk.

p.398

Large-sized i-appli, i-appli DX

Download i-appli from the site, and you can enjoy the game or automatically update the stock price or weather report. The 3Dx3D compatible contents, thanks to the multiplier effect of 3D graphics and 3D sound, allow you to enjoy the i-appli such as car racing game as if you were actually participating. i-appli DX can be linked to the information such as the phonebook or mail stored in i-mode terminal.

p.307

Chaku-moji

While in calling someone on the phone, you can make a message (Chaku-moji) visible on the calling screen and inform the business or urgency. By checking this message, the callee can tell what business or how urgent it is before answering a call.

p.55

Wide variety of network services

• Voice Mail service	• Caller ID Request service
• Call Waiting	• Dual Network service
• Call Forwarding service	• English Guidance
• Nuisance Call Blocking	• Multi Number

p.423

Push-to-Talk

Just select the parties from the PushTalk phonebook and then press the push-to-talk key. You can talk with one party or more (up to five people including yourself) at the same time. It is useful when you want to make contact with group members or to relay a short message.

p.97

Security settings, IC card lock/PIM lock

Protect your privacy using a security code or password. You can use the security settings such as Lock/security function, which locks your FOMA terminal to prevent others from using when you have lost it.

You can also lock the IC card to prevent others from using its functions and lock your personal data such as the phonebook and mails so that others cannot browse or overwrite the data.

p.159

PDF Viewer

Enables you to view a PDF data. You can check a PDF containing a map, catalog, time table, etc. on i-mode terminal as if you carried a piece of paper.

p.388

Full Browser

Full Browser displays the website for PC, which provides you with more information than i-mode site does.

p.333

Infrared communication/Infrared remote control

You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals using infrared communication. You can also use your FOMA terminal as a remote control.

pp.382, 387

miniSD memory card available

miniSD memory card enables you to exchange data such as phonebook, bookmark, mail or image with PC or another FOMA terminal. Save a movie or music data created on an external device to the miniSD memory card, and you can play it on the FOMA terminal (some data may not be played).

Data such as downloaded i-motion can be copied to the miniSD memory card (Cannot be copied if not permitted by the provider).

pp.304, 371

2.5 inch screen

260,000-color "Mobile Shine View EX LCD" allows you to enjoy beautiful colors. The 2.5-inch large screen allows you to view larger fonts or images, and makes i-appli more enjoyable.

Entering text

Candidates of a word are shown with "conversion candidates prediction" depending on the entered characters, and candidates of words following the selected word are shown preferentially with "following words prediction". These features make it easy and speedy to enter sentences.

p.439

Camera

The digital shake correction function allows you to shoot a clear, crisp still image or movie with the rear camera.

A camera shake is automatically corrected when you shoot a still image in a dark place. This is true of shooting a movie that is easily shaken.

The rear camera is equipped with Super CCD Honeycomb having the auto focus function of four million pixels (effective two million pixels), and allows you to shoot a large image of 2,304 × 1,728 dots. Still images or movies you shot appear clearly on the large, high-quality LCD screen. The still images or movies can be attached to i-mode mail.

p.179

Bar code reader

You can read the bar code or QR code using the camera function and use the information to store it into the phonebook and compose i-mode mail, etc. You can also read the QR code of images and melodies.

p.200

Ring tone

The ring tone supports 67-harmony ADPCM based on FM + WaveTable and sound effects such as voice.

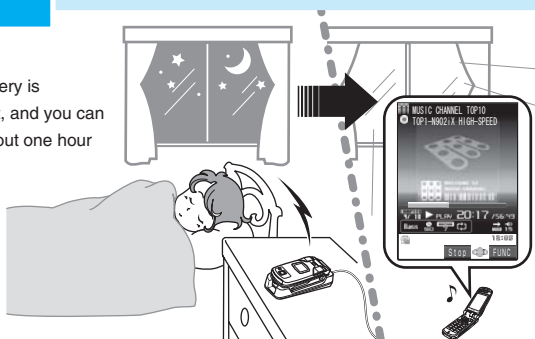
p.128

Mastering the FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED!

Enjoy a long program “Music Channel”

● Music Channel → p.294

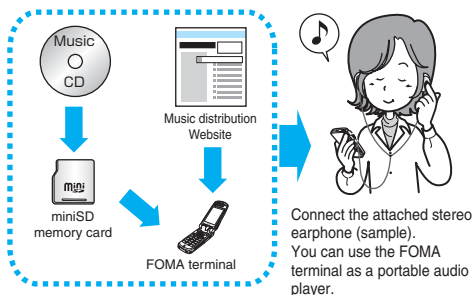
Music program that is set for delivery is automatically downloaded at night, and you can enjoy a long program for up to about one hour using the provided music player.



Chaku-Uta-Full[®] compatible! Closer to full-scale music “Music player”

● Music player → p.298

This terminal is compatible with “Chaku-Uta-Full[®]”, which allows you to download a whole piece of music from an online music distribution website and to play it on the FOMA terminal. You can also bring songs on music CDs to the miniSD memory card using a PC and play music on the FOMA terminal. Other functions include BGM playback, which allows you to listen to music while you use other functions, display of album cover images and lyric sheets, and creation of the playlist on the FOMA terminal.



Set music as a ring tone “Chaku-Uta[®]/Chaku-Uta-Full[®]”

● Select ring tone → p.128

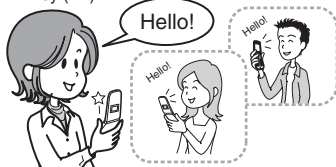
Besides enjoying Chaku-Uta[®]/Chaku-Uta-Full[®] by playing music with the music player, you can set them as your ring tones for receiving calls or mails.



Enjoy a talk with your fellows “Push-to-Talk”

● Push-to-Talk → p.97

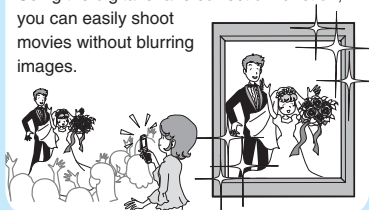
Press the PTT key (P) to open the PushTalk phonebook. You can talk with one party or more (up to five people including yourself) simply by selecting the parties and then pressing the PTT key (P).



Featuring shake correction “4M pixel camera”

● Camera → p.179

The image correction function “PictMagic” allows you to shoot still images. Using the digital shake correction function, you can easily shoot movies without blurring images.



Storing large movie contents “i-motion”

● Download i-motion → p.238

Up to 5M bytes i-motion can be downloaded. Even if downloading is cancelled due to problems with signal reception, you can download the rest of the data later on.



Tell an incoming call or message with animation “Chaku-moji/3D display”

● Chaku-moji → p.55

Chaku-moji, which allows you to receive a message before answering a call, can be displayed with animated image.

● 3D display setting → p.151

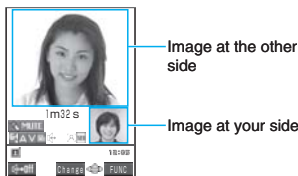
When you select the desktop icon for New mail, 3D animation is popped-up showing an icon for the emotion-expressing mail or a pictograph in the subject field.



Talk over faces “Videophone”

● Making/Receiving Videophone Calls → p.79

You can show what is around you to a person on the other end of the line while you are talking on the terminal, or monitor your room with the remote monitoring function when you are not at home.



High-speed communication is realized “FOMA High-speed area communication”

The FOMA terminal is compatible with high-speed communication at the download speed of up to 3.6Mbps and uplink speed of up to 384kbps. You can check the connection status with “FOMA 通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA connection environment check application)” . → p.316



Safety Precautions

ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS

- To ensure that you use your FOMA terminal correctly, read the Safety Precautions Safety Precautions carefully before use. Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.
- The safety precautions must be observed at all times since they contain information intended to prevent bodily injuries or damage to the property.
- The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injuries and damage that may occur if the information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used incorrectly.

 DANGER	Indicates that improper use may directly and immediately result in death or serious bodily injury.
 WARNING	Indicates that improper use may result in death or serious bodily injury.
 CAUTION	Indicates that improper use may result in bodily injury and/or damage to the property.

- The following symbols indicate specific directions:

 Don't	Indicates that it is prohibited.
 No disassembly	Indicates that it must not be disassembled.
 No wet hands	Indicates that you must not touch it with wet hands.
 No liquids	Indicates that it must not be used near water, which means that you must not get it wet.
 Do	Indicates that you must do it following the instructions.
 Unplug	Indicates that you must unplug the power cord from the outlet.

- **Safety Precautions** Safety Precautions are categorized into the following:
 1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the Charger) and FOMA card (UIM) (Common) 13
 2. Handling the FOMA terminal 14
 3. Handling the Battery Pack 15
 4. Handling the Adapters (including the Charger) 16
 5. Handling the FOMA card (UIM) 17
 6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment 17

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the Charger) and FOMA card (UIM) (Common)

DANGER



Use the battery pack and adapter (including the charger) specified by NTT DoCoMo for the FOMA terminal.

Using the devices other than those specified by NTT DoCoMo may cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack and other devices to leak, overheat, explode, ignite or malfunction.

Battery Pack N11

Desktop Holder N07

FOMA AC Adapter 01

FOMA DC Adapter 01

Data Communications Adapter N01

FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01

FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01

For information on other compatible products, contact the DoCoMo service counter.



Do not get the devices wet.

Exposure of the FOMA terminal and other devices to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury, etc. Be careful where and how you use the devices.



No disassembly

Do not attempt to disassemble or remodel the FOMA terminal or other devices, and do not solder them.

Doing so may cause fire, injury or electric shock.

Also, doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Don't

Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal or other devices in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near fire, near a heater, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the devices to be deformed or malfunction, lower the performance or shorten the life. Also, doing so may cause part of the case to become hot and possibly cause burns.

WARNING



Don't

Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters or FOMA card (UIM) in a cooking appliance such as a microwave oven or in a pressure cooker.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the FOMA terminal or adapter (including the charger) to overheat, smoke or ignite, or damage the IC.



Don't

Do not subject the FOMA terminal or other devices to strong impacts or throw them.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, or cause the devices to malfunction or ignite.



Do

Be sure to turn off the mobile phone before entering a place where flammable gas could generate such as gas station. Also, do not charge the phone. Gas could ignite.

Turn off the mobile phone when using Osakaifu Keitai in a certain area including the gas station. (If setting the IC card lock, unlock it before turning the power off.)



Don't

Keep conductive foreign objects (metal, pencil lead, etc.) away from the charge terminal or external connector. Do not insert such objects inside.

Failure to observe these precautions may result in short-circuits causing the FOMA terminal to ignite or malfunction.



Do

If you notice something unusual about the FOMA terminal or other devices, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during use, charging or storage, immediately:

1. Unplug the power code from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
2. Turn off the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

Continuing to use the devices may cause overheat, explosion or ignition, or cause the battery pack to leak.

CAUTION



Do

If your child uses the FOMA terminal, instruct him/her how to use it. Make sure that he/she always uses the FOMA terminal correctly as you instruct.

Improper usage may cause injury.



Don't

Do not keep the devices in a humid, dusty or hot place.

Doing so may cause malfunction.



Do

Using repeatedly or for a long time by charging, shooting/playing a movie, talking on a videophone call or using i-mode/i-appli may increase the temperature of the FOMA terminal, battery pack or adapter (including the charger).

Exposure of your skin directly to the high-temperature part for a long time may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema.

Take great care especially when using the FOMA terminal connected to the adapter (including the charger) continuously for a long time.



Don't

Do not leave the devices on a slope or unstable surface.

The devices may fall to cause injury or malfunction.



Do

Keep the devices out of young children's reach.

A young child may mistakenly swallow a device or suffer from the injury.



Do

When you attach the earphone/microphone to the FOMA terminal to play games or music, do not make the volume too loud.

Excessive high volume may damage your hearing. Also it may prevent you from hearing the ambient sounds and cause an accident.

2. Handling the FOMA terminal

WARNING



Don't

Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving a vehicle.

Since November 1st, 2004, using a mobile phone while driving is a legal offense. Even if you are using a hands-free kit, pull off the road and park in a safe place before using your phone. While driving, set Public mode (Driving mode) or use the Voice Mail service.



Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal in a place where you are not allowed to use a mobile phone, such as in an airplane or in a hospital.

Using the FOMA terminal in such a place may affect electronic or medical equipment. If your FOMA terminal is equipped with the Auto power function, make sure to set the function to OFF before turning off the FOMA terminal.

Follow the instructions of individual hospitals or health care facilities that prohibit carrying or using mobile phones.

If you use a phone in an airplane, which is prohibited, you may be punished by law.



Do

If you have a weak heart, be careful with the call vibration/speaker volume settings.

Your heart may be adversely affected.



Don't

Do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards your or another person's eyes when using infrared data exchange.

Doing so may cause eye injury. Do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards another infrared device as doing so may cause the device to malfunction.



Do

Keep the FOMA terminal turned off near electronic equipment using high-precision control or weak signals.

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.

* Take great care on the following electronic devices:

Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted cardioverter-defibrillators, and other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals. If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted cardioverter-defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturers or distributors for information about the effects of radio waves on the equipment.



Don't

If you are wearing a medical electronic device, do not place the FOMA terminal in a breast pocket or inner pocket.

Using the FOMA terminal near medical electronic devices may cause them to malfunction.



Do

Hold the FOMA terminal away from your ear and keep it at a reasonable distance when you talk in hands-free mode with the speaker.

Failure to do so may adversely affect your hearing.



Do

If you hear thunder while using your FOMA terminal outdoors, turn it off and move to a safe place immediately.

Failure to do so may expose you to lightning or electric shock.



Don't

Do not shine the light at anyone driving a car or other vehicle.

Doing so may prevent a driver from driving safely and cause a traffic accident.



Don't

Keep the display light away from a person's eyes.

The light may affect eyesight. Also, this may dazzle or surprise him/her and cause an injury.



Don't

Do not put the FOMA terminal on the dashboard, etc. as doing so may cause problems in the event of air bag inflation.

Air bag inflation may cause the FOMA terminal to hit you or another person, which may lead to injury, malfunction, breakage, etc.

CAUTION



Do

In some types of vehicle, using the FOMA terminal in the vehicle may interfere with the operation of the vehicle's electronic equipment.

Do not use the FOMA terminal if the terminal may impair safe driving.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.371



Do not swing the FOMA terminal by the hand strap or another part.

Doing so may cause bodily injury and malfunction or breakage.



Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the miniSD memory card slot.

Doing so may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Take care when attaching or removing the miniSD memory card.

This may injure your hands or fingers.



Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the FOMA card slot on the FOMA terminal.

Doing so may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Do not place magnetic cards near the FOMA terminal or clamp them in the fold of the FOMA terminal.

Magnetic data on cash cards (ATM cards, bank cards), credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.



If the display or camera lens is broken, be careful of the broken glass.

The surface of the display or camera lens is covered by a plastic panel so as to minimize the possibility of glass scattering. However, touching the broken display or camera lens may cause injury.



Do not leave the built-in camera lens exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.

The condensing action of the lens may cause fire or malfunction.



Do not turn the light on when the FOMA terminal is close to a person's eyes. Take care not to bring the light close to a person's eyes or look directly into the light while it is lit.

Doing so may cause impaired vision or otherwise adversely affect his/her eyes. Also, doing so may dazzle or surprise him/her and cause an injury.



Do not use the light for use other than shooting with the built-in cameras.

The light will be turned off if you do not operate at all for approximately 30 seconds. If you use it for purposes other than shooting with the built-in camera (e.g. using it as an electronic torch), the light is suddenly turned off, which may cause an accident.



Using the FOMA terminal may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA terminal and see a doctor.



Take care not to pinch your finger or the strap when opening or folding the FOMA terminal.

Doing so may cause injury or damage.



If the display is broken and the liquid crystal then leaks, do not lick or inhale the liquid or get the liquid on your skin.

If the liquid comes into contact with your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse your eyes or mouth with clean water and see a doctor.

If the liquid comes into contact with your skin or clothes, immediately wipe it off with alcohol, and wash with water and soap.

The liquid may cause loss of eyesight or skin problems.

3. Handling the Battery Pack

- Refer to the information shown on the battery pack label to check the type of battery pack.

Label description	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion

DANGER



Do not throw the battery pack into fire.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Do not let wire or other metals come close to the terminal. Also, do not carry or store the battery with metallic items such as a necklace.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



If you are having difficulty in fitting the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not apply excessive force. Check the battery's orientation before inserting it.

Failure to observe these precautions may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



If battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Rinse them immediately with clean water and consult a doctor as soon as possible.

Battery fluid is harmful to your eyes and may result in loss of eyesight.



Do not puncture the battery pack, hammer it or step on it.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

⚠ WARNING



If charging the battery is not completed within the appropriate charging time, stop charging.

Failure to observe this precaution may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



If battery fluid gets on your skin or clothing, rinse immediately with clean water.

Failure to do so may cause skin problems.



If the battery is leaking or smells strange, immediately move it away from any heat sources.

Leaking fluid may ignite and cause fire or explosion.

⚠ CAUTION



Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse.

Doing so may cause fire or environmental destruction. Tape over the charger terminals and take the battery to a DoCoMo Shop or follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.

4. Handling the Adapters (including the Charger)

⚠ WARNING



Use the specified socket and voltage.

Using a charging device with a non-specified socket or voltage may cause fire or malfunction. If you use the FOMA terminal overseas, take the FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01 with you.

AC Adapter: AC100V

FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use:

AC100V to 240V (Plug only into home AC outlet)

DC Adapter:

DC12/24 V (only for cars with negative ground)



The DC Adapter is only for cars with negative ground. Do not use it in cars with positive ground.

Doing so may cause fire.



Use only the specified fuse to replace the fuse of the DC Adapter.

Using it with non-specified fuses may cause fire or malfunction.

Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.



If the power cord becomes damaged, stop using it.

Continuing to use it may cause electric shock, overheating or fire.



No wet hands

Do not touch a charging device, power cord, or AC socket with wet hands.

Doing so may cause electric shock.



Do not short-circuit the charging terminals or connector terminals while a charging device is connected to an electric socket or cigarette lighter socket. Also, do not touch the charger or connector terminals with any part of your body.

Doing so may cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or bodily injury.



Do not use the AC Adapter or Desktop Holder in a very humid place.

Doing so may cause electric shock.



Wipe any dust off the plug.

Failure to do so may cause fire.



If you hear thunder, do not touch the devices.

Doing so may expose you to lightning strikes or electric shock.



Unplug

Always unplug the adapter or charger from the power outlet if it will be left unused for a long period.

Failure to observe this precaution may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Unplug

If fluids such as water seep into the device, immediately unplug it from the electric socket or cigarette lighter socket.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock, smoke or fire.



Do not apply excessive force when the cord cannot be unplugged.

Doing so may damage the cord and cause electric shock or malfunction.



Don't

Do not plug too many devices at the same time as doing so may cause the limit of the outlet or wire socket to be exceeded.

Tangling electric cords may cause overheating or fire.



Don't

Do not place a charging device in an unstable place while charging. Do not cover or wrap the charging device with cloth or a futon.

Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal to fall off, overheat, catch fire or malfunction.



Do

When plugging the AC Adapter into an electric socket, do not allow it to touch metal, and be sure to plug the charger securely.

Failure to observe this precaution may cause electric shock, short-circuit or fire.

**CAUTION**

Unplug

Before cleaning the device, always unplug it from the electric socket or cigarette lighter socket.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock.



Don't

Do not place heavy objects on the power cord.

Doing so may cause electric shock or fire.



Do

When unplugging a charger from an electric socket or cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the power cord itself but grasp the plug.

Pulling the cord itself may damage the cord and cause fire or electric shock.

5. Handling the FOMA card (UIM)

**CAUTION**

Do

Be careful when dismantling the FOMA card (IC part).

This may injure your hands or fingers.



Don't

Do not throw the FOMA card (UIM) into fire.

Doing so may cause melting, overheating, smoke emission, data loss or malfunction.

6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment

■ The following safety precautions conform to the guidelines drawn up during the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, Japan, regarding how to protect electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phones:

**WARNING**

Do

If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator, keep the FOMA terminal at least 22cm away.

Radio waves may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator.

Radio waves may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Do

Observe the following inside hospitals and health care facilities.

- Do not take the FOMA terminal into operating rooms, intensive care units (ICU), or coronary care units (CCU).
- Keep the FOMA terminal turned off in hospital wards.
- Keep the FOMA terminal turned off in hospital waiting rooms or wards, as there may be electronic medical devices in your vicinity.
- Follow the rules of individual hospitals or health care facilities that prohibit carrying or using mobile phones.
- If your FOMA terminal is equipped with the Auto power function, make sure to set the function to OFF before turning off the FOMA terminal.



Do

Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) who are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers or distributors for information about the effects of radio waves on the equipment.

Radio waves may affect the operation of electronic medical equipment.

Handling with Care

General Notes

- **Do not allow the devices to become wet.**

The FOMA terminal, battery, adapters (including the charger) and FOMA card (UIM) are not water-proof. Do not use them in very humid places or in the rain. When carrying the FOMA terminal in your shirt pocket, moisture from sweat may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction. Failure caused by the equipment becoming wet is not covered by the warranty and the equipment may not be repairable. Even if repair is possible, you will be charged for the repair.

- **Wipe with a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses).**

- The special coating may be applied on the FOMA display in order to clear the color LCD. Rubbing the LCD of the FOMA terminal with a dry cloth to clean it may scratch the LCD surface. Handle the FOMA terminal carefully and wipe it using a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses). Leaving the surface exposed to moisture or soil for a long period may peel off or stain the LCD coating.
- Wiping with alcohol, thinner, benzene or liquid soap may cause decals to fade or other discoloration.

- **Clean connectors with a dry cloth or cotton swab occasionally.**

Dirty connectors may cause poor contact and the FOMA terminal may switch off. Also, as dirty connectors may prevent proper charging, clean the connectors with a dry cloth or cotton swab when they are soiled.

- **Do not place the FOMA terminal near the airflow of an air-conditioner.**

Sudden temperature changes may cause condensation and corrode internal parts.

- **Do not keep the FOMA terminal in a place where extreme force may be applied to it.**

Placing the FOMA terminal in a bag with many other items, or sitting down with the handset in your pocket may damage the display or internal circuit boards and cause malfunction. Such damage is not covered by the warranty.

- **Read the separate manuals supplied with the battery pack, adapter and charger carefully.**

Handling the FOMA Terminal

- **Do not use the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.**

The operating temperature range is from 5 to 35°C and the humidity range is from 45 to 85%.

- **The FOMA terminal may become warm while being used or charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.**

- **If you use the FOMA terminal near a landline, TV or radio, the FOMA terminal may affect the operation of these devices. Use the FOMA terminal as far as possible from these devices.**

- **It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on your FOMA terminal.**

Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on your FOMA terminal.

- **Do not sit down with the FOMA terminal in your back pocket. Also, do not put the FOMA terminal at the bottom of a bag where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.**

Doing so may cause malfunction.

- **Do not fold the FOMA terminal with an object such as the hand strap inserted between the keypad and display.**

Doing so may cause malfunction or breakage.

- **Usually keep the headset connector cover, external connector covers and miniSD memory card slot cover closed.**

Failure to do so may cause dust or water to seep in and cause malfunction.

- **Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight.**

Doing so may discolor or burn the element.

- **Do not put a sticker, etc. on the display or keypads.**

Doing so may cause you to wrongly press a key when the FOMA terminal is folded, or may damage the FOMA terminal.

- **Slip your hand through the strap to hold the FOMA terminal.**

Failure to do so may cause you to drop the FOMA terminal and cause malfunction.

- **Do not rub or scratch the display with metal, etc.**

Doing so may damage the display.

- **FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED supports Omakase Lock (p.159).**

Omakase Lock is a service where a subscriber asks to lock the FOMA terminal. Even if someone else uses the terminal, it is locked at the subscriber's request.

Handling the Battery Pack

- **The battery pack is a consumable item.**

If the battery pack does not work after it is fully charged, it is time to exchange it. Exchange it for a new battery pack with the same specifications.

- **Charge the battery pack within the proper ambient temperature range (5°C to 35°C).**

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.371

- **Make sure to charge the battery the first time you use the FOMA terminal or if you have not used it for a long period.**
- **The available operating time of the battery pack depends on the conditions under which you use it and the condition of the battery pack itself.**
- **The battery pack may swell slightly as the life comes close to the end and it causes no problem.**
- **Leaving the metallic part (connector) soiled may cause poor contact and the FOMA terminal may switch off. Wipe off the dirt with a dry cloth or cotton swab before use.**
- **Do not store or leave the battery pack with no battery left.**
Failure to observe this instruction may lower the performance or shorten the life of the battery pack.
If you leave it for a long period, remove it from the FOMA terminal, and store it in a cool, dry place. Also, charge the battery at least once in half a year.
- **Keep the battery pack in a cool and dry place away from direct sunlight.**
If you do not use the battery pack for a long period, use up the battery, remove the pack from the FOMA terminal, and keep it in a vinyl case.

Handling the Adapters and Charger

- **Charge the battery pack within the proper ambient temperature range (5°C to 35°C).**
- **Do not charge the battery:**
 - In a humid, dusty or shaky place
 - Near your landline phone, TV or radio
- **The adapter or charger may become warm while the FOMA terminal is charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.**
- **Do not use the DC Adapter while the engine is not running.**
Doing so may drain the car battery.
- **If you use an outlet that provides pull-out prevention, follow the instructions of the outlet manual.**
- **Do not subject the adapter or charger to strong impacts. Do not deform the charging terminal or terminal guide.**
Doing so may cause malfunction.

Handling the FOMA card (UIM)

- **When inserting the FOMA card (UIM) into the FOMA terminal, do not apply unnecessary force.**

- **The FOMA card (UIM) may become warm while being used or while the FOMA terminal is charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.**
- **The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the FOMA card (UIM) into some other type of IC Card reader/writer. It is your responsibility.**
- **Always keep the IC part clean.**
- **Wipe with a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses).**
- **It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on the FOMA card (UIM) .**
Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- **To preserve the environment, take the used FOMA card (UIM) to a DoCoMo shop.**
- **Do not use the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.**
The operating temperature range is from 5 to 35°C and the humidity range is from 45 to 85%.
- **Do not scratch, touch or short-circuit the IC carelessly.**
Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.
- **Do not drop the FOMA card (UIM) or subject it to strong impacts.**
Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **Do not bend the FOMA card (UIM) or put something heavy on it.**
Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **When removing the FOMA card (UIM) , do not apply unnecessary force.**

Handling the miniSD Memory Card

Do not remove the miniSD memory card or turn off the FOMA terminal while using the miniSD memory card.

Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.

Handling the In-Car Holder

Be sure to attach the in-car holder to the arm rest, etc. Firmly place the FOMA terminal into the in-car holder.

Handling the Camera

If you break the law while using the FOMA terminal, you may be liable to prosecution under applicable laws and regulations (such as the Public Nuisance Laws).



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Intellectual Property Right

Copyright and Portrait Right

It is prohibited to duplicate, modify or publicly transmit contents such as text, images, music or software that were photographed using the FOMA terminal or downloaded from an Internet website, which are under third-party copyright, without the permission of the copyright holder, although it is permitted under copyright law to duplicate or quote the contents for personal use.

It may be prohibited to shoot or record a stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it.

Shooting a photo of someone with the FOMA terminal without his or her permission, or displaying a photo of someone shot with the FOMA terminal on a web page without his or her permission may be a breach of portrait right.

Trademarks and registered trademarks

All brand names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

- “FOMA”, “mova”, “i-mode”, “i-channel”, “i-appli”, “i-appli DX”, “WORLD CALL”, “WORLD WING”, “Public mode”, “i-melody”, “i-area”, “QUICKCAST”, “i-motion”, “mopera”, “mopera U”, “i-motion mail”, “Chaku-motion”, “Deco-mail”, “Charaden”, “i-anime”, “i-shot”, “sigmarion”, “musea”, “DoPa”, “Short mail”, “Dual network”, “FirstPass”, “V-live”, “visualnet”, “Security Scan”, “ToruCa”, “PushTalk”, “PushTalkPlus”, “トークだねニュース便”, “My DoCoMo”, “iD”, “DCMX” and “Music Channel” and “FOMA”, “i-mode”, “i-appli”, “ToruCa”, “DCMX” and “Music Channel” logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- miniSD™ is a trademark of SD Association. 
- F e l i c a is a contactless I C technology developed by Sony Corporation. F e l i c a is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
-  is a registered trademark of F e l i c a Networks, Inc.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- LC フォント/LC FONT®, エルシーフォント® and LC logo are registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation. 
- T9 Text Input® and T9 logo are registered trademarks of Tegic Communications, Inc. 
- T9 Text Input is patented or under patent application worldwide.
- Dialog Clarity, WOW, SRS and the symbol  are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- Dialog Clarity and WOW technologies are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc.  
- キャッチホン (Call Waiting) is registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- QRコード is registered trademark of Denso Wave, Inc.
- “Edy” is the brand name of the pre-paid electronic money service offered by bitWallet, Inc. 
- Handset 3D, Game 3D and their logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sonaptic LTD. of the U.K. 
- Facestamps use the N-Vision Virtual Accessory engine. 
- Macromedia, Flash and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of the Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- NetFront and **NetFront**® are registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- IrFront® is a registered trademark or trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
Copyright© 1996-2006 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- This product is equipped with NetFront for the Internet by ACCESS CO., LTD. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and/or other countries.
Copyright© 1996-2006 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- Gガイド, G-GUIDE, Gガイドモバイル, G-GUIDE MOBILE and G-GUIDE-related logs are registered trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in the United State and its affiliates in Japan. 
- McAfee and VirusScan are registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- All other registered and unregistered trademarks herein are the sole property of their respective owners.
- ©2006 Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- Apple, Apple logo and QuickTime are registered trademarks of Apple Computer Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- QuickTime logo is a trademark of Apple Computer Inc.
- “スーパー CCDハニカム” is a registered trademark of Fuji Photo Film Co., Ltd.
- The service name and logo mark for FreeDial is a trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
- ©2006 ARMOR PROJECT/BIRD STUDIO/SQUARE ENIX All Rights Reserved.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.371

- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2006 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.

JBlend and all JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and/or other countries.

Powered by JBlend™ Technology.

JBlend and JBlend logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation.

- ©BANDAI NETWORKS · Primeworks

- “カメラでケンサク！ERサーチ” and the logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of BANDAI NETWORKS CO., LTD.

- ©2006 ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD. All Rights Reserved.

- The other company names and brand names described in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.



Others

- Contains Macromedia® Flash® Player technology by Macromedia, Inc.

Copyright© 1995-2006 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved.

- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and it is permitted to use for personal purpose and for nonprofit purpose only when you:

- Record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)

- Play MPEG-4 Video recorded by consumers engaged in personal and nonprofit activities

- Play MPEG-4 Video provided by a provider licensed by MPEG-LA

When you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.

- This product is equipped with Adobe Reader by Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Copyright 2006 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Patents pending.

Adobe, the Adobe logo and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Adobe and Adobe Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773

5,101,501 5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073

5,228,054 5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196

5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338 5,600,754

5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569

5,710,784 5,778,338

- This product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.

- This product is equipped with IrFront® for OBEX and infrared data exchange.

IrFront® is a product of ACCESS CO., LTD.

- The software in this product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.

- This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc. For more details, see “readme.txt” in the “GPL · LGPL 等について” folder on the bundled CD-ROM. (“readme.txt” is only available in Japanese version.)

- This product is antibacterial.

The SIAA logo indicates that this product conforms to the JIS Z 2801 standard and that the quality control and information disclosure for this product follows the guidelines of the Society of Industrial Technology for Antimicrobial Articles (SIAA).



Antibacterial: Phone body (excluding the display, keys/buttons and terminals)

Description of Windows

- Windows® 2000 Professional stands for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.

- Windows® XP stands for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.

- This manual describes Windows® 2000 Professional as Windows 2000.

- This manual describes Windows® XP Professional and Windows® XP Home Edition as Windows XP.

Main Components and Optional Equipment

<Main Components>

FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED

(Including the warranty and Back Cover N14)



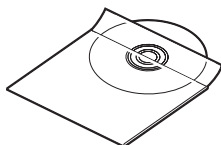
Manual for FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED

(This manual)



*The Quick Manual starts on p.508.

FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED CD-ROM



*This CD-ROM contains "Manual for Data Communication" (PDF).

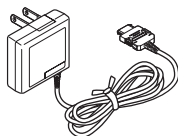
Stereo Earphone (sample)/Flat-plug connector/stereo mini jack ($\phi 3.5\text{mm}$) conversion adapter (sample)



<Optional Equipment>

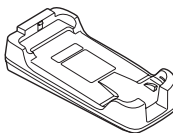
FOMA AC Adapter 01

(Including warranty and manual)



Desktop Holder N07

(Including manual)



Battery Pack N11

(Including manual)



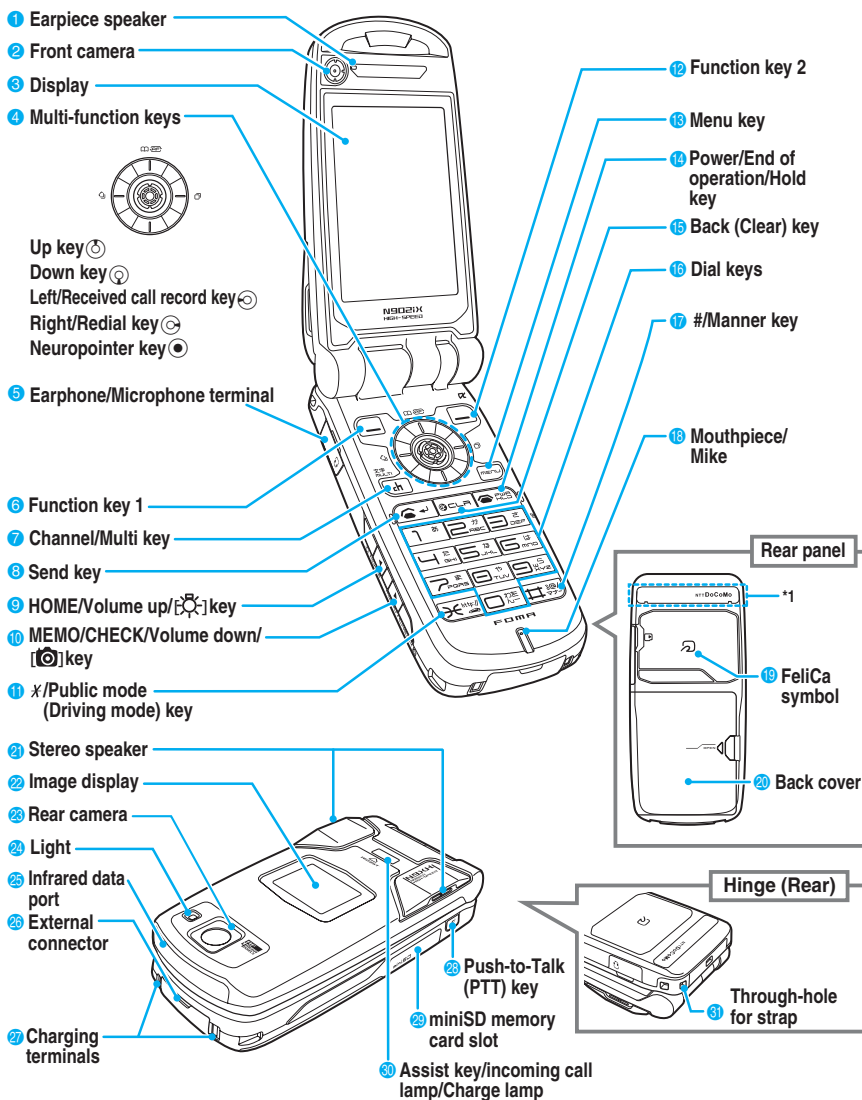
Other options and accessories → p.474

● Getting Started

Component Names and Functions	24
Icons on the Display and Image Display	28
Guide to Image Display (Rear Panel Display)	30
Main Menu	31
Using Menus	32
Using the FOMA Card (UIM)	37
Inserting/Removing the Battery Pack	40
Charging a FOMA Terminal	42
Checking the Battery Level	44
Turning a FOMA Terminal On/Off	44
Switching Language Mode	Select language 45
Performing Initial Settings	Initial setting 46
Setting Date and Time	Set time 46
Setting the World Clock	World watch 47
Showing your Phone Number to the Other Party	Caller ID Notification 47
Checking your Phone Number	Own number 48

Component Names and Functions

The following are the names and functions of the keys on the N902iX HIGH-SPEED FOMA terminal:



Size (mm)*2	Width 51 × Height 106 × Depth 25
Mass (g)*3	Approx. 133

*1 : This model is equipped with an internal antenna. For better phone call, do not cover the section around the antenna.

*2 : Height and depth are for the FOMA terminal when folded.

*3 : When the battery pack is attached.

■ Functions

- 1 Earpiece speaker
 - Allows you to hear the other party's voice.
- 2 Front camera
 - Shoots pictures (still images) or movies or sends your image to the other party during videophone calls.
- 3 Display
- 4 Multi-function keys

Up key 

 - Moves the cursor or highlight upward.
 - Scrolls up a screen. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
 - Opens the phonebook list screen.
 - Converts the entered characters into kanji, katakana and numbers.

Down key 

 - Moves the cursor or highlight downward.
 - Scrolls down a screen. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
 - Opens the search phonebook screen.
 - Moves the cursor into the operation guidance area when the predictive candidates of the entered characters are listed.

Left/Received call record key 

 - Moves the cursor to the left.
 - Scrolls back to the previous screens by page.
 - Shows the Received calls record. → p.66

Right/Redial key 

 - Moves the cursor to the right.
 - Scrolls to the next screens by page.
 - Shows the Redial record. → p.58

Neuropointer key 

 - Neuropointer → p.27
- 5 Earphone/Microphone terminal
 - Connects the attached stereo earphone (sample) or a flat-pipe earphone/microphone with switch (optional). → p.26
- 6 Function key 1 

 - Performs the operation indicated on the software key at the bottom-left of a screen. → p.27

- 7 Channel/Multi-key 

 - Shows the channel list on the standby screen. → p.323
 - Opens the task change screen. → p.399
 - Switches the input mode on the character entry screen. → p.441

- 8 Send key 

 - Makes voice calls. → p.50
 - Answers voice calls. → p.64
 - Answers videophone calls. → p.86
 - Switches the entered characters into upper or lower case. → p.445

- 9 HOME/Volume up/() key 

 - Checks for missed calls or new mails with a FOMA terminal folded. → p.30
 - Connects to the site set in "Home URL" (p.230) easily using i-mode.
 - Lights the backlight of the image display when pressed with a FOMA terminal folded.
 - Turns up the earpiece volume during a call. → p.69
 - Returns to the previous character assigned to the same key during character entry. → p.440
 - Turns the light on when using the camera.
 - Hides the i-channel telop text shown on the image display.
 - Scrolls back to the previous screens by page.

- 10 MEMO/CHECK/Volume down/() key 

 - Activates "Record message" when pressed while a FOMA terminal is ringing. → p.77
 - Plays recorded messages. → p.77
 - Turns down the earpiece volume during a call. → p.69
 - Lights the backlight of the image display and reads out the current time when pressed with a FOMA terminal folded. → p.75
 - Shoots still images with a FOMA terminal folded. → p.190
 - Hides the i-channel telop text shown on the image display.
 - Scrolls to the next screens by page.

- 11 /Public mode (Driving mode) key 

 - Enters "X", "http://" or other character strings. → p.463

- 12 Function key 2 

 - Performs the operation indicated on the software key at the bottom-right of a screen. → p.27

- 13 Menu key 

 - Opens the main menu or Sliding Menu (Launcher). → p.32

- 14 Power/End of operation/Hold key 

 - Turns on the power when pressed for 1 second or longer. → p.44
 - Turns off the power when pressed for 2 seconds or longer. → p.45
 - Ends a call. → p.50
 - Puts an incoming call on hold. → p.70

- 15 Back (Clear) key 

 - Goes back to one step before.
 - Puts a call on hold. → p.51
 - Deletes the entered phone numbers or characters. → pp.51, 447
 - Runs the software set for the i-oppli standby screen. → p.319

- 16 Dial keys  to 

 - Enter phone numbers. → p.50
 - Enters characters and numerals. → p.444

- 17 /Manner key 

 - Enters "#" or symbols. → p.463
 - Sets "Manner mode" and activates "Record message" when pressed while a FOMA terminal is ringing. → p.77

- 18 Mouthpiece/Mike
 - Conveys your voice from here. Do not cover the mouthpiece while you are talking. This may prevent the other party from hearing your voice.
 - Works as the microphone when you shoot movies using the camera or record voice using "Picture voice".
- 19 FeliCa symbol
 - The IC card is built-in. Pass the FeliCa symbol over a reader/writer unit to use the IC card function. This IC card cannot be removed.
- 20 Back cover
- 21 Stereo speaker
 - Emits sounds such as a ring tone or voice of the other party in hands-free mode.
- 22 Image display
 - Shows the FOMA terminal condition using messages, icons and animations.
- 23 Rear camera
 - Shoots pictures (still images) or movies or sends images such as a landscape to the other party during videophone calls.
- 24 Light
 - Provides light when pictures are taken with the camera.
- 25 Infrared data port
 - Window used for sending or receiving infrared rays. → p.382
- 26 External connector
 - Used to connect an optional external device to a FOMA terminal.
- 27 Charging terminals
- 28 Push-to-Talk (PTT) key 

 - Used to make or during a Push-to-Talk call. → p.99
 - Shows the PushTalk phonebook on the standby screen.

- 29 miniSD memory card slot
 - Slot for inserting the miniSD memory card. → p.371
- 30 Assist key/Incoming call lamp/Charge lamp 

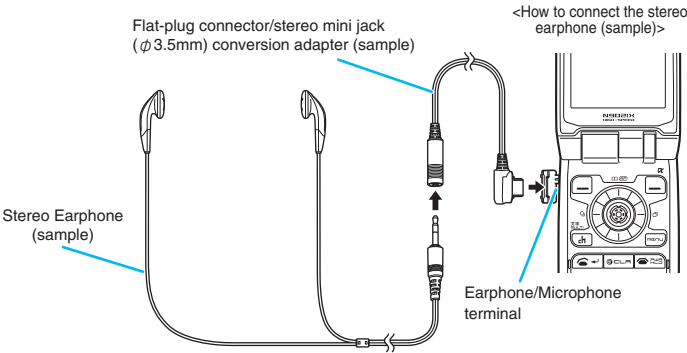
 - Checks for missed calls, new mails, etc. with a FOMA terminal folded. → p.74
 - Reads out received mails or the alarm information of "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "To Do list". → p.400
 - Performs the music player operations. → p.305
 - Flashes when you receive a voice call, videophone call, mail, MessageR or MessageF. Lights in red while charging.

(The three keys of ,  and  are collectively called external keys in this manual.)

- 31 Through-hole for strap

● How to connect the attached stereo earphone (sample)

Connect the attached stereo earphone to a conversion adapter and connect a jack of a conversion adapter to the earphone/microphone terminal on the FOMA terminal.



NOTE

- ◆ The stereo earphone (sample) is not equipped with microphone function.
- ◆ You can talk in the hands-free mode by using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional). A conventional earphone/microphone with switch is also available by using the earphone jack conversion adapter P001 (optional).
- ◆ When you use the microphone on a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch, set “Select microphone” to “External microphone”. → p.420

Operations performed by a long press of a key

The operations performed by pressing a key for 1 second or longer are as follows:

Key	Operation	Refer to	Key	Operation	Refer to
	Opens the received address list.	p.278		Adjusts the earpiece volume. (while on the standby screen or during a call)	p.69
	Opens the sent address list.	p.278		Records voice memos. (during a call)	p.412
	Sets IC card lock. (when “SimpleLock” is enabled and on the standby screen)	p.331		Opens the Photo mode screen. (while on the standby screen)	p.187
	Turns the backlight on/off.	p.142		Mutes the microphone. (during a videophone call)	p.80
	Enters “+”. (while on the standby screen or phone number entry screen)	p.53		Check new messages (while on the standby screen)	pp.234, 261
	Sets Manner mode. (while on the standby screen or during a call)	p.134		Opens the i-appli software list screen. (while on the standby screen)	p.310
	Opens the switching task screen. (while tasks are activated)	p.400		Switches the main screen display. (during a videophone call)	pp.80, 82
	Opens the standby screen. (during Multitask)	p.399		Activates/quits the music player. (while on the standby screen, etc.)	p.305
	Sets the external keys. (while on the main menu)	p.170			
	Sets Public mode (Driving mode). (while on the standby screen)	p.71			
	Enters a pause (p). (while editing pause dial data)	p.60			

Software key

On a screen, operational icons (software keys) corresponding to the function keys (□, ●, □) and directional icons corresponding to the Multi-function keys (⬅, ➡) appear.

■ To run a command corresponding to the software key ①

Press □ to run the command indicated on the software key ①.

① includes (Edit), (Store), (Finish), (Play), (⏮➡⏭), etc.

■ To run a command corresponding to the software key ②

Press ● to run the command indicated on the software key ②.

② includes (Select), (Set), (Play), (Change), etc.

■ To run a command corresponding to the software key ③

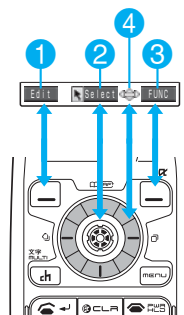
Press □ to run the command indicated on the software key ③.

③ includes (FUNC), (Exit), etc. Press □ while (FUNC) appears to open the function menu. → p.35

■ To move/scroll in the directions shown in ④

Use ⬅➡ to move or scroll in the directions shown in ④.

The icons show in which directions you can move or scroll.



Neuropointer

Sliding the Neuropointer to move the pointer enables you to quickly select icons or items. When a list or function menu consists of multiple pages, you can switch the pages with the Neuropointer.

- When ⬅➡ appears at the bottom of the standby or other screen, slide the Neuropointer to show the pointer (➡).

● Switching pages with the Neuropointer

1 Slide ● to show ➡ Move the pointer to the bottom of its operating range

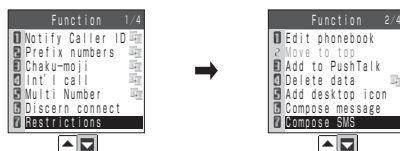
The pointer changes to ⬅➡.

■ When moving the pointer to the top

The pointer changes to ⬅➡.

2 Press ●

The next page appears.



■ To show the previous page

➡ Slide ● leftward to change ⬅➡ to ⬅➡ ➡ Press ●

● Scrolling a screen with the Neuropointer

You can scroll using the Neuropointer on the PDF data screen or site screen in i-mode or full browser. When Scroll mode is set on an i-mode site or website in Full Browser mode, ⬅➡ changes to ⬅➡ and an icon such as ⬆ appears, which allows you to scroll.

Scrolling in i-mode → p.218

Scrolling in full browser → pp.336, 337

Scrolling in PDF data screen → p.390

NOTE

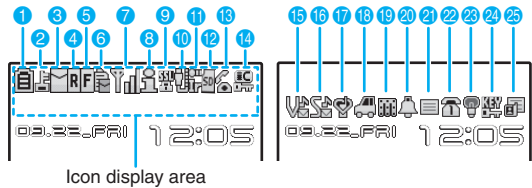
- ◆ Neuropointer may be unavailable for selecting the menu screens of some Flash movies.

Icons on the Display and Image Display

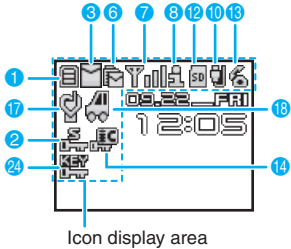
The symbols (such as , , , etc.) shown on the display and image display are referred to as icons.

- A calendar, etc. can be set on the display. → p.139

■ Display



■ Image display

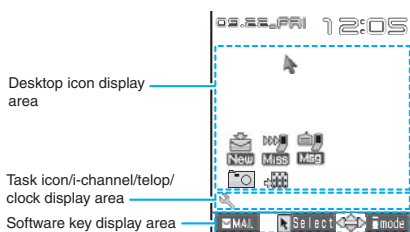


Icon display area

- The following table shows the icon images for the display. Some icons on the image display may differ from them.

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
1	 Battery level → p.44	 Mail kept at the i-mode Center when "Receive option setting" is set to "ON" → p.260	
2	 Lock all set → p.159	 MessageR kept at the i-mode Center → p.234	
	 Secret mode or Secret data only mode set → p.161	 Memory for your MessageR at the i-mode Center is full → p.234	
	 PIM lock set → p.166	 MessageF kept at the i-mode Center → p.234	
	 Keypad dial lock set → p.170	 Memory for your MessageF at the i-mode Center is full → p.234	
	 Keypad dial lock and Secret mode or Secret data only mode set → pp.161, 170	7	 Signal strength → p.45
	 Keypad dial lock and PIM lock set → pp.166, 170		 Out of service area or a radio wave does not reach → p.45
	 PIM lock and Secret mode or Secret data only mode set → pp.161, 166		 Self mode set → p.176
	 Keypad dial lock and PIM lock and Secret mode or Secret data only mode set → pp.161, 166, 170	8	 i-mode in progress → p.215
3	 Unread mail → p.258		 i-mode communication in progress → p.215
	 Inbox is full → p.258		 Packet communication in progress → p.436
	 FOMA card memory for SMS is full → p.291		 Packet communication in progress (outgoing) → p.436
	 Unread mail/FOMA card memory for SMS is full → p.291		 Packet communication in progress (incoming) → p.436
	 Inbox is full/FOMA card memory for SMS is full → pp.258, 291		 Packet communication in progress (sending data) → p.436
4	 Unread MessageR → p.232		 Packet communication in progress (receiving data) → p.436
	 Memory for MessageR is full → p.232		 Push-to-Talk call in progress → p.99
5	 Unread MessageF → p.232	9	 SSL-compatible page shown → p.218
	 Memory for MessageF is full → p.232	10	 Communication mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device unconnected → p.380
6	 Mail kept at the i-mode Center → p.261		 Communication mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device unconnected → p.380
	 Memory for your mail at the i-mode Center is full → p.261		

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Communication mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device connected → pp.63, 380	12	miniSD memory card inserted → p.372
	Communication mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device connected → pp.63, 380		Disabled miniSD memory card inserted → p.372
	miniSD mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device unconnected → p.380	13	miniSD reader/writer operated → p.379
	miniSD mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device unconnected → p.380		Voice call in progress → p.50
	miniSD mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device connected → pp.63, 380		64K data communication in progress → p.436
	miniSD mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device connected → pp.63, 380		Communication speed during a videophone call → p.81
	Print mode set, printer unrecognized and hands-free compatible device unconnected → p.380		Call mode is being changed between voice call and videophone call → pp.52, 85
	Print mode set, printer recognized and hands-free compatible device unconnected → p.380	14	IC card lock set → p.330
	Print mode set, printer recognized and hands-free compatible device connected → pp.63, 380	15	Vibrator set → p.131
	Print mode set, printer unrecognized and hands-free compatible device connected → pp.63, 380	16	Ring volume set to "Silent" → p.69
			Mail/Msg. ring time set to "OFF" → p.133
		17	Manner mode set → p.134
			Remote monitoring set → p.93
		18	Public mode (Driving mode) set → p.71
		19	Music Channel automatic downloads set → p.294
		20	Alarm set → p.401
		21	Record message set → p.75
		22	Voice Mail message → p.425
		23	Backlight set to "OFF" → p.142
11	Infrared data exchange in progress → p.382	24	External keys guard set to "ON" → p.170
	Infrared remote control operated → p.387	25	Record message (Record VP message) set → p.75



Desktop icon display area

Icon	Description
etc.	Desktop icons that give notice → p.150
etc.	Added desktop icons → p.149

Task icon/i-channel telop/clock display area

Icon	Description
etc.	Task icons → p.399
i-channel telop	Telop text running on the standby screen → p.323
Clock	Date and time shown on the standby screen → p.148 (Time appears on other screens regardless of the "Clock display" setting.)

NOTE

- ◆ The display of a FOMA terminal adopts state-of-the-art technology; some dots (points) may not light up while others may constantly light up due to its characteristics. Note that this phenomenon is not a failure.
- ◆ Press to check the name of the icon shown on the screen.

Guide to Image Display (Rear Panel Display)

The image display indicates an incoming call/mail or alarm in various forms such as messages, images and animations so that you can immediately check the information without opening a FOMA terminal.

- “Setting the Image Display Mode” → p.141
- You can view the i-channel information on the image display if “i-Channel setting” (p.324) is set.

Sample images



Clock display (Digital 1)



Alarm clock ringing



Chaku-moji



Receiving call



Camera (shoot folded (select frame))



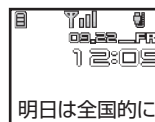
Emotion-expressing mail



Running the music player



Switching voice/videophone calls



Telop text of the i-channel (twice)

Checking a caller or sender

Press (HOME) to check a caller or sender.

- When performing the tool group operation (p.31), you cannot check missed calls on the image display.

■ Missed call

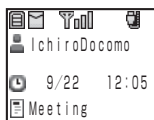
You can only check the latest missed call.



The clock reappears.

■ New mail

When receiving several mails at the same time, you can only check the latest one.



The clock reappears.

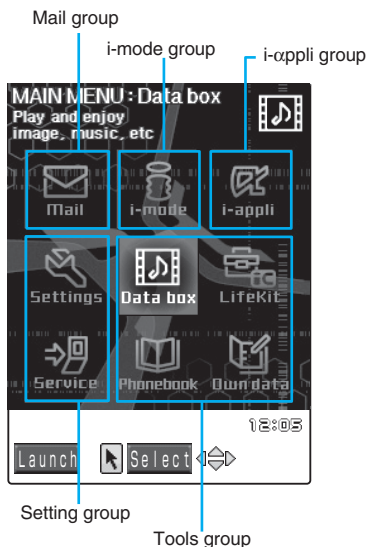
When “Mail” is set to “ON” in “Image display”, the sender, sent date and title appear.

NOTE

- ◆ Press (HOME) with a FOMA terminal folded to light up the display light.
- ◆ In Power saver mode, the image display is blank. Press (HOME) to reactivate the image display.

Main Menu

To set or check various functions with a FOMA terminal, access each function from the main menu. Press  to open the main menu. The main menu consists of the following groups:



<Mail group>

●Mail

Read sent/received mails, compose and send new mail.

<i-mode group>

●i-mode

Use i-mode service to access website, etc.

<i-appli group>

●i-appli

Find useful applications.

<Settings group>

●Settings

Change the settings to customize your FOMA terminal.

●Service

Specify and confirm the settings of network service.

<Tools group>

●Data box

Enjoy picture, music, etc.

●LifeKit

Find useful functions such as Music Channel, camera, alarm and data exchange.

●Phonebook

Add data to phonebook, search data in phonebook, or change the settings.

●Own data

Manage and check your personal data and history.

"Multitask" → p.399

The FOMA terminal supports "Multitask" that enables you to use multiple functions at the same time, up to three functions from each main menu group. While in a Multitask operation, the active menu groups are enclosed with a box.



In-use groups are enclosed with a box.

Using Menus

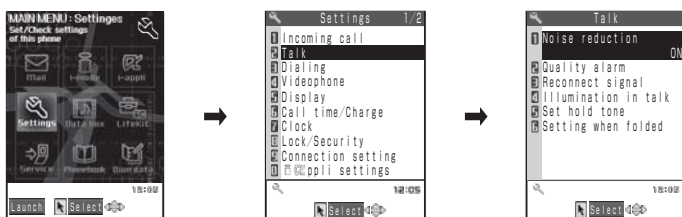
Open a screen from the main menu or original menu to set or check functions.

- You have two ways of accessing functions after pressing the **[menu]** key: accessing a function from the main menu and accessing a function by entering the menu number (p.454). This "Manual for FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED" describes focusing on the procedures to access functions from the main menu.
- To cancel a menu operation, press **[END]**. It will cancel the operation in the middle of the setting to return to the standby screen or previous screen. However, a message asking whether to discard the entered or selected items may appear depending on the menu. In this case, pressing **[CLR]** goes back to the operation screen shown before a message appears.
- The frequently used menu such as Mail (p.246) or i-mode (p.215) can be accessed easily from the standby screen. On the standby screen, press **[MAIL]** to access the Mail menu or **[i-mode]** to access the i-mode menu.

Selecting functions from the main menu

<Example: Setting flashing color in "Illumination in talk">

- 1** Use **[menu]** to select **[Settings]** and then press **[right arrow]** to highlight "Talk" and then press **[right arrow]**



■ To scroll continuously

▶ Keep holding down **[right arrow]**

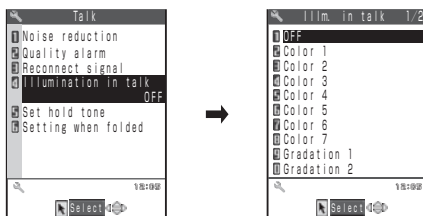
■ To use the Neuropointer

"Neuropointer" → p.27

■ If you do not press any keys for 15 seconds while the main menu appears

The main menu is closed and the previous screen reappears.

- 2** Use **[right arrow]** to highlight "Illumination in talk" and press **[right arrow]**



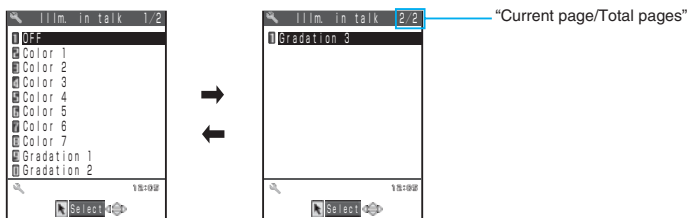
NOTE

- ◆ The icon you selected the last time is highlighted when the main menu or Sliding Menu (Launcher) is opened (Last one function). This function is only available when "ON" is set for "Memory focus" in "Menu display set".

To select items that span multiple pages

1 Use to select the items you want to set

Press  (or  (HOME)) to scroll to the previous page or  (or  (MEMO/CHECK)) to the next page.



2 Press

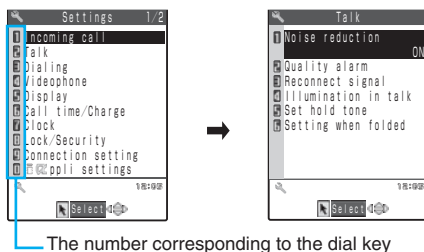
The selected items are set.

3 Press after the operation

The menu operation ends and the standby screen reappears. While Multitask is being performed, the other active screen appears.

Using the dial keys to select items

1 Press to to select items



Selecting “YES/NO” or “ON/OFF”

1 Use to select “YES” (or “ON”) or “NO” (or “OFF”) and press

The selected item is set.



Entering the security code

Some functions may open the security code entry screen before the detail screen appears. To open the detail screen, enter your security code. → p.156

1 Enter your 4- to 8-digit security code, and press

The entered security code appears as “_”.

The detail screen of a function appears after the correct security code is entered.

■ If the entered security code is incorrect

A message notifying that the security code is incorrect appears. Re-enter the security code.



● Entering numbers

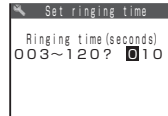
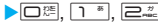
1 Press to to enter numbers

To enter a 1-digit number or 2-digit number on a 3-digit number entry screen, press  twice or once before entering the number.

■ To enter “3”



■ To enter “12”



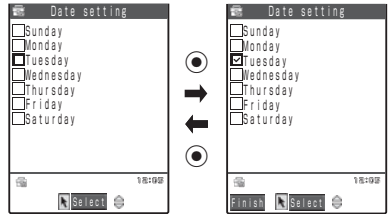
● Marking checkboxes (selecting multiple items)

1 Use to select a checkbox () to mark and press

The checkbox changes from  to . This indicates a selected checkbox. Press  to toggle  and .

When “Finish” appears as a software key, pressing  (Finish) sets the item selected.

When “FUNC” appears as a software key, pressing  (FUNC) allows you to use functions such as “Select all” or “Release all”.

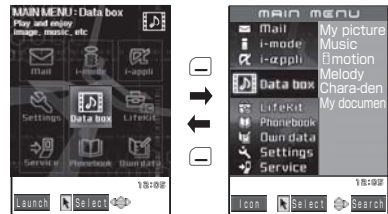


■ Launcher mode on the main menu

Changing the standard main menu to launcher mode enables you to reference the sub menus under the selected menu.

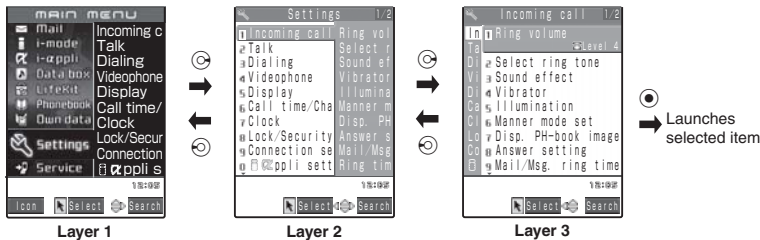
1 (Launch)

Press  (Icon) to return to the main menu.



2 Select a menu item

Use  to select an item and press . The sub menus under the selected menu are shown at the right pane.



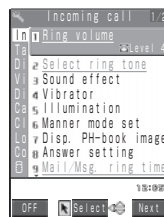
Searching menu items

1 (Launch) (Search) Enter a keyword

The search result appears with the searched item selected.
Press (OFF) to end search.

■ If multiple search results come out

Press (Next) to show the next search result.



Searched "RING"

NOTE

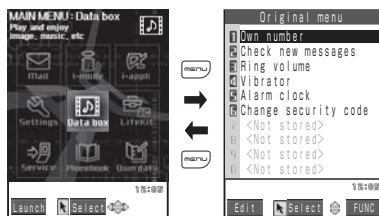
- ◆ If you used Sliding Menu (Launcher) to select a menu item last time, pressing opens Sliding Menu (Launcher). However, if "OFF" is set for "Memory focus" in "Menu display set", pressing always opens the main menu.

Selecting a function from your original menu

- Highlight "<Not stored>" and press (Edit) to edit the original menu.
- The original menu appears in "List".
- Adding items to the original menu → p.145

1 Press

Pressing switches between the main menu and original menu.

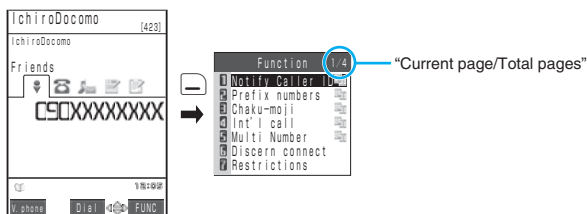


NOTE

- ◆ When you return to the standby screen or access a function from the original menu and press , the main menu appears.
- ◆ If no function is stored in the original menu, a message asking whether to add functions to the original menu appears.

Function menu

When you are using a function that enables you to store, edit or delete data, "**FUNC**" appears as a software key. Press (FUNC) to open the function menu. Use to highlight an item to perform and press to select it.



- When items span multiple pages, "Current page/Total pages" appears in the upper right corner of the function menu screen. Press while the top item of the function menu is selected to show the previous page. Press while the bottom item is selected to show the next page. Press (or (HOME)) to scroll to the previous page or (or (MEMO/CHECK)) to the next page.
- "" appears on the right of an option if there are further menus under the option.
- The shown function menu differs depending on the active operation or setting.
- You may not be able to select some items in a function menu due to settings or other conditions. Unavailable items in a function menu are grayed out.

Notation for menu operations

In this manual, procedures for menu operations are described as shown below. The procedure (extract) for selecting “Remote monitoring” from “Videophone” in “Settings” is taken as an example.

Notation for this manual:

1   “Videophone” ▶ “Remote monitoring” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “Other ID”

2 Select “<Not recorded>”

:

Actual operations:

1 Press  on the standby screen

2 Use  on the main menu to select  and press 

3 Use  on the “Settings” menu to highlight “Videophone” and press 

4 Use  on the “Videophone” menu to highlight “Remote monitoring” and press 

5 Enter your security code and press 

6 Highlight “Other ID” on the “Remote monitoring” menu and press 

7 Use  on the “Other ID” menu to highlight “<Not recorded>” and press 

:

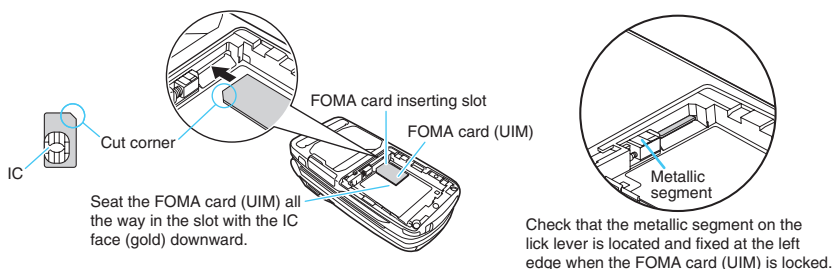
① Operation for 1

② Operation for 2

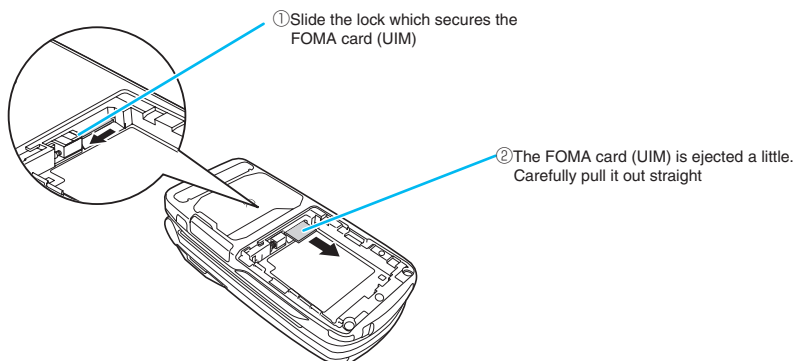
Using the FOMA Card (UIM)

The FOMA card (UIM) is an IC card that contains your private information such as the phone number. Before inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM), turn off the FOMA terminal and remove the battery. Hold the FOMA terminal in your hand with the terminal folded while inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM).

● Inserting the FOMA card (UIM)



● Removing the FOMA card (UIM)



NOTE

- ◆ Note that using excessive force to insert or remove the FOMA card (UIM) may damage the card.
- ◆ When you slide the lock lever, keep your finger away from the FOMA card (UIM). Otherwise the FOMA card (UIM) could not fully come out and you may not pull it out with ease. In this case, seat your FOMA card (UIM) all the way in the slot and try again.
- ◆ Take care not to lose the FOMA card (UIM) after removing it from a FOMA terminal.
- ◆ Take care not to touch or scratch on the IC part of the FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ If you insert the FOMA card (UIM) incorrectly or the card has a problem, error messages (p.481) appear.

PIN codes for the FOMA card (UIM)

You can set two PIN (Personal Identification Number) codes for the FOMA card (UIM). → p.157
PIN1 code is a 4- to 8-digit code to be entered every time a FOMA terminal is turned on to prevent any unauthorized use by third parties.

PIN2 code is a 4-to-8-digit number that is required as personal authentication for access to online services such as Internet connection and site access or for resetting total call charges.

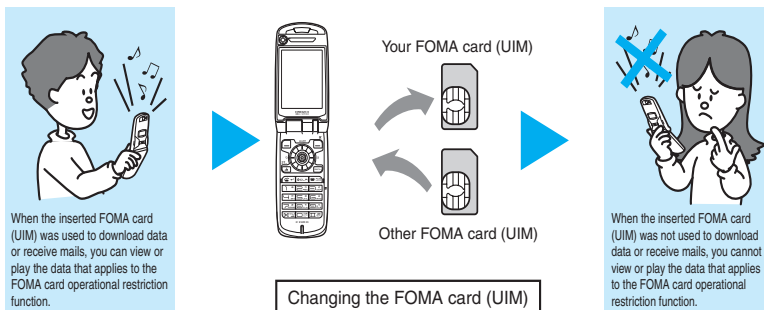
- The default setting for the PIN1 and PIN2 codes is "0000".
- You can change the PIN1 and PIN2 codes. → p.158
- When purchasing a new FOMA terminal and inserting the FOMA card (UIM) you have used into the terminal, you can still use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you have used for the FOMA card (UIM).

FOMA card operational restriction function

Your FOMA terminal incorporates the FOMA card operational restriction function to protect your data and files.

- When you download files or data from sites or receive files attached to i-mode mails, the FOMA card operational restriction function is automatically set for the files or data.
- Data and files with this function set are accessible only when the FOMA card (UIM) used for downloading such data or file is inserted.
- The data and files subject to the FOMA card operational restriction function are as follows:
 - i-oppli programs, melodies, images, Chara-den characters, PDF data and Download dictionaries/templates including images, which are downloaded from i-mode sites or websites
 - i-motion programs and Chaku-Uta-Full® downloaded from i-mode sites or websites
 - Screen memos including melodies, images, i-motion programs, Chara-den characters, Download dictionaries, templates
 - Files (melody/image) attached to i-mode mails in Inbox or pasted melodies
 - Files (melody/image)/i-motion, except for images or i-motion programs shot using a FOMA terminal) attached to i-mode mails in Outbox/Draft
 - MessageR/MessageF with attached files (melody/image)
 - Images inserted into the messages of Deco-mails
 - Record VP messages
 - Images for ToruCa (detail)
 - Music Channel program

The FOMA card (UIM) that was inserted when you downloaded or received data or files is referred to as "your FOMA card (UIM)" and another FOMA card (UIM) as "another FOMA card (UIM)" hereinafter.



NOTE

- ◆ If you replace your FOMA card (UIM) with another one, the "📱" mark is attached to data and files for which this function is set. You can no longer set them in "Display setting" or "Select ring tone".
- ◆ If data or a file with this function set is selected for "Display setting" or "Select ring tone" and your FOMA card (UIM) is removed or replaced with another one, these settings are reset to default. To restore the settings performed by you, insert your FOMA card (UIM) again.
- ◆ You can move or delete data or files with this function set even when another FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.
- ◆ Replacing your FOMA card (UIM) with another one deletes the contents such as a news received through the i-channel service.
- ◆ Data stored via the Infrared data exchange function, data transmission (OBEX) function, a miniSD memory card or Bar code reader, edited images and pictures (still images)/movies shot with the built-in camera are not subject to this function.
- ◆ Pre-installed i-oppli programs are subject to this function if they were upgraded or re-downloaded from sites after they had been deleted.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.371

- ◆ If the FOMA card operational restriction function is set, you cannot select items such as highlighted text on the i-mode mail detail screen to launch an i-appli.
- ◆ If you insert your FOMA card (UIM) to another i-channel-compatible terminal, telop text does not appear on the terminal. In addition, the contents may not be automatically updated. To receive the latest information, press  to show the channel list. The telop text will automatically appear in this case.

When exchanging the FOMA cards (UIM)

When the FOMA card (UIM) inserted into a FOMA terminal is replaced with another one, the following settings are changed:

Setting	When another FOMA card (UIM) is inserted
"Select language" (p.45)	The settings stored on the newly inserted FOMA card (UIM) are applied.
"SMS center selection" (p.290)	
"SMS validity period" (p.279)	
"PIN setting" (p.157)	
"Host selection" under "Connection setting" (p.231)	
"Caller ID setting" for Push-to-Talk (p.106)	"OFF" is set regardless of the previous settings.
"Telop display setting" for i-channel (p.324)	"ON" is set regardless of the previous settings.
"Access setting" for Full Browser (p.338)	"No" is set regardless of the previous settings.
"Cookie settings" for Full Browser (p.339)	"Invalid" is set regardless of the previous settings (Cookie information remains undeleted).
"Set program" for Music Channel (p.294)	The previous settings are invalid. Set a program again on the Music Channel screen.

FOMA card (UIM) functional differences

There are 2 types of the FOMA card (UIM). There are the following functional differences between those FOMA cards (UIM) when they are used on a FOMA terminal.

Feature	FOMA card (blue)	FOMA card (green)
Max number of digits for a phone number to be stored in the FOMA card (UIM) phonebook	20 digits max.	26 digits max.
User certificate operation to use FirstPass	Unavailable	Available
WORLD WING	Unavailable	Available
Service Numbers	Unavailable	Available

WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the FOMA international roaming service that allows you to use the same mobile phone number in overseas countries to make and receive calls by inserting the "FOMA card (green)" into the compatible FOMA terminal or overseas mobile phone (W-CDMA or GSM).

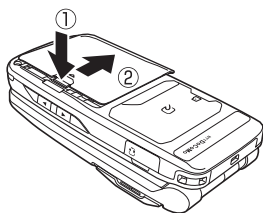
You do not need to subscribe to the WORLD WING to use the service.

- * If you subscribed to the FOMA service before August 31, 2005 but have not subscribed to the WORLD WING, you need to subscribe to the WORLD WING to use the service.
- * This service cannot be used with some billing plans.
- * In case of loss or theft of the FOMA card (green) outside Japan, contact DoCoMo immediately to cancel the service. Refer to the contact information provided on the back cover of this manual. Please note that the service subscriber is responsible for call and communication charges after loss or theft.

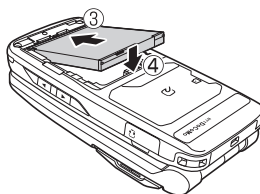
Inserting/Removing the Battery Pack

- Turn a FOMA terminal off before inserting or removing the battery pack. Hold a FOMA terminal in your hand with the terminal folded while inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM).

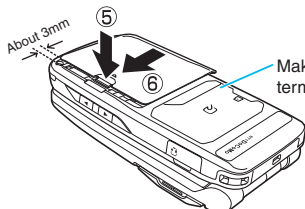
Inserting



Press the catch on the back cover in direction ① and slide the back cover in direction ② to remove it.



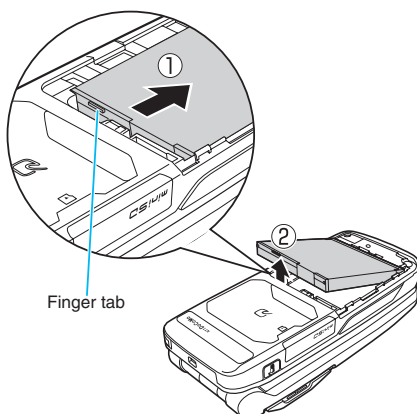
With the product name on the battery pack facing upwards, attach the battery pack in direction ③. Make sure that the metallic contacts on the battery pack and the FOMA terminal (Phone) touch, and then press the battery down in direction ④.



Make sure the back cover and the FOMA terminal (Phone) are securely attached.

Lift the back cover about 3 mm and align it to the groove in the FOMA terminal (Phone). Press the catch on the back cover in direction ⑤ and slide the back cover in direction ⑥. Then press the cover until the catch clicks shut.

Removing



Remove the back cover.
Press the tab of the battery pack in direction ① and then lift upwards in direction ②.

NOTE

- ◆ Note that using excessive force to insert the battery pack may damage the charging terminals on a FOMA terminal that connect to the battery pack.
- ◆ For details, refer to the Battery Pack N11 instructions.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.371

Getting the best out of your battery pack

Use the approved Battery Pack N11 for a FOMA terminal.

■ Battery life

- Batteries have a limited service life. Like all rechargeable batteries, the amount of usable time decreases every time the battery is recharged.
- When a fully charged battery pack only lasts half as long as when it was new, it is time to replace it with a new one.
- In general, the service life of a battery pack is about one year. It may be shortened depending on the frequency of use.



To protect the environment, take used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, the agency, the recycle shop, etc.

■ Charging

- For details, refer to the manuals for FOMA AC Adapter 01 (optional) and FOMA DC Adapter 01 (optional).
- Attach the battery pack to a FOMA terminal to charge the battery.
- You can receive calls while charging if a FOMA terminal is turned on. However, the battery level will fall during calls and the time required for charging will increase. Charging time will also increase if "Charging" in "Backlight" is set to "All time ON".
- When plugging in or out the connector, do it slowly and securely not to apply excessive force.

■ Do not charge the battery pack for a long period of time (several days) with a FOMA terminal turned on.

- If you charge the battery pack for a long period of time with a FOMA terminal turned on, power to the FOMA terminal will be supplied from the battery pack once charging ends. As a result, you will only be able to use the FOMA terminal for a short period of time and the low voltage alarm may sound immediately. In this case, recharge the battery pack correctly. Disconnect a FOMA terminal from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter and then attach it again for recharging.

■ Battery duration (The battery duration varies depending on the charging time or deterioration of the battery.)

Continuous talk time	Continuous standby time	Continuous playback time
Voice call: Approx. 150 min. Videophone call: Approx. 100 min.	Stationary: Approx. 560 hours Moving: Approx. 440 hours	Approx. 540 min.

- The continuous talk time is an estimated time you can talk while a FOMA terminal can normally send and receive radio waves.
- The continuous standby time is an estimated standby time when a folded FOMA terminal can normally receive radio waves. Note that the actual continuous talk/standby time may decrease by as much as half depending on the following conditions: the battery level, function settings, ambient environment such as temperature, the status of radio waves (out of service area or weak radio waves). Using i-mode will decrease the talk (communication) and standby times. Even when you do not talk or use i-mode, creating i-mode mails, starting up downloaded i-appli programs and the i-appli standby screen or playing music will also decrease the talk (communication) and standby times.
- The standby time (stationary) is an average standby time when a folded FOMA terminal keeps still while radio waves can be normally received.
- The standby time (moving) is an average standby time all including "stationary", "moving" and "out of service area" when a FOMA terminal is folded and radio waves can be normally received.
- Continuous playback time is a reference time when an SD-Audio data of AAC data format and 96kbps bit rate is played when a FOMA terminal is folded, the attached stereo earphone (sample) is used and the playback volume level is set to 14.
- Inserting the miniSD memory card, performing data communication or multi access or using the camera or light will also shorten the talk (communication) and standby times.

NOTE

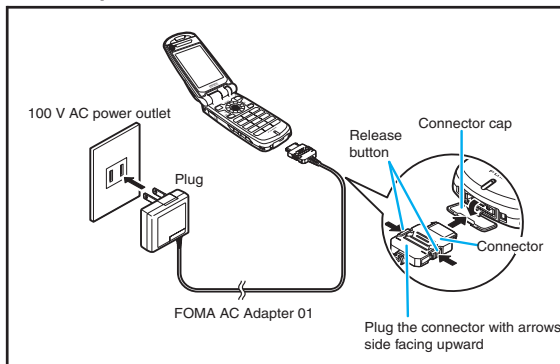
- ◆ If the battery pack is out of charge or removed, you cannot save images or movies.

Charging a FOMA Terminal

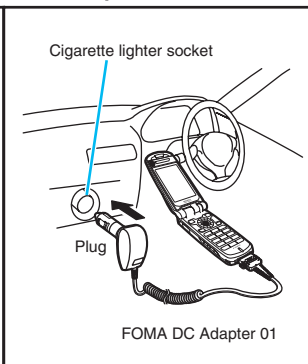
- You can charge a FOMA terminal using the AC or DC adapter (optional). You can also charge the terminal by connecting the optional AC adapter and desktop holder. For more information on charging, refer to the user's manual provided with the AC adapter or DC adapter.

Charging with the AC adapter or DC adapter

■ AC adapter



■ DC adapter



- Open the external connector cap on a FOMA terminal
- Plug the AC or DC adapter connector horizontally into the external connector on the FOMA terminal
- Plug the AC adapter into the outlet
Plug the DC adapter into the cigarette lighter socket in a car

Charging starts.

Standard charging time

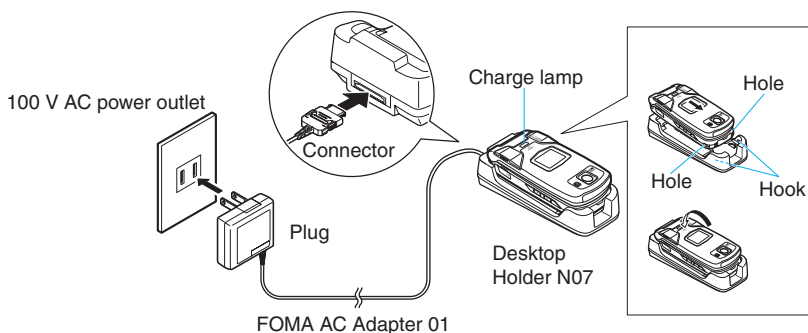
Approx. 120 min.

- After charging is completed, remove the AC or DC adapter connector horizontally from the FOMA terminal while pressing the release button
- Unplug the AC adapter from the outlet
Unplug the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket in a car
- Close the external connector cap on the FOMA terminal

NOTE

- When the charge lamp on a FOMA terminal (Phone) turns off, "Ⓜ" on the display disappears and the message "Charge unusual Stop charge" appears, disconnect a FOMA terminal from the AC adaptor or DC adaptor and remove the battery pack. Then set them again for recharging. If the same error occurs again, there may be a problem or fault on the AC adaptor or DC adaptor. Contact a NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter.
- Keep pressing the release button of the AC adapter connector when pulling it out of the external connector on a FOMA terminal. Using excessive force to pull the cord may cause malfunction.

Charging with the desktop holder



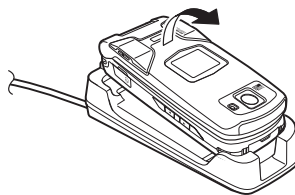
- 1 Plug the AC adapter connector horizontally into the terminal on the rear of the desktop holder in the direction as shown above**
- 2 Plug the AC adapter into a power outlet**
- 3 Place a FOMA terminal securely in the desktop holder as shown above**

Make sure that the tabs of the desktop holder are held on the cavities of the FOMA terminal so that charging can start.

Standard charging time

Approx. 120 min.

- 4 After charging is completed, lift the FOMA terminal up in the direction of the arrow holding down the desktop holder**



NOTE

- ◆ Set a FOMA terminal securely in the desktop holder. Take care not to trap the strap.
- ◆ The charge lamp lights in red while charging. The charge lamp lights red during charging. If a FOMA terminal is turned on, " " flashes while charging and " " lights when charging ends.
- ◆ If a FOMA terminal is turned on, the terminal emits the "Charge sound" when charging starts or ends. However, while "Manner mode" or "Public mode (Driving mode)" is set or when "Charge sound" is set to "OFF", the "Charge sound" does not sound.
- ◆ The AC adapter 01 is only suitable for use with 100 V AC power supplies.
- ◆ The battery pack cannot be charged separately. Always charge the battery pack while it is loaded in a FOMA terminal.
- ◆ If the battery runs out or the FOMA terminal is turned off with full data in the phonebook, etc., the battery charge lamp may not light right away, but charging has already started.
- ◆ The DC adapter must be used only for vehicles with a negative ground DC 12V or 24V. Never use it in positive-grounded vehicles.
- ◆ The DC adapter uses a 2A fuse. If the fuse (2A) blows and you need to replace it, always use a fuse with the same specifications. Fuses (2A) are consumable items and replacement fuses can be purchased at your local car accessory shop, etc.

Checking the Battery Level

The indicated battery level is reference only.

Checking with a battery level icon

When a FOMA terminal is turned on, an icon indicating the battery level automatically appears.

-  (white): Full charge
-  (white): Partial charge
-  (red): Almost empty. Recharge battery.



Checking with sound and animation

MENU71

The current battery level is informed by sound and animation.

1 "Other settings" ▶ "Battery level"

The check screen appears and beeps sound in accordance with the level. The battery level animation disappears in about three seconds.

- "3 short beeps": Full charge
- "2 short beeps": Partial charge
- "1 short beep": Almost empty. Recharge battery.

NOTE

- ◆ The beeps do not sound when "Keypad sound" is set to "OFF" or in Manner mode.

When the battery runs out

The screen as shown on the right flashes and the low voltage alarm sounds. The alarm sounds for about 10 seconds and the power is turned off in about one minute. To stop this alarm, press any keys other than  (HOME),  (MEMO/CHECK),  (ASSIST) or .



NOTE

- ◆ During a call, the Recharge battery screen above appears and 3 short beeps sound. Note that the call will be disconnected in about 20 seconds and the power will turn off in about one minute.
- ◆ While "Manner mode" is set and "Manner mode" or "Super silent" is selected for the performance in Manner mode, while "LVA tone" is set to "OFF" in "Original" or while "Public mode (Driving mode)" is set the low voltage alarm does not sound.

Turning a FOMA Terminal On/Off

- Before using a FOMA terminal for the first time (or if it has been left unused for a long period of time), charge the battery. Be sure to use the approved AC adapter (optional) or DC adapter (optional) for charging.

Turning a FOMA terminal on

- Before turning a FOMA terminal on, make sure that the FOMA card (UIM) is inserted correctly.
- When you turn on the power for the first time after purchase,  appears on the upper right of a screen.

1 (1 second or longer)

The standby screen or initial settings screen appears. If you have just loaded the battery pack or turn a FOMA terminal back on immediately after turning it off, the "WAIT A MINUTE" message may appear for a short period of time.

■ When “” appears

You are outside the FOMA service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move until the signal strength indicator e.g. “” appears. The reception levels appear as follows:



■ When PIN1 code entry set is set to “ON”

The PIN1 code entry screen appears. → p.157

■ When Auto reset total cost is set to “ON”

The PIN2 code entry screen appears.

■ If the initial settings screen appears

Perform the initial settings. → p.46



NOTE

- ◆ After replacing the FOMA card (UIM) and turning the FOMA terminal on, enter your 4- to 8-digit security code. Entering the correct security code shows the standby screen. If incorrect security codes are entered five times in a row, the FOMA terminal will be turned off. (Turn the terminal on again for retry.)

Turning a FOMA terminal off

1 (2 seconds or longer)

The shutdown screen appears and the power is turned off.

NOTE

- ◆ Signal strength is not stable when you talk on your FOMA terminal while moving. Due to the nature of digital transmissions, calls may end suddenly. Wherever possible, you should always ensure that “” is shown when using the FOMA terminal.
- ◆ After turning a FOMA terminal off, wait a few minutes before turning the FOMA terminal back on.

<Select language>

MENU15

Switching Language Mode

Default setting
Japanese

You can switch language mode between Japanese and English that is used for showing function names or messages on the display or image display.

1 “ディスプレイ”▶“バイリンガル”▶“English”

■ To change from Japanese to English

▶“English”



Japanese

■ To change from English to Japanese

▶“日本語”



English

NOTE

- ◆ When the FOMA card (UIM) is inserted, the Select language setting saved in the FOMA card (UIM) is applied.
- ◆ Selecting “English” for “Select language” gives you two options “ON” and “OFF” for “Display” under “Clock display” and for “Info notice setting”.

For some guidance messages played for callers, you can switch the language mode between Japanese and English. → p.429

<Initial setting>

Performing Initial Settings

After turning a FOMA terminal on, set “Set time”, “Change security code”, “Keypad sound”, “Neuropointer” (“Simple” only) and “PushTalk Caller ID” as initial settings.

- If you have set any of the functions, the function's setting screen does not appear.
- After Steps 1 to 6 are performed, the initial setting screen no longer appears. Even if you perform “Reset settings” after those initial settings are completed, the initial setting screens do not appear.
- When “PIN1 code entry set” is set to “ON”, the PIN1 code entry screen appears after you turn a FOMA terminal on. Enter the correct PIN1 code to show the initial setting screens.→p.158

1 Initial setting screen▶“YES”

2 Set time

Date and time are not set by default. Setting time→p.46

3 Change the security code

The default setting is “0000”. “Changing your Security Code”→p.157

4 Set the keypad sound

Keypad sound→p.132

5 Set the speed of the Neuropointer

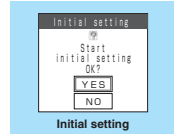
Only the “Simple” settings in “Neuropointer” can be performed. Neuropointer→p.146

6 Set whether to show your PushTalk caller ID

PushTalk Caller ID→p.106

7 Update software

A message asking whether to update software appears. Software Update→p.489



NOTE

- ◆ Even if the operation of initial settings is interrupted because a call arrives or you press or , the functions for which settings have been completed remain valid.
- ◆ You can also perform initial settings separately for each function.
- ◆ The confirmation screen to prompt software update appears even when initial settings are canceled.
- ◆ If you set PushTalk Caller ID to “ON” and then make a PTT call, all participants phone numbers are shown to all participants. Since phone numbers are important information, be careful when showing them.

<Set time>

MENU31

Setting Date and Time

Set the date and time on your FOMA terminal manually or the automatic correction of the date and time.

- The set date and time appear on the standby screen or image display, which allows you to use functions managing the date and time (e.g. “Alarm clock” and “Schedule”).
- To set the date and time in “Initial setting” (p.46), start with step 2.
- You can set the date and time between 00:00 on January 1, 2004 and 23:59 on December 31, 2037. The date and time will not be updated after 23:59 on December 31, 2037.

1 ▶▶“Clock”▶“Set time”

2 Select any item

Auto time set ON (default)	Sets the date and time automatically. Selecting “Auto time set ON” receives the time information and sets the date and time automatically.
Auto time set OFF	Sets the date and time manually. Selecting this option allows you to set a time different from the actual time.

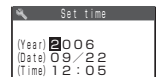
■ When “Auto time set OFF” is selected

Enter the year, month, date and time (24-hour format).

<Example: Setting September 22, 2006, 12:05>

Use to move the highlight, and then enter numbers with the dial keys.

In this example, press , , , , , , , , , , and .



NOTE

- ◆ Enter the date and time in the correct format when you manually set them.
- ◆ The built-in backup battery retains the date and time you set, which means that they are not reset even when the battery pack is exchanged. However, they may be erased if the battery pack is removed for about two weeks or longer. If you want to set "Auto time set OFF" with the battery pack which has been removed for long period of time, charge it first and then set the date and time. Charging the battery pack also charges the backup battery.

<Auto time set>

- ◆ The time is corrected in the situations below using the time information acquired from network. The time may not be automatically corrected due to poor signal reception.
 - A FOMA terminal is turned on.
 - Charging starts when the standby screen appears and another function is not running.
 - "Auto time set ON" is set.
- ◆ The time is not corrected if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted or when "FOMA ERROR" appears.
- ◆ If the "i-appli standby" screen is set, the time may not be corrected depending on the set i-appli.
- ◆ A several-second difference may occur.

<World watch>

Setting the World Clock

Default setting

Time zone: GMT+00 (City: London) Summer time: OFF

You can show the time of a city in the world instead of the Japan date and time set in "Set time". You can also set summer time, if necessary.

- Setting the world clock on the standby screen → p.148

1



▶ "Clock" ▶ "World watch" ▶ Select any item

Time zone	▶ Select the time zone Press (Change) to change the city shown in the time zone. (You cannot change the city name in some time zones.)
Summer time	▶ "ON" or "OFF" If "ON" is set, the time which is one hour ahead of "World watch" time appears.

<Caller ID Notification>

MENU 17

Showing your Phone Number to the Other Party

Default setting: OFF

Subscription: Unnecessary

Monthly charge: Free

You can show your phone number to the other party when making a call. Since your phone number is important information, be careful when showing it to others.

- You cannot perform the Caller ID Notification setting when "FOMA ERROR" appears.
- This function is only available when the other party's phone is capable of displaying caller IDs.
- If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, hang up the phone. Then set this function to "ON" and make a call again.

1



▶ "Caller ID Notification" ▶ Select any item

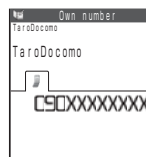
Activate/Deactivate	Network security code → p.156	
	ON	▶ Enter your network security code
	OFF	▶ Enter your network security code
Check setting	▶ Check the Caller ID Notification setting and press	

NOTE

- ◆ You can also set whether to show your caller ID when dialing a phone number or selecting a phone number from "Phonebook", "Redial" or "Received calls". → p.51
- ◆ To make a Push-to-Talk call, this function is not available. A FOMA terminal works following "Caller ID setting" under "PushTalk setting". → p.106

Checking your Phone Number

You can check your phone number (own number) stored in the FOMA card (UIM).



NOTE

- ◆ By default, only your own number is shown.
- ◆ Your personal information (name, home phone number, home address, mail address, etc.) can also be stored.
Storing and showing your personal data → p.410
- ◆ You can check your i-mode mail address by the following operation: i-mode menu "Menu" "ENGLISH" "Options" "Mail Settings" "Confirm Mail Address"

● Making/Receiving Phone Calls

■ Making phone calls

Making a Call	50
Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call	52
Making International Calls	WORLD CALL 53
Using Chaku-moji	Chaku-moji 55
Dialing a Previously Dialed Number	Redial/Dialed calls 58
Showing/Hiding your Caller ID For Individual Calls	186/184 60
Sending Push Signals Quickly	Pause dial 60
Setting Prefix Numbers	Prefix setting 61
Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls ...	Sub-address setting 62
Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection.....	Reconnect signal 62
Blocking Out Ambient Noise	Noise reduction 62
Switching to Hands-free Operation	Hands-free 63
Making Hands-free Calls in a Car	In-car Hands-free 63

■ Receiving phone calls

Receiving a Call.....	64
Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call (the Other Party)	65
Using a Dial Key to Receive Calls	Answer setting 65
Folding a FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls	Setting when folded 66
Using the Received Calls Record	Received calls 66
Adjusting the Earpiece Volume.....	Volume 69
Adjusting the Ring Volume	Ring volume 69

■ Settings for when you cannot take calls

Putting Calls on Hold When you Cannot Answer	
Immediately	Answer hold 70
Setting the Hold Tone	Set hold tone 71
Using Public Mode (Driving Mode)	Public mode (Driving mode) 71
Using Public Mode (Power off)	Public mode (power off) 73
Checking Missed Calls	Info notice setting 74
Having the Caller Leave a Message and Video...	Record message 75
Recording the Caller's Message and Video Instead of	
Answering an Incoming Call	Quick message 77
Playing/Erasing Recorded Messages and Voice Memos	77
Playing/Erasing Videophone Messages	VP message 78

Making a Call

1 Dial the other party's number, starting with the area code

The "phone number entry" screen appears.

Always start with the area code, even for calls within the same area.

Area code — Local code — Phone number

A number of up to 80 digits can be entered for making a call although the numbers disappear from the display one by one from the beginning after the number exceeds 26 digits.

■ To call a mobile phone

090 — × × × × — × × × ×
or

080 — × × × × — × × × ×

■ To call a PHS phone

070 — × × × × — × × × ×



2

The phone number disappears briefly and then reappears from the right as it is dialed.

The "☎" icon blinks during dialing and remains lit during the call.

The "in-call" screen appears.

■ To switch to a videophone call during a voice call

"Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call" → p.52

■ If you hear the busy tone

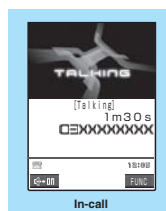
The line is busy. Press , and call again after a while.

■ If you hear a message saying that the other party cannot be reached

The other party's mobile phone or PHS phone is not switched on or is out of signal range. Press , and call again after a while.

■ If you hear a message requesting your caller ID

The other party has the Caller ID Request service switched to "Activate". Call again with your caller ID shown.



3 To end the call, press

NOTE

- ◆ You can make calls while in i-mode or sending or receiving mails.
- ◆ A Chaku-moji message up to 10 characters (including pictographs, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters) can be attached to calls to be made. The Chaku-moji message is shown on the screen of the other party's phone. → p.55
- ◆ You cannot make calls during 64K data communication, Push-to-Talk calls or videophone calls. However, if the other party uses a FOMA terminal that can change the call mode, you can change a videophone call to a voice call by selecting "Change to voice" from the function menu. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.) → p.85
- ◆ You can also send photographs taken with the built-in camera to the other party during a call (Speed photo mail) → p.250
- ◆ While you are dialing to a person of which name and phone number are stored in the phonebook, the name and icon selected for the phonebook entry appear. However, a still image does not appear even if it is stored in a phonebook entry.
- ◆ You can talk in hands-free mode during a call. → p.63
- ◆ You can make calls using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional). → p.418

Function menu (phone number entry screen)

Notify Caller ID	Select whether to show the other party your caller ID, from "ON" or "OFF". ■ To cancel "ON" or "OFF" in the "Notify Caller ID" setting ▶ "Cancel prefix" When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID Notification" (p.47) setting is applied.
Prefix numbers	▶ Select a prefix name to add "Setting Prefix Numbers" → p.61
Chaku-moji	"Making a call with a Chaku-moji message" → p.56
Int'l call	■ When "+" is prefixed (a country code is added)* ▶ Select an IDD prefix code "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■ When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added) ▶ Select a country code ▶ Select an IDD prefix code The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → p.54
Multi Number	"Multi Number" → p.431
Add to phonebook	"Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → p.111 "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" → p.112
Compose message	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.247
Connection speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".
Select image	Sets an image to send during a videophone call. → p.89 Selecting "Release settings" cancels the setting of "Me" or "Chara-den".

* : "Int'l call" is unavailable when "+81" is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).

Function menu (in-call screen)

Speed photo mail	"Sending the still image shot in talking" → p.250
Disp photo mail	Shows the received speed photo mail.
Check new messages	Checks for new i-mode messages. → pp.234, 261

If you entered a wrong number

■ To insert a number

Use  and move the cursor to the number to the left of the position where you want to insert the number.

■ To delete a number

Use  and move the cursor to the number you want to delete. Then press .

Press  for 1 second or longer to delete all the numbers to the left of the cursor and the number in the cursor position.

■ To reenter a number

Move the cursor to the beginning or end of the number and press  for 1 second or longer to return to the standby screen.

Putting an ongoing call on hold <Holding>

1 During a call

The other party hears the on-hold tone.

■ To end the held call



■ If the held party hangs up

The call ends.

2 Press , or to resume the call



NOTE

- ◆ Call charges still apply while a call is on hold.
- ◆ Use “Set hold tone” to select the tone that sounds while a call is on hold.
- ◆ A hold tone also sounds on your FOMA terminal while a call is on hold. However, the hold tone does not sound when “Phone” in “Ring volume” is set to “Silent” or Manner mode is set. (The tone sounds if you have selected the “Original” manner mode in which the “Phone vol.” setting is not “Silent”.)

Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call

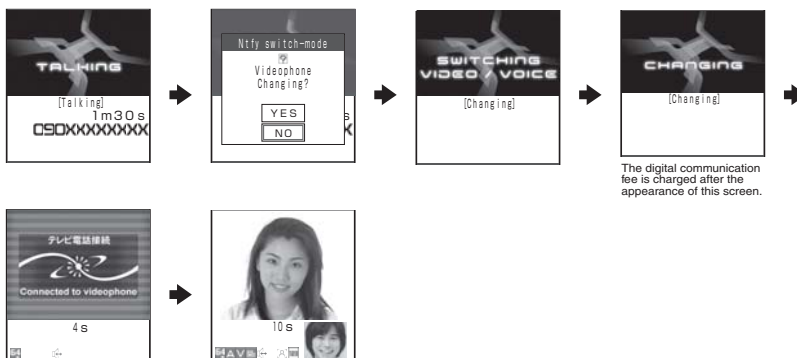
You can change the call mode during a voice call you dialed.

- ◆ If the other party uses a FOMA terminal that can change the call mode, “ V phone” appears during a voice call and you can switch the call mode between voice and videophone. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.)
- ◆ You can only change the call mode when you are the caller. When you are a callee, you cannot change the call mode.
- ◆ To change the call mode, the other party must set his or her terminal to show you “Ntfy switch-mode” beforehand. → p.92

1 In-call screen () ▶ “YES”

While a voice call is being changed to videophone call, the screen showing that the call mode is being changed appears and the voice guidance is given.

Select “NO” on the “Ntfy switch-mode” message screen to return to the in-call screen.



The digital communication fee is charged after the appearance of this screen.

NOTE

- ◆ You can repeatedly change the call mode between voice and videophone.
- ◆ You can change a videophone call to a voice call. → p.85
- ◆ It takes about 5 seconds to change a call. Signal quality may affect how long it takes.
- ◆ You cannot change the call mode between videophone and voice while talking in the following cases:
 - “Call Waiting” is running.
 - The other party is holding a call.
 - The other party has activated Record message.
- ◆ The call time shown is reset to 0 second each time the call mode is changed. However, if a videophone call ends after the call mode is changed, the call time shown indicates the total of the voice call and videophone call.
- ◆ If you try to change the call mode, the message appears on the other party's videophone screen asking to select an image to send, camera image or substitute image. → p.65
- ◆ If the call mode is changed, the first dialed number is registered to the Redial/Dialed calls record. The first received number is registered to the Received calls record.
- ◆ If the caller is using packet communication (including i-mode), the packet communication is canceled to change to a videophone call.
- ◆ If the other party is using packet communication (including i-mode), you receive the message “No switch” meaning you cannot change the call mode. The voice call continues.
- ◆ Depending on the other party's communication conditions such as manipulation or the signal quality, you may not be able to change the call mode and the call may be canceled.
- ◆ You are not charged while “SWITCHING VIDEO/VOICE” appears.
- ◆ If you have changed the call mode, the call charge shown in “Call data” may differ from the one you will pay.
- ◆ The hands-free operation is activated or deactivated according to the “Hands-free switch” setting when the call mode is changed, regardless of the hands-free status before the change. → p.90

<WORLD CALL>

Making International Calls

Subscription: Not required

Monthly charge: Free

WORLD CALL is an international dialing service available for DoCoMo mobile phones.

FOMA service subscribers are also subscribed to "WORLD CALL" (excluding those who indicated that they did not require the service).

* This service is unavailable with some billing plans.

- WORLD CALL is available for calls to around 220 countries and regions worldwide.
- The WORLD CALL is included in the bill for your monthly call charges.
- In addition to dialing a phone number, you can make an international call by adding "+" or selecting "Int'l call" or "Prefix numbers" from the function menu on the phone number entry, Redial/Dialed calls, Received calls or phonebook detail screen.

Changes to the international dialing procedure

Because communication from mobile devices such as mobile phones is not covered by the "MYLINE" service, this service cannot be used to access WORLD CALL. However, with the introduction of the "MYLINE" service, the procedure used to make international calls from a mobile phone has changed. Note that the conventional dialing procedure (the one described below with "010" removed) can no longer be used.

For additional information regarding WORLD CALL, refer to the contact information provided on the back cover of this manual.

"International videophone calls" can be made to users of some specific overseas 3G mobile terminals by pressing  () to make the call after following the dialing procedure below.

- See the DoCoMo website for information on accessible countries and carriers.
- Depending on the type of phone used by the other party, the other party's image shown on your FOMA terminal may be distorted during an international videophone call or the connection may fail.

Dialing to make international calls

- 1 Dial a number in the following order: 009130 → 010 → (country code) → (area code) → (the other party's phone number)**

If the area code begins with a zero (0), omit the zero. However, when you call some countries or regions such as Italy, "0" may be required.

- 2 **

An international call is made.

- 3 To end the call, press **

Using "+" to make an international call

Using the "+" prefix allows you to make international calls without having to dial the international access code (e.g. 009130-010).

- "Auto assist setting" in "Int'l dial settings" is set to "Auto" at the time of purchase so that a FOMA terminal automatically dials the IDD prefix code.

- 1 On the standby screen, dial the following: +  (1 second or longer) → (country code) → (area code) → (other party's phone number)**

If the area code begins with a zero (0), omit the zero. However, when you call some countries or regions such as Italy, "0" may be required.

- 2  ▶ "Dial"**

An international call is made.

■ **To make a call without converting "+" into the IDD prefix code**

▶ "Original phone No."

*: This function is unavailable for your FOMA terminal.

■ **To cancel a call**

▶ "Cancel"

Making an international call with an easy operation <Int'l dial settings>

Default setting	Auto assist setting: Auto IDD Prefix setting: WORLD CALL (009130010) Country Code setting: アメリカ (Country code: 1)

You can change the settings for dialing international calls or store new country codes. You can set the following:

Setting	Description
Auto assist setting	When you make an international call from Japan, the entered “+” is automatically replaced with the IDD prefix code set in this function.
IDD Prefix setting	Stores the international access names and IDD prefix codes used when you make international calls.
Country Code setting	Stores the country names and country codes used when you make international calls.

● Adding “+” automatically

Set this function to add “+” automatically when making international calls.

- 1   ▶ “Dialing” ▶ “Int’l dial settings”
- 2 “Auto assist setting” ▶ “Auto”
■ To not add “+”
▶ “OFF”

- 3 Select a country name
- 4 Select an international access name

● Storing the IDD prefix code

You can store up to 3 IDD prefix codes, each of 10 digits max.

- 1   ▶ “Dialing” ▶ “Int’l dial settings”
- 2 “IDD Prefix setting”
The “IDD Prefix setting” screen appears.
- 3 Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press  (Edit)
■ To edit a stored item
▶ Highlight an item to edit and press  (Edit)
- 4 Enter an international access name
- 5 Enter the IDD prefix code



Function menu▶p.54

Function menu (IDD Prefix setting screen)

Edit	Edits the IDD prefix code.
Delete this	Deletes the IDD prefix code.
Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all the stored IDD prefix codes.

NOTE

◆ You cannot delete the IDD prefix code selected in “Auto assist setting”. When “Auto” is set in “Auto assist setting”, you cannot perform “Delete all”.

● Storing a country code

You can store up to 3 country codes, each of 5 digits max.

- 1   ▶ “Dialing” ▶ “Int’l dial settings”

2 “Country Code setting”

The “Country Code setting” screen appears.

3 Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit)

■ To edit a stored item

▶ Highlight an item to edit and press  (Edit)

4 Enter a country name

5 Enter the country code

See the DoCoMo website for information on country codes.



Function menu (Country Code setting screen)

Edit	Edits a country code.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted country code setting.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the stored country code settings.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot delete the country code set in “Auto assist setting”. When “Auto” is set in “Auto assist setting”, you cannot perform “Delete all”.

<Chaku-moji>

Using Chaku-moji

Default setting

MSG display settings: Calls with Caller ID 3D message display: ON

When making a voice or videophone call, you can send a message (Chaku-moji) that will be shown on the other party's phone while it is ringing, enabling you to show the other party the summary of the call, etc. beforehand.

- A Chaku-moji message can contain up to 10 characters including pictographs, face symbols, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters.
- Charges apply to sending of Chaku-moji messages. They are not applied to the receiver.
- This function is supported by the 902iS series, SH902iSL and SH702iS.
- Push-to-Talk function does not support Chaku-moji.

Editing or setting Chaku-moji messages

1 “Chaku-moji” ▶ Select any item

Create message	“Adding Chaku-moji messages to use frequently” → p.56	
MSG display settings	Sets the type of Chaku-moji message to be displayed when it arrives.	
	Display all messages	Displays all Chaku-moji messages.
	Only number in PH-book	Displays only the Chaku-moji messages from senders stored in the phonebook.
	Calls with Caller ID	Displays only the Chaku-moji messages from senders showing the caller ID.
	Hide all messages	Hides all Chaku-moji messages.
3D message display	Sets whether to display Chaku-moji with 3D animation.	

NOTE

- ◆ The “MSG display settings” setting affects the displays on the image display. However, setting “OFF” for “Called” in “Image display” does not show Chaku-moji messages on the image display.
- ◆ 3D animations are not used for the image display even if “3D message display” is set to “ON”.

● Adding Chaku-moji messages to use frequently

Adding Chaku-moji messages to be used frequently enables you to easily attach them to calls to make.

- 5 messages are pre-installed and you can edit them.
- Up to 30 messages (including 5 pre-installed) can be added.

1 “Chaku-moji” “Create message”

The “Create message” screen appears.

2 Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit)

■ To edit a stored Chaku-moji message

▶ Highlight an item to edit and press  (Edit)

3 Enter a Chaku-moji message



NOTE

- ◆ Highlighting “<Not recorded>” and press  on the Create message screen also allows you to add a Chaku-moji message.

Function menu (Create message screen)

Edit	Edits a Chaku-moji message.	
Delete	Delete this	Deletes the highlighted Chaku-moji message.
	Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox  ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple Chaku-moji messages.
	Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all Chaku-moji messages.

NOTE

- ◆ If  (Set) is pressed without any changes as editing a pre-installed Chaku-moji message, the pre-installed one will remain.
- ◆ Pre-installed Chaku-moji messages cannot be deleted. If a pre-installed message is edited and deleted, it will be restored to the pre-installed one.

Making a call with a Chaku-moji message

Chaku-moji messages can be added to voice calls or videophone calls that are made by dialing or using “Phonebook” entries, “Received calls”, “Dialed calls” or “Redial” record.

<Example: Adding a Chaku-moji message on the phone number entry screen to make a call>

1 Phone number entry screen (p.50) (FUNC) “Chaku-moji” ▶ Select any item

Create message	Enters a Chaku-moji message. A message can contain up to 10 characters including pictographs, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters.
Select message	Selects a stored Chaku-moji message. To edit the Chaku-moji message, press  (Edit) on the Select message screen.
Sent messages	Selects a sent Chaku-moji message. To edit the Chaku-moji message, press  (Edit) on the Sent messages screen.

2

When the other party's terminal receives a Chaku-moji message, “Transmission completed” appears on your terminal, resulting in charges to the sending.



■ To make a videophone call with a Chaku-moji message



■ To delete the entered Chaku-moji message (to make a call without the message)

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Chaku-moji” ▶ “Create message” ▶ Delete all the entered Chaku-moji characters and press (O)

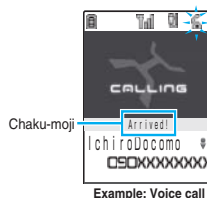
NOTE

- ◆ Up to 30 sent messages can be stored in the Sent messages record. If the same message is sent twice or more, the latest one is stored. When the number of sent messages exceeds the maximum, they are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- ◆ If the callee's phone is under conditions such as the following, Chaku-moji messages cannot be sent, “Transmission failed” appears and no charges apply to the sending. (The Chaku-moji messages are not logged in the Received calls record of the callee's phone.)
 - The phone does not support Chaku-moji.
 - The phone is set to hide Chaku-moji messages by “MSG display settings”.
- ◆ If the callee's phone is under conditions such as the following, Chaku-moji messages cannot be sent, no sending result appears and no charges apply to the sending.
 - Public mode (Driving mode) is set.
 - The ring time for Record message is set to 0 seconds.
 - The phone is out of service area or turned off.
- ◆ Depending on the signal status, no sending result appears even if a Chaku-moji message reaches the callee's phone. If this is the case, charges apply to the sending.
- ◆ If “Auto redial as voice” (p.88) is set to “ON” and you cannot make a videophone call with a Chaku-moji message, the phone automatically redials the call with the message after switching the call mode to voice.
- ◆ If you edit a Chaku-moji message by using “Select message”, the edited message is available only once. The message is not listed in the “Create message” screen.
- ◆ Chaku-moji cannot be sent overseas.

● If a voice or videophone call with a Chaku-moji message arrives

The receiving screen shows the Chaku-moji message. When you answer the call, the message disappears.

- The Chaku-moji message delivered with a call plays 3D animation.
- Chaku-moji messages are shown on the image display when a FOMA terminal is folded.



NOTE

- ◆ 3D animations may be unavailable for some pictographs.
- ◆ Even if a call with a Chaku-moji message arrives, the message may not appear depending on the status of caller's or callee's phone. When this happens, the message is not logged in the Received calls record.
- ◆ If you receive a call whose ring time is shorter than the time specified in “Set mute seconds” in “Ring time(sec.)”, the Chaku-moji message attached to the call appears. The message is logged in the Received calls record and the charges apply to the caller.

● Displaying Chaku-moji messages in the Received calls record

Chaku-moji messages are stored in the Received calls record.

1

Received calls screen (list) (p.67) ▶ Select an entry with “✎”

The “Received calls (details)” screen appears, allowing you to check the Chaku-moji message.

NOTE

- ◆ If you use the Received calls record to make a call, the Chaku-moji message stored in the record entry is not sent.

<Redial/Dialed calls>

Dialing a Previously Dialed Number

Information such as phone number, date and time you called is recorded as the Redial/Dialed calls record.

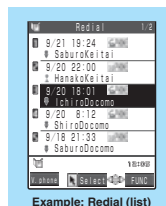
- The Redial record can hold up to 30 phone numbers for voice calls, videophone calls and Push-to-Talk calls entries. The Dialed calls record can hold up to 30 voice call, videophone call and Push-to-Talk call entries and up to 30 packet communication and 64K data communication entries.
- If you dial to the same phone number twice or more, only the latest call is recorded in the Redial record while all the calls are recorded in the Dialed calls record.
- When the number of Redial/Dialed calls record entries exceeds the maximum, existing entries are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- You cannot view the Redial/Dialed calls record during videophone calls.
- Redial/Dialed/Received calls records of Push-to-Talk calls → p.100

1 On the standby screen

The “Redial (list)” screen appears.

■ To view the Dialed calls record

- ▶ On the standby screen   “Dialed calls”
The “Dialed calls (list)” screen appears.



Example: Redial (list)

Function menu ▶ p.59

2 Select a Redial or Dialed calls record entry to check

The “Redial (details)” screen or “Dialed calls (details)” screen appears. In the top right corner of the screen, the “Current/Total entries” is shown. The lower the number, the more recently the phone number was called.

■ To check the earlier or later Redial/Dialed call record entries

Use  to move to the previous (more recent) number or  to move to the next (older) number.

■ For a phone number stored in the phonebook

The name stored in the phonebook also appears.



Example: Redial (details)

Function menu ▶ p.59

3 or

■ To make a videophone call

- ▶  (V. phone)

■ To make a Push-to-Talk call

- ▶ 

4 To end the call, press

NOTE

- ◆ Turning a FOMA terminal off does not delete the Redial or Dialed calls record entries. To prevent others from seeing the phone numbers you have called, delete the respective entries of the Redial or Dialed calls record, or set “Redial/Dialed calls” in “Record display set” to “OFF”.
- ◆ Press  and  on the standby screen to make a voice call to the most recent Redial record entry.
- ◆ Selecting “Multi Number” from the function menu to make a call shows the item selected when making the call (“Basic Number” or register name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) on the Redial (detail) screen or Dialed calls record (detail) screen.
- ◆ Setting “Keypad dial lock” or “Restrict dialing” erases all the Redial or Dialed calls record entries. The calls made subsequently are logged in the Redial or Dialed calls record.
- ◆ Phone numbers you have called are also stored in the “Dialed calls” record. Even when twice or more calls are made to the same number, history is recorded as a separate entry in the “Dialed calls” record.
- ◆ The Redial record of Push-to-Talk calls (group) is updated only if you select the same members from the Redial/Dialed calls record to make a call. If at least one member is changed, the call is logged as another record entry.

Function menu (Redial/Dialed calls screen)

- The function menus of Redial/Dialed calls screen are the same between the list and the details.

Notify Caller ID ^{*1}	Select whether to show the other party your caller ID, from "ON" or "OFF". ■ To cancel "ON" or "OFF" in the "Notify Caller ID" setting ▶ "Cancel prefix" When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID Notification" (p.47) setting is applied.						
Prefix numbers ^{*1}	▶ Select a prefix name to add "Setting Prefix Numbers" → p.61						
Chaku-moji ^{*1}	"Making a call with a Chaku-moji message" → p.56						
Int'l call ^{*1}	■ When "+" is prefixed (a country code is added) ^{*2} ▶ Select an IDD prefix code "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■ When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added) ▶ Select a country code ▶ Select an IDD prefix code The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → p.54						
Multi Number ^{*1}	"Multi Number" → p.431						
Select PushTalk	Selects members from the Redial/Dialed calls record of Push-to-Talk (group) calls to make a Push-to-Talk call. → p.100						
Add to phonebook	"Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records" → p.113						
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.149						
Compose message	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.247						
Compose SMS	"Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)" → p.288						
Sent address	Shows the sent address list.						
Delete	Deletes the Redial or Dialed calls record entries.						
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Delete this</td><td>Deletes the highlighted Redial or Dialed Calls record entry.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Delete selected</td><td> ▶ Use to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes the multiple Redial or Dialed calls record entries. </td></tr> <tr> <td>Delete all</td><td> ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the Redial and Dialed calls records entries. </td></tr> </table>	Delete this	Deletes the highlighted Redial or Dialed Calls record entry.	Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes the multiple Redial or Dialed calls record entries.	Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the Redial and Dialed calls records entries.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted Redial or Dialed Calls record entry.						
Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes the multiple Redial or Dialed calls record entries.						
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the Redial and Dialed calls records entries.						
Connection speed ^{*1}	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".						
Select image	Sets an image to send during a videophone call. → p.89 Selecting "Release settings" cancels the setting of "My side" or "Chara-den".						

*1 : Only available for the details screen.

*2 : "Int'l call" is unavailable when "+81" is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).

NOTE

- ◆ Selecting "Compose message" enables you to compose a mail with the mail address stored in the phonebook with the phone number. When multiple mail addresses are stored in the phonebook entry, the first address is specified as the address.
- ◆ "Delete all" deletes all the entries on the both Redial and Dialed calls records. Note that "Delete this" or "Delete selected" does not remove any entry of the Dialed calls record or the Redial record in the Redial record or the Dialed calls record, respectively, leaving the record entries. To delete the Dialed calls record entries or the Redial record entries, delete them using the function menu on the Dialed calls screen or the Redial screen, respectively.

■ Redial/Dialed calls icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Voice call		International videophone call
	International call		Packet communication call
	Videophone call		64K data communications call
	Push-to-Talk (one-to-one) call		Push-to-Talk (group) call

<186/184>

Showing/Hiding your Caller ID For Individual Calls

If the other party's phone supports caller ID display, you can show your phone number (caller ID) on the other party's phone (display) when making a voice or videophone call. Since your caller ID is important information, be careful when disclosing it.

- "PushTalk setting" is available for setting whether to show your caller ID when making Push-to-Talk calls. → p.106

Function	Description	Refer to
Caller ID Notification	Sets whether to show your caller ID when making a call.	p.47
184/186	Uses the 184 and 186 prefixes to specify whether to show your caller ID every time you make a call.	p.60
Notify Caller ID	Accesses the function menu to specify whether to show your caller ID every time you make a call.	p.51

Adding the 186/184 prefix to the other party's phone number

To show your caller ID each time you make a call, add the "186" prefix to the phone number to dial. To hide your caller ID, use the "184" prefix.

- Dialing with the "186" or "184" prefix is disabled for international calls. To make them, select "Notify Caller ID" from the function menu. → p.51

■ To show your phone number

Voice calls: 186 - (the other party's phone number) - 

Videophone calls: 186 - (the other party's phone number) - 

■ To hide your phone number

Voice calls: 184 - (the other party's phone number) - 

Videophone calls: 184 - (the other party's phone number) - 

NOTE

- ◆ If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, dial the number again using the "186" prefix.
- ◆ If you make a call with "186" or "184", the phone number including this prefix is logged in the Redial or Dialed calls record.

<Pause dial>

MENU84

Sending Push Signals Quickly

Sending push signals from your FOMA terminal enables you to send messages to QUICKCAST* or to use services such as ticket ordering and bank balance requests.

Storing dialing data in Pause dial

You can store dialing data to send as push signals beforehand into Pause dial. Inserting a pause (p) into the dialing data allows you to send data with a separation where a pause lies.

- You can store one dialing data entry, consisting of up to 128 characters.
- Dialing data can contain numbers from 0 to 9, the # and * symbols, and pauses (p).
- You cannot enter pauses (p) in succession or at the beginning of the dialing data.

1 "Dialing" "Pause dial"

The "Pause dial" screen appears.

■ If there is dialing data already stored

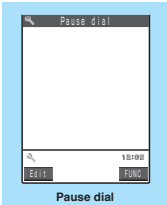
The stored dialing data appears.

2 (Edit) Enter the dialing data

Press   to   and   to enter dialing data.

■ To enter a pause (p)

  (1 second or longer)



Pause dial
 Function menu▶p.61

Function menu (Pause dial screen)

Edit	▶Edit the dialing data
Send pause dial	▶Enter the destination phone number▶  or  Each time you press  or  , the dialing data up to a pause (p) is transmitted.
Delete	Deletes the stored dialing data.

Transmitting dialing data as pause dial

1 ▶▶“Dialing”▶“Pause dial”2 ▶Dial the destination phone number

■ To enter a phone number by searching the phonebook using part of the number

▶Dial a part of the phone number▶Use  to search the phonebook

■ To enter a phone number by searching the phonebook using a search mode other than the phone number

▶▶Select a search mode on the search phonebook screen

■ To enter a number by searching the Received calls/Redial record

▶▶Search the number from the Received calls record or press  to search from the Redial record3 or

The FOMA terminal calls the entered phone number and shows the dialing data up to the first pause (p) while the dialed phone is ringing. The pause (p) is not shown.

4 or Each time you press  or , the dialing data up to a pause (p) is transmitted. Once the FOMA terminal has finished sending the last number, the in-call screen reappears.

■ To transmit all the dialing data at once

▶ (1 second or longer)▶“Send at one time”

It may not be possible to send all data at once to some recipients.

NOTE

- ◆ Some phones may be unable to receive push signals.
- ◆ Open the Pause dial screen during a voice call to transmit the dialing data to the other party.
- ◆ You cannot send push signals during a videophone call.

<Prefix setting>

Setting Prefix Numbers

Default setting
WORLD CALL (009130010)

Set prefixes to use frequently in advance. You can then add a preset prefix to the beginning of a phone number when making a call by dialing, using the phonebook, “Received calls”, “Dialed calls” or “Redial” record. For example, it is useful to set “186” or “184” prefix.

- You can store up to 7 prefix numbers.
- Preset prefixes can include numbers from 0 to 9, #, * and +.

1 ▶▶“Dialing”▶“Prefix setting”

The “Prefix setting” screen appears.

2 Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit)

■ To edit a stored prefix

▶Highlight an item to edit and press  (Edit)

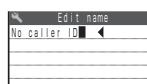
■ To check a stored prefix

▶Select an item to check

Prefix setting
Function menu▶p.62

3 Enter a name

A name can consist of up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters.



4 Enter the numbers (prefix)

Numbers can consist of up to 10 digits.

Prefix numbers	
186	◀

Function menu (Prefix setting screen)

Edit	Edits a prefix.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted prefix.
Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all prefixes.

<Sub-address setting>

Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls

Default setting
ON

This function enables you to set “X” contained in a phone number as a separator so that numbers following “X” are recognized as a sub-address. Sub-addresses are available in ISDN to identify calls made from specific communication devices or to select contents in “V-live”.

1 ▶▶“Dialing”▶“Sub-address setting”▶“ON”

■ To cancel the sub-address setting

▶“OFF”

NOTE

◆ In the following cases, “X” does not function as a sub-address separator. A number including “X” is recognized as an ordinary phone number.

- “X” is at the beginning of a phone number.
- “186/184” is followed by “X” at the beginning of a phone number.
- “X” follows the number entered in “Prefix numbers”.
- “X590#/X591#/X592#” is included in a phone number.

<Reconnect signal>

MENU77

Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection

Default setting
High tone

When the signal quality deteriorates during a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call to the extent that the call drops out, the FOMA terminal will automatically reconnect the call if the signal quality quickly improves. This function allows you to set the type of alarm given when a call is being reconnected.

● The time needed for reconnection varies depending on communication conditions such as manipulation or signal quality. It may roughly take about 10 seconds.

1 ▶▶“Talk”▶“Reconnect signal”▶“No tone”, “High tone” or “Low tone”

NOTE

- ◆ A call may drop out without an alarm if signal quality worsens very quickly.
- ◆ Call charges apply in the interval (up to roughly 10 seconds) prior to reconnection.
- ◆ The other party hears no sound while the signal is lost.

<Noise reduction>

MENU76

Blocking Out Ambient Noise

Default setting
ON

Noise reduction is a function that suppresses ambient noise. This makes it easier for the other party in a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call to hear you when you are in a noisy location.

1 ▶▶“Talk”▶“Noise reduction”▶“ON”

■ To not use the noise reduction

▶“OFF”

<Hands-free>

Switching to Hands-free Operation

Switching to the hands-free operation during a call

Switching to the hands-free operation during a call enables you to hear the other party's voice through a speaker.

1 In-call screen (p.50) ▶

When a voice or Push-to-Talk call arrives, press  while a FOMA terminal is ringing to switch to the hands-free operation.

"" appears and you can hear other party's voice through a speaker during a hands-free call.

■ To cancel the hands-free operation

▶ Press  during a hands-free call

The hands-free operation ends, and "" disappears during a voice or Push-to-Talk call or "" changes to " during a videophone call.



Example: Voice call

● Notes on using the hands-free operation

It is recommended to keep a distance of about 30cm from a FOMA terminal during a hands-free call. If the distance is longer or shorter than 30cm, the other party may find it difficult to listen to you or voices may sound differently.

NOTE

- ◆ The other party's voice may be heard by those around you during a hands-free call. Move to an area where your call will not disturb other people before switching to a hands-free call.
- ◆ Ending a call cancels the hands-free setting.

<In-car Hands-free>

Making Hands-free Calls in a Car

By connecting your FOMA terminal to a hands-free device such as "In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01" (optional) or car navigation system, you can make or receive voice calls, etc. with the hands-free device.

For information on how to use a hands-free device, refer to the instructions provided with the device. Note that FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional) must be used with In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional).

NOTE

- ◆ To operate from a hands-free device, set USB mode setting to "Communication mode". →p.380
- ◆ The display and ring tones for incoming calls and mails work according to the FOMA terminal settings.
- ◆ If a FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that the sound is emitted from the hands-free device, the ring tone still sounds through the hands-free device for incoming mails or voice, videophone and Push-to-Talk calls even when Manner mode is set or the ring volume is set to "Silent".
- ◆ When Public mode (Driving mode) is set, the FOMA terminal works for incoming calls and messages as specified in the "Public mode (Driving mode)" settings.
- ◆ When Record message is set, the FOMA terminal works for incoming calls and mails as specified in the "Record message" settings.
- ◆ If you make a videophone call from a hands-free device using the phonebook or Redial record, the connection speed set in the hands-free device is applied. If no connection speed is set, "64K" is used.
- ◆ While a FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that sound is emitted from the FOMA terminal, "Setting when folded" is applied to the operation performed when the FOMA terminal is folded. If the hands-free device is set to emit sound and the FOMA terminal is folded, the call condition does not change regardless of "Setting when folded".

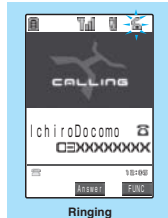
Receiving a Call

1 When a call arrives, press or

When a call arrives, a FOMA terminal rings, the incoming call lamp flashes and the “ringing” screen appears. Unless “Phone” under “Vibrator” is set to “OFF”, the FOMA terminal also vibrates to notify you of the call. The image display also notifies you of the call by displaying the caller’s name. → p.30

■ If a call with a Chaku-moji message arrives

A Chaku-moji animation appears on the screen. You may know the contents beforehand. → p.55



Function menu → p.64



Ringing (with Chaku-moji)

2 To end the call, press

Function menu (ringing screen)

Call Rejection	Ends a call without answering it.
Call Forwarding	Forwards a call. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the “Call Forwarding” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”. “Call Forwarding Service” → p.427
Voice Mail	Connects the caller to the Voice Mail service center. The caller is connected to the service center regardless of whether the “Voice Mail” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”. “Voice Mail Service” → p.424
Change Display	Changes the display from Additional Number 1 or 2 to the number from which the call is forwarded. This setting is available when Multi Number (Additional Number 1 or 2) and Call Forwarding are activated for receiving calls. “Multi Number” → p.431

NOTE

- ◆ Besides  and , you can set up your FOMA terminal so that you can also answer calls by pressing any of , , , , , , (HOME) or (ASSIST) (Any key answer). However, pressing (HOME) or (ASSIST) while the FOMA terminal is folded puts the call on hold. A hold tone sounds when “Setting when folded” is set to “Tone on” and does not sound when it is set to “No tone” or “End the call”. You can also set a FOMA terminal so that pressing a key stops only the ring tone (Quick silent).
- ◆ Pressing  or (MEMO/CHECK) while a FOMA terminal is ringing activates Record message to record the other party’s message. (Pressing  also sets Manner mode.) → p.77
- ◆ When a call with the caller ID shown arrives from a caller stored in the phonebook, a FOMA terminal shows the caller’s phone number and name. If there is an image stored in the phonebook entry, the image also appears. However, if the caller’s entry is stored as secret data, the name and image are hidden and only the phone number is shown. If a caller does not show the caller ID, the reason for not showing the ID is displayed (caller ID hidden).
- ◆ If multiple phonebook entries with different names contain the same phone number and you receive a call from the number, the name retrieved by the phonebook search in the order of readings appears. → p.116
- ◆ Up to 30 received calls can be stored in the “Received calls” record. If a caller shows the caller ID, the caller’s phone number appears. If a caller who shows the caller ID is stored in the phonebook, the caller’s name and phone number appear.
- ◆ Enabling “Set in-call arrival” and setting “In-call arrival act” to “Answer” allow a FOMA terminal to make a short double-beep (“bibip”) when an incoming call arrives while you are on a call. When this happens, you can then do one of the following:
 - If you have subscribed to the “Voice Mail” service, you can forward the new call to the Voice Mail service center.
 - If you have subscribed to the “Call Forwarding” service, you can forward the new call to the call forwarding number.
 Furthermore, if you subscribe to the “Call Waiting”, set “In-call arrival act” to “Answer” and then activate “Call Waiting”, you can put the current call on hold and answer a new call. See p.426 for details.
- ◆ When “PushTalk arrival act” (p.106) is set to “Answer”, you can receive calls while talking on a Push-to-Talk call.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when “Public mode (Driving mode)” is set. Received calls are logged in the Received calls record as missed calls.
- ◆ You can reject calls from numbers not stored in your phonebook. → p.175
- ◆ You can specify the mute time until a FOMA terminal starts ringing for calls from numbers not stored in the phonebook. → p.175

- ◆ You cannot receive calls from phone numbers for which “Call rejection” is set in the phonebook. When setting “Call acceptance” for a phone number in the phonebook, you can only receive calls from the number. → p.172
- ◆ You can talk in hands-free mode during a call. → p.63

Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call (the Other Party)

A voice call you received is changed to a videophone call if the call mode is changed on the other party's phone.

- You can only change the call mode when you are the caller. When you receive a call, you cannot change the call mode. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.)
- To enable a caller to change the call mode, “Ntfy switch-mode” must be set to “Indication ON” on the caller's phone beforehand. → p.92

1 In-call screen (p.50) ▶ The other party changes the call mode ▶ “YES”

While a voice call is being changed to videophone call, the screen showing that the call mode is being changed appears and the voice guidance is given.

The call changes to the videophone call and camera image is sent to the caller.

■ To send the substitute image to the caller

▶ “NO”

The specified substitute image is sent to the caller.



NOTE

- ◆ Whether to activate the hands-free operation when the call mode is changed depends on the “Hands-free switch” setting, regardless of the hands-free status before the mode change. → p.90

<Answer setting>

MENU58

Using a Dial Key to Receive Calls

Default setting
Any key answer

This setting enables you to quickly turn off a ring tone or answer the call when you receive a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call. This is useful when you receive a call in a place where a ring tone may disturb people around you.

1 [MENU] ▶ [Answer setting] ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Answer setting” ▶ Select any item

Any key answer	When a voice call arrives, pressing not only [END] or [CALL] but also any of [POWER] to [SILENT], [MUTE], [CALL], [END], [HOME] and [ASSIST] enables you to answer the call quickly. Pressing [HOME] or [ASSIST] with the FOMA terminal folded puts the call on hold. This does not apply for videophone calls. When a Push-to-Talk call arrives, pressing not only [PTT], [END] or [CALL] but also any of [POWER] to [SILENT], [MUTE], [CALL], [HOME] and [ASSIST] enables you to answer the call quickly.
Quick silent	When a voice or videophone call arrives, pressing any of [POWER] to [SILENT], [MUTE], [CALL], [END], [HOME] and [ASSIST] or opening the FOMA terminal stops the ring tone or vibrator. When you stop the ring tone in this way, the caller continues to hear the ring tone. When a voice call arrives, pressing [END] also stops the ring tone and vibrator. Pressing [END] or [CALL] enables you to answer a voice call. For a videophone call, press [END] (V. phone) or [CALL] to answer with the camera image, or press [POWER] to answer with the substitute image. When a Push-to-Talk call arrives, pressing any of [POWER] to [SILENT], [MUTE], [CALL], [END], [HOME] and [ASSIST] or opening the FOMA terminal stops the ring tone or vibrator. When you stop the ring tone in this way, the caller continues to hear the ring tone. Pressing any of [PTT], [END] and [CALL] enables you to answer the call.

OFF	When a voice call arrives, pressing or only enables you to answer the call. When a videophone call arrives, pressing any of (), and only enables you to answer the call. (Pressing enables you to answer the call with the substitute image.) When a Push-to-Talk call arrives, pressing any of , and only enables you to answer the call.

* : A hold tone sounds when “Setting when folded” is set to “Tone on” and does not sound when it is set to “No tone” or “End the call”.

NOTE

- ◆ Even when “Quick silent” is set, it works as “Any key answer” while in “Manner mode”.
- ◆ Even when “Any key answer” or “Quick silent” is set, pressing for 1 second or longer turns on or off the display light and “Any key answer” or “Quick silent” does not work.
- ◆ When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to a FOMA terminal, you can accept voice calls, videophone calls (with the camera image) or Push-to-Talk calls by pressing the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch regardless of the “Answer setting” setting.
- ◆ While “External keys guard” is set to “ON” or a FOMA terminal is folded, “Any key answer” or “Quick silent” does not work even when (HOME) or (ASSIST) is pressed.
- ◆ Pressing (MEMO/CHECK) or while a FOMA terminal is ringing enables you to activate Record message to record the caller’s message or video. → p.77

<Setting when folded>

MENU18

Folding a FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls

Default setting
End the call

You can set how your FOMA terminal works when it is folded during a voice or videophone call.

1

▶▶“Talk”▶“Setting when folded”▶Select any item

No tone	Mutes sound for voice calls. For videophone calls, sound is muted and the substitute image is sent to the caller. No hold tone is given. When the FOMA terminal is opened, the status reverts to before it was folded.*	
Tone on	Puts the call on hold (Holding). You can also select whether to play the hold tone through the speaker on your FOMA terminal. If the FOMA terminal is folded during a voice call, the other party hears the hold tone selected in “Set hold tone”. While in a videophone call, the other party hears the hold tone selected in “Set hold tone” and see a hold image. → p.71 When the FOMA terminal is opened, the status reverts to before it was folded.*	
	Speaker ON	The hold tone is sent to the other party and played through the speaker.
	Speaker OFF	The hold tone is only heard by the other party.
End the call	Ends a call. It is the same operation as pressing .	

* : If you fold a FOMA terminal holding a voice call and re-open the terminal, the call resumes. If the held call is a videophone call, it remains on hold.

NOTE

- ◆ While Manner mode is set, no sound is played through the speaker even if “Speaker ON” is set.
- ◆ If the attached stereo earphone (sample) is connected, this function is disabled and folding the FOMA terminal does not change the call condition. However, during a videophone call using the camera image, folding the FOMA terminal switches the image to the substitute image.
- ◆ Even if “Tone on” is set, folding a FOMA terminal leads to the “No tone” operation while “Call Waiting” is activated.
- ◆ This setting is disabled for Push-to-Talk calls. The “Setting when folded” under “PushTalk setting” will apply. → p.106

<Received calls>

MENU24

Using the Received Calls Record

Information on received calls, including the caller’s phone numbers and the dates and times are logged in the Received calls record.

- The Received calls record stores up to 30 voice call, videophone call and Push-to-Talk call entries and up to 30 packet communication and 64K data communication call entries.
- If the maximum number of logs is exceeded, logs are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- You cannot view the Received calls record during videophone calls.
- If you change the call mode between voice and videophone, the first received number is logged in the Received calls record.
- Redial/Dialed/Received calls records of Push-to-Talk calls → p.100

1 "Received calls" Select any item

All calls (number)	Shows all the call record entries.
Missed calls (number)	Shows only the missed calls record entries.

Unknown calls: Shows the number of missed calls that you have not checked.

2 Check the list of Received calls record

The "Received calls (list)" screen appears.



Received calls (list)
Function menu▶p.68

3 Select a Received call record entry to check

The "Received calls (details)" screen appears.

In the top right corner of the screen, "Current/Total entries" is shown. The lower the number, the more recent the call from that phone number.

■ To check the earlier or later Received call record entries

Use  to move to the previous (more recent) entry or  to move to the next (older) entry.

■ For a phone number stored in the phonebook

The name stored in the phonebook also appears.



Received calls (details)
Function menu▶p.68

4 or

■ To make a videophone call

▶  (N phone)

■ To make a Push-to-Talk call

▶ 

5 To end the call, press

NOTE

- ◆ Turning a FOMA terminal off does not delete the Received calls record. If you want to prevent others from seeing the received phone numbers, delete the Received calls record entries or set "Received calls" in "Record display set" to "OFF".
- ◆ When you set "Missed calls display" in the "Ring time(sec.)" to "Not display" and receive a call whose ring time is shorter than the one set in "Set mute seconds", the call does not appear in the Received calls record. → p.175
- ◆ Pressing  on the standby screen also accesses the Received calls record.
- ◆ Press  and  on the standby screen to make a voice call to the most recent Received calls record entry.
- ◆ Receiving a call with Multi Number (Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) will display the register name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2 on the Received calls record (detail) screen.
- ◆ Setting "Keypad dial lock" deletes all the Received calls record entries stored until the lock is set. Calls received subsequently are stored in the Received calls record.
- ◆ If a caller uses "Dial-in", a number other than the "Dial-in" may be displayed.
- ◆ If a phone number shown by a caller is stored in the phonebook, the caller's name and phone number will be recorded in the Received calls record. If the phone number is not shown, the reason for hiding the number (p.174) will be shown in the Received calls record. Even if the shown phone number is stored in the phonebook, while "Restrict dialing" is set, the name and phone number will appear only if the phone number is specified in "Restrict dialing". Only the phone number will appear for the phone number not specified in "Restrict dialing".
- ◆ If multiple phonebook entries with different names contain the same phone number and you receive a call from the number, the name retrieved by the phonebook search in the order of readings appears in the Received calls record. → p.116

■ Received calls/Missed calls icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed voice calls		Received remote monitoring calls
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed international voice calls		Received/missed/unconfirmed missed international videophone calls
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed videophone calls		Received/missed/unconfirmed missed packet communication calls
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed Push-to-Talk (one-to-one) calls		Received/missed/unconfirmed missed 64K data communication calls
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed Push-to-Talk (group) calls		Packet communication or 64K data communication calls that are received without an external unit connected
	Voice record message/videophone message recorded		Calls with Chaku-moji message

Function menu (Received calls screen)

- The function menus of Received calls screen are the same between the list and the details.

Notify Caller ID ^{*1}	Select whether to show the other party your caller ID, from "ON" or "OFF". ■ To cancel "ON" or "OFF" in the "Notify Caller ID" setting ▶ "Cancel prefix" When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID Notification" (p.47) setting is applied.						
Prefix numbers ^{*1}	▶ Select a prefix name to add "Setting Prefix Numbers" → p.61						
Chaku-moji ^{*1}	"Making a call with a Chaku-moji message" → p.56						
Int'l call ^{*1}	■ When "+" is prefixed (a country code is added) ^{*2} ▶ Select an IDD prefix code "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■ When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added) ▶ Select a country code ▶ Select an IDD prefix code The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → p.54						
Multi Number ^{*1}	"Multi Number" → p.431						
Select PushTalk	Selects members from the Push-to-Talk (group) calls record to make a Push-to-Talk call. → p.100						
Ring time	Shows the Missed call record entries with the ring times. This setting is available only when the Received calls (list) screen appears.						
Add to phonebook	"Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records" → p.113						
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.149						
Compose message	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.247						
Compose SMS	"Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)" → p.288						
Received address	Shows the Received address list.						
Delete	Deletes the Received call record entries. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Delete this</td><td>Deletes the selected Received call record entry.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Delete selected</td><td>▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes the multiple Received calls record entries.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Delete all</td><td>▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the Received calls record entries.</td></tr> </table>	Delete this	Deletes the selected Received call record entry.	Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes the multiple Received calls record entries.	Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the Received calls record entries.
Delete this	Deletes the selected Received call record entry.						
Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes the multiple Received calls record entries.						
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the Received calls record entries.						
Connection speed ^{*1}	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".						
Select image	Sets an image to send during a videophone call. → p.89 Selecting "Release settings" cancels the setting of "My side" or "Chara-den".						

^{*1} : Only available for the details screen

^{*2} : "Int'l call" is unavailable when "+81" is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).

NOTE

- Received calls through packet and 64K data communications cannot be added to the phonebook or used to compose a new mail.

<Volume>

Adjusting the Earpiece Volume

Default setting
Level 4

Use this procedure to adjust the earpiece volume to between “Level 1” (quietest) and “Level 6” (loudest) during a call.

- If you adjust the volume during a call or while a FOMA terminal is in standby, the adjusted setting is retained after you end the call.

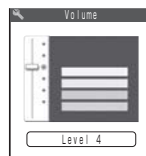
Adjusting the earpiece volume during a call

<Example: During a voice call>

1 During a call ▶ Press (HOME) or (MEMO/CHECK) to adjust the volume

You can adjust the volume in the same way by pressing  or  for 1 second or longer. You can adjust the volume in succession by pressing  (HOME) or  (MEMO/CHECK) for 1 second or longer during the earpiece volume adjustment.

If no operation is conducted for 2 seconds or longer on the earpiece adjustment screen, the screen ends to return to the in-call screen.



NOTE

- You can also adjust the earpiece volume when talking on a videophone, Push-to-Talk or hands-free call.
- Press  or  to adjust the volume during a videophone call. Even if pressing  (HOME) or  (MEMO/CHECK) during the earpiece volume adjustment, you cannot adjust the volume in succession.
- Press  (HOME) or  (MEMO/CHECK) to adjust the earpiece volume during a Push-to-Talk call. You cannot adjust the volume by pressing  or .

Adjusting the earpiece volume in standby mode

1 On the standby screen ▶ or (1 second or longer) ▶ Press or to adjust the volume

You can adjust the volume in succession by pressing  or  for 1 second or longer.

If no operation is conducted for 2 seconds or longer on the earpiece adjustment screen, the screen ends to return to the standby screen.

<Ring volume>

Adjusting the Ring Volume

MENU50

Default setting
Level 4

Use this procedure to adjust the volume of the ring tones given when you receive a voice call, videophone call, Push-to-Talk call, mail, chat mail, MessageR or MessageF. There are six volume settings for each type of call and mail. You can also set a silent ring tone or set it to gradually get louder (step).

1 ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Ring volume” ▶ Select any item

Phone	Adjusts the ring tone volume for voice calls and 64K data communication.
Videophone	Adjusts the ring tone volume for videophone calls.
PushTalk	Adjusts the ring tone volume for Push-to-Talk calls.
Mail	Adjusts the ring tone volume for i-mode mails, SMS or packet communication.
Chat mail	Adjusts the ring tone volume for chat mails.
MessageR	Adjusts the ring tone volume for MessageR.
MessageF	Adjusts the ring tone volume for MessageF.

2 or

■ To set step tones (getting a ring tone louder gradually)

▶ In “Level 6”, press 

When you receive a call with “Step” set, there is no ring tone for 3 seconds, then the ring tone becomes gradually louder, starting at “Level 1” and increasing to “Level 6”.

■ To set a silent ring tone

▶ In “Level 1”, press 

When the silent ring tone is set, a FOMA terminal emits no ring tone.

An icon appears on the standby screen to show that the “Silent” ring tone is set.

: Appears when “Silent” is set for one or more of “Phone”, “Videophone” and “PushTalk” calls.

: Appears when “Silent” is set for one or more of “Mail”, “Chat mail”, “MessageR” and “MessageF”.

: Appears when both  and  are set.

NOTE

- ◆ The ring volume specified in “Phone” in this function is also applied to “Select ring tone” for voice calls and the alarm tones for “Schedule” and “To Do list”.

<Answer hold>

Putting Calls on Hold When you Cannot Answer Immediately

When a FOMA terminal rings for a voice or videophone call and you cannot answer it right away, use this procedure to put the call on hold and have the caller wait briefly.

1 You are receiving a call ▶

The FOMA terminal makes three rapid beeps and puts the call on hold.

The caller hears a message saying that you cannot answer at the moment and holds the call without hanging up.

You can set the message played while a call is held in “Set hold tone”.

■ To hang up while a call is on hold

▶ 

■ If a caller hangs up while on hold

The call ends.



2 Press or to resume the call

When “Answer setting” is set to “Any key answer”, you can also answer the call by pressing  to , , , , , ,  (HOME) or  (ASSIST). Furthermore, pressing  (MEMO/CHECK),  or  also enables you to answer the call.

For videophone calls → p.86

NOTE

- ◆ Call charges apply to a caller while he or she is waiting for you to answer.
- ◆ If “Phone” or “Videophone” in “Ring volume” is set to “Silent” or a FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the FOMA terminal does not make the three short beeps when you activate answer hold. However, the beeps do sound when “Manner mode set” is set to “Original” in which “Phone vol.” is not “Silent”.
- ◆ If you have subscribed to the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service, selecting “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” from the function menu when you are receiving a call either forwards the call to the Voice Mail service center or forwarding number.
- ◆ If you fold a FOMA terminal while a call is on answer hold, the image display shows the call is held.

<Set hold tone>

Setting the Hold Tone

Default setting

On hold tone: Tone 1 Holding tone: Melody 1

Set the message given to the other party when you put a voice or videophone call on answer hold or put an ongoing call on hold.

1 ▶ “Talk” ▶ “Set hold tone” ▶ Select any item

On hold tone	Sets the message given when a call is put on hold.	
	Tone 1	The following message is given in Japanese: "I can't answer the phone just now. Please wait for a few minutes or call again later."
	Tone 2	The following message is given in Japanese: "I can't answer the phone just now. Please call again later."
	Voice announce 1*	Plays the message recorded using "Voice announce". "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones"→p.412
	Voice announce 2*	
Holding tone	Sets the hold tone given during a call.	
	Melody 1	"Fur Elise" is played.
	Melody 2	"Mary Had A Little Lamb" is played.
	Melody 3	"Symphony No.25 in G minor" is played.
	Voice announce 1*	Plays the message recorded using "Voice announce". "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones"→p.412
	Voice announce 2*	

* : Not displayed if no Voice announce message has been recorded.

NOTE

- ◆ You can check the selected message by pressing  (Play) on the message selection screen.
- ◆ Even if you set “English” in “Select language”, the messages of “Tone 1” and “Tone 2” are given in Japanese.

<Public mode (Driving mode)>

Using Public Mode (Driving Mode)

Public mode is an automatic answering service that allows you to keep good manners in a public place. When a FOMA terminal is set to Public mode, it sends callers a message saying that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place (train, bus, theater, etc.) where you should refrain from talking on a phone, and then ends the call.

- Public mode can only be set or cancelled from the standby screen. (It can also be set or cancelled when the “ ” icon appears.)
- You can still make calls when Public mode is set.
- This function is unavailable during data communication.
- While the Caller ID Request is set to “Activate”, receiving a call from an unidentified number gives the caller the Caller ID Request announcement (not the Public mode announcement).

1 On the standby screen▶ (1 second or longer)

Public mode is set and “ ” appears.

When a call is received, the message saying “The person you are calling is currently driving or in an area where cell phone should not be used. Please try again later.” is sent to the caller.

■ To cancel Public mode (Driving mode)

Press  for 1 second or longer on the standby screen while Public mode is set.

Public mode is canceled and “ ” disappears from the screen.



NOTE

- ◆ Even if “Record message” is set to “ON”, Public mode (Driving mode) takes priority and the “Record message” setting is ignored.
- ◆ When “Manner mode” is set, received calls are handled according to the Public mode setting.
- ◆ If you make a voice call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) while Public mode is set, the Public mode is canceled.
- ◆ The following tones do not sound in Public mode:
 - Ring tone for voice/videophone/Push-to-Talk calls
 - Ring tone for MessageR/MessageF
 - Alarm clock tone
 - To Do list alarm tone
 - Low-voltage alarm tone
 - Sound of i-appli programs
 - Mail ring tone
 - Chat mail ring tone
 - Schedule alarm tone
 - Alarm tone for Notice designate calls
 - Charge sound
 - Packet communication/64K data communication ring tone

● If Public mode (Driving mode) is set

In Public mode (Driving mode), your FOMA terminal does not ring when receiving a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call. Calls are logged in the Received calls record as “Missed calls” and the “Missed calls” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

- A voice caller hears the announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place where you should refrain from using a mobile phone, and the call then ends.
- The videophone caller sees the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.
- When a Push-to-Talk call arrives, no answer is given and “Connection failed” appears on the screen. If the number of the call members is 3 or more, a message showing you are driving appears on the member’s phones.

NOTE

- ◆ Even while Public mode is set, when the power is turned off or when “” appears on the screen, the announcement to be played is not the one for Public mode but for “”. To Push-to-Talk call members, a “Disconnected” response will be made.
- ◆ When a mail is received, the “New mail” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

● Handling of received calls when network services and Public mode (Driving mode) are set

If a FOMA terminal is set to Public mode while network services are activated, voice calls and videophone calls are handled as shown in the table below.

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
Voice Mail	Connects the caller to the service center after playing the Public mode announcement. ^{*1}	Connects the caller to the service center without playing the Public mode movie announcement. ^{*2}
Call Forwarding	• Forwards the call after playing the Public mode announcement.^{*3} • Whether to play the Public mode announcement for callers depends on the Call Forwarding setting.	Forwards the videophone call without playing the Public mode movie announcement. ^{*4}
Call Waiting	Ends the call after playing the Public mode announcement.	Ends the call after playing the Public mode movie announcement.
Nuisance Call Blocking	• If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller hears the announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller hears the Public mode announcement and the call then ends.	• If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller sees the movie announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller hears the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.
Caller ID Request	• If the caller does not show the caller ID, the caller hears the announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller hears the Public mode announcement and the call then ends.	• If the caller does not show the caller ID, the caller sees the movie announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller hears the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.

*1 : If the ring time for Voice Mail is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode message is played. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the “Received calls” record and no “Missed call” desktop icon appears.

*2 : As of August 2006, the call is disconnected without being connected to the service center.

*3 : If the ring time for Call Forwarding is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode message is played. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the "Received calls" record and no "Missed call" desktop icon appears.

*4 : Videophone calls will not be connected unless the forwarding phone complies with 3G-324M.

<Public mode (power off)>

Using Public Mode (Power off)

Public mode (power off) is an automatic answering service that allows you to keep good manners in a public place. If you set Public mode (power off) and then receive a call with the power turned off, the caller will hear an announcement that you are in a place where the power needs to be turned off (hospital, airplane, near a priority seat, etc.) and cannot answer the call, and then the call will end.

1 On the standby screen

The Public mode (power off) is set (no change is made on the standby screen).

If Public mode (power off) is set, the power is turned off and a call arrives, the caller will hear an announcement that "The person you are calling is currently in an area where use is prohibited. Please try again later."

■ To cancel Public mode (power off)

▶ On the standby screen          

Public mode (power off) is canceled.

■ To check the Public mode (power off) setting

▶ On the standby screen          

You can check the Public mode (power off) setting.

● If Public mode (power off) is set

The setting remains unchanged until you dial "¥25250" to cancel Public mode (power off). Turning a FOMA terminal on does not cancel the setting.

The caller will hear the Public mode (power off) announcement when you are out of service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach.

- The voice caller hears an announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are in a place where you need to turn off the power, and the call then ends.
- The videophone caller sees the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.
- When a Push-to-Talk call arrives, no answer is given and "Connection failed" appears on the screen. If the number of the call members is 3 or more, a message showing you are absent appears on the member's phones.

● Handling of received calls when network services and Public mode (power off) are set

If a FOMA terminal is set to Public mode (power off) while network services are activated, voice calls and videophone calls are handled as shown in the table below.

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
Voice Mail	Connects the caller to the service center after playing the Public mode (power off) announcement. ^{*1}	Connects the caller to the service center without playing the Public mode (power off) movie announcement. ^{*2}
Call Forwarding	• Forwards the call after playing the Public mode (power off) announcement.^{*3} • Whether to play the Public mode (power off) announcement for callers depends on the Call Forwarding setting.	Forwards the videophone call without playing the Public mode (power off) movie announcement. ^{*4}
Nuisance Call Blocking	• If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller hears the announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller hears the Public mode (power off) announcement and the call then ends.	• If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller sees the movie announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller sees the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.
Caller ID Request	• If the caller does not show the caller ID, the caller hears the announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller hears the Public mode (power off) announcement and the call then ends.	• If the caller does not show the caller ID, the caller sees the movie announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller hears the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.

- *1 : If the ring time for Voice Mail is set to 0 second, no Public mode message is played. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the "Received calls" record and no "Missed call" desktop icon appears.
- *2 : As of August 2006, the call is disconnected without being connected to the service center.
- *3 : If the ring time for Call Forwarding is set to 0 second, no Public mode message is played. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the "Received calls" record and no "Missed call" desktop icon appears.
- *4 : Videophone calls will not be connected unless the forwarding phone complies with 3G-324M.

<Info notice setting>

MENU65

Default setting
ON

Checking Missed Calls

Pressing  (ASSIST) with a FOMA terminal folded enables you to check missed calls, new mails, new chat mails, recorded messages or Voice Mail messages with tones, vibration or the incoming call lamp.

- This function informs you of those calls, mails or messages when the "Missed calls", "New mail", "Chat mail", "Record message" or "Voice Mail" desktop icon appears. → p.150

Setting the notification method for the Info notice function

1

“Incoming call” “Info notice setting” Select any item

ON	Uses “Bibip, bibip” electronic tone for notification.
OFF	Makes no notification.

NOTE

- ◆ If the reading of caller or sender’s name is not stored in the phonebook or the name stored in the phonebook is not displayed, the FOMA terminal does not read out the name even if “ON” is set under “ボイス” (voice).

Checking for missed calls, new mails or new chat mails

Checking operates as shown below.

Info notice setting	When you have missed calls, new mails or new chat mails		When you have no missed call, new mail or new chat mail	
	Sound and vibration	Incoming call lamp color	Sound and vibration	Incoming call lamp color
ON	“Bibip, bibip” tone and 1-second vibration *1	Lights for approx. 5 seconds in the respective colors set in “Phone”, “Mail” and “Chat mail” in “Illumination”. When you have a missed call, new mail or new chat mail, the lamp flashes for 1 second in the respective color.*2	“Bibibip” tone and 0.2-second vibration *1	The incoming call lamp flashes for about 5 seconds in “Color 12”.

*1 : A FOMA terminal vibrates when “Phone” in “Vibrator” is set to other than “OFF”.
*2 : If the flashing color is set to “Gradation” in “Illumination”, the incoming call lamp flashes in “Color 5” for missed calls, “Color 1” for new mails and “Color 3” for new chat mails.

NOTE

- ◆ When External keys guard is set to “ON”, you cannot missed calls or new mails with a FOMA terminal folded even by pressing  (ASSIST).
- ◆ To activate the assist key to have a FOMA terminal read out mails, set “確認機能設定” (Info notice setting) in Japanese mode. When “電子音” (electronic tone) or “ボイス” (voice) is set, press the assist key again during or after the notification of new mails or chat mails to have the terminal read out the mails. When “OFF” is set, pressing the assist key once enables the terminal to read out mails.
The voice notification “This mail is from ****” is given in Japanese before reading out of mail even when “OFF” is set in “ボイス” (voice) under “確認機能設定” (Info notice setting).
Reading out mail messages→p.400
- ◆ This function is unavailable to check missed calls or mails while music is played with the music player.
- ◆ The “OFF” volume is determined in the “Phone” under “Ring volume”. When “Silent” or “Step” is set, “Level 2” is applied.
- ◆ In Manner mode, a FOMA terminal uses vibration instead of tones to notify you of calls, mails or messages. However, the FOMA terminal does emit tones if you have selected “Original” manner mode and “Phone vol.” is not set to “Silent”. If “Vibrator” is set to “OFF”, the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
- ◆ This function is unavailable to check new mails kept at the i-mode Center.
- ◆ Opening a FOMA terminal during notification stops the notification.

Having a FOMA terminal read out the current time <Voice clock>

- When “確認機能設定” (Info notice setting) is set to “ボイス” (voice) and  (MEMO/CHECK) is pressed with a FOMA terminal folded, the FOMA terminal reads out the current time in Japanese.

<Record message>

MENU55

Having the Caller Leave a Message and Video

Default setting

Record message: OFF

Answer message: Japanese 1

Ring time: 8 sec.

When you cannot answer a voice or videophone call, this function allows you to record a message from the caller on your FOMA terminal. For videophone messages, the camera image of the other party's phone is also recorded.

- You can record up to 5 voice messages lasting roughly 20 seconds each.
- You can record up to 2 videophone messages lasting roughly 20 seconds each.
- The differences between Record message and Voice Mail are as follows:

Item	Record message	Voice Mail service
Recording time and No. of messages	- Voice call: up to 20 seconds each, 5 messages - Videophone call: up to 20 seconds each, 2 messages	- Voice call: up to 3 minutes each, 20 messages - Videophone call: up to 3 minutes each, 20 messages
Retention period	No limit	Up to 72 hours
Where to store	FOMA terminal	Voice Mail service center
Condition for playback	Anywhere	Only inside the service area
Condition for recording	- Messages can be recorded if the receiving phone is turned on inside the service area. - Setting “Record message” to “ON”	- Messages can be recorded even if the receiving phone is turned off inside/outside the service area. - Activating the Voice Mail service (p.424)

* : As of August 2006, this service is not provided.

Setting Record message

1



▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Record message” ▶ Select any item

ON	Selects the type of answer message.	
	Japanese 1	“I can't answer the phone just now. Please leave your message within 20 seconds after the beep.” is played in Japanese.
	Japanese 2	“Thank you for your call, but I can't take your call right now. Leave me a message after the beep.” is played in Japanese.
	English	“I can't take your call now. Please leave the message. Thank you.” is played.
	Voice announce 1*	Plays the message recorded using “Voice announce”.
	Voice announce 2*	“Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones” → p.412
OFF	Cancels the “Record message” setting.	

* : Not displayed if no Voice Announce message has been recorded.

2

Enter a number between 000 and 120 seconds as the ring time

Entering a 3-digit time automatically sets Record message and “” and “” appear on the standby screen.

■ To set the displayed time

▶ Without entering a time, press 

NOTE

- ◆ If the numbers of recorded voice messages and VP messages have already reached the respective maximum numbers, Record message cannot be set to “ON”.
- ◆ You can check the selected answer message by pressing  (Play) on the answer message selection screen.
- ◆ If “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2” is set for the answer message of Record message and the corresponding Voice announce is deleted in “Voice announce” setting, “Japanese 1” is set for the answer message.
- ◆ To give priority to “Record message” when “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” is set at the same time, set a shorter ring time than the one set for Voice Mail or Call Forwarding.

Continued on next page

- ◆ If the mute time set in “Ring time(sec.)” is longer than the ring time set for Record message, a FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing first. To have a ring tone sound before a message is recorded, make sure that the ring time for Record message is longer than the mute time.
- ◆ You can use “Discern connect” to set an answer message for each phone number and “Discern group” for each group. → p.122

When a call arrives when “Record message” is set to “ON”

Reaching the specified time activates Record message.

- When a voice call arrives, the answer message is given and recording starts.
- When a videophone call arrives, the “Preparing” image is sent and the answer message is given. The “Recording” image is then sent and recording starts.

■ When message recording begins

- The recording screen appears. The caller's voice can be heard through the FOMA terminal earpiece during message recording.
- Regardless of the duration, a started recording is counted in the number of recordings.



Example: Voice Call

■ To answer a voice call during recording

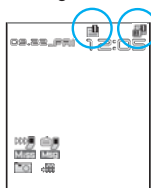
▶ or

■ To answer a videophone call during recording

▶ To answer the call with the camera image, press or (). To answer with the substitute image, press .

■ When message recording ends

- The original screen reappears and the “Missed calls” and “Record message” desktop icons appear on the standby screen. Select the icons to check the details. → p.150
- When one voice message is recorded, “” changes to “”. “” appears for two messages, “” for three messages, and corresponding icons for the subsequent numbers of messages. When one video message is recorded, “” changes to “”. “” appears for two video messages.



NOTE

- ◆ When “” appears, Record message is unavailable.
- ◆ Once the number of recorded messages has reached the maximum, a FOMA terminal cannot use Record message to record the next message.
- ◆ If Manner mode is set, you cannot hear the caller's voice during recording.
- ◆ You cannot receive other calls while a message or video is being recorded. The other callers hear a busy tone.

■ Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of recorded messages.
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

<Quick message>

Recording the Caller's Message and Video Instead of Answering an Incoming Call

Even when "Record message" is not set to "ON", this function allows you to begin message recording during an incoming voice or videophone call simply by pressing one key.

1 You are receiving a call ▶ (MEMO/CHECK)

The Record message recording starts.

Pressing  instead of  (MEMO/CHECK) sets Manner Mode simultaneously with the activation of Record message.

NOTE

- ◆ You can only record a message of the caller for which you started recording. You cannot set "Record message" to "ON" using this function.
- ◆ This function is enabled even when "Manner mode set" is set to "Original" and "Record msg." is "OFF" in the "Original" setting.
- ◆ If you receive a voice or videophone call when there are already 5 voice messages (2 messages for videophone message), Record message is not activated and a FOMA terminal keeps ringing. (Pressing  allows the FOMA terminal to keep ringing under the condition set in "Manner mode set".)

Playing/Erasing Recorded Messages and Voice Memos

- "★" appears on the "Play/Erase msg." screen if a voice record message or voice memo is recorded.

1 ▶ "Play/Erase msg."

The "Play/Erase msg." screen appears.

2 Select an item to play

A FOMA terminal beeps and playback begins. When the playback ends, a FOMA terminal gives 2 short beeps and the playback display disappears.

■ To play the next message

▶  (MEMO/CHECK)

Each time you press  (MEMO/CHECK), the next most recent message is played. Voice memos are played last.

■ To stop playback

▶  or 

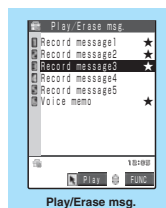
■ To make a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call to the phone number displayed during playback

▶ ,  or 

Pressing  makes a voice call,  makes a videophone call or  makes a Push-to-Talk call. Available Push-to-Talk call type is one-to-one.

■ To erase a message being played

▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Erase" ▶ "YES"



Play/Erase msg.
Function menu▶p.77

NOTE

- ◆ When a recorded message is from a caller who showed the caller ID, the caller's phone number appears during the message playback. If the caller is stored in the phonebook, his or her name also appears.
- ◆ Pressing  (MEMO/CHECK) on the standby screen also plays memos.

Function menu (Play/Erase msg. screen)

Play	Plays the highlighted message.
Delete this	Erases the highlighted message.
Delete rec. msg.	Erases all the messages.
Delete all	Erases all the record messages and voice memos.

■ Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of the voice messages and voice memos.
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

<VP message>

Playing/Erasing Videophone Messages

- “★” appears on the “Play/Erase VP msg.” screen if a videophone record message is recorded.

- 1   ▶ “Play/Erase VP msg.”
The “Play/Erase VP msg.” screen appears.



- 2 Select an item to play

The “VP msg. playback” screen appears.

■ To play the previous or next message

▶  or 

Each time you press  or , the previous or next message is played.

■ To stop playback

▶ 

■ To make a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call to the phone number displayed during playback

▶ ,  or 

Pressing  makes a voice call,  makes a videophone call or  makes a Push-to-Talk call. Available Push-to-Talk call type is one-to-one.

■ To erase a message being played

▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Erase” ▶ “YES”

■ To turn on/off the speaker during playback

▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Speaker ON” or “Speaker OFF”



NOTE

- ◆ When a recorded videophone message is from a caller who showed the caller ID, the caller’s phone number appears during the message playback. If the caller is stored in the phonebook, his or her name also appears.
- ◆ During playback, you can adjust the volume by pressing  ( (HOME)) or  ( (MEMO/CHECK)).

Function menu (Play/Erase VP msg. screen)

Play	Plays the highlighted videophone message.
Delete this	Erases the highlighted videophone message.
Delete all	Erases all the videophone messages.

■ Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of the videophone messages.
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

● Making/Receiving Videophone Calls

What is Videophone?.....	80
Making a Videophone Call.....	81
Changing Videophone Call to Voice Call.....	85
Receiving a Videophone Call.....	86
Using Chara-den.....	88
Selecting the Image Sent to the Other Party	88
Setting Hands-free for Videophone Calls	Hands-free switch 90
Setting the Image Displayed During a Videophone Call.....	91
Setting for Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone Call	Ntly switch-mode 92
Connecting to an External Device to Make and Receive Videophone Calls.....	92
Viewing Distant Locations Using FOMA Terminal	Remote monitoring 93

What is Videophone?

You can use the videophone call function between terminals that support the DoCoMo videophone system.

- DoCoMo videophone conforms to the 3G-324M^{*2} standard set down in the international 3GPP^{*1} standards. Your FOMA terminal cannot connect to a videophone terminal that uses a different system from the DoCoMo videophone.

*1 : 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)

A regional standardization body established to develop commonly applied technical specifications for 3rd-generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).

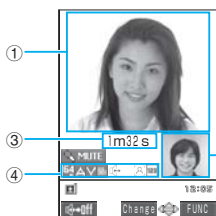
*2 : 3G-324M

An international standard for 3rd-generation mobile videophones.

- Videophone calls are conducted at connection speeds of 64K or 32K.

- 64K: Data is communicated at a rate of 64kbps.
- 32K: Data is communicated at a rate of 32kbps.

Videophone screen



- ① Main screen. By default, this shows the camera image from the other party's phone.
- ② Sub-screen. By default, this shows the camera image from your phone.
- ③ Shows the call duration.
- ④ Shows the videophone function settings.

- 64 : 64K videophone call in progress
- 32 : 32K videophone call in progress
- ▲ : Sending/receiving voice
- ▲ : Voice transmission error
- ▼ : Sending/receiving video
- ▼ : Video transmission error
- 📷 : Sending camera image
- 🖼️ : Sending the substitute image selected in "Select image"
- 📞 : Hands-free OFF
- 📞 : Hands-free ON
- MUTE : Microphone mute in progress

- 👤 : Photo mode (Portrait)
- 🏞️ : Photo mode (Scenery)
- 👤 : Photo mode (Close-up)
- 123 : Key operation/DTMF mode*
- * : DTMF → p.83
- 👤 : Key operation/Whole action mode
- 👤 : Key operation/Parts action mode
- 👤 : Sending Chara-den
- 👤 : State where the motion of a face can be followed
- 👤 : State where the motion of a face cannot be followed
- 👤 : Visual check in progress

Control keys	Videophone operation
🔄	Switches between front and rear cameras
🔄 (1 second or longer)	Switches the main screen → p.82
🔊 (🏠 (HOME)), 🔊 (📄 (MEMO/CHECK))	Adjusts volume
🔍	Adjusts zoom ratio
📞	Switches on/off hands-free
☰	Displays function menu
📄 (MEMO/CHECK) (1 second or longer)	Records other party's voice during a call
🔇	Puts a call on hold
🏠 (HOME) (1 second or longer)	Microphone mute

Making a Videophone Call

1 Dial the other party's number, starting with the area code

The "Videophone number entry" screen appears. Always start by entering the area code, even for calls within the same area.

Area code — Local code — Phone number

To call a mobile phone

090 — × × × × — × × × ×
or
080 — × × × × — × × × ×

To call a PHS phone

070 — × × × × — × × × ×



Videophone number entry

Function menu → p.82

2 (V. phone)

The "Videophone in-call" screen appears. You can talk hearing the other party's voice through the speaker.

"Switching to Hands-free Operation" → p.63

To switch to a voice call during a videophone call

"Changing Videophone Call to Voice Call" → p.85

To switch between camera image and substitute image during a videophone call

▶ Select "Substitute image" or "My side" from the function menu

To send video from the rear camera during a videophone call

▶ ●

Each time you press ● during a videophone call, the video switches between the front and rear cameras (CHG camera-mode).

To put a videophone call in progress on hold

▶ (V. phone)

The hold tone sounds and the "保留 Holding" image appears on the caller's videophone screen. Press (V. phone) or (V. phone) to answer a videophone call on hold using the camera image, or ● to answer the call using the substitute image. Press (V. phone) to answer a videophone call in condition before holding.

To mute voice sent during a videophone call (microphone mute)

▶ (HOME) (1 second or longer)

The "MUTE" icon appears while in mute. Video is transmitted as it is.

Pressing and holding (HOME) again for 1 second or longer cancels the mute.

When using the attached stereo earphone (sample)

You can hear the other party's voice through the earphone.

If a videophone call is not connected → p.84



You are charged for the digital communication from this screen.



Videophone in-call

Function menu → p.82

3 Press (END) when the call ends

NOTE

- ◆ The "END" icon flashes while you are dialing a videophone call and is displayed continuously during the call. If a call is connected at the "32K" dialing speed, "END" flashes and is displayed continuously during the call.
- ◆ The "32K" connection speed allows you to use videophones or other devices (PHS mobiles, etc.) that cannot communicate at "64K" due to network conditions. If you make a videophone call at "64K" and the called party is in a "32K" area or similar situation, the call is automatically redialed at 32kbps. However, note that "32K" videophone calls attract the same digital communication charges as "64K" videophone calls.
- ◆ You can transmit up to 10 characters of message (Chaku-moji) together with a videophone call regardless of pictographs/symbols/double-byte characters/single-byte characters. A Chaku-moji appears on the ringing screen of the callee. → p.55
- ◆ International videophone calls can also be made using the DoCoMo "WORLD CALL" international dialing service. → p.53

- ◆ A FOMA terminal sends the camera image when making a call unless Chara-den is set in "Select image" in the function menu of the videophone number entry screen. → p.82
- ◆ It may take a few seconds to switch from a camera image to substitute image (Chara-den) depending on the Chara-den.
- ◆ When you are talking on a videophone call using the rear camera while charging, the message notifying that the camera will be turned off might appear and the camera might be automatically turned off, depending on the temperature of the FOMA terminal.

Function menu (videophone number entry screen)

Notify Caller ID	Select whether to show the other party your caller ID, from "ON" or "OFF". ■ To cancel "ON" or "OFF" in the "Notify Caller ID" setting ▶ "Cancel prefix" When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID Notification" (p.47) setting is applied.
Prefix numbers	▶ Select a prefix name to add "Setting Prefix Numbers" → p.61
Chaku-moji	"Making a call with a Chaku-moji message" → p.56
Int'l call	■ When "+" is prefixed (country code is added) ▶ Select an IDD prefix code "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■ When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added) ▶ Select a country code ▶ Select an IDD prefix code The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → p.54
Multi Number	"Multi Number" → p.431
Add to phonebook	"Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → p.111 "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" → p.112
Compose message	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.247
Connection speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".
Select image	Sets an image to send during a videophone call. → p.89 Selecting "Release settings" cancels the setting of "Me" or "Chara-den".

* : "Int'l call" is unavailable when "+81" is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).

NOTE

- ◆ The "Connection speed" setting only applies to one (dialed) call and is not stored in the Redial or Dialed calls record. Furthermore, if you make a voice call after specifying the "Connection speed" setting, the setting is ignored.

Function menu (videophone in-call screen)

Petit message	"Sending a message during a videophone call (sending of camera image)" → p.91
Decoration	"Using face decorations to increase the range of expressions in videophone calls" → p.91
Off decoration	Erases the displayed message or stamp.
Substitute image, My side	Switches between a camera image and substitute image.
Rear camera, Front camera	Switches between the front camera and the rear camera. This setting is only retained during a call.
Change main disp.	Changes the image displayed on the main screen. The screen changes in the order of "Displaying the image from the other party's camera on your main screen" → "Displaying the image from your own camera on your main screen" → "Displaying only the image from the other party's camera" → "Displaying only the image from your own camera".
Visual check, Visual check off	"Checking your appearance during a videophone call" → p.90

V.phone settings	Sets the screen for videophone call.	
	Visual prefer.	Sets the image sent to and received from the other party. This setting is only retained during a call.
		Normal (default) Standard setting for both quality and movement.
		Prefer img qual Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.
		Prefer motion spd Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.
	Brightness	▶ Use  to adjust the brightness Chooses the brightness among 5 levels from -2 to ±0 to +2.
	White balance	Sets image color tones. The settings are also applied to the equivalent camera functions. → p.195
		Auto (default) Select this option for automatic color tone adjustment.
		Fine Select this option when outdoors in sunny weather.
		Cloudy Select this option when outdoors in cloudy weather or in shade.
		Light bulb Suitable for shooting under incandescent light.
		Fluorescent lamp Suitable for shooting under fluorescent light.
	Color mode set	Sets image effects. This setting is only retained during a call.
		Normal (default) Sets a normal image.
		Sepia Sets a sepia-tone image.
		Monochrome Sets a monochrome (black & white) image.
	Photo mode	Sets a mode suited to the scene being shot. Cannot be changed when using the front camera.
		Portrait (default) Is the shooting mode for people.
		Scenery The best mode for shooting scenery.
		Close-up Is the shooting mode for close-up.
Chara-den set.	Sets Chara-den. Chara-den → p.88 Cannot be set for camera images.	
	Switch Chara-den	▶ Select a character Selects a character to be displayed.
	Action List	▶ Check the actions and keys Checks the available actions and corresponding keys. You can also view the action list by pressing  .
	Change Action	Changes the action mode.
	Switch image	Displays your original image on the other party's display. → p.89
Display light	Sets lighting of display light.	
	All time ON (default)	Turns the display light on.
	15 seconds ON	Turns the display light on for 15 seconds only.
FrontCamera Rev.	Sets the type of camera image displayed on your FOMA terminal during a call.	
	ON (default)	Displayed in mirror image.
	OFF	Displayed in normal image.
Call time disp. (default: ON)	Sets whether to display the call time during a call.	
Own number	Displays your phone number during a videophone call.	
Send DTMF tone, DTMF tone OFF	Sets/cancels push signal transmission mode while using Chara-den. Except for Chara-den, videophone calls are always in push signal transmission mode.	

Change to voice	"Changing Videophone Call to Voice Call"→p.85

● If a videophone call is not connected

If a videophone call was not connected, a message giving the reason for the connection failure appears. However, in some circumstances, an explanatory message may not be displayed. Also, depending on the type of phone used by the callee and the possible lack of a network service subscription, the reason given may not accurately reflect the callee's actual status.

Message	Reason
Check number then redial	The dialed phone number is currently not used.
Busy	The called party is making another phone call or is using a packet communication.
Out of service area/power off	The callee's phone is out of service or the power is turned off.
Public mode	Public mode (Driving mode) or Public mode (power off) is set on the callee.
Set caller ID to ON	Your call is connected without notifying your caller ID (when dialing into visualnet).
Your call is being forwarded	The call is being forwarded (into a videophone call if the forwarding party has a videophone set to comply with 3G-324M).
Redial using voice call	The forwarded party is non-videophone-terminal.
Notify your Caller ID	The Caller ID Request service is set on the callee.
The other party does not want to answer your call	The called party has set the Nuisance Call Blocking service.
Connection failed	Set "Caller ID Notification" to "ON" and then try again. • This message may also be displayed in other situations.

* : As of August 2006, this message may also appear when Voice Mail service is set on the callee as well.

NOTE

- ◆ If you make a videophone call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) from a FOMA terminal, the call is automatically changed to a voice call.
- ◆ If you make a videophone call to a phone that does not support videophone call, or if the callee's phone supports videophone call but is out of signal range or switched off, no connection can be established. If you called a phone that does not support videophone call and "Auto redial as voice" (p.88) is set to "ON", the call is cut off by the called party before the videophone connection is established and is then automatically redialed as a voice call. However, this operation is not carried out if you dial a wrong number or if you call an ISDN synchronous 64K or PIAFS access point or an ISDN videophone that does not conform to the 3G-324M standard (as of August 2006). Note that the call charge may apply in some cases.
- ◆ The "32K" connection speed allows you to use videophones or other devices (PHS mobiles, etc.) that cannot communicate at "64K" due to network conditions. If you make a videophone call at "64K" and the called party is in a "32K" area or similar situation, the call is automatically redialed at 32kbps. However, note that "32K" videophone calls attract the same digital communication charges as "64K" videophone calls.
- ◆ If "Auto redial as voice" (p.88) is set to "ON" and a videophone call is not connected, the call is automatically changed to a voice call. The relations between the set connection speed and "Auto redial as voice" setting are listed below.

	Dialing speed set to "64K"	Dialing speed set to "32K"
"Auto redial as voice" set to ON	The connection speed automatically changes to "32K". If the videophone call still fails to connect, it switches to voice-call mode.	Switches to voice call mode.
"Auto redial as voice" set to OFF	The connection speed automatically changes to "32K". If the videophone call still fails to connect, the videophone call ends.	Ends the videophone call.

- ◆ You cannot receive i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF during a videophone call. Mails you cannot receive are held at the i-mode Center. Receive them using "Check new messages" after a videophone call ends.
- ◆ You can receive SMS during a videophone call.

- ◆ If the “Recharge battery” low voltage alarm appears on the display during a videophone call, the other party sees the “カメラオフ Camera Off” message and the call is disconnected roughly 20 seconds later. If you start charging a battery before a videophone call is terminated, the call continues with the image that had been displayed before the low voltage alarm was given.
- ◆ Digital call charges still apply when a substitute image appears during a videophone call.

Changing Videophone Call to Voice Call

The caller can change the videophone call to a voice call during a videophone call (communication speed 64K).

- If the handset of your party is a FOMA terminal supporting the call change, “Change to voice” can be selected from the function menu during a videophone call and you can switch between videophone and voice calls. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.)
- You can change a videophone call only when you are the caller. When you are a callee, you cannot change the call mode.
- To change the call mode, the other party must set his or her terminal to show you “Ntfy switch-mode” beforehand. → p.92

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.81) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Change to voice”

While a videophone call is changed to voice call, the screen is displayed showing that the calls are being changed, and a voice guidance is played.



NOTE

- ◆ You can change between a voice call and a videophone call repeatedly.
- ◆ You can change to videophone call during a voice call. → p.52
- ◆ It takes about 5 seconds to change a call. Note that signal quality may affect how long it takes.
- ◆ You cannot change a call in the following cases:
 - The other party is holding a call.
 - The other party has activated Record message.
- ◆ The call time shown is reset to 0 second each time the call mode is changed. However, if a videophone call ends after the call mode is changed, the call time shown indicates the total of the voice call and videophone call.
- ◆ Depending on the other party's communication conditions such as manipulation or the signal quality, you may not be able to change a call and the call may be canceled.
- ◆ If the call mode is changed, the first dialed number is registered to the Redial/Dialed calls record. The first received number is registered to the Received calls record.
- ◆ You are not charged while “SWITCHING VIDEO/VOICE” appears.
- ◆ If you have changed the call mode, the call charge shown in “Call data” may differ from the one you will pay.
- ◆ When changing to a voice call, the hands-free is set to OFF.

Receiving a Videophone Call

Use this procedure to receive an incoming videophone call. If you cannot answer a videophone call with your camera image, you can receive the call showing the caller a substitute image instead of your camera image.

1 When you receive a videophone call, press () or

The "videophone in-call" screen (p.81) appears.
You can talk hearing the other party's voice through the speaker.
"Switching to Hands-free Operation" → p.63

■ If a Chaku-moji message is also coming in

A Chaku-moji animation appears on the videophone ringing screen. You may know the contents beforehand. → p.55

■ To answer using a substitute image



A substitute image appears on the caller's display.

After sending a substitute image, you can still change it to a camera image by selecting "My side" from the function menu.

■ When using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)

▶ Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch

You can answer using your own image. If "Automatic answer" is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal automatically answers a call using the substitute image once the specified ringing time has elapsed. You can hear the other party's voice through the earphone.

■ To put a videophone call on answer hold while a FOMA terminal is ringing



The "応答保留中 On hold" image appears on the caller's videophone display and the message is played.
Press  () or  to answer a videophone call on answer hold using the camera image, or  to answer the call using the substitute image.

■ To switch between camera image and substitute image during a videophone call

▶ Select "Substitute image" or "My side" from the function menu.

■ To send video from the rear camera during a videophone call



Each time you press  during a videophone call, the video switches between the front and rear cameras (CHG camera-mode).

■ To put a videophone call in progress on hold



The hold tone sounds and the "保留 Holding" image appears on the caller's videophone screen.

Press  () or  to answer a videophone call on hold using the camera image, or  to answer the call using the substitute image. Press  to answer a videophone call in condition before holding.

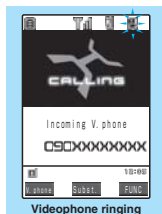
■ To mute voice sent during a videophone call (microphone mute)

▶  (HOME) (1 second or longer)

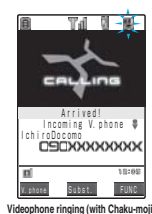
The " MUTE" icon appears while in mute. Video is transmitted as it is.

Pressing and holding  (HOME) again for 1 second or longer cancels the mute.

2 Press when the call ends



Function menu → p.87



Videophone ringing (with Chaku-moji)

Function menu (videophone ringing screen)

Call Rejection	Ends a call without answering it.
Call Forwarding	Forwards a call. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the "Call Forwarding" setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate". "Call Forwarding Service" → p.427
Voice Mail	Connects the caller to the Voice Mail service center. The caller is connected to the service center regardless of whether the "Voice Mail" setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate". "Voice Mail Service" → p.424
Change Display	Changes the display from Additional Number 1 or 2 to the number from which the call is forwarded. This setting is available when Multi Number (Additional Number 1 or 2) and Call Forwarding are activated for receiving calls. "Multi Number" → p.431

* : This service is not supported as of August 2006.

NOTE

- ◆ Digital call charges still apply to a caller when a substitute image appears during a videophone call.
- ◆ Even if "Call Forwarding" is set to "Activate", a received videophone call can only be forwarded if the forwarding number is a 3G-324M-compatible (p.80) videophone. Check the forwarding destination phone before setting up call forwarding.
- ◆ If you receive a videophone call from a caller who is barred in the Nuisance Call Blocking service, the caller sees a movie announcement that the call has been rejected, and then the call ends.
- ◆ Press or (MEMO/CHECK) during an incoming videophone call, then "Record message" starts and the message can be recorded. (Pressing sets the manner mode at the same time.) → p.77
- ◆ You cannot receive i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF during a videophone call. Mails you cannot receive are held at the i-mode Center. Receive them using "Check new messages" after a videophone call ends.
- ◆ You can receive SMS during a videophone call.
- ◆ When you have subscribed to the "Call Waiting", "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service and a videophone call arrives while you are talking on another videophone call, end the call in progress to answer the call that has newly arrived.
- ◆ If the "Recharge battery" low voltage alarm appears on the display during a videophone call, the other party sees the "カメラオフ Camera Off" message and the call is disconnected roughly 20 seconds later. If you start charging a battery before a videophone call is terminated, the call continues with the image that had been displayed before the low voltage alarm was given.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when "Public mode (Driving mode)" is set. Received calls are logged in the Received calls record as missed calls.
- ◆ Depending on the settings used by a caller, you may receive a substitute image instead of a camera image.

Changing videophone call to voice call (the other party)

Your received videophone call is changed to voice call by changing the call mode on the other party's phone.

- You can change a videophone call only when you are the caller. When you are a callee, you cannot change the call mode.
- To change a call on the dialing phone, "Ntly switch-mode" must be set to "Indication ON" on the receiving phone beforehand. → p.92

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.81) ► Change the call mode on the dialing phone

While a videophone call is changed to voice call, the screen is displayed showing that the calls are being changed, and a voice guidance is played.



NOTE

- ◆ When changing to a voice call, the hands-free is set to OFF.

Remote monitoring	"Viewing Distant Locations Using FOMA Terminal" → p.93
Display setting	"Setting the Image Displayed During a Videophone Call" → p.91
Ntfty switch-mode	"Setting for Switching between Voice Call and Videophone Call" → p.92
Hands-free switch	"Setting Hands-free for Videophone Calls" → p.90

● Setting an image to send during a videophone call

Default setting	On hold, Holding: Pre-installed Substitute image: Chara-den ("ブンブン(Dimo)") Record message, Preparing, Voice memo: Pre-installed

Use this procedure to select an image sent in place of a camera image.

- This function is available for setting a JPEG or GIF image that is 100K bytes or smaller and also 640 dots wide × 640 dots high or smaller.
- The setting of this function is still retained after a videophone call ends.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.88) ▶ "Select image" ▶ Select any item

On hold	Sets an image to send for a call on answer hold.
Holding	Sets an image to send when a call is on hold.
Substitute image	Sets an image to send as a substitute image.
Record message	Sets an image to send while recording a videophone message.
Preparing	Sets an image to send while preparing a videophone message.
Voice memo	Sets an image to send while recording a voice memo.

2 Select an image to send

Pre-installed	Sends only a message.
Original	Sends an image and message. ■ To change the setting ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Change setting" ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select the image
Chara-den	This option appears only when "Substitutive image" is selected. Sends the Chara-den character selected in "Substitutive image". "Function menu (Chara-den list screen)" → p.365 Priority sequence for Chara-den setting → p.112 ■ To change the setting ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Change setting" ▶ Select the image

■ Messages to be sent

The messages to be sent are as follows:

- For answer hold: "応答保留中 On Hold"
- For holding: "保留 Holding"
- For sending the substitute image: "カメラオフ Camera Off"
- For recording videophone message: "伝言メモ録画中 Recording"
- For preparing videophone message: "伝言メモ準備中 Preparing"
- For recording voice memo: "音声メモ録音中 Recording Voice only"

NOTE

<Visual preference>

- ◆ You can change this setting using the function menu during a videophone call. However, the setting reverts to the original value when the videophone call ends.
- ◆ If signal quality deteriorates during a videophone call, an image may become grainy or patchy regardless of the "Visual preference" setting.

<Select image>

- ◆ Some GIF images may not be set in "Original".
- ◆ You can switch between a camera image and a substitute image during a videophone call.
- ◆ To check an image, select an item you want to check and press  (Play).
- ◆ Changing the setting from "Original" to "Pre-installed" or "Chara-den" does not delete the stored image.
- ◆ The set still image is displayed both on your FOMA terminal and the other party's terminal. However, the answering message for a recorded message is only sent to the other party's terminal.
- ◆ You cannot delete the "Original" setting. Setting "Set as display" (p.346) in My picture also allows you to change the "Original" setting. If the original image to be pasted is deleted, the "pre-installed" message is shown on (sent to) the callee's terminal.
- ◆ When the Chara-den character set as the substitute image is deleted and the "Chara-den" substitute image cannot be displayed, the "ブンブン (Dimo)" stored at default is sent. If you have already deleted "ブンブン (Dimo)", a preinstalled still image is transmitted as an alternative image.

<Auto redial as voice>

- ◆ When a videophone call is switched and redialed as a voice call, the call is charged as a voice call and digital communication charges do not apply.
- ◆ When a call is redialed, only the voice call is logged in the "Redial" or "Dialed calls" record.
- ◆ Even if "Auto redial as voice" is set to "ON", it may not be possible to redial due to the circumstances of the network or the other party, such as busy.

Checking your appearance during a videophone call <Visual check>

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.81) (FUNC) "Visual check"

You can use the image from the built-in camera to check your appearance.

 is displayed during a visual check.

A substitute image is sent to the other party.

2 (FUNC) "Visual check off"

Visual check ends. The screen returns to the state before the visual check.

Enlarging the image to be sent

During a videophone call, you can enlarge your camera image that is sent to the other party.

- If you are sending an image captured by the rear camera, you can enlarge the image by up to 9 (in 16 steps). An image shot using the front camera can be enlarged by up to 2 (in 2 steps).
- If you switch between the front and rear cameras during a videophone call, the respective zoom settings are retained. When the videophone call ends, the image reverts to normal scale.
- You cannot enlarge an image while sending a substitute image.

1 During a videophone call Zoom in or out



<Hands-free switch>

Setting Hands-free for Videophone Calls

Default setting
ON

You can set a FOMA terminal to automatically switch to the hands-free mode when a videophone call starts.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.88) "Hands-free switch" "ON" or "OFF"

NOTE

- ◆ Even if "Hands-free switch" is set to "ON", you can cancel the hand-free operation by pressing   during a call.

- ◆ Even if “Hands-free switch” is set to “ON”, the FOMA terminal does not automatically switch to the hands-free mode in the following situations:
 - Manner mode is set.
 - The attached stereo earphone (sample) is connected. (However, the microphone works in according to the “Select microphone” setting.)
 - The Answer hold or Record message function is activated during an incoming call.

Setting the Image Displayed During a Videophone Call

Setting the image to be displayed on the main screen and how to display the camera image <Display setting>

Default setting	Main display: Other side Front camera Reverse: ON

1 Videophone settings screen (p.88) ▶ “Display setting” ▶ Select any item

Main display	Sets the main image for videophone calls.	
	Other side	Displays an image from the other party's camera on your main screen.
	My side	Displays an image from your own camera on your main screen.
Front camera Reverse	Sets the type of camera image displayed on your FOMA terminal during a call.	
	ON	Displayed in mirror image.
	OFF	Displayed in normal image.

Using face decorations to increase the range of expressions in videophone calls <Decoration>

You can decorate the videophone call screen (image from your own camera) by adding frames or stamps. You can even paste in stamps that follow facial movements.

- The FOMA terminal comes with stamps stored at default that trace facial movements, but you can also download additional stamps of the same type from the “みんなNらんど” site. “みんなNらんど”→p.216

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.81) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Decoration” ▶ Select any item

Frame	▶Select a frame Places a frame around the videophone screen.
Stamp	▶Select a stamp▶ Use  to decide the location ▶  Places a stamp on the videophone screen.
Facestamp	▶Select a face stamp Places a stamp that follows facial movements on the videophone screen. If a stamp can follow facial movements, “  ” appears. If not, “  ” appears.

■ To remove a frame or stamp

“Off decoration” in the “Videophone in-call function menu”→ p.82

NOTE

- ◆ Pressing  (Play) on each selection screen allows you to check the selected frame, stamp or facestamp.
- ◆ When “FrontCamera Rev.” (p.83) is set to “OFF”, an image from your camera is displayed in normal image, enabling you to read stamps such as characters correctly.

Sending a message during a videophone call (sending of camera image) <Petit message>

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.81) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Petit message” ▶ Enter a message

A message can contain up to 16 double-byte characters.

■ To cancel message entry

- ▶ Erase the entire message▶ 

2

The message appears. The message automatically disappears after 15 seconds.

To erase a message manually

▶  (1 second or longer)

You can also erase a message by selecting "Off decoration" from the function menu.

NOTE

- ◆ When "FrontCamera Rev." (p.83) is set to "OFF", an image from your camera is displayed in normal image, enabling you to read characters correctly.

<Ntfy switch-mode>

Setting for Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone Call

Default setting
Indication ON

You can notify the other party that your FOMA terminal can change between voice call and videophone call.

- When you receive a call with this function set to "Indication ON", your FOMA terminal notifies the other party that your terminal supports the switching function so that the other party can switch the call.
- You cannot set this function during a call or while "" appears.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.88) ▶ "Ntfy switch-mode" ▶ Select any item

Indication ON	Notifies the other party that your FOMA terminal can change between a voice call and videophone call.
Indication OFF	Does not notify the other party that your FOMA terminal can change between a voice call and videophone call.
Check Indication	Displays the item set in "Ntfy switch-mode".

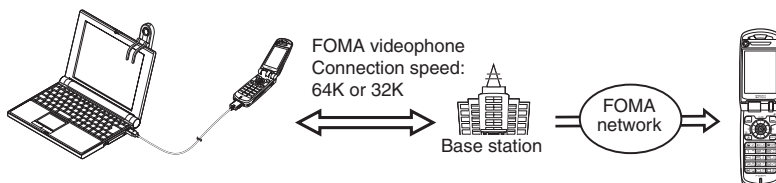
Connecting to an External Device to Make and Receive Videophone Calls

You can make and receive videophone calls using an external device such as PC by connecting it to the FOMA terminal with the FOMA USB Cable (optional).

To enable this function, install a videophone application in a PC or other exclusive device and prepare equipment such as an earphone/microphone and USB-compatible Web camera (marketed) that will be connected to the PC.

- Set USB mode setting to "Communication mode". No setting is required for connecting to an external device.
- For information about the operating environment, setting and operation of a videophone application, see the instructions provided with an external device.
- "ドコモテレビ電話ソフト 2005" (DoCoMo Videophone Software 2005) is available as an application for this function. This application can be downloaded on the following site: (for details about using in PC, check the support page on the website.

<http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/> (Only in Japanese)



NOTE

- ◆ You cannot make a videophone call using an external device during a voice call.
- ◆ If you subscribe to the "Call Waiting" service and receive a videophone call from an external device during a voice call, you can answer the videophone call after ending the voice call. For a voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication call received from an external device during a videophone call, the FOMA terminal acts in the same way.

<Remote monitoring>

Viewing Distant Locations Using FOMA Terminal

Default setting

Other ID: Not recorded

Ringing time: 5 sec.

Set: OFF

Remote monitoring is only available between FOMA terminals or between a FOMA terminal and a phone equipped with the 3G-324M-compatible videophone function. Your FOMA terminal can be used as either of a dialing or receiving phone for remote monitoring.

- Remote monitoring can only be carried out when the phone number of the monitoring phone is stored beforehand in the phone receiving the remote monitoring and Remote monitoring is set to "ON".

Preparing the receiving phone

Set the phone number of the dialing phone (Other ID) and delay until the remote monitoring begins (Ringing time) on the phone receiving the remote monitoring.

- Up to 5 IDs can be stored.

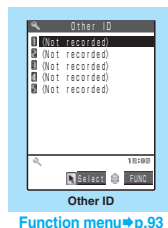
1 Videophone settings screen (p.88) ▶ "Remote monitoring" ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "Other ID"

The "Other ID" screen appears.

2 Select "<Not recorded>"

■ To change a previously recorded ID

▶ Select an ID you want to change



Function menu ▶ p.93

3 Enter the phone number of the other phone ▶ ▶

Return to the remote monitoring screen.

4 "Ringing time" ▶ Enter the ringing time (003-120 seconds)

Enter the time as a 3-digit number. Entering a 3-digit number sets the ringing time.

■ To set the displayed time

▶ Without entering a time, press

5 "Set" ▶ "ON"

Remote monitoring is set and appears on the standby screen.

■ To turn remote monitoring off

▶ "OFF"



6 Position a FOMA terminal

In remote monitoring, an image from the front camera is sent to the dialing phone.

Put the receiving FOMA terminal in the monitoring position, ensuring that it is switched on and unfolded.

If the FOMA terminal is left folded, voice and a substitute image overlapped with "カメラオフ Camera off" are sent instead of camera images.



NOTE

- ◆ The ringing time set for remote monitoring cannot be the same as that set for "Record message" or "Automatic answer".
- ◆ If the ringing time set for "Call Forwarding" on the receiving phone is shorter than the time set for remote monitoring, "Call Forwarding" takes priority. To give priority to remote monitoring, set a shorter ringing time than the "Call Forwarding" setting.

Function menu (Other ID screen)

Look-up address	Sets the phone number of other party.	
	Phonebook	Stores a phone number stored in the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.116
	Dialed calls	Stores a phone number stored in the Dialed calls record. "Dialing a Previously Dialed Number" → p.58
	Received calls	Stores a phone number stored in the Received calls record. "Using the Received Calls Record" → p.66

Continued on next page

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted ID record.
Delete all	Deletes all IDs. "Set" is set to "OFF" when all IDs are deleted.

Performing remote monitoring

- To perform remote monitoring, you should always make a videophone call with caller ID (phone number) notification provided from the FOMA terminal registered as the other ID on the receiving phone.
- When your FOMA terminal is used to receive remote monitoring calls, images and sound from the dialing phone are both played.

1 Make a videophone call to the receiving phone

After the ringing time set on the receiving phone has elapsed, remote monitoring begins. Video images from the receiving phone are displayed on the dialing phone and sound is played through the speaker. By using the attached stereo earphone (sample), you can listen to the sound from the receiving phone through the earphone.

■ To answer a videophone call (with camera image) on the receiving phone without triggering remote monitoring

- ▶ Answer by pressing  (V phone) or  before the ringing time has elapsed
- ▶ To return to the list screen, press .



Dialing phone

NOTE

- ◆ A remote-monitoring call from a phone number stored in the Remote monitoring setting can be received even when "Lock all" or "Omakase Lock" is set.
- ◆ If the caller ID is not notified, the call is received as a normal videophone call instead of a remote monitoring call.
- ◆ Remote monitoring cannot be performed if any of the following functions is set at the same time:
 - Public mode (Driving mode) • Manner mode • Call rejection/acceptation* • Reject unknown*
 - * When "Call acceptance" is set in a phone number other than the "Other ID" number, when "Call rejection" is set for the "Other ID" phone number on the receiving phone or when the "Other ID" number is not stored in the phonebook and "Reject unknown" is set.
- ◆ If Remote monitoring and Record message or Automatic answer are set at the same time, the ring time set in Record message or Automatic answer is shorter than the one for Remote monitoring and a call arrives from the phone number stored in the Remote monitoring setting, Remote monitoring takes priority.
- ◆ If the attached stereo earphone (sample) is connected to a FOMA terminal, received sound is played through the speaker regardless of the "Earphone" setting.
- ◆ The ring tone specifically set for remote monitoring is used and it cannot be changed.
- ◆ The ring tone is played at the volume set in "Videophone" in "Ring volume". However, if the ring volume is set to "Silent", "Level 1" or "Step", the volume for remote monitoring call is set to "Level 2".
- ◆ When a remote monitoring call is received, the incoming call lamp flashes in "Gradation" color and "Standard" pattern, regardless of the "Illumination" setting.
- ◆ You cannot set Answer hold during an incoming remote monitoring call. Press  to end the call.
- ◆ If Remote monitoring is set to "ON" on the receiving phone, a videophone call received from a phone number stored in "Other ID" is logged in the Received calls record as a remote monitoring call. If remote monitoring was not triggered by the call, it is logged as a missed videophone call in the Received calls record.
- ◆ The receiving phone cannot receive a voice or videophone call during remote monitoring. Voice calls or videophone calls made to the receiving phone during remote monitoring are logged as missed calls in the Received calls record, and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- ◆ When the FOMA terminal is folded during remote monitoring, the terminal operates as specified in "Setting when folded". However, when the attached stereo earphone (sample) is connected to the FOMA terminal, the "Setting when folded" specification is ignored and a substitute image is sent to the other party when the FOMA terminal is folded.
- ◆ The cameras cannot be switched on the receiving phone during remote monitoring.

Ending remote monitoring

1



The call duration appears and the remote monitoring ends.

You can also end remote monitoring by pressing  on the receiving phone.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones. If you inconvenience others when using the FOMA terminal, you may be punished by respective laws or bylaws (such as Public Nuisance Laws).

● Push-to-Talk

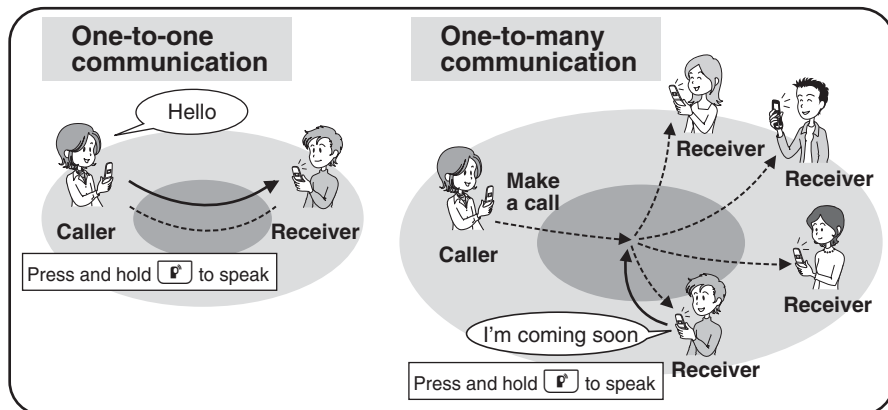
What is Push-to-Talk?		98
Making a Push-to-Talk Call	Make PushTalk	99
Receiving a Push-to-Talk Call	Receive PushTalk	100
Ending a Push-to-Talk Call	End PushTalk	101
Adding an Entry to the PushTalk Phonebook	Add to PushTalk	102
Using the PushTalk Phonebook to Make a PTT Call		103
Deleting an Entry from the PushTalk Phonebook	Delete PushTalk	105
Making the Push-to-Talk Settings	PushTalk setting	106

What is Push-to-Talk?

Press the Push-to-Talk (hereinafter referred to as PTT) key () to open the PushTalk phonebook. You can talk with one or more parties (up to five people including yourself) simply by selecting the parties and then pressing . The PushTalk charge will apply each time you press . The speaker can keep speaking while pressing and holding , and the other members only listen while he/she is speaking.

The screen displays the status of the members, e.g. who is speaking now.

- This feature is useful when you want to contact group members or relay a short message.
- The compatible models are 902i, 902iS series, SO902iWP+, SH902iSL, P702i, P702iD, and SH702iS.

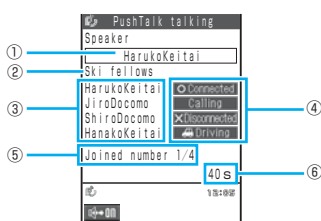


● PushTalkPlus

PushTalkPlus allows a call among up to 20 people including yourself, using the pre-registered network phonebook. This service makes the Push-to-Talk more useful, e.g. you can check the status of members. The PushTalkPlus requires a separate subscription.

- For more details about how to use the PushTalkPlus, etc., see the guide you receive at the time of subscription.

● Guide to the PushTalk talking screen



- ① Current speaker's name^{*1}
(“Myself” appears when you are speaking, or “?” when the speaker is unknown.)
- ② Group name specified at the time of dialing
(It is left blank if a group is not specified)
- ③ Participants' names (excluding yourself)^{*1}
- ④ Status of members^{*2}
Calling: Calling the party.
Connected: The party is participating.
Disconnected: There is no response from the party, or the party hung up. Otherwise, the party's terminal is out of range or turned off.
Driving: The party's terminal is in Public mode (Driving mode).
- ⑤ Number of participants (excluding yourself)
- ⑥ Time elapsed after starting the PTT call

^{*1} : If the caller sets “Caller ID setting” (p.106) or “Set Caller ID” (p.104) to “ON”, the names stored in the phonebook appear. If the participant is not stored in the phonebook, the phone number appears. If the caller sets “Caller ID setting” or “Set Caller ID” to “OFF”, “User unset” appears on the receivers.

^{*2} : “Calling”, “Driving” and “Disconnected” appear only if three or more people are talking.

NOTE

- ◆ If the caller sets “Caller ID setting” (p.106) or “Set Caller ID” (p.104) to “ON” and then makes a PTT call, the participants' phone numbers are notified to all the other participants. Since phone numbers are important information, be careful when disclosing them.

Making a Push-to-Talk Call

- ◆ Dialing makes a one-to-one call between you and the other party. To make a group call, use the PushTalk phonebook and dial. → p.103

1 Enter the other party's phone number



When the other party answers the call, the participation tone sounds and the "PushTalk talking" screen appears.

■ To switch to hands-free

- ▶ Press () while making a PTT call or during the PTT call
- Hands-free → p.63



3 To end the call, press

Ending a PTT call → p.101

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot make a PTT call during a voice call, videophone call or data communication.
- ◆ Making a PTT call during i-mode communication disconnects the i-mode communication. Making a PTT call while running an i-appli causes the i-appli to be exited.
- ◆ When a voice call is received during a PTT call, the operation follows the "PushTalk arrival act" settings. → p.106
- ◆ When receiving a videophone call, PTT call or 64K data communication during a PTT call, the missed record will be registered and the current PTT call will continue.
- ◆ The PTT call is unavailable for an emergency call (110, 118, 119).

● Speaking during a PTT call

1 During a PTT call ▶ Keep holding

The signal tone sounds indicating that you have the right to speak now.
An error tone sounds if you cannot get the right to speak, e.g. while another member is speaking.

2 Keep holding to speak

Keep holding after you start holding in Step 1 until you finish speaking.
Releasing ends your speech, which means that another participant can speak now.

NOTE

- ◆ The other participants hear your voice only while you press and hold to have the right to speak. Releasing releases the right to speak, and the release tone sounds.
- ◆ The speaker's name appears on the screen during the speech.
- ◆ The time is limited for speaking each time you have the right. A signal tone sounds when the time limit approaches and the right expires when the time limit is reached.
- ◆ If nobody gets the right to speak for a given time, the PTT call ends.
- ◆ During a PTT call, press (HOME) or (MEMO/CHECK) to adjust the volume (6 levels).
- ◆ Even if a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, press and hold to speak.
- ◆ When a participant presses and a confirmation tone sounds, the speaker is charged for the PushTalk charge (each time he/she has the right to speak).

● Other ways to make a call

The following are also available for making a PTT call:

Use the PushTalk phonebook	If members are registered to the PushTalk phonebook, you can select and dial up to four members. → p.103
Select a group	Selecting a group stored in the PushTalk phonebook allows you to make a call to all the members of the group. → p.104

Use the phonebook*	Select a phone number stored in the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (Phone) or of the FOMA card (UIM). ▶ Phonebook list screen (p.115)/Phonebook detail screen (p.115) ▶ Select a phone number then press
Use Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls	"Using the records of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls" → p.100
Use the Phone To function*	"Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions" → p.229

* : Only one-to-one calls can be made to other parties.

Using the records of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls

- The Push-to-Talk records of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls are registered separately for one-to-one calls and for group calls.
- A group call is saved as one record to the Redial, Dialed calls or Received calls.
- The following are the functions that can be launched from each record: (A: Available, U: Unavailable)

Item	One-to-one call record (, , etc.)	Group call record (, , etc.)
Make a one-to-one PTT call	A	A*3
Make a group PTT call**2	U	A
Make a voice call/video phone call	A	U
Add to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook	A	A

*1 : You can make a call to the same members, or select members in the group.

*2 : Even if you make a "Disconnected" response to an incoming call, you can use the Received calls to join the call if other members keep talking. → p.101

*3 : Selecting "Select PushTalk" from the Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls function menu and then selecting only one member will result in a one-to-one call.

<Receive PushTalk>

Receiving a Push-to-Talk Call

Answer and join an incoming PTT call.

- Receiving a PTT call rings a tone, flashes the incoming call lamp and displays the "PushTalk call" screen.
- The "PushTalk call" screen displays the names of the caller and other members (in case of group call).

1 A PTT call incoming ▶

and are also available to answer the call.

Answering the call sounds the participation tone.

Speaking during a PTT call → p.99

■ To reject the call (To make a "Disconnected" response)

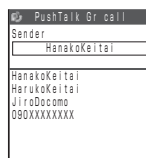
▶ Press while receiving a call

Even if you make a "Disconnected" response to an incoming call, you can join the call later on if other members keep talking. → p.101

■ To switch to hands-free

▶ Press () during a PTT call

Hands-free → p.63



2 To end the call, press

Ending a PTT call → p.101

NOTE

- ◆ While "Any key answer" is set, the following keys are also available to answer the call: , to , to , .
- ◆ Pressing (MEMO/CHECK) or disconnects an incoming call ("quick message" is unavailable). Pressing sets the manner mode. Doing so causes a "Disconnected" response.
- ◆ A "Disconnected" response can also be made by launching the function menu while receiving a PTT call and then selecting "Call rejection".
- ◆ The FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when the Public mode (Driving mode) is set. If the call is one-to-many, "Driving" appears on the other members' screens indicating that you are driving.

- ◆ When the FOMA terminal is folded, you can answer an incoming call in hands-free mode by pressing any one of (HOME), (ASSIST).
- ◆ If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, pressing the switch also allows you to answer a call.
- ◆ When receiving a PTT call, pressing does not allow "On hold". Doing so causes a "Disconnected" response.
- ◆ A "Disconnected" response will be made to a call from a phone number specified in "Call rejection" or "Reject unknown".
- ◆ You cannot answer a PTT call incoming during a voice call, videophone call, PTT call or data communication. If the current call is a voice call or PTT call, the missed call record is registered.
- ◆ If a PTT call is received during i-mode communication, the operation follows the "Set i-mode arrival act" settings.
→ p.106

● Automatically answering an incoming PTT call <Auto answer setting>

Default setting
OFF

You can set to automatically answer an incoming PTT call in hands-free mode.

- Setting the Auto answer setting to "ON" sets the hands-free ON when answering automatically no matter whether the FOMA terminal is folded, causing the voices to come out of the speaker.

1 PushTalk phonebook screen (p.103) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "PushTalk setting" ▶ "Auto answer setting"

Select "ON" or "OFF".

NOTE

- ◆ The "ON" setting is unavailable in manner mode.
- ◆ While the Public mode (Driving mode) is set, you cannot answer an incoming call regardless of the "Auto answer setting", but the participants will know that you are driving.
- ◆ The "Auto answer setting" set to "ON" has priority over the settings of "Automatic answer" or "Ring time setting" (p.106) under the PushTalk setting.

● Joining a PTT call in progress

Follow the step below to join a PTT call in progress later on if you make a "Disconnected" response after receiving the PTT call or if you miss the call while the Public mode (Driving mode) is set:

1 Received calls screen (p.67) ▶ Use to select a PTT call, then press

The "PushTalk talking" screen (p.98) appears.

NOTE

- ◆ If other members continue a PTT call after you leave the call, follow the step above to join (rejoin) the call in progress.
- ◆ You cannot join a call in progress if it is one-to-one or if it is already finished. In this case, you make a PTT call (p.99) to parties selected in the step above.

<End PushTalk>

Ending a Push-to-Talk Call

1 During a PTT call ▶

■ If you made a call

Pressing ends the PTT call and disconnects all the participants.

■ If you received a call

If it is a group call, pressing does not end the call and the call continues, but the participants will know that you left the call.

If other members continue a PTT call after you leave the call, you can join (rejoin) the call in progress.

→ p.101

When the caller presses , the PTT call ends and all the participants are disconnected.

NOTE

- ◆ A confirmation tone sounds when one of the participants leaves the call.
- ◆ When all the participants other than the caller leave the call, the PTT call ends.
- ◆ If "Setting when folded" (p.106) is set to "End the call", a PTT call ends when the FOMA terminal is folded. When the attached stereo earphone (sample) is attached, however, communication continues.

- ◆ When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, holding down the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer causes PTT call ending.

<Add to PushTalk>

Adding an Entry to the PushTalk Phonebook

- Copy members (phone numbers, etc.) stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook to the PushTalk phonebook.
- Add phone numbers to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook beforehand. → p.111
- Up to 700 members can be added.

1 On the standby screen▶

The “PushTalk phonebook” screen (p.103) appears.

2 (New)▶ Search for a phonebook entry to add

Searching the phonebook (Selecting the search method) → p.116

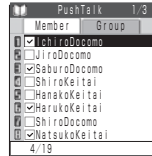
3 Display the Phonebook detail screen▶ Use to select a phone number to add

A screen appears asking whether to add to the PushTalk phonebook.

■ To add from the phonebook list screen

▶ Highlight a phone number and press  (Finish)

If two or more phone numbers are stored in the phonebook entry, the first phone number is added to the PushTalk phonebook.



Member list

4 “YES”

A new member is added to the member list.

■ If a phone number is already stored in the selected memory number

A message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing one. Select “YES” to overwrite, otherwise “NO”.

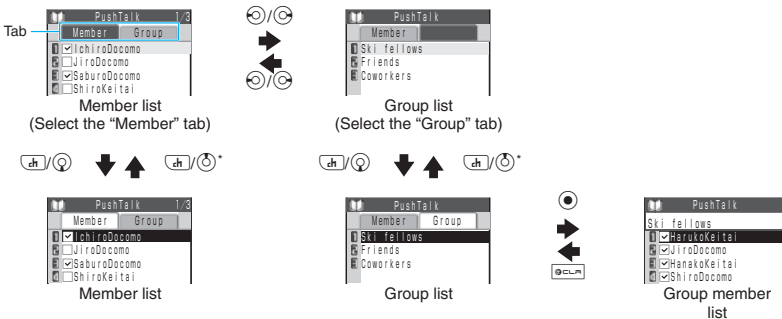
NOTE

- ◆ Members in the member list appear as follows:
 - When a member is registered to the member list or added to the group, the registered/added member appears on the top.
 - When you display the PushTalk phonebook screen, the members appear in last-used order.
- ◆ You can also add a member by selecting “Add to PushTalk” from the “Phonebook detail” function menu. → p.118

Adding a member to a group

A “group” created with members in the PushTalk phonebook is useful when you want to make a group call.

- You can change the PushTalk phonebook display as follows:



* : The display mode is available only when you select the first item on the first page of the tab.

NOTE

- ◆ The neuropointer is also available to select or change tabs.
- ◆ Use  to change pages on the same tab. Use  (HOME) and  (MEMO/CHECK) to select a tab.

● Creating a group

- Up to 10 groups can be created. A group name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 21 single-byte characters.

1 PushTalk screen (p.103) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Group setting” ▶ “Compose group”

2 Enter a group name and press

A new group name is added to the group list.

● Adding a member to the group

- Add a member to the member list beforehand. → p.102
- A group can contain up to 19 members, but a call can be made to only up to four members of the group.

<Example: Add from the group list>

1 On the group list ▶ Use to highlight a group, then press (FUNC) ▶ “Group setting” ▶ “Add member”

The “select group member” screen appears.

2 Use to select a member ▶ (Finish)

The selected member is added to the group.

NOTE

- ◆ Group members appear as follows:
 - When a member is added to the group, the added member appears on the top.
 - When you display the PushTalk phonebook screen then the group member list, the members appear in last-used order.
- ◆ A member cannot be added to the group if the phone number is the same as that of an existing member.
- ◆ A member can be added separately to different groups.

Using the PushTalk Phonebook to Make a PTT Call

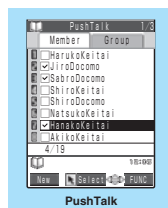
Select members from the PushTalk phonebook and make a PTT call.

- You can make a call to a maximum of four members.

1 On the standby screen ▶

The “PushTalk phonebook” screen appears.

You can also display the screen by selecting  ▶  ▶ “PushTalk”.



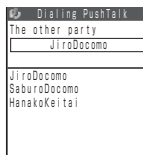
Function menu ▶ p.104

2 Use to select a checkbox (☐) ▶

 to  are also available to select the corresponding checkboxes. A PTT call will be made to the members selected.

When one of the other parties answers the call, the participation tone sounds and the “PushTalk talking” screen appears. You can check the status of the members on this screen. → p.98

Speaking during a PTT call → p.99



PushTalk talking

■ To check the selected members

▶ Before pressing  to make a call, select  (FUNC) ▶ “View member”

■ To switch to hands-free

▶ Press  () while making a PTT call or during the PTT call
Hands-free → p.63

NOTE

- ◆ If no checkboxes are selected, a call will be made to the highlighted member.
- ◆ When you select two or more parties to make a call, those parties will be saved as one record to the Redial/Dialed calls. You can use the record to make another PTT call. → p.100
- ◆ If all the other members receiving the call are "Disconnected", the PTT call will end.

Making a call from a group

1 On the group list▶Use to highlight a group, then press

A call is made to all the members of the highlighted group.

■ To select members from the group

- ▶ Select a group▶Use  to deselect members you do not want to dial from the group member list▶

NOTE

- ◆ If five or more members are registered to the selected group, a call cannot be made. In this case, select up to four members in the group, so that you can make a call.
- ◆ If a group is selected, a call is not made to the members stored as secret data. To make a call also to the members stored as secret data, set "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode".
- ◆ In Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the names of members stored as secret data in the phonebook do not appear on the dialing screen.

Function menu (PushTalk phonebook screen)

- The options available depend on the member list, group list, group member list or selected tab.

New	Copies a phone number from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook to the PushTalk phonebook.
Set Caller ID	Select "ON" or "OFF" for whether to notify receiving and connecting members of your and other members' phone numbers. ■ To release "ON" or "OFF" of "Set Caller ID" ▶ "Cancel prefix" If "Cancel prefix" is selected, the "Caller ID setting" under "PushTalk setting" applies.
View member	Displays a list of members.
PushTalk setting	Makes the Push-to-Talk settings. → p.106
Network connection	Connects to the network to use the PushTalkPlus. → p.98 Only a PushTalkPlus subscriber can use this function.
Sort	Uses the method to sort the lists.*1
Group setting	Creates a new group, adds a member to the group, or edits a group name. → p.102
Release all	Deselects all members in the member list/group member list.
No. of PushTalk	Checks the number of members, the number of groups and the number of members stored in each group.*2
Delete	Deletes an entry from the PushTalk phonebook. → p.105

*1 : Sorting in Reading order is unavailable in the group list.

*2 : To change displays, use ,  (HOME) and  (MEMO/CHECK).

NOTE

<No. of PushTalk>

- ◆ In "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode", the number of secret members also can be checked.

Deleting an Entry from the PushTalk Phonebook

Delete an entry from the PushTalk phonebook.

- A member deleted from the PushTalk phonebook is not deleted from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.

1 On the member list ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Delete” ▶ Select any item

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted member.
Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple members.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the members.

NOTE

- ◆ If a member to be deleted are registered to some groups, the member will be deleted from all the groups containing the member.

Deleting a PushTalk group

1 On the group list ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Delete” ▶ Select any item

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted group.
Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple members.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the groups.

NOTE

- ◆ All the members stored in the group are also to be deleted. The members are not deleted from the member list.

Deleting a group member

1 On the group member list ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Delete” ▶ Select any item

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted group member.
Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple members.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the group members in the group.

NOTE

- ◆ The members are deleted only from the current group. They are not deleted from another group or from the member list.

Making the Push-to-Talk Settings

Make the Push-to-Talk settings.

- After making the settings, press  to return to the "PushTalk phonebook" screen.

1 PushTalk phonebook screen (p.103) (FUNC) "PushTalk setting" ▶ Select any item

Auto answer setting (default: OFF)	Sets whether to automatically answer an incoming PTT call in hands-free mode. → p.101	
Ring time setting (default: 30 seconds)	▶ Enter the ring time (01-60 seconds) The ring tone keeps ringing for the specified time. When the specified time has elapsed, a "Disconnected" response is automatically made and the ring tone stops. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the currently displayed time, press  .	
Setting when folded	Selects an operation to be performed when the FOMA terminal is folded during a PTT call.	
	Speaker talk (default)	Continues a call in hands-free mode. When the FOMA terminal is opened, the status reverts to before it was folded.
	End the call	Ends a call. It is the same operation as pressing  . Ending a PTT call → p.101
Caller ID setting (default: OFF)	Sets whether to notify all the members' phone numbers to all the members who have received the call each time you make a PTT call.	
Set i-mode arrival act (default: PushTalk preferred)	Sets whether to answer an incoming PTT call during i-mode communication. Select "PushTalk preferred" or "i-mode preferred".	
PushTalk arrival act	Sets how to deal with an incoming voice call while making/receiving a PTT call or during the PTT call.	
	Answer	Moves to the incoming voice call screen. The incoming voice call screen does not appear while making/receiving a PTT call. "Receiving a voice call during a PTT call" → p.107
	Call Rejection (default)	Rejects an incoming voice call.
	Voice Mail	Connects an incoming voice call to the Voice Mail service if you have subscribed to the service. The caller is connected to the service center regardless of whether the "Voice Mail" setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate".
	Call Forwarding	Forwards an incoming voice call to the designated forwarding number if you have subscribed to the Call Forwarding service. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the "Call Forwarding" setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate".

NOTE

<Ring time setting>

- ◆ If "Set mute seconds" under "Ring time(sec.)" is set to "ON", the ring tone sounds for the ring time specified in "Ring time setting" after the specified mute time has elapsed.
- ◆ When the attached stereo earphone (sample) is attached, priority is given to the shorter time setting, "Ring time setting" or "Automatic answer".

<Setting when folded>

- ◆ This setting is available only for Push-to-Talk and does not follow "Setting when folded" (p.66).
- ◆ If "Speaker talk" is set, folding the FOMA terminal sets Hands-free ON regardless of the manner mode setting.
- ◆ If the attached stereo earphone (sample) is connected, this function is disabled and even folding the FOMA terminal does not change the communication status.

<Caller ID setting>

- ◆ This setting is available only for making a PTT call and does not follow "Caller ID Notification" (p.47) or "186/184" setting (p.60) of the Network services.
- ◆ If "Notify Caller ID" (p.51) or "Set Caller ID" (p.104) is selected from the function menu or if Notify/Not notify appears on the Redial/Dialed calls detail screen, each setting will apply.

<Set i-mode arrival act>

- ◆ Setting “i-mode preferred” does not register an incoming PTT call to the Received calls.
- ◆ If “PushTalk preferred” is selected, receiving an incoming PTT call disconnects i-mode communication.

<PushTalk arrival act>

- ◆ If “Answer” is selected, receiving a voice call while speaking interrupts your speech. Answering the incoming voice call ends the PTT call.

Receiving a voice call during a PTT call

Setting “PushTalk arrival act” to “Answer” beforehand allows you to receive a voice call during a PTT call.

- 1 When receiving a voice call during a PTT call, press  or **
The PTT call ends, and the voice in-call screen appears.

- 2 To end the call, press **

■ To continue a PTT call

Even when “PushTalk arrival act” is set to “Answer”, you can continue a PTT call by selecting “Call Rejection”, “Call Forwarding” or “Voice Mail” from the function menu of the ringing screen.

Ringing function menu → p.64

NOTE

- ◆ Pressing  on the voice call ringing screen (the PTT call ends) then pressing  or  also switch the screen to the voice in-call.

● Using the Phonebook

Phonebooks Available with a FOMA Terminal	110
Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone)	
Phonebook.....	Add to phonebook 111
Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook	
.....	Add to UIM phonebook 112
Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records	
.....	113
Renaming Groups.....	Group setting 114
Making a Call from the Phonebook.....	Search phonebook 115
Editing a Phonebook Entry	Edit phonebook 119
Deleting a Phonebook Entry	Delete data 119
Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card	UIM operation 120
Checking the Phonebook Storage Status	122
Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone	
Number and Mail Address	Discern connect/Discern group 122
Using Dialing Shortcuts	Two-touch dialing 124
Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites.....	Automatic display 124

Phonebooks Available with a FOMA Terminal

Your FOMA terminal contains two phonebooks. One is the phonebook in the FOMA terminal (Phone) itself, for which you can set a range of functions, and the other is the UIM (FOMA card) phonebook, which can also be used in other FOMA terminals. The two phonebooks can each be used differently, as needed.

- Besides phonebooks described above, you can create the "PushTalk" phonebook available for Push-to-Talk calls. Use the entries of FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook to create the PushTalk phonebook.
→ p.102

Differences between the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and UIM phonebook

■ Stored data

The table below shows the different data storage capabilities of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and UIM phonebook.

Stored data	FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook	UIM phonebook
Number of entries	Holds up to 700 entries.	Holds up to 50 entries.
Groups*1	Data can be sorted into groups 00 to 19.	Data can be sorted into groups 00 to 10.
Phone number storage*2	The phonebook will hold up to 2,800 phone numbers in total with up to 4 numbers per entry. This allows information such as the contact's mobile phone number and work number to be included in the same entry. One number selected from an entry can also be stored in the PushTalk phonebook.	Only one address can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 24 icons "  ", "  ", etc. for stored entries, allowing quick identification of contact's mobile phone number or work number.	Icons cannot be selected. The "  " icon is automatically assigned.
E-mail address storage	The phonebook will hold up to 2,100 e-mail addresses in total with up to 3 addresses per entry. This allows the contact's home and work addresses to be included in one entry.	Only one address can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 5 icons "  ", "  ", etc. for stored entries, allowing quick identification of the contact's home or work address.	Icons cannot be selected. The "  " icon is automatically assigned.
Image storage	One still image and one "Chara-den" character can be stored per entry, up to a total of 100 of each for the whole phonebook.	—
Other data storage	Each phonebook entry can include one contact's name, reading, ZIP code, street address, birthday and memo. This information, together with the contact's phone numbers and e-mail addresses are stored as a single phonebook entry.	The contact's name and reading can be stored.

*1 : You can rename "Group 01" to "Group 19" ("Group 01" to "Group 10" in the UIM phonebook). Renaming them as you prefer beforehand enables you to categorize entries more efficiently. → p.114

*2 : You can enter 0-9, #, *, + and pause (p) in the phonebook. To use a sub-address (p.62), enter *.

■ Features of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook

The following useful functions can be used with entries stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook:

- Specifying memory numbers (001 to 009) enables you to use two-touch dialing to make phone calls by pressing just 2 keys. → p.124
- You can use the "Discern connect" and "Discern group" functions to specify the settings of dialing and receiving calls for each group, phone number or e-mail address. → p.122
- You can use "Restrictions" to place restrictions on incoming and outgoing calls for individual phone numbers. → p.172
- You can use "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode" to store phonebook entries that you want to keep private as secret data. → p.161
- "Setting your secret code in the phonebook" → p.119

■ Features of the UIM phonebook

Because UIM phonebook entries are stored on the FOMA card (UIM), you can transfer your phonebook entries to another FOMA terminal simply by switching the FOMA card (UIM). This enables you to use the same phonebook in multiple FOMA terminals.

Displaying names

■ Voice and videophone calls



When you receive a call from a caller who notifies the caller ID stored in the phonebook, the caller's name and phone number appear.



If there is a still image stored in the phonebook entry and "Disp. PH-book image" is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal also displays the image. However, it may take time to display the image depending on the data size.

The caller's name is also displayed in the "Received calls", "Dialed calls" and "Redial" records.

■ i-mode mail and SMS

When you receive an i-mode mail from someone whose e-mail address is stored in the phonebook or receive an SMS from someone whose phone number is stored in the phonebook, a FOMA terminal displays the sender's name on the Received mail list and detail screens. When you send an i-mode mail or SMS to that person, his or her name is shown on the Sent mail list and detail screens. The person's name also appears on the "Sent address" or "Received address" list.

<Add to phonebook>

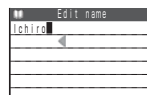
Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook

- Always enter a name in the "Name" field. An entry without a name cannot be stored in the phonebook.

1 On the standby screen▶▶▶(FUNC)▶▶▶"Add to phonebook"▶▶▶"Phone"▶▶▶Enter a name

A name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs.

A name can contain up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters.



2 Check the reading

■ If a reading is incorrect

Correct the reading using katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols.

A reading can contain up to 32 single-byte characters.

"Search reading" in "Search phonebook" uses the reading stored here.

3 Set the respective parameters▶▶▶(Finish)

Group	▶Select a group Selects a group number between "00" and "19". If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to group 00.
Phone number	▶Enter a phone number▶Select an icon Enters a phone number and selects an icon. A phone number can be up to 26 digits. Once you have stored the first phone number, the " <Not stored>" option appears on the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional phone number. When storing a number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.
Mail address	▶Enter an e-mail address▶Select an icon Enters an e-mail address and selects an icon. An e-mail address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Once you have stored the first e-mail address, the " <Not stored>" option appears on the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address.
Address	▶Enter a ZIP code▶Enter a street address Enters a ZIP code and street address. A ZIP code can consist of up to 7 single-byte numbers. A street address can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters, consisting of kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.

 Birthday	▶ Enter a birthday Enters a birthday (year, month and day). Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.
 Memorandums	▶ Enter a memo Enters a memo (short note). A memo can contain up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, and pictographs.
 Image	Selects an image displayed when you receive a call from the contact. Selecting "Photo mode" activates the "Photo mode" screen on which you can shoot a still image. → p.187
 Chara-den	Selects a Chara-den character sent as a substitute image during a videophone call.
 Memory No.	▶ Enter a memory number A memory number is automatically* assigned when an entry is stored in the phonebook, but can be changed to any number between 000 and 699, as desired. Press  or  to automatically* assign an available number.

* : The least of available numbers between 010 and 699 is assigned. If there are no numbers available between 010 and 699, the available one between 000 and 009 is assigned.

NOTE

- ◆ If you enter “わ , ㇿ” (double-byte, lower case) in a name, the reading will be displayed as “ㇿ” (single-byte, upper case). Only when you press dial keys in Alphabetic input mode or Numeric input mode to enter a symbol in a name, the symbol appears in the reading. Pictographs do not appear in readings.
- ◆ Phonebook entries stored using symbols or pictographs may not be displayed correctly e.g. when data are transferred.
- ◆ Include the correct domain name when storing an e-mail address. Domain name is the part of address that follows the “@” symbol.
(E.g.) docomo.taro.△△@docomo.ne.jp
- ◆ To store an e-mail address in the “phonenumber@docomo.ne.jp” format, enter only the phone number as the e-mail address.
- ◆ If you modify or delete the original data of an image or Chara-den that is stored in the phonebook, the data stored in the phonebook is also modified or deleted.
- ◆ To have a stored image displayed when you receive a call, set “Disp. PH-book image” to “ON”. → p.140
- ◆ When you receive a call from the phone number for which an image is stored in the phonebook and the image size is larger than the display area set in “Calling” in “Display setting”, the width and length of the image is reduced at the same ratio. When an image is smaller than the set display area, it is centered on the screen.
- ◆ When you select “Move to top” from the function menu while viewing multiple phone numbers/mail addresses stored in a phonebook entry, the highlighted phone number/mail address is stored as the first.

<Priority sequence for Chara-den setting>

- ◆ The priority order for Chara-den settings is as follows:
 - ① Chara-den setup in Discern connect → p.122
 - ② Chara-den setup in Discern group → p.122
 - ③ Chara-den stored in the phonebook entry
 - ④ “Substitute image” in “Select image” → p.89

<Add to UIM phonebook>

Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook

- Always enter a name in the “Name” field. An entry without a name cannot be stored in the phonebook.

1 On the standby screen▶▶ (FUNC)▶ “Add to phonebook”▶ “UIM”▶ Enter a name

A name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols.

A name consisting of up to 10 double-byte or 21 single-byte characters (including some single-byte symbols) can be stored.



2 Check the reading

■ If a reading is incorrect

Correct the reading using double-byte katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols.

Up to 12 double-byte or 25 single-byte characters (including some single-byte symbols) can be used.

“Search reading” in “Search phonebook” uses the reading stored here.

3 Set the respective parameters▶ (Finish)

 Group	▶ Select a group Selects a group number between “00” and “10”. If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to group 00.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.371

 Phone number	▶ Enter a phone number Enter a phone number. Phone numbers up to 20 digits long can be stored on a blue FOMA card (UIM) or up to 26 digits long on a green FOMA card (UIM). When storing a number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.
 Mail address	▶ Enter an e-mail address Enters an e-mail address. An e-mail address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols.

NOTE

- ◆ If you enter “わ, フ” (double-byte, lower case) in a name, the reading will be displayed as “ワ” (double-byte, upper case). However, “フ” (double-byte, lower case) can be entered in a reading. Only when you press dial keys in Alphabetic input mode or Numeric input mode to enter a symbol in a name, the symbol appears in the reading.
- ◆ Include the correct domain name when storing an e-mail address. Domain name is the part of address that follows the “@” symbol.
(E.g.) docomo.taro.△△@docomo.ne.jp
- ◆ To store an e-mail address in the “phonenumber@docomo.ne.jp” format, enter only the phone number as the e-mail address.

When phonebook editing is interrupted**1 On the standby screen ▶ ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Add to phonebook” ▶ “Phone” or “UIM” ▶ “Recall”**

If a low voltage alarm sounds during editing or you started up a new Tools group task using multi task, the interrupted phonebook editing can be restarted.
If you cancel the re-editing without storing the edited data, the data is deleted.



- **To store a new phonebook entry**
▶ “New”

NOTE

- ◆ Only the latest edited data can be saved temporarily.
- ◆ If you receive a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call while editing the phonebook, you can leave the edited phonebook data to answer the call.
During a voice call or Push-to-Talk call, you can return to the phonebook edit screen by pressing  (MULTI) to display the task change screen (p.400) and selecting “ Add to phonebook”. After a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call ends, the original edit screen reappears.

Important

- It is recommended to back up the information stored in the phonebook onto a miniSD memory card or note the information down separately. If you own a PC, the Data Link Software (p.475) and FOMA USB Cable (optional) are available to back up the phonebook data onto your PC.
- Stored information can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. If you wish to copy the data for each phonebook entry onto a new model at an authorized NTT DoCoMo facility such as a DoCoMo shop, it may not be possible to copy the data stored on the FOMA terminal depending on the specifications of the new model.
Note that NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever for the loss of data such as stored phonebook entries.
It is recommended to use the Data Link Software to back up phonebook data onto a PC.

Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records

You can add information to the phonebook from the “Received calls”, “Dialed calls”, “Redial”, “Received address”, “Sent address”, “Access reader” or the site screen. You can also add a dialed phone number to the phonebook.

<Example: Adding information from the “Received calls” record to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook>

1 Received calls screen (p.67) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Add to phonebook”

- **Using the Redial/Dialed/Received calls records of Push-to-Talk calls (group calls)**
▶ “Add to phonebook” ▶ Use  to select a party (phone number) to add to phonebook

Continued on next page

2 “Phone”

- To add to the UIM phonebook
 - ▶ “UIM”

3 “Add”▶ Locate a phonebook entry to which you want to add the information

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.116

- To store a new phonebook entry
 - ▶ “New”
- To add information to the UIM
 - ▶ “New” or “Overwrite”

4 Display the phonebook detail screen▶ (Select)

The phone number is automatically entered and the phonebook edit screen appears.
Editing the phonebook → p.119

5 Press (Finish) when you finish editing

- If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data
 - ▶ “YES”

NOTE

- ◆ The “Notify Caller ID” setting (ON or OFF) displayed in the “Dialed calls” and “Redial” records is not stored in the phonebook.
- ◆ You cannot add received addresses to which replies cannot be sent to the phonebook.
- ◆ The predetermined number of characters are stored on a phonebook entry and remains are deleted. Characters that cannot be stored may be replaced by spaces.

<Group setting>

MENU26

Renaming Groups

Default setting

FOMA terminal (Phone): Groups 01-19 UIM: Groups 01-10

You can assign the stored phonebook entries to groups according to the contact's role (“Work”, “Friends”, etc.) or by hobby (“Baseball”, “Football”, etc.). This allows you to use the phonebook as if it were divided into different volumes according to purpose.

The table below shows the groups that can be renamed and the number of characters that can be stored.

	Renamable groups	Max. no. of characters
FOMA terminal (Phone)	Groups 01-19	10 double-byte or 21 single-byte
FOMA card (UIM)	Groups 01-10	10 double-byte or 21 single-byte

- Group 00 cannot be renamed.

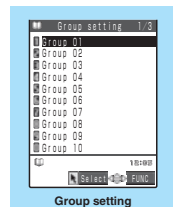
1 On the standby screen▶ (FUNC)▶ “Group setting”

The “Group setting” screen appears.

2 Select a group▶ Select a new group name

The “ ” icon appears next to UIM groups.

If the same name is assigned for groups on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and UIM, they appear as separate groups.



Function menu▶p.114

Function menu (Group setting screen)

Edit group name	Edits a group name.
Discern group	“Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address” → p.122
Reset group name	Resets the changed group name to the default.

NOTE

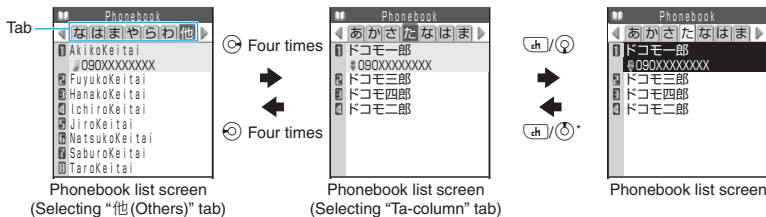
- ◆ Resetting a group name does not cancel the “Discern group” settings specified for the group.
- ◆ If there are no characters entered in the group name to be changed, it returns to the default group name.

Making a Call from the Phonebook

You can make a call quickly by selecting the other party's entry from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook or UIM phonebook.

- When tabs appear on Phonebook list screen, you can switch the display as follows.

<Example: Switching tabs from “他 (Others)” to “Ta-column” in Alphabet tab display>



* : The display mode is available only when you select the first phonebook entry on the first page of the tab.

NOTE

- ◆ The Neuropointer is also available to select or change tabs.
- ◆ Use to change pages on the same tab. Use (HOME) and (MEMO/CHECK) to select a tab.
- ◆ When a tab is selected in alphabet tab display, you can press the corresponding key to a column to switch to that tab. For keys corresponding to columns, see “Search column” (p.116) in the search method list.
- ◆ When a tab is selected in the Memory No. display, you can key in the Memory No. directly to display the phonebook entry.
- ◆ When a tab is selected in the Group tab display, you can key in the Group No. directly to select the Group tab (to specify a group registered in UIM, add “*” before the Group No.).

Opening the other party's entry to make a call

1 On the standby screen

The “Phonebook” screen appears.

■ To make a call on the list screen

▶ Highlight an entry to which you want to make a call and press or .

Press to make a voice call or to make a videophone call.

If the selected phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the call is made to the first number.

■ To switch tabs

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Change Display”

You can select either of “Alphabet”, “Memory No.” or “Group”.



2 Select a desired phonebook entry

The “Phonebook detail” screen appears.

3 or

Press to make a voice call or to make a videophone call to the currently displayed number.

■ If multiple phone numbers are stored in the same entry

Use to display other stored phone numbers.



Function menu ▶ p.117

NOTE

- ◆ You can switch the first phone number of a phonebook entry that contains multiple phone numbers. → p.118
- ◆ Press during a call to display the Search group screen, or to display the Search column screen.

<Search phonebook>

■ Viewing the search results

```

graph TD
    A["Japanese syllabled [reading beginning with a space, ア, ア, イ, イ, ……ン]"] --> B["Alphabetic letters [A, a, B, b…Z, z]"]
    B --> C["Numbers [0 to 9]"]
    C --> D["Symbols"]
    D --> E["Entries without reading"]
  
```

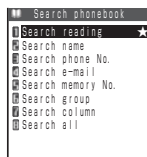
■ To display your preferred search

- A star (★) appears next to the preferred search method.

■ To cancel your preferred search method setting

- When a search ends, the “Phonebook” screen that meets the search criterion appears. “” appears for the UIM phonebook entries on the search result list screen.

Search method	Procedure and description
Search reading	▶Enter some of a reading▶  or  Enter a reading from the beginning in the order of family and first name. You do not need to enter the entire reading.
Search name	▶Enter part of a name▶  or  Start with the surname followed by the given name. You do not need to enter the entire name.
Search phone No.	▶Enter part of a phone number▶  or  You can search by entering either the first digits or any part of a phone number.
Search e-mail	▶Enter part of an e-mail address▶  or 
Search memory No.	▶Enter a 3-digit memory number You cannot search the UIM phonebook by memory number.
Search group	▶Select a desired group The UIM phonebook uses different groups from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.
Search column	▶Press the key for the “column” you want to search : Displays “a-column” tab : Displays “ka-column” tab : Displays “sa-column” tab : Displays “ta-column” tab : Displays “na-column” tab : Displays “ha-column” tab : Displays “ma-column” tab : Displays “ya-column” tab : Displays “ra-column” tab : Displays “wa-column” tab : Displays “他(others)” tab



Search method	Procedure and description
Search all	▶ Select a desired phonebook Displays the list of all the entries stored in the phonebook.

NOTE

- ◆ If you have not set a preferred search method, pressing  displays the Search phonebook screen with the last selected search method highlighted.

Function menu (phonebook screen)

- Available functions vary depending on search method or how the search is activated (e.g. activated on the standby screen), or the selection condition of tabs.

Add to phonebook	"Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → p.111, "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" → p.112	
Delete data	Deletes phonebook entries.	
	Delete this ^{*1}	Deletes the highlighted phonebook entry.
	Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐)▶  (Finish)▶ "YES" You can delete multiple phonebook entries.
	Delete all	▶ Enter your security code▶ "YES"▶ "YES" Deletes all the phonebook entries.
Sort ^{*2}	Sorts phonebook entries according to the specified criterion.	
Change Display	Switches tabs. You can select either of "Alphabet", "Memory No." or "Group".	
Discern connect	"Checking the Discern connect settings" → p.124	
Restrictions	"Checking the restriction settings" → p.173	
Group setting	"Renaming Groups" → p.114	
Copy to miniSD	Copies the phonebook data to the miniSD memory card.	
	Copy this ^{*1}	Copies the highlighted phonebook entry.
	Copy selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐)▶  (Finish)▶ "YES" You can copy the multiple phonebook entries.
	Copy all	▶ Enter your security code▶ "YES" Copies all the phonebook entries.
Send 1r data ^{*1}	"Transferring One Data at a Time" → p.385	
Send all 1r data	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time" → p.386	
No. of phonebook	Displays the phonebook storage status. → p.122	
Big font, Standard font	Changes the font size displayed in Phonebook list screen and Phonebook detail screen.	

*1 : Not available when tabs are displayed or selected.

*2 : Not available when tabs are displayed.

NOTE

- ◆ If you delete a phonebook entry that is also stored in the PushTalk phonebook, the entry is deleted from the member list or group member list in the PushTalk phonebook.
- ◆ If "Delete all" is performed, the UIM phonebook and PushTalk phonebook entries are also deleted.
- ◆ Selecting "Copy all" or "Copy selected" in "Copy to miniSD" also copies the storage information of PushTalk phonebook.

Function menu (phonebook detail screen)

Notify Caller ID	Selects whether to notify the other party of your caller ID, from "Don't notify" or "Notify caller". ■ To cancel "Don't notify" or "Notify caller" in the "Notify Caller ID" setting ▶ "Cancel prefix" When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID Notification" (p.47) setting applies.
Prefix numbers	▶ Select the prefix name to add "Setting Prefix Numbers" → p.61
Chaku-moji	"Making a call with a Chaku-moji message" → p.56

Int'l call	■ When “+” is prefixed (country code is added)*1 ▶ Select the IDD prefix code “+” is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■ When “+” is not prefixed (no country code is added) ▶ Select a country code ▶ Select the IDD prefix code The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → p.54	
Multi Number	“Multi Number” → p.431	
Discern connect	“Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address” → p.122	
Restrictions	“Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers” → p.172	
Edit phonebook	“Editing a Phonebook Entry” → p.119	
Move to top	Specifies the selected phone number/e-mail address as the first number/address when multiple phone number/e-mail addresses are stored in an entry.	
Add to PushTalk*2	Adds the entry to the PushTalk phonebook. → p.102	
Delete data	“Deleting a Phonebook Entry” → p.119	
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.149	
Compose message	“Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → p.247	
Compose SMS	“Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)” → p.288	
Send 1r data	“Transferring One Data at a Time” → p.385	
Send all 1r data	“Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time” → p.386	
Automatic display	“Specifying phone number to display automatically” → p.125	
Copy to miniSD	Copies the selected phonebook entry to the miniSD memory card.	
Copy name	Copies a name stored in the phonebook. The copied name can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” → p.450	
Copy phone number*3	Copies a phone number stored in the phonebook. The copied phone number can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” → p.450	
Secret code	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item “Setting your secret code in the phonebook” → p.119	
	Set code	▶ Enter a 4-digit number ▶ “YES” Sets your secret code.
	Check code	Displays the set secret code.
	Release settings	Cancels the set secret code.
Set secret*4	“Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of your Phonebook or Schedule” → p.161	
Copy to UIM*5	Copies phonebook data. “Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card” → p.120	
Connection speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from “64K” or “32K”.	
Select image	Sets an image to send during a videophone call. → p.89 Selecting “Release settings” cancels the setting of “My side” or “Chara-den”.	
Big font, Standard font	Changes the font size displayed in Phonebook list screen and Phonebook detail screen.	

*1 : “Int'l call” is unavailable when “+81” is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).

*2 : Not displayed for entries stored in the UIM phonebook.

*3 : Depending upon what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.

- If you have selected a mail address, “Copy mail add.” appears.
- If you have selected an address, “Copy address” appears.
- If you have selected a birthday, “Copy birthday” appears.
- If you have selected a memo, “Copy memorandums” appears.

*4 : If you have selected a secret phonebook entry, “Release secret” appears.

*5 : If you have selected a UIM phonebook entry, “Copy from UIM” appears.

NOTE

<Add to PushTalk>

◆ When an entry is added to the PushTalk phonebook, “” appears on the phonebook detail screen and “★” appears on the function menu.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.371

<Big font><Standard font>

- ◆ When “Big font” is selected, only the name appears large on the phonebook detail screen.

● Setting your secret code in the phonebook

For an e-mail address which is “phone number@docomo.ne.jp” with a secret code registered by the owner, you need to specify “phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp” as the e-mail address. If you set the secret code when adding the phonebook entry, the secret code will be added automatically when you search the phonebook and compose an i-mode Mail.

NOTE

- ◆ You can only set a secret code to e-mail address “phone number@docomo.ne.jp” or a phone number.
- ◆ You cannot set secret codes to UIM phonebook entries.
- ◆ Always set the correct secret code set by the owner.
- ◆ Do not set a secret code using this function if you already registered “phone number+secret code” or “phone number+secret code@docomo.ne.jp” as the e-mail address in a phonebook entry.

<Edit phonebook>

Editing a Phonebook Entry

- Readings cannot be corrected automatically when you edit the names.

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.115) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Edit phonebook” ▶ Edit each item

Edit the desired items using the same procedure as “Add to phonebook”.
Adding information to the phonebook → p.111

■ To assign a new memory number

▶  ▶ Enter a memory number (000 to 699) that has not already been stored

The original phonebook entry is left in its pre-edited state and the edited entry is stored as a new entry with a different memory number.

2 Press (Finish) when you finish editing ▶ “YES”

■ For a UIM phonebook entry

▶  (Finish) ▶ “Overwrite” or “Add”

Selecting “Overwrite” stores the edited information.

Selecting “Add” leaves the original phonebook entry unchanged and stores the edited entry as a new one.

NOTE

- ◆ If you edit a phonebook entry that is also stored in the PushTalk phonebook, the entry is automatically edited in the PushTalk phonebook.
- ◆ If you edit the memory number of an entry which is stored in the member list or group list in the PushTalk phonebook, the edited entry does not take over the storage information for the PushTalk phonebook.

<Delete data>

Deleting a Phonebook Entry

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.115) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Delete data” ▶ Select any item

Delete phone No.*	Deletes the selected phone number, e-mail address, street address, birthday, memo, image or Chara-den character.
Delete this	Deletes the phonebook entry displayed in detail.

- * : Depending upon what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.
- If you have selected a mail address, “Delete mail add.” appears.
 - If you have selected an address, “Delete address” appears.
 - If you have selected a birthday, “Delete birthday” appears.
 - If you have selected a memo, “Delete memorandums” appears.
 - If you have selected an image, “Delete image” appears.
 - If you have selected a Chara-den character, “Delete Chara-den” appears.

NOTE

- ◆ You can delete a phonebook entry on the phonebook screen. However, you cannot delete respective items stored in an entry.

- ◆ If multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are stored in a phonebook entry and the first phone number or mail address is deleted, the next phone number or mail address appears.
- ◆ If you select “Delete phone No.” or “Delete this” for a phone number or entry that is stored in the PushTalk phonebook, the phone number or entry is also deleted from the member list or group member list in the PushTalk phonebook.

<UIM operation>

Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card

You can transfer phonebook and SMS data back and forth between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM). You can also delete the SMS and phonebook data stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or FOMA card (UIM).

- You cannot make/receive voice calls, videophone calls or Push-to-Talk calls, or send/receive mails while copying or deleting data. In addition, you cannot activate other functions.
- You cannot copy items that cannot be stored in the UIM phonebook.
Items and number of entries that can be copied → p.110

Copying data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM)

Use this procedure to copy phonebook entries and SMS data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM).

1 “UIM operation”▶“Enter your security code

Once you enter your security code,  appears and you can no longer perform communication (e.g. receiving calls). If you receive a call or similar communication before entering your security code, the UIM operation ends.

2 “Copy”▶“Phone → UIM” or “UIM → Phone”

3 Select any item

Phonebook	▶ Search the phonebook Displays the phonebook screen. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→ p.116	
SMS	Selects SMS data.	
	Inbox	Shows the Inbox list screen.
	Outbox	Shows the Outbox list screen.

4 Use to select a checkbox (☐)▶ (Finish)▶“YES”

If you select “Phonebook” in step 3 and tabs are displayed on Phonebook list screen, you can switch tabs and select a checkbox.



Function menu▶p.121

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot exchange data with a failed FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ Copying a phonebook entry from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to FOMA card (UIM) converts “katakana” included in name and reading to double-byte. Copied are up to 10 double-byte or up to 21 single-byte characters for name and up to 12 double-byte or up to 25 single-byte characters for reading.
- ◆ Because the number of phone numbers and e-mail addresses that can be stored in a single phonebook entry is different between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and UIM, the second and subsequent phone numbers/e-mail addresses stored in a FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook entry cannot be copied to the FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ Because the types of available characters are different between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), some characters may be converted to spaces or other characters.
- ◆ Phonebook entries cannot be copied by group.

- ◆ Phonebook entries stored as secret data cannot be copied using this function even when a FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode".
- ◆ If the same group names are set on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), the phonebook group settings are retained. If no same group name is set on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), the copied entries are stored in group 00.
- ◆ You cannot copy the SMS report only. However, if you receive an SMS report for a sent SMS, copying the sent SMS will also copy the SMS report saved for the sent SMS.
- ◆ You cannot copy SMS data by box or folder.
- ◆ You cannot protect SMS copied to a FOMA card (UIM). If you copy protected SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the protection is removed from the SMS on the FOMA card (UIM). "Replied to" or "Transferred" icons are also changed to "Read".
- ◆ If you copy SMS in added folders, i-appli mail folders, "Chat" folder or "Trash box" folder from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to FOMA card (UIM), you can view those SMS in the "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.
- ◆ Entries copied from a FOMA card (UIM) to FOMA terminal (Phone) are placed in the "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.

Function menu (UIM operation (copy) screen)

- Available functions vary depending on the selection condition of tabs.

Start copy	Starts copy operation.
Select this	Selects data.
Select all	Selects all data.
Release this	Deselects the selected data.
Release all	Deselects all the selected data.
Detail	Displays the data details.

Deleting phonebook entries or SMS data

- 1   ▶ "UIM operation" ▶ Enter your security code
- 2 "Delete" ▶ "Phone" or "UIM"
- 3 Select any item

Phonebook	▶ Search the phonebook Displays the phonebook screen. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.116	
SMS	Selects SMS data.	
	Inbox	Shows the Inbox list screen.
	Outbox	Shows the Outbox list screen.

- 4 Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES"
- If you select "Phonebook" in step 3 and tabs are displayed on Phonebook list screen, you can switch tabs and select a checkbox.



Function menu ▶ p.121

Function menu (UIM operation (delete) screen)

- Available functions vary depending on the selection condition of tabs.

Start deletion	Starts deletion operation.
Select this	Selects data.
Select all	Selects all data.

Release this	Deselects the selected data.
Release all	Deselects all the selected data.
Detail	Displays the data details.

MENU22

Checking the Phonebook Storage Status

1 Phonebook list screen (p.115) ► [] (FUNC) ► “No. of phonebook”

Phone (phonebook stored on a FOMA terminal)

- Phonebook : Shows the number of entries stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/700 (storage limit)
- Secret : Shows the number of entries stored as secret data. This can only be displayed in “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- Image : Shows the number of images stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored images/100 (storage limit)
- Chara-den : Shows the number of Chara-den characters stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored Chara-den characters/100 (storage limit)

UIM (phonebook stored on a FOMA card (UIM))

- Phonebook : Shows the number of entries stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/50 (storage limit)

<Discern connect/Discern group>

Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address

Default setting
All OFF

The functions enable you to specify settings such as which answer message is used in the Record message function and which ring tones are used for each group, phone number or e-mail address in the phonebook. This function is useful if you want to have ring tone or illumination inform you of the caller, etc.

- These functions cannot be set to “Group 00” on the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and entries and groups on the UIM phonebook.
- These functions cannot be set to the phonebook entries stored as secret data.
- The “Discern connect” and “Discern group” functions will only work if a caller provides the caller ID (phone number). It is recommended to use the “Caller ID Request” service. → p.428

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.115) ► [] (FUNC) ► “Discern connect”

The “Discern connect” screen appears.
A star “★” appears next to the selected function.
Available functions vary depending on the item selected on the Phonebook detail screen.

■ Setting this function for each group

- Group setting screen (p.114) ► [] (FUNC) ► “Discern group”



2 Select any item

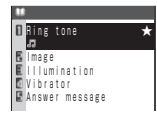
Voice call (recv.)	Sets how to notify you of voice calls from the specified phone number or group.
V.phone (dial./recv.)	Sets how to notify you of videophone calls from the specified phone number or group.
Mail (recv.)	Sets how to notify you of SMS from the specified phone number or group, or i-mode mail from the specified e-mail address or group.

3 Select any item

A star “★” appears next to the selected function.

■ To deselect a selected function

- Highlight a function with “★” and press [] (Reset)
The function is deselected and the star “★” disappears.



Example : Voice call (recv.)

Ring tone*1	Sets ring tones to distinguish callers or senders. “Changing the Ring Tone” → p.128

Image^{*2}	Sets images to distinguish callers. "Changing the Display Settings" → p.137
Chara-den setup^{*3}	Sets a Chara-den character (available for videophone calls) for each phone number. "Chara-den set." → p.83
Illumination^{*1}	Sets illumination patterns to distinguish callers or senders. "Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes for Incoming Calls and Mails" → p.147
Vibrator	Sets vibration patterns to distinguish callers or senders. "Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives" → p.131
Answer message^{*2}	Sets an answer message played when Record message starts for each caller. ^{*4} "Having the Caller Leave a Message and Video" → p.75
Connection speed^{*3}	Sets the connection speed used for videophone calls for each phone number. Select "64K" or "32K".

*1 : Available for 64K data communication calls.

*2 : Displayed when "Voice call (recv.)" or "V.phone (dial/recv.)" is selected.

*3 : Displayed when "V.phone (dial/recv.)" is selected.

*4 : To use this function, set "Record message" to "ON" beforehand.

■ When you set "Discern connect"

The following icons appear on the phonebook detail screen indicating the selected functions have been set:



: "Ring tone" for voice/videophone calls



: "Ring tone" for mails



: "Illumination" for voice/videophone calls



: "Illumination" for mails



: "Vibrator" for voice/videophone calls



: "Vibrator" for mails



: "Image" for voice/videophone calls



: "Answer message" for voice/videophone calls



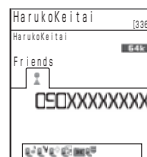
: "Chara-den setup" for videophone calls



: "64K" set in "Connection speed" for videophone calls



: "32K" set in "Connection speed" for videophone calls



Example: Videophone setting

NOTE

- ◆ The "Ring tone", "Illumination" or "Vibrator" in "Mail (recv.)" that is set for a phone number takes effect when you receive an SMS from the phone number or mail from the e-mail address in "[phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp" format. When you receive a mail from other address, the FOMA terminal operates according to the setting for the mail address in phonebook.
- ◆ These functions can also be set for groups that contain only phonebook entries stored as secret data and for groups that contain both entries stored as secret data and ordinary data. However, these settings are disabled for mails or calls received from contacts stored as secret data.
- ◆ When Discern connect/Discern group settings duplicate the ones specified for other functions, or mail and MessageR/MessageF with differing settings are received at the same time, they are handled as outlined below.
- ◆ When multiple e-mails or MessageR/MessageF are received simultaneously, the ring tone and illumination perform as shown below.

	Ring tone, Illumination
Mail only	Follows the settings set to the last received mail. If chat mail is included, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set to the chat mail.
MessageR/F	Follows the settings set to the MessageR.
Mail, MessageR/F	Follows the settings set to the last received mail. If chat mail is included, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set to the chat mail.

<Incoming call lamp priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority sequence for incoming call lamp when incoming settings are duplicated → p.147

<Vibrator priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority sequence for vibrator when incoming settings are duplicated → p.131

<Ring tone priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority sequence for ring tone when incoming settings are duplicated → p.130
- ◆ Priority sequence for ring tone when mail settings are duplicated → pp.259, 289

<Priority sequence for the image displayed when a call or mail is received>

- ◆ Priority sequence for image displayed when voice call/videophone call settings are duplicated → p.140

<Connection speed priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows when connection speed settings are duplicated:

- ① Connection speed → pp.82, 118
- ② Connection speed for Discern connect
- ③ Connection speed for Discern group

Checking the Discern connect settings**MENU62**

You can check the phonebook entries or groups set in “Discern connect” by function or item.

1 Phonebook list screen (p.115) ► (FUNC) ► “Discern connect”

The “Discern connect checking” screen appears.

A star “★” appears next to the item for which the function is set.

2 Select a function or item for which “★” appears on the “Discern connect” screen ► Highlight the function or item with “★” and press (FUNC) ► Select any item

*: The number of highlighting varies depending on how many functions and settings are specified.

Check settings	Shows phonebook entries and groups with the selected function or item set.
Release settings	Releases the settings of the selected function or item.

<Two-touch dialing>**Using Dialing Shortcuts**

By assigning memory numbers “000” to “009” to phone numbers, you can quickly call those phone numbers simply by pressing one of the number keys to and then pressing .

1 to ► **■ To make a videophone call**

► (V phone)

■ To make a Push-to-Talk call

► (P)

This operation is available only for one-to-one call.

NOTE

- ◆ If a phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, a call is made to the first phone number stored for that entry.
- ◆ When the FOMA terminal is in Secret or Secret data only mode, you can use two-touch dialing to make a call to a phonebook entry stored as secret data with one of “000” to “009” assigned.
- ◆ When “Restrict dialing” is set, and the first phone number in a phonebook entry with a memory number between 000 and 009 is not nominated in the “Restrict dialing”, two-touch dialing cannot be used. In this situation, you must either cancel Restrict dialing settings or nominate the first phone number in a desired entry with a memory number between 000 and 009 in the Restrict dialing settings.

<Automatic display>**MENU47****Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites**

Default setting
OFF

This function enables you to automatically display a preset phone number by opening the FOMA terminal that was folded on the standby screen. You can make a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call to that number simply by pressing , (V phone) or .

- You can only set automatic display for one phone number. You cannot set this function for mail address.
- You cannot set automatic display for entries in the UIM phonebook or PushTalk phonebook.

Enabling the automatic display function**1 (MENU) ► ► “Display” ► “Automatic display” ► “ON”****■ To deactivate the automatic display function**

► “OFF”

Specifying phone number to display automatically

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.115) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Automatic display”

A star (★) appears next to “Automatic display”.

■ If multiple phone numbers are stored in the same entry

▶ Use  to highlight phone number to display automatically

■ To cancel the automatic display setting

▶ Repeat Step 1

The setting is cancelled and a star “★” disappears.

NOTE

- ◆ Press , ,  or  (HOME) while the automatic display phone number is shown to return to the standby screen.
- ◆ The setting for this function is disabled in the following situations:
 - Secret data only mode is set
 - You fold the FOMA terminal during character entry or operation and reopen the terminal
 - Restrict dialing is not set for a phone number with automatic display set, but set for another phone number
- ◆ Only one-to-one call is available when you make a Push-to-Talk call while the phone number set in automatic display appears.

● Tone/Display/Lighting Settings

■ Tone settings

Changing the Ring Tone	Select ring tone	128
Setting Sound Effects for Ring Tones and Melodies.....	Sound effect	130
Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives.....	Vibrator	131
Setting the Keypad Tone	Keypad sound	132
Setting the Confirmation Tone for FOMA Terminal Charging	Charge sound	132
Having a FOMA Terminal Warn you Before a Call Drops Out	Quality alarm	132
Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mails	Mail/Msg. ring time	133
Enabling Tones to Ring Through the Earphone and Speaker.....	Earphone	133
Muting the FOMA Terminal's Tone.....	Manner mode	134
Customizing Manner Mode.....	Manner mode set	135

■ Display/Lighting settings

Changing the Display Settings.....	Display setting	137
Displaying Phonebook Images When you Receive Calls	Disp. PH-book image	140
Setting the Image Display Mode.....	Image display	141
Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting	Backlight	142
Changing the Display Color	Display design	143
Changing the Menu Display.....	Menu display set	143
Setting the Neuropointer.....	Neuropointer	146
Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes for Incoming Calls and Mails.....	Illumination	147
Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes During a Call.....	Illumination in talk	147
Having a FOMA Terminal Show the Call Time During a Call	Call time display	148
Changing the Font	Font	148
Setting the Clock Display	Clock display	148
Using Desktop Icons.....	Desktop icon	149
Using 3D Animation for the Message of the New Mail Desktop Icon	3D display setting	151
Selecting Icons to Show on the Standby Screen	Icons setting	152

Changing the Ring Tone

Default setting

 Phone: Pattern1 Videophone: Pattern4 PushTalk: Pattern1 Mail: Pattern2
 Chat mail: Pattern2 MessageR: Pattern3 MessageF: Pattern3

Ring tones can be set for voice calls, videophone calls, Push-to-Talk calls, e-mail, chat mail and MessageR/MessageF respectively. You can also set ring tones for particular phone numbers, e-mail addresses and phonebook groups respectively. → p.122

- In addition to the preinstalled ring tones and melodies, i-motion programs, melodies and Chaku-Uta-Full® downloaded from i-mode sites or websites can be selected as ring tones.
- If you set i-motion programs including video and voice for a ring tone and the receiving screen respectively, a FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for a ring tone.
- If you set a file other than i-motion including video and voice for a ring tone and set an i-motion including video and voice for the receiving screen, a FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the receiving screen.
- Some i-motion programs cannot be selected, e.g. if the size is QVGA.
- Melody list → p.368

1



▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Select ring tone” ▶ Select any item

Phone	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming voice calls and 64K data communication. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.137)
Videophone	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming videophone calls. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.137)
PushTalk	Sets a ring tone for Push-to-Talk calls.
Mail	Sets a ring tone for incoming i-mode mail, SMS and packet communication, and screen for incoming mails. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.137)
Chat mail	Sets a ring tone for incoming chat mails and screen for incoming mails. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.137)
MessageR	Sets a ring tone for incoming MessageR and screen for incoming mails. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.137)
MessageF	Sets a ring tone for incoming MessageF and screen for incoming mails. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.137)

2

▶ “Select ring tone” ▶ Select any item

Melody	Chooses a pre-installed ring tone or melody from the “Pre-installed” folder, or a melody downloaded from an i-mode site or website from “Inbox” or a folder you have created.
i-motion	Selects an i-motion downloaded from a site or a movie (i-motion) shot using the built-in camera from “Inbox”, “Camera”, “Movable contents” or a folder you have created. Selects a pre-installed i-motion from the “Pre-installed” folder. Some i-motion programs have a FOMA terminal play video and voice when calls are received (Chaku-motion).
Music	Selects Chaku-Uta-Full® downloaded to the FOMA terminal from “Inbox”, “Movable contents” or a folder that you created. The default Chaku-Uta-Full® can be selected from “Pre-installed” folder. If Chaku-Uta-Full® has part settings that a provider offers for a ring tone, the following settings are available:
	Fullsong ring tone Sets the entire song as a ring tone.
	Point ring tone ▶ Use to select the part that you want to set as a ring tone, and press . The selected part is set as a ring tone.
Voice announce	Chooses between “Voice announce 1” and “Voice announce 2”.
Random melody	Selects a folder containing melodies. When you receive a call or message, a FOMA terminal chooses one of the melodies stored in the folder at random and plays it as a ring tone.
OFF	Plays no ring tone.

3

Select a ring tone or i-motion

A FOMA terminal plays the selected melody. Press to stop playing the melody. After setting a ring tone, set the receiving screen if necessary.

■ To check settings

▶ (Play)

Pre-installed ring tones and melodies

Display	3D sound compatible
Pattern 1 - 4	—
Melody 1	C
Melody 2	C
Melody 3	C
Melody 4	C
Melody 5	C
Melody 6	C
Melody 7	C
Melody 8	C
Melody 9	C
Melody 10	C
Alarm 1	C
Alarm 2	C
Alarm 3	C
Alarm 4	C
Alarm 5	C
Alarm 6	C
Alarm 7	C
Alarm 8	C

Recording patent No.: T-0660025 

Pre-installed Chaku-motion

"Music Plantation" is stored in the "Pre-installed" folder in "i-motion".

Pre-installed Chaku-Uta-Full®

"STARSHIP" is stored in the "Pre-installed" folder in "Music".

NOTE

- ◆ An i-motion with images only or with telop cannot be set as a ring tone.
- ◆ An i-motion without images such as singing voice of a singer is only available for an incoming ring tone for Push-to-Talk calls.
- ◆ Some i-motion programs cannot be set.
- ◆ If you copy a melody available for a ring tone to the miniSD memory card, the copied melody can no longer be set as a ring tone (except as copied it back to a FOMA terminal).
- ◆ Videos or i-motion programs available for Chaku-motion or a receiving call image cannot be set if:
 - They are transferred to a PC or another FOMA terminal via Infrared data exchange or the Data Link Software and then returned to your FOMA terminal.
 - They are copied from the miniSD memory card to a FOMA terminal (including round operation: a FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card first, then getting back to the terminal).
- ◆ When an i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® in the "Movable contents" folder is selected, the selected i-motion is moved to "Inbox" in i-motion, and Chaku-Uta-Full® to "Inbox" in Music and set.
- ◆ The volume level applied for the ring tone playback during selection follows the one set in "Ring volume". If "Silent" is set to "Ring volume", tones are not played back.
- ◆ A melody may be restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will be played when it is set as a ring tone, etc. → p.368
- ◆ The "Ring tone" settings in "Melody" under Data box affect the settings of this function. → p.369
- ◆ The "Select ring tone" settings in "i-motion" under Data box affect the settings of this function. → p.357
- ◆ The "Select ring tone" settings in "Music" under Data box affect the settings of this function. → pp.299, 302
- ◆ Depending on the precedence setting or combination of a ring tone and the receiving screen, either the ring tone or receiving screen may revert to default set at the time of purchase.
- ◆ The ring tone for voice calls without the caller ID can be set in the "Call setting w/o ID" menu. The ring tone for videophone calls without the caller ID is set according to the "Videophone" setting in this function.
- ◆ When an i-motion is set as the mail ring tone, the packet communication ring tone is set to "Pattern2". The special receiving screen appears during packet communication regardless of the receiving screen settings.
- ◆ Even if you set a Chaku-Uta-Full® which includes the image of the album cover, the image is not displayed when you receive a call.

<Ring tone priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows for the ring tone operation when voice call/videophone call settings are duplicated.
 - ① Ring tone for Multi Number (Additional Number 1 and 2) → p.431
 - ② Ring tone for Discern connect → p.122
 - ③ Ring tone for Discern group → p.122
 - ④ Ring tone for Select ring tone (videophone call) → p.128
 - ⑤ Ring tone for Call setting w/o ID → p.174
 - ⑥ Ring tone for Select ring tone (except videophone call) → p.128
- Discern connect or Discern group priority sequence is as follows:
- ① i-motion for Ring tone
 - ② i-motion for Image
 - ③ i-motion (without images, such as singer's voice), melody for Ring tone or Chaku-Uta-Full®
- Priority sequence for ring tone when mail settings are duplicated → pp.260, 289

What is 3D Sound?

The 3D sound function uses the stereo speaker (or stereo earphone set) to produce 3 dimensional and resonating sounds. This function allows you to enjoy i-appli-based games and melody playback with richer and more realistic sounds.

How to enjoy 3D sound

- To enjoy 3D sound to the fullest, positioning a FOMA terminal at the front of you and holding it approximately 20 to 30cm away from you will produce the best results.
- If you listen at an off-center position or you are too close or too far away from a FOMA terminal, the effect may be diminished.
- The 3D effect differs depending upon the individual. If 3D sound bothers you, set "Surround", "3Dsound" and "SRS_WOW" (p.130) all to "OFF".



<Sound effect> MENU64

Setting Sound Effects for Ring Tones and Melodies

Default setting	Surround: OFF 3Dsound: ON SRS_WOW: OFF

Use this function to get a richer fuller sound when a FOMA terminal plays melodies, ring tones for voice calls, videophone calls and Push-to-Talk calls, sound effects and i-motion sound.

- 1 ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Sound effect" ▶ Set "ON" or "OFF" for the following

Surround	Sets natural 3-dimensional sound. The sound you are playing sounds like it is further away from the actual position of the 2 speakers.
3Dsound	Plays 3 dimensional stereophonic sound from the stereo speakers.
SRS_WOW	"Adding sound effects to i-motion playback sound" → p.130

Adding sound effects to i-motion playback sound

When you play an i-motion using sound effects, the sound effects simultaneously enhance the sound played through the speaker and earphones. Sound played through the speaker is enhanced by effects that provide clearly defined voice and music audio, and stereo sound played through earphones is enhanced by effects that provide a natural-sounding 3D sound field and rich low tones as well as clearly defined voice and music audio.

- i-motion programs using sound effects can be identified by the icon shown on the Movie List screen. → p.345

Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives

 Default setting
All OFF

You can set a FOMA terminal to use different vibration patterns for voice calls, videophone calls, Push-to-Talk calls, e-mail, chat mail and MessageR/MessageF respectively.

1 "Incoming call" "Vibrator" Select any item

Phone	Sets vibration for voice calls or 64K data communication.
Videophone	Sets vibration for videophone calls.
PushTalk	Sets vibration for Push-to-Talk calls.
Mail	Sets vibration for i-mode mails, SMS and packet communication.
Chat mail	Sets vibration for chat mails.
MessageR	Sets vibration for MessageR.
MessageF	Sets vibration for MessageF.

2 Select a vibration pattern

Pattern 1	Vibrates in Pattern 1.
Pattern 2	Vibrates in Pattern 2.
Pattern 3	Vibrates in Pattern 3.
Melody linkage	Vibrates in the pattern specified for the melody set as the ring tone. However, if no vibration pattern is specified for the melody or an i-motion is set as the ring tone, Pattern 2 is used.
OFF	Does not vibrate.

A FOMA terminal vibrates in the selected pattern.

The following icons shown on the standby screen indicate for which function the FOMA terminal vibrates:

: Shows that vibration starts when receiving a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call.

: Shows that vibration starts when receiving a mail, chat mail, MessageR or MessageF.

: Shows that both  and  are set.

NOTE

- ◆ To enable "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR" and "MessageF" in "Vibrator", set the respective items in "Mail/Msg. ring time" to "ON".
- ◆ When "Vibrator" is set to other than "OFF", take care not to let the vibrating FOMA terminal get close to fire (e.g. space heater) or fall off a table, etc.
- ◆ When "Ring volume" is set to other than "Silent" and the vibrator is set, a FOMA terminal uses a ring tone and vibration to notify you of incoming calls. When "Ring volume" is set to "Silent", a FOMA terminal uses vibration only.
- ◆ The vibration level is always fixed regardless of the ring volume setting.
- ◆ When "Melody linkage" is set, the vibration pattern may not match the main theme.

<Vibrator priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows for the vibrator when the incoming settings are duplicated.
 - ① Vibration setting for Discern connect → p.123
 - ② Vibration setting for Discern group → p.123
 - ③ Vibrator setting

<Keypad sound>

MENU30

Setting the Keypad Tone

Default setting
ON

- Setting this function to "OFF" also disables the following tones:
 - Warning tones
 - The tone emitted when you start adjusting the volume
 - Battery low warning tone
 - Alarm clock snooze release tone
- The keypad tone sounds at the level set in "Volume" during a call, and fixed at the same level while not on a call.
- The confirmation tone sounds regardless of this setting when:
 - You press  (ASSIST) or  (MEMO/CHECK) with a FOMA terminal folded
 - You shoot a picture (shutter sound, Auto focus lock sound)
 - You start/finish memo playback (the sound emanates from the receiver)
 - You start/finish standby voice memo and voice announce recording (the sound emanates from the receiver)
- When setting the keypad tone in "Initial setting" (p.46), select "ON" or "OFF".

1



▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Keypad sound" ▶ "ON"

- To prevent a FOMA terminal from emitting the keypad sound
▶ "OFF"

<Charge sound>

Setting the Confirmation Tone for FOMA Terminal Charging

Default setting
ON

This function allows you to set a FOMA terminal to emit a short double-beep ("bibip") when charging starts and ends so that you do not leave the FOMA terminal charging indefinitely.

- The confirmation tone does not sound regardless of this setting when:
 - You are dialing
 - You are on a voice call or Push-to-Talk call
 - Public mode (Driving mode) is set
 - Voice announce is being recorded
 - A FOMA terminal is turned off
 - You are receiving a call
 - Manner mode is set
 - Standby voice memo is being recorded
 - Data is sent or received
 - The screen is not standby

1



▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Charge sound" ▶ "ON"

- To prevent a FOMA terminal from emitting the charge sound
▶ "OFF"

<Quality alarm>

MENU75

Having a FOMA Terminal Warn you Before a Call Drops Out

Default setting
High tone

A FOMA terminal uses this function to sound an alarm tone during a voice call or videophone call warning you that the signal quality is deteriorating and the call is likely to drop out.

- A call may drop out without the warning tone if signal quality worsens very quickly.

1



▶ "Talk" ▶ "Quality alarm" ▶ "No tone", "High tone" or "Low tone"

<Mail/Msg. ring time>

MENU68

Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mails

Default setting
All ON (ring time: 5 seconds)

Use this function to specify whether a FOMA terminal sounds a ring tone when you receive a mail, chat mail or a MessageR/MessageF. And if so, set the duration of the ring tone.

- 1**   ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Mail/Msg. ring time” ▶ Select any item

Mail	Sets the ring time for i-mode mails and SMS.
Chat mail	Sets the ring time for chat mails.
MessageR	Sets the ring time for MessageR.
MessageF	Sets the ring time for MessageF.

- 2** Specify whether to ring the tone

ON	▶ Enter the ring time (01-30 seconds) A FOMA terminal rings for the specified time. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, press  .
OFF	A FOMA terminal does not ring.

NOTE

- ◆ When “OFF” is selected for “Mail”, “Chat mail”, “MessageR” or “MessageF”, “ ” appears on the standby screen.

<Earphone>

MENU51

Enabling Tones to Ring Through the Earphone and Speaker

Default setting
Earphone(only)

Use this procedure to give a ring tone or alarm through the earphone and speaker when the attached stereo earphone (sample) is connected.

- 1**   ▶ “External connection” ▶ “Earphone” ▶ “Earphone+Speaker”, “Earp. (Speaker in 20s)” or “Earphone (only)”

NOTE

- ◆ Even if “Earp. (Speaker in 20s)” or “Earphone (only)” is set for this function, tones still sound through the FOMA terminal’s speaker when the attached stereo earphone (sample) is not connected. Even when the attached stereo earphone (sample) is connected, the shutter tone of the camera sounds through the speaker.
- ◆ When “Earp. (Speaker in 20s)” is set, you can hear sound through both the earphone and speaker in about 20 seconds after a ring tone or alarm is emitted. However, when the music player is running, the ring tone does not sound through the speaker even in 20 seconds and only sounds through the earphone.
- ◆ Do not wrap the cord of the attached stereo earphone (sample) around a FOMA terminal. Doing so may lower the signal strength. Furthermore, bringing the cord of the attached stereo earphone (sample) close to a FOMA terminal may generate noise.

<Manner mode>

Muting the FOMA Terminal's Tone

When you want to avoid disturbing people around you, set this function with a single touch to stop your FOMA terminal emitting ring tones and keypad tones through the speaker.

- When Manner mode is set, the following tones are replaced by vibration:

- Ring tone*1
- Alarm clock, Schedule, To Do list and Notice designate calls alarm tones*2
- Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when a FOMA terminal is folded

*1 : A FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in "Vibrator". If "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", a FOMA terminal vibrates in "Pattern 2".

*2 : A FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in "Phone" in "Vibrator". If "Phone" in "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", a FOMA terminal vibrates in "Pattern 2".

- For the FOMA terminal operation mode when Manner mode is set, select "Manner mode", "Super silent" or "Original" in "Manner mode set". → p.135

1 When the screen is standby or you are talking ▶

(1 second or longer)

A FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode and " " appears on the screen.

During a call, a FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep ("bibip") and a message notifying you that Manner mode is now set appears.

While in Manner mode, the icon indicating the specified "Manner mode set" setting appears together with "".



: Indicates that "Vibrator" works when a call arrives, etc.



: Indicates that "Ring volume" is set to "Silent".



to  : Indicates that "Record message" is set to record messages. The number indicates how many messages are recorded.



to  : Indicates that "Record VP message" is set to record videophone messages. The number indicates how many Record VP messages are recorded.

■ To cancel Manner mode

Hold down  for 1 second or longer when the screen is standby or while you are talking.

Manner mode is canceled and " " disappears.

During a call, a FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep ("bibip") and a message notifying you that Manner mode is canceled appears.

NOTE

- ◆ Even while in Manner mode, a FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound or Auto focus lock sound when you take a picture with the FOMA terminal's camera.



Customizing Manner Mode

Default setting
Manner mode

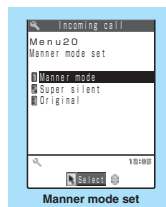
This feature allows you to select the FOMA terminal operations performed in Manner mode.

- The default settings of "Original" manner mode are:
 - Record msg.: OFF
 - Mail vol.: Silent
 - VM tone: ON
 - LVA tone: OFF
 - Vibrator: ON
 - Alarm vol.: Silent
 - Keypad sound: OFF
 - Phone vol.: Silent
 - i-appli vol.: Silent
 - Mic sensitiv.: Up

1 "Incoming call" ► "Manner mode set"

The "Manner mode set" screen appears.

2 Select any item



Manner mode	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc. However, the confirmation tone emitted through the earpiece speaker (tone emitted when  (MEMO/CHECK) is pressed to play/erase a memo or voice memo) is not muted.
Super silent	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker and confirmation tones emitted through the earpiece speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc.
Original	Customizes the Manner mode settings. You can specify in advance which volume is set for alarm clock tones or how a FOMA terminal deals with incoming calls when Manner mode is set. "Original manner" → p.135

Original manner

1 Manner mode set screen (p.135) ► "Original" ► Select any item

Record msg.	Sets Record message. "Having the Caller Leave a Message and Video" → p.75
Vibrator	Sets the vibrator. "Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives" → p.131
Phone vol.	► Use  to adjust the volume Sets the ring tone volume for voice/videophone calls, Push-to-Talk calls and 64K data communication. "Adjusting the Ring Volume" → p.69
Mail vol.	► Use  to adjust the volume Sets the ring tone volume for mails, chat mails, packet communication and MessageR/MessageF. "Adjusting the Ring Volume" → p.69
Alarm vol.	► Use  to adjust the volume Sets the alarm tone volume for the alarm clock. "Using a FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock" → p.403
i-appli vol.	► Use  to adjust the volume Sets the i-appli volume. "Step" is not available.
VM tone	Sets confirmation tones for "Record message" and "Voice memo".
Keypad sound	Sets the keypad tone. "Setting the Keypad Tone" → p.132
Mic sensitiv.	Selects either of "Normal" or "Up" for the microphone sensitivity during a call.
LVA tone	Sets the low voltage alarm. "When the battery runs out" → p.44

2 Press (Finish) after changing the settings

■ When Manner mode is set

The table below lists the settings for each type of Manner mode:

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (the Original manner mode settings are shown)
Record Message activation	OFF		"Record msg." settings
Vibrator	ON		"Vibrator" settings
Ring tone volume for voice/ videophone calls, Push-to-Talk calls and 64K data communication	Silent		"Phone vol." settings
Ring tone volume for mail, chat mail, packet communication and MessageR/MessageF	Silent		"Mail vol." settings
Alarm volume for the alarm clock (including the snooze function)	Silent		"Alarm vol." settings
i-appli volume	Silent		"i-appli vol." settings
Alarm volume for Schedule/To Do list/ Notice designate calls	Silent		"Phone vol." settings
Confirmation, activation and completion tones for recorded messages, voice memos, etc.	ON	OFF	"VM tone" settings
Keypad tone	OFF		"Keypad sound" settings
Microphone sensitivity during calls ^{*1}	Up		"Mic sensitiv." settings
Holding tone	Silent		"Phone vol." settings Off when "Silent" is set. Sounds at "Level 1" when an option other than "Silent" is set.
On hold tone	Silent		"Phone vol." settings ^{*2}
Low voltage alarm	OFF		"LVA tone" settings Even when "ON" is set, the low voltage alarm sounds at "Level 1" if "Phone vol." is set to "Silent" for this function.
Reading out received mails	"Phone" setting under "Ring volume" (p.69) ^{*3}		
Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when a FOMA terminal is folded	Silent		"Phone vol." settings ^{*2}
ToruCa acquisition tone	Silent		"Phone vol." settings ^{*4}

*1 : If the microphone sensitivity during calls is set to "Up", the volume of voice heard by the other party is increased even when you speak quietly during a call. However, the "Normal" microphone sensitivity is used for shooting movies in "Camera" mode.

*2 : Sounds at the "Level 2" volume when "Step" is set.

*3 : Reads out at the "Level 2" volume when "Silent" or "Step" is set. However, even if "Read out received mail" in "Read out setting" is set to "ON", reading mail is not performed. Select "Read out message" from the function menu on the received mail detail screen to perform reading out.

*4 : Sounds at the "Level 4" volume when "Step" is set.

■ When the attached stereo earphone (sample) is connected

The table below lists the settings applied.

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (the Original manner mode settings are shown)
Reading out received mails and contents of To Do list/Schedule	"Phone" settings under "Ring volume" (p.69)*		
Voice clock (during standby or snooze) and Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when a FOMA terminal is folded	"Phone" settings under "Ring volume" (p.69)		"Phone vol." settings Sounds at the "Level 2" volume when "Step" is set.
Volume of the music player	Music player (p.298) volume settings		

* : Reads out at the "Level 2" volume when "Silent" or "Step" is set.

NOTE

- ◆ Regardless of the "Record message" (p.75) setting, Record message is activated when "Record msg." in "Original" is set to "ON" and Manner mode is set.
- ◆ If the Record message set in "Original" starts during manner mode, message recording will start after the ring time set in "ON" in "Record message" (p.75) elapses. (When "OFF" is set, recording will start in 8 seconds.)
- ◆ If a FOMA terminal is set to use vibration to notify you of calls or alarms when Manner mode is set, take care not to let the vibrating FOMA terminal get close to fire (e.g. space heater) or fall off a table, etc.

<Display setting>

MENU56

Changing the Display Settings

Default setting	Stand-by display: HX <STAND-BY> Wake-up display: HX <READY> Dialing: HX <DIALING> Calling: HX <CALLING> V.phone Dialing: HX <DIALING> V.phone Calling: HX <CALLING> Mail sending: HX <SENDING> Mail receiving: HX <RECEIVING> Check new messages: HX <CHECKING>

Use this procedure to show your favorite images such as the photographed or downloaded on a screen (e.g. standby, dialing or receiving).

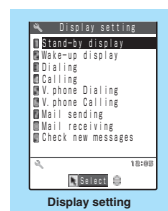
- If you set i-motion programs including video and voice for a ring tone and the receiving screen respectively, a FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for a ring tone.
- If you set a file other than i-motion including video and voice for a ring tone and set an i-motion including video and voice for the receiving screen, a FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the receiving screen.
- An i-motion with voice only (e.g. singer's voice) cannot be set for the receiving screen.
- Some i-motion programs cannot be selected, e.g. if the size is QVGA.

1 ▶ "Display" ▶ "Display setting"

The "Display setting" screen appears.

If a file other than i-motion is set for the receiving screen, set a ring tone as required.

2 Select any item



Stand-by display	"Changing the standby screen image"→ p.139		
Wake-up display	Specifies a message or image shown when a FOMA terminal is turned on.		
	OFF	Does not show a message or image.	
	Message	▶ Enter a message A message can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters.	
	My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
		Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
		Camera	
		Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
		Original animation	Sets an original animation.

Dialing	Sets the image shown when you make a voice call. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
Calling	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming voice calls.	
	Select ring tone	"Changing the Ring Tone" → p.128
	Select calling disp.	"Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails" → p.138
V.phone Dialing	Sets a screen shown when you make videophone calls. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
V.phone Calling	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming videophone calls.	
	Select ring tone	"Changing the Ring Tone" → p.128
	Select calling disp.	"Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails" → p.138
Mail sending	Sets the image shown when you send i-mode mails or SMS. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
Mail receiving	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming i-mode mails or SMS.	
	Select ring tone	"Changing the Ring Tone" → p.128
	Select receiving disp.	"Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails" → p.138
Check new messages	Sets the image shown when you check new messages. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.

● Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails

<Example: Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls>

1 Display setting screen (p.137) ▶ "Calling" ▶ "Select calling disp." ▶ Select any item

My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.

i-motion*	Sets an i-motion. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. Some i-motion programs cannot be set.	
	Inbox	Sets an i-motion downloaded from an i-mode site or website or a movie recorded using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed i-motion.
	Movable contents	Sets an i-motion saved as movable contents. When a file in the "Movable contents" folder is selected, the selected contents are moved to Inbox in a FOMA terminal and set.

* : "i-motion" does not appear on the mail receiving screen.

■ To check settings



NOTE

- ◆ Flash movies can be set in "Select calling disp." or "Select receiving disp.", but the tone set in "Select ring tone" sounds as the ring tone.
- ◆ Videos or i-motion programs available for Chaku-motion or a receiving call image cannot be set if:
 - They are transferred to a PC or another FOMA terminal via Infrared data exchange or the Data Link Software and then returned to your FOMA terminal.
 - They are copied from the miniSD memory card to a FOMA terminal (including round operation: a FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card first, then getting back to the terminal).
- ◆ When the receiving image settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned. → p.140
- ◆ You cannot set images for the dialing and receiving screens for Push-to-Talk calls.

<Priority sequence for screen>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows when screen settings are duplicated:
 - ① Automatic display
 - ② i-appli display
 - ③ Display setting

Changing the standby screen image

- The "Pre-installed" folder contains pre-installed standby screens and screens for Wake-up display.
Pre-installed standby screens and screens for Wake-up display → p.459

1 Display setting screen (p.137) ▶ "Stand-by display" ▶ Select any item

OFF	Does not show an image, etc.	
Calendar	Sets a calendar.	
	Background	Sets a background image for the calendar. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.
		Inbox Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
		Camera
		Pre-installed Sets a pre-installed image.
	No background	Shows a calendar only.
My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
i-motion	Sets an i-motion. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. Some i-motion programs cannot be set.	
	Inbox	Sets an i-motion downloaded from an i-mode site or website or a movie recorded using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed i-motion.
	Movable contents	Sets an i-motion saved as movable contents. When a file in the "Movable contents" folder is selected, the selected contents are moved to Inbox in a FOMA terminal and set.

i-appli display	Sets the i-appli standby screen. When the i-appli standby screen is set, a star (★) appears. "Setting the i-appli Standby Screen" → p.318

■ When the calendar is set for the standby screen

The calendar appears on the standby screen. You can quickly and easily check the schedule of the previous or following month or edit schedule events.

Saturdays are colored in blue, holidays are in red and anniversaries are in pink.

■ To check adjacent months on the calendar

Pressing  on the standby screen or sliding your finger over  to place the pointer over the calendar selects the calendar. (If pressing  selects a desktop icon other than calendar, use  to select the calendar.) Press  again. Pressing  opens the previous month or  opens the next month.

■ To activate the schedule function

Press  or  to show the previous or next month and press  to store the schedule events for the month shown by the schedule function.

NOTE

- ◆ If a movie or i-motion is set for the standby screen, opening a FOMA terminal plays the movie or i-motion. Press , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,

Setting the Image Display Mode

Default setting

Setting: ON Stand-by: OFF Clock type: Digital 1 (Pict: ON)
 Image set: Preinstall (HX <STAND-BY>) Called: ON (Image + Missed call)
 Mail: OFF Connection: ON (Backlight: OFF) Background i-appli: OFF

You can set the message display mode, background, clock, etc. for the image display.

● “Guide to Image Display (Rear Panel Display)” → p.30

1



▶ “Display” ▶ “Image display” ▶ Select any item

ON	Stand-by	Specifies whether to fix the image display mode. Setting “ON” does not flash the backlight for the image display. The message for incoming calls or an animation such as an alarm does not appear.	
	Clock type	Selects the clock type from “Digital 1 to 3” or “OFF” and turns on/off the Pict.	
	Image set	Specifies whether to show the background image. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.	
		OFF	Does not show the background image.
		Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
		Camera	
		Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Called	Specifies whether to show the phone number of an incoming call.	
		ON	Selects the display mode among “Image+Missed call”, “Image” and “Missed call”.
		OFF	Does not show the phone number or image.
	Mail	Specifies whether to show the contents of a mail. Selecting “ON” shows the sender, date and time, and subject when you receive a mail.	
	Connection	Specifies whether to show conditions using an image or animation while in dialing or talking on a voice call/videophone call/Push-to-Talk call, Infrared data exchange or data communication.	
		ON	Specifies whether to flash the backlight (ON/OFF).
		OFF	Does not show conditions.
	Background i-appli	Sets background i-appli to ON or OFF.	
OFF	Shows nothing on the image display.		

NOTE

- ◆ When “OFF” is selected for the image display, nothing appears on the image display except when you shoot with the built-in camera or use some special functions.
- ◆ When “Digital 1 to 3” is set for “Clock type”, a digital clock that fits the display size is shown on the image display. When you have a missed call or new mail or display telop text of the i-channel information, “Digital 2” to which the display mode and size (large (Big) or small (Small or Down Small)) set in “Clock display” are applied appears. If “Stand-by” is set to “ON”, the specified clock type is applied instead of “Digital 2” even when you have a missed call or new mail.
- ◆ When you receive a voice or videophone call with a “Chaku-moji” message, the message appears on the image display following the receiving indication (such as caller’s phone number and image). (The “Chaku-moji” message and receiving indication appear alternately.) If “Called” is set to “OFF”, a Chaku-moji message does not appear on the image display regardless of the “Chaku-moji” settings.
- ◆ Even if Mail is set to “ON”, the image display does not show the sender names, dates and times and subjects of received mails that are automatically filtered to the protected folders.
- ◆ When an i-mode mail, chat mail or SMS is received, an icon expressing the emotion that matches the contents of the received mail appears. Even if “3D display setting” is set to “ON”, 3D animation is not used for the emotion-expressing mail icon shown on the image display. → p.260
 You can also set your FOMA terminal to pop up an icon when receiving a mail including the specified keyword. → p.283
- ◆ When a FOMA terminal receives multiple mails at the same time, the mail address, sender name, date and time and subject of the latest mail appear. → p.30

Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting

Default setting

Lighting: ON (lighting)+Saver (Light time: 5 minutes) Charging: Standard
Area: LCD+Keys Brightness: Level 2

1



▶ “Display” ▶ “Backlight” ▶ Select any item

Lighting	Specifies the normal backlight operation.		
	Selecting “OFF” shows the “  ” icon on the standby screen.		
	ON	Specifies whether to set power saver mode.	
		ON	▶ Enter the waiting time (02 to 20 minutes) Once the specified waiting time has elapsed, the standby screen and image display turn off (power saver mode). Sets the waiting time before a FOMA terminal switches to power saver mode. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, press .
		OFF	Disables power saver mode.
	OFF	Specifies whether to set power saver mode.	
ON		▶ Enter the waiting time (02 to 20 minutes) Once the specified waiting time has elapsed, the standby screen and image display turn off (power saver mode). Sets the waiting time before a FOMA terminal switches to power saver mode. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, press .	
OFF		Disables power saver mode.	
Charging	Specifies the backlight operations during charging.		
	Standard	The backlight lights according to the “ON” setting in “Lighting”.	
	All time ON	The backlight stays on while charging.	
Area	Selects the backlight area.		
	LCD+Keys	Sets the LCD panel and keypad for the area.	
	LCD	Sets only the LCD panel for the area.	
Brightness	Selects the brightness from Level 3 to Level 1.		

NOTE

- ◆ You can also turn the backlight on or off by holding down  for 1 second or longer.
- ◆ When “Lighting” is set to “ON”, the backlight stays on when a call is received, and lights for roughly 15 seconds when a FOMA terminal is turned on, one of the FOMA terminal keys is pressed or the FOMA terminal is opened. The backlight also stays on while you are using the camera or playing a movie or i-motion. If you select “OFF”, the backlight does not turn on. However, the backlight stays on during movie shooting regardless of the “Lighting” setting.
- ◆ If “Charging” is set to “All time ON”, the displays and dial keys are lit all the time following the “Area” setting (“LCD+Keys” or “LCD”). If “Charging” is set to “Standard”, the backlight operates following the “Lighting” setting.
- ◆ Even if “Charging” is set to “All time ON” while charging, the brightness of the backlight is set to “Level 1” in order to increase the charging efficiency unless any keys are pressed for 15 seconds or so.
- ◆ When “Charging” is set to “Standard”, the image display backlight lights for about 15 seconds at the level set in “Brightness” when charging starts and then stays on at “Level 1”. Setting “All time ON” lights the backlight all the while charging.
- ◆ When the body of a mail or MessageR/MessageF appears, the time for which the backlight stays on varies depending on the length of the message.
- ◆ If a FOMA terminal switches to power saver mode while opened,  and  flash at roughly 5 second intervals. Pressing any keys releases power saver mode.

Changing the Display Color

Default setting

Color patter: Pattern 5 Background 1: OFF Background 2: Pattern 1

Use this procedure to change the designs of the text, background, upper and lower sections of the display and software keys.

1   ▶ “Display” ▶ “Display design” ▶ Select any item

Color pattern	Selects the color pattern from Pattern 1 to Pattern 5. The selected color pattern appears on the display during selection.
Background 1	Selects Background1 (a 25-dot background pattern for the upper and lower sections of the display) among “OFF” (not displayed) and “Pattern 1 to 8”. The selected background pattern appears on the display during selection.
Background 2	Selects the pattern for background 2 (background pattern for the software keys) from “Pattern 1 to Pattern 3”. The selected background pattern appears on the display during selection.

NOTE

◆ Changing this function does not affect the colors of icons and images. There are some screens or functions that are not affected by the changes made to this function, such as i-mode sites.

<Menu display set>

Changing the Menu Display

Setting the menu display mode

MENU57

Default setting

Guidance: Picture & Text Menu display: List Theme: HX Memory focus: ON

Change the guidance display on the main menu, specify how to show the branch menus (functions) under “Settings” or set the Last one function for the main menu or Sliding Menu (Launcher).

● Original menus are shown as a list, regardless of the settings of this function.

■ Guidance



“Picture & Text”

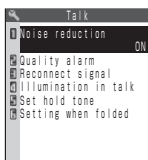


“Text”

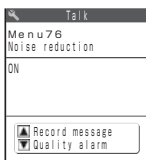


“OFF”

■ Menu display



“List”



“Detail”

■ Theme



“HX”

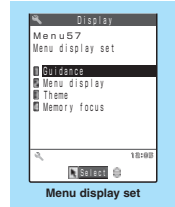


“SOLID SOUND”

1 ▶ “Display” ▶ “Menu display set”

The “Menu display set” screen appears.

2 Select any item



Guidance	Selects the guidance display on the main menu among “Picture & Text”, “Text” and “OFF” (not displayed).	
Menu display	Chooses the display mode for branch menus between “Detail” and “List”.	
Theme	Sets the background and icons used on the main menu screen.	
	HX	Sets HX.
	SOLID SOUND	Sets SOLID SOUND.
	Original theme	“Changing the main menu screen design” → p.144
Memory focus	Specifies whether to highlight the icon you selected the last time when opening the main menu or Sliding Menu (Launcher).	

Changing the main menu screen design

Use this procedure to change the icons and background image used on the main menu screen.

1 Menu display set screen (p.144) ▶ “Theme” ▶ “Original theme”

The “Original theme” screen appears.

Select an image from Inbox in My picture, Camera, Pre-installed or a folder you created.



Original theme
Function menu▶p.145

2 Select any item

Mail	Sets a Mail icon image.
i-mode	Sets an i-mode icon image.
i-appli	Sets an i-appli icon image.
Settings	Sets a Settings icon image.
Data box	Sets a Data box icon image.
LifeKit	Sets a LifeKit icon image.
Network service	Sets a Network service icon image.
Phonebook	Sets a Phonebook icon image.
Own data	Sets an Own data icon image.
Background image	Sets a background image or color of the Multitask group frame. “Multitask” → p.399

■ To set the Multitask group frame

▶ “Background image” ▶ (Play) ▶ (Frame) ▶ Use to select a color from the color palette
During color selection, pressing (Change) switches the color palette between 16 colors and 256 colors.

NOTE

- ◆ You can check the image for the selected item by pressing (Play) on the selection screen.
- ◆ If at least one image subject to FOMA card operational restriction function (p.38) is set as a menu icon or background image and the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or removed, the original theme reverts to default.
- ◆ You can set a JPEG, GIF or animation GIF image file with a size of 100K bytes or less and up to 640 dots wide × 640 dots high. If an image is larger than the display area (icon: 64 dots wide × 63 dots high, background: 240 dots wide × 270 dots high), the size is reduced without changing the aspect ratio. If an image is smaller than the display area, it is centered.
- ◆ An animation GIF image set as a menu icon will run only once, regardless of the specified number of repetitions. Also, an animation GIF image set as the background image will not run as an animation.

Function menu (Original theme screen)

Reset	Restores the selected icon or background image to the default settings.
All reset	Restores all the main menu icons and background images to the default settings.

Creating an original menu <Original menu>

MENU52

Default setting	Own number, Check new messages, Ring volume, Vibrator, Alarm clock, Change security code

Adding often-used functions to the original menu allows you to easily access the functions.

- You can add up to 10 original menu entries.
- The functions that can be added to the original menu are the main settings for “Mail”, “i-mode” and “i-appli”, and the medium and branch settings (functions) for “Settings”, “Data box”, “LifeKit”, “Service”, “Phonebook” and “Own data”.
- You cannot add the same function twice.

1 ▶ ▶ “Display” ▶ “Original menu”

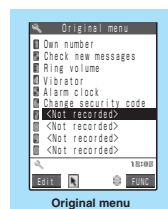
The “Original menu” screen appears.

2 Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit) ▶ Use to select a menu item to add

You can only select main menu items from “Mail/i-mode/i-appli”.

■ To change an already stored function

▶ Highlight a stored item



Original menu
Function menu ▶ p.145

NOTE

- ◆ Pressing ▶ also opens the original menu and you can add or sort items except when Launcher menu is shown.

Function menu (Original menu screen)

Add to org. menu	Adds items to the original menu.
Sort	▶ Use to select order, then press Sorts the Original menu items.
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.149
Reset org. menu	Restores the original menu to default.
Release	Removes the selected function from the original menu.
Release all	Removes all functions from the original menu.

Setting the Neuropointer

Default setting Pointer: ON Simple: Speed (Normal)

For better use of the pointer (🖱️: Blue/🖱️: White) controlled by the Neuropointer key (⏏️), specify whether to turn Pointer on/off, Speed, etc.

- To set the Neuropointer speed from “Initial setting” (p.46), choose between “Normal” and “High” in “Simple” (p.146).
- The pointer is available when “🖱️” appears on a screen.
- When the pointer is blue (🖱️), the cursor follows the pointer. When the pointer is white (🖱️), it is not followed by the cursor.

1 “Other settings”▶️ “Neuropointer”

The “Neuropointer” screen appears.



2 Select any item

Pointer	Specifies whether to show the pointer (whether to use the Neuropointer).	
Speed	“Changing the pointer speed”→p.146	
Slide	Adjust	▶️ “YES” ▶️Slide your finger over the Neuropointer key following the instructions Sets the limit of the Neuropointer key sliding to move the pointer effectively.
	Reset	Restores the slide adjustment to default.

Changing the pointer speed

1 Neuropointer screen (p.146)▶️ “Speed”▶️ Select any item

Simple	▶️ “Normal” or “High” ▶️ “YES” Chooses between two speeds.	
Detail	Sets a speed for each screen.	
	Standard ^{*1}	▶️Use ⏏️ to select “I”, “L” or “H”▶️Use ⏏️ to adjust the speed▶️ “OK” Speed can be controlled in the range of level 0 (leftmost) to level 11 (rightmost). The more you move the slide to the right, the faster the speed becomes. The more to the left, the slower it does.
	MainMenu	
	T9/Prediction	
	Software ^{*2}	
Reset	Restores the pointer speed to default.	

^{*1} : Adjusts the pointer speed for typical screens such as the list or icon selection.

^{*2} : The settings may be not applicable depending on the i-appli.

<Illumination>

MENU 89

Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes for Incoming Calls and Mails

Default setting

Phone: Color 5 Videophone: Color 5 PushTalk: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Chat mail: Color 3
 MessageR: Color 1 MessageF: Color 1 Set pattern: Standard Adjust color: Color 1-12

Use this procedure to set the color and pattern (flash pattern) in which the incoming call lamp flashes when you receive voice calls, videophone calls, Push-to-Talk calls, mails, chat mails or MessageR/MessageF.

- You can set different flash colors respectively for incoming calls and messages from particular phone numbers, e-mail addresses or groups. → p.122
- The flash pattern for  and  is the same as for the incoming call lamp.

1



▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Illumination” ▶ Select any item

Set color	Selects the flash color of the incoming call lamp for “Phone”, “Videophone”, “PushTalk”, “Mail”, “Chat mail”, “MessageR” and “MessageF”. The incoming call lamp flashes in the selected color during selection.	
	Color 1 to 12: The lamp flashes in the selected color. Gradation 1: The lamp flashes in the colors 1 to 12 in numeric order.	
Set pattern	Selects the flash pattern of the incoming call lamp.	
	Standard	Sets the flash pattern to Standard (flashing at 0.5 sec interval).
	Melody linkage	Sets the flash pattern to Melody linkage.
Adjust color	Sets the color.	
	Edit color name	▶ Select a color ▶ Enter the color name A color name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
	Adjust color tone	▶ Select a color ▶ Use  to adjust the color tone

NOTE

- ◆ If “Pattern 1-4” is selected in the Ring tone settings, the incoming call lamp flashes according to the ring tone regardless of the settings of this function.
- ◆ If no flash pattern corresponding to the melody is set for the ring tone or Chaku-motion is set, the “Standard” pattern is used regardless of the “Melody linkage” setting.
- ◆ While a FOMA terminal is exchanging data with the miniSD memory card, the incoming call lamp flashes in “Color 5” (green) regardless of the settings of this function (the lamp may not flash depending on the exchange function).

<Incoming call lamp priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows for the incoming call lamp operation when call/mail settings are duplicated:
 - ① Illumination for Discern connect → p.123
 - ② Illumination for Discern group → p.123
 - ③ Illumination

<Illumination in talk>

Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes During a Call

Default setting

OFF

This function allows you to set the color in which the incoming call lamp flashes during a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call.

1



▶ “Talk” ▶ “Illumination in talk” ▶ Select a color

OFF: The incoming call lamp does not flash.
 Color 1 to 7: The lamp flashes in the selected color.
 Gradation 1: The lamp flashes changing the color.
 Gradation 2: The lamp lights up changing the color.
 Gradation 3: The lamp color quickly changes.

NOTE

- ◆ While a message is recorded, a recorded message is played or an incoming call is held, the incoming call lamp flashes in the same pattern as while you are talking.

<Call time display>

MENU 48

Having a FOMA Terminal Show the Call Time During a Call

Default setting
ON

Use this function to specify whether to have a FOMA terminal show the call time during a voice, videophone, Push-to-Talk call.

- If the call time exceeds "19 hours, 59 minutes, 59 seconds", the count restarts from "0 seconds".
- The shown call time is intended solely as a guide and should not be used as an accurate figure.
- The call time is not counted during i-mode or packet communication.

1   "Call time/Charge" ▶ "Call time display" ▶ "ON"

- To hide the call time
▶ "OFF"

NOTE

- ◆ The call time is reset to 0 second every time you switch the call mode between voice and videophone. However, if you switch the call mode and end a videophone call, the call time shown indicates the total time of the voice and videophone calls.

MENU 66

Changing the Font

Default setting Type: Font 1 Thickness: Medium

Use this procedure to customize the font (typeface) of the text shown on a screen or the image display.

1   "Display" ▶ "Font" ▶ Select any item

Type	Selects the font type between "Font 1" and "Font 2". A sample of the selected font appears on the bottom of the screen.
Thickness	Selects the thickness among "Thin", "Medium" and "Bold". A text sample using the selected thickness appears on the bottom of the screen.

NOTE

- ◆ "Font 2" is only available for alphabetic letters (double-byte or single-byte), numbers (double-byte or single-byte), hiragana and katakana (double-byte or single-byte), some symbols, Greek letters and Russian letters. All other characters such as kanji are shown using "Font 1". Text used for phone number entry or clock display also cannot be changed to "Font 2".
- ◆ Changing this function does not affect the thickness of text on the image display.

<Clock display>

MENU 39

Setting the Clock Display

Default setting Display: ON Size: Big Display type: World watch OFF

You can set the language mode (Japanese or English) of days shown on the standby screen, the clock display size or whether to show the world clock. You can also hide the date and clock.

- If a screen is not standby, the small clock appears at the bottom of the screen regardless of the settings of this function. → p.29

1   "Clock" ▶ "Clock display" ▶ Select any item

Display	Chooses between "ON" and "OFF".	
Size	Big	Shows the date and large clock.
	Small	Shows the date and small clock.
	Down Small	Shows the small clock at the bottom of the screen.
Display type	Chooses between "World watch OFF" and "World watch ON".	

NOTE

- ◆ The world clock is only available when "Size" is set to "Small".
- ◆ When "Size" is set to "Down Small" and "Telop display setting" for i-channel is set to "ON" or "Receiving", the clock is hidden while the telop text appears.

<Desktop icon>

Using Desktop Icons

Default setting
Photo mode, Music Channel

Adding frequently called phone numbers or frequently used functions to the standby screen as desktop icons enables you to quickly access those numbers or functions with simple operations.

Adding desktop icons

Select "Add desktop icon" from the function menu on the screen of the function you want to add, a list screen or details screen.

- The following can be added to the standby screen as desktop icons. You can add up to 15 desktop icons into the standby screen.

Action	Icon (Type)	Title* ¹
Retrieve data	1 (Phone number)	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if no name is stored)
	1 (Mail address)	Name stored in the phonebook (mail address if no name is stored)
	1 (SMS address)	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if no name is stored)
	1 (URL)	Page title (URL excluding "http://" or "https://" if no title is stored)
	1 (Melody)* ²	Melody title ("Melody" if no title is stored)
	1 (Image)* ²	Image title ("Image" if no title is stored)
	1 (Movie or i-motion)* ²	Movie or i-motion title ("i-motion" if no title is stored)
	1 (Chara-den)	Chara-den title ("Chara-den" if no title is stored)
	1 (PDF document)	PDF document title ("Document" if no title is stored)
	1 (i-appli program)	Program name
Access function* ³	(Photo mode)/ (Movie mode)/ (Voice memo)/ (To Do list)/ (Schedule)/ (Text memo)/ (Access reader)/ (Bar code reader)/ (i-channel)/ (Music Channel)/ (Receive Ir data)/ (Dictionary)/ (Original menu)* ³	Respective function name ("Type" on the left)
Open folder	(Inbox folder)	Folder title ("Folder" if no title is stored)

*¹ : When a desktop icon is selected, only the first 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters of the title appear.

*² : The pre-installed melodies or images, i-motion programs or original animations cannot be added as desktop icons.

*³ : The same desktop icon cannot be added twice or more times.

<Example: Adding a phone number from the phonebook>

- Phonebook detail screen (p.115) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Add desktop icon" ▶ "YES"



Using desktop icons to access data or functions

1 On the standby screen

The title of the icon in the current cursor position appears.

2 Move the cursor to the desktop icon you want to access and select the icon

■ If there are 6 or more desktop icons stored

The “◀▶” icon appears on the left and right of the screen. Use ◀▶ to scroll through icons.



Desktop icon
Function menu▶p.150

Function menu (Desktop icon screen)

Edit title	▶Edit a title A title can contain up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters.	
Reset desktop	Restores the default setting ("Photo mode" and "Music Channel" only).	
Delete	Delete this	Deletes the selected desktop icon.
	Delete selected	▶Use ◀▶ to select a checkbox (☐)▶(Finish)▶"YES" Several desktop icons can be deleted.
	Delete all	Deletes all desktop icons.
Move	▶"YES"▶Use ◀▶ to move an icon▶ Moves the highlighted desktop icon.	

NOTE

- ◆ The function menu items available on the desktop icon (standby) screen can also be accessed from the function menu on the "Desktop icon" screen (p.150). (However, use ◀▶ to perform "Move" on the "Desktop icon" screen.)

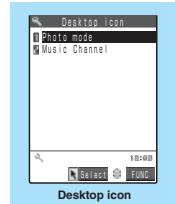
Checking desktop icon information

MENU63

1 "Display"▶"Desktop icon"

The "Desktop icon" screen appears.

2 Select a desktop icon title



NOTE

- ◆ On the information screen of a URL desktop icon, use ◀▶ to scroll the screen to view all the URL information.

Desktop icons that give notice

Icon	Details of notice	When selected
	Notifies you that you received a mail. Highlighting this icon shows an emotion-expressing mail icon according to the contents of the mail and a pictograph included in the mail title using 3D animation. The mail subject is also shown. → pp.151, 260	Opens the detail screen of the latest mail.
	Notifies you that you received a new chat mail. Highlighting this icon pops up an emotion-expressing mail icon using 3D animation according to the contents of the chat mail. → pp.151, 260	Opens the Chat screen.
	Notifies you of new ToruCa information.	Opens the ToruCa folder list screen.
	Notifies you of missed calls. Highlighting the icon shows the number of missed calls.	Shows the "Missed calls" record.

Icon	Details of notice	When selected
	Notifies you of recorded messages of voice calls.	Launches "Play/Erase msg."
	Notifies you of recorded messages of videophone calls.	Launches "Play/Erase VP msg."
	Notifies you that Voice Mail service center keeps some recorded messages.	Launches "Voice Mail".
	Notifies you that a FOMA terminal was unable to post an alarm of alarm clock, scheduled event or To Do list.	Shows the information about the most recent alarm that could not be posted.
	Notifies you that an i-oppli could not be launched automatically.	Opens the "Auto start" screen.
	Notifies you that the i-oppli standby screen shut down due to an error.	Shows the security error history.
	Notifies you that software updating has been completed.	Opens the update results screen following the security code entry.
	Notifies you that the cumulative charge exceeds the specified limit.	Opens the Notice designate calls screen following the security code entry.
	Shows the auto-update of the pattern data of the scan function has been completed. Alternatively, shows new pattern data of the scan function have been released.	Shows the auto-update results for the pattern data of the scan function. If update is not normally terminated or a new pattern is released, the screen prompting you to update the pattern data of the scan function appears.
	Notifies you of completion of a successful download of a Music Channel program.	Displays the Music Channel screen.
	Notifies you of a failed download of a Music Channel program.	

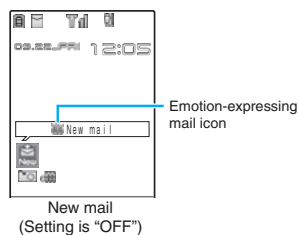
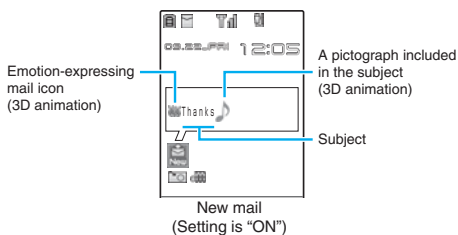
NOTE

- ◆ If you access a function from a desktop icon that gives notice or from the function menu, the desktop icon disappears. However, the desktop icon of " " remains until you play or delete the Record message.
- ◆ To delete all the desktop icons that give notice, hold down  for 1 second or longer (deleting the icons does not delete their contents). However the desktop icons of " ", " " and " " will remain.
- ◆ When you set "Missed calls display" in the "Ring time(sec.)" to "Not display" and receive a call whose ring time is shorter than the one set in "Set mute seconds", the " " icon does not appear. However, calls from phone numbers stored in the phonebook are notified with the icon. → p.175
- ◆ If you receive a new mail or chat mail when the destination Inbox or folder is protected for security, selecting the desktop icon does not show the emotion-expressing mail icon, a pictograph using 3D animation or the mail subject. Instead, "New mail" or "Chat mail" appears.

<3D display setting>**Using 3D Animation for the Message of the New Mail Desktop Icon****Default setting****ON**

Use this procedure to use 3D animation for the new mail or new chat mail desktop icon when it is selected.

- For new mails, the mail subject up to 15 double-byte or 30 single-byte characters appears.
- Details of notice given when the new mail or new chat mail desktop icon is highlighted → p.150
- Emotion-expressing mail icon → p.260



1



▶ “Display” ▶ “3D display setting” ▶ “ON”

- To disable 3D animation
- ▶ “OFF”

NOTE

- ◆ When the subject of a new mail is “No title” or SMS is received, selecting the desktop icon shows an emotion-expressing mail icon in 3D animation according to the contents of the mail, and “New mail” appears.
- ◆ Even if this function is set to “ON”, only “New mail” or “Chat mail” appears instead of an emotion-expressing mail icon when “OFF” is set for “Emotion/Keyword notice” in “Mail settings”.
- ◆ A 3D animation icon may not appear depending on the pictograph. If many pictographs are included in a mail subject, 3D animation may not be used for all the pictographs.

<Icons setting>

Selecting Icons to Show on the Standby Screen

Default setting
ON

You can select and set the icons, date or time to show on the standby screen using the Neuropointer.

1



▶ “Display” ▶ “Icons setting” ▶ “ON”

- To disable selection
- ▶ “OFF”

Selecting icons with the Neuropointer

1

On the standby screen ▶ Slide to show the pointer
▶ Point the icon you want to check ▶

The icon title appears. You can also select date or time.
After selecting an icon using Neuropointer, you can use to select icons.



Icon/display	After selected
/	Opens the screen for releasing “PIM lock”.
/	Opens the screen for releasing “Keypad dial lock”.
/	Opens the screen for releasing “Keypad dial lock” and “PIM lock”.
	Shows “Inbox”.
(white) / (red) / (white) / (red)	Shows the list of unread mails.
(white) / (red)	Shows “MessageR”.
(white) / (red)	Shows “MessageF”.
(white) / (red) / (white) / (red) / (white) / (red)	Performs “Check new messages”.
	Opens the screen for releasing “Self mode”.
	Opens the screen for releasing “IC card lock”.
/ /	Opens the screen for selecting “Vibrator” and “Mail/Msg. ring time”.
/ /	• Normal mode (when not in Manner mode) Opens the screen for selecting “Ring volume” and “Mail/Msg. ring time”. • Manner mode, Super silent mode Shows a message notifying that it cannot be set. • Original manner mode Opens the screen for selecting “Original” and “Mail/Msg. ring time”.
	Shows “Manner mode set”.
	Shows “Remote monitoring”.
	Shows “Alarm”.

Icon/display	After selected
	Shows a message notifying that nothing is recorded.
	Shows "Play/Erase msg.".
	Shows a message notifying that nothing is recorded.
	Shows "Play/Erase VP msg.".
	Shows "Voice Mail". Even if there are already 11 or more recorded voice mail messages, the "10 Voice Mail" message appears.
	Shows "Backlight".
	Shows "External keys guard".
Date	Shows "Schedule". When the time is not set, "Set time" appears.
Clock	Shows "Alarm clock". When the time is not set, "Set time" appears.
World clock	Shows "World watch". This title appears only when the world clock is set to be shown. → p. 148
	Switches active tasks.
	Shows "USB mode setting".

● Security Settings

■ Security codes

Security Codes Used on a FOMA Terminal	156
Changing your Security Code	Change security code 157
Setting your PIN Codes	PIN setting 157
Releasing PIN Lock	158

■ Restricting terminal operations and functions

Lock Functions	159
Preventing Others from Using your Terminal	Lock all/Omakase Lock 159
Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of your Phonebook or Schedule	Secret mode/Secret data only mode 161
Hiding Various Data	Secret folder 163
Hiding your Personal Information	PIM lock 166
Disabling the External Keys	External keys guard 170

■ Restricting incoming and outgoing calls and transmissions

Locking the Keypad	Keypad dial lock 170
Showing/Hiding Redial or Received Calls Record	Record display set 171
Setting Security for Mail Folders	Mail security 171
Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers	Restrictions 172
Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers	Call setting w/o ID 174
Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook	Ring time(sec.) 175
Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook	Reject unknown 175
Disabling Communication Functions	Self mode 176

■ Other security settings

Other Security Settings	177

Security Codes Used on a FOMA Terminal

To make a FOMA terminal more convenient and secure, some functions require a security code entry. The security codes include the one for terminal operations, network security code for network services, i-mode password, etc. Take care to use an appropriate security code when using your FOMA terminal.

■ Notes on security codes

- Avoid using easy-to-guess numbers (e.g. your birth date, a part of your phone number or your address, “1111”, “1234”) for security codes. Take care to make a note of the security codes you have set in case you forget them.
- Take particular care not to disclose your security codes to others. DoCoMo shall not take any responsibility for any damage or loss caused by disclosure of the security codes.
- DoCoMo never ask you about your security codes.
- In case you forget your security code, you need to bring your FOMA terminal, FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification (e.g. driver's license) proving you are the subscriber to a NTT DoCoMo shop. For more information, contact Inquiries described on the back cover of this manual.

● Security code

At the time of purchase, your security code is set to “0000” (4 zeros). You can change your security code at any time. → p.157

When the security code entry screen appears, enter your 4- to 8-digit security code and press .

- The entered security code appears as “_” instead of the numbers.
- If an incorrect security code is entered or no key is pressed roughly for 15 seconds, an alarm tone sounds and the alarm message appears.



● Network security code

Network security code is a 4-digit number you specified at time of contract. This code is required for using DoCoMo e-site or network services. You can change your network security code at any time. If you have My DoCoMo ID or a password for “My DoCoMo” (general support site for PC), you can change your network security code on your PC.

To change your network security code from i-mode, access “各種手続き” (applications and settings) in DoCoMo e-site (available only in Japanese).

* See the back cover of this manual for more information about My DoCoMo and DoCoMo e-site.

● i-mode password

You need a 4-digit “i-mode password” to register or unregister sites in My Menu and to subscribe to or unsubscribe from message services or paid i-mode sites. (Some other passwords may be set independently by information service providers.)

i-mode password is set to “0000” (4 zeros) when you subscribe to the i-mode service. You can change your password at any time.

To change your i-mode password from i-mode, access  (i-mode)  “iMenu”  “ENGLISH”

▶ “Options” ▶ “Change i-mode Password”.

● PIN1 code and PIN2 code

Two pin numbers, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, can be set to a FOMA card (UIM).

PIN1 and PIN2 codes are set to “0000” (4 zeros) at time of contract. You can change your codes at any time. → p.157

PIN1 code is a 4- to 8-digit number (code) you enter when inserting a FOMA card (UIM) into your FOMA terminal or turning the FOMA terminal on. This code identifies you as the user to prevent improper use of your FOMA card (UIM) by others. Entering PIN1 code enables you to perform terminal operations such as making and receiving calls.

PIN2 code is a 4- to 8-digit security code that you enter when performing Reset total cost, or using or requesting user certificates.

When purchasing a new FOMA terminal and inserting the FOMA card (UIM) you have used into the terminal, you can use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you have set.

When the PIN1 or PIN2 code entry screen appears, enter your 4- to 8-digit PIN1 or PIN2 code and press .

- The entered PIN1 or PIN2 code appears as “_” instead of the numbers.
- If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly three times in a row, your PIN1 or PIN2 code is locked. (The remained number of entries appears on the screen.)
Entering the correct PIN1 or PIN2 code returns the remained number to three.

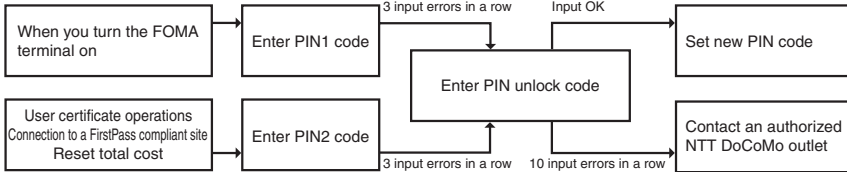


Example: PIN1 code

● PUK code

PUK code is an 8-digit number that will unlock the locked PIN1 or PIN2 code. You cannot change this code.

- If you enter your PUK code incorrectly 10 times in a row, your FOMA card (UIM) is locked.



<Change security code>

MENU29

Changing your Security Code

Default setting
0000 (4 zeros)

- 1**   ► “Lock/Security” ► “Change security code” ► Enter your security code ► Enter a new 4- to 8-digit security code ► Select “YES”

■ To change your security code from “Initial setting”

- Enter your security code ► Enter a new 4- to 8-digit security code ► “YES”

<PIN setting>

Setting your PIN Codes

Default setting	PIN1 code: 0000 (4 zeros)	PIN2 code: 0000 (4 zeros)	PIN1 code entry set: OFF

- PIN1 code, PIN2 code and PIN1 code entry set are recorded in a FOMA card (UIM). When purchasing a new FOMA terminal and inserting the FOMA card (UIM) you have used into the terminal, you can still use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you have used for the FOMA card (UIM).
- If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly 3 times in a row, your PIN is automatically locked and you can no longer use the PIN code. Make a note of your codes in case you forget them.
- PUK code is an 8-digit number that will unlock the locked PIN1 or PIN2 code.
- If you enter your PUK code incorrectly 10 times in a row, your FOMA card (UIM) is then completely locked.
- If you forget your PUK code and your FOMA terminal is completely locked, you need to take your FOMA terminal, current FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification proving that you are the registered service subscriber (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it unlocked.

Changing your PIN1 or PIN2 code

- To change your PIN1 code, select "ON" in "PIN1 code entry set".

- 1   **"Lock/Security"**  **"PIN setting"**  **Enter your security code**

The "PIN setting" screen appears.

- 2 **Select any item**



Change PIN1 code	▶ Enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code currently set ▶ Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code ▶ Enter the new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code again Changes the PIN1 code.
Change PIN2 code	▶ Enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code currently set ▶ Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code ▶ Enter the new 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code again Changes the PIN2 code.
PIN1 code entry set	Sets PIN1 code to be entered when you turn a FOMA terminal on.

Entering your PIN1 code when a FOMA terminal is turned on

When "PIN1 code entry set" is set to "ON", the PIN1 code entry screen appears when you turn a FOMA terminal on. Enter your PIN1 code to proceed.

- 1 **Turn a FOMA terminal on**
- 2 **Enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code**
If the entered PIN1 code is correct, the standby screen appears.



Releasing PIN Lock

If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly three times in a row, unlock the PIN1 or PIN2 code and set a new PIN1 or PIN2 code.

<Example: To unlock your PIN1 code>

- 1 **Enter the 8-digit PUK code**
- 2 **Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code**
- 3 **Enter the new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code again**



Lock Functions

Purpose	Function	Refer to
To prevent others from using your FOMA terminal	Lock all/Omakase Lock	p.159
To hide your "Phonebook" or "Schedule" data to prevent others from viewing them	Secret mode/Secret data only mode	p.161
To hide data such as images or mails to prevent others from viewing them	Secret folder	p.163
To prevent others from viewing or altering your personal information	PIM lock	p.166
To prevent inadvertent use of the external keys	External keys guard	p.170
To prevent calls to phone numbers not stored in "Phonebook"	Keypad dial lock	p.170
To prevent others from viewing records of your incoming and outgoing calls	Record display set	p.171
To use a FOMA terminal without having to worry about incoming voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk calls	Self mode	p.176
To prevent others from using IC card functions	IC card lock	p.330

<Lock all/Omakase Lock>

Preventing Others from Using your Terminal

To lock your FOMA terminal to prevent others from using it, use "Lock all" that is set on your FOMA terminal or "Omakase Lock" that is set remotely.

- Lock all or Omakase Lock is not released even when a FOMA terminal is turned off.

● Available operations and functions while in setting Lock all or Omakase Lock

Operation	Lock all	Omakase Lock
Turning a FOMA terminal on/off	○	○
Calling emergency numbers (110, 119 or 118)	○	×
Setting/Releasing Lock all	○	×
Setting/Releasing Omakase Lock	○	○
Receiving voice calls or videophone calls*	○	○
Receiving remote monitoring calls	○	○
Using IC card functions	○	×
Using functions other than the above	×	×

○: Available ×: Unavailable

* : You cannot make voice calls, videophone calls or Push-to-Talk calls. Even if receiving Push-to-talk calls, the FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call operations and records it as "Missed calls". When a call with a Chaku-moji message is received, the message appears on the incoming call screen. You cannot receive calls when Public mode (Driving mode) is set.

- If Lock all or Omakase Lock is set, no alarm notification is given when a time set in "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "To Do list" is reached. Once you release Lock all or Omakase Lock, the "Missed alarm" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- If Lock all or Omakase Lock is set, the icons pasted into the desktop disappear. The icons reappear after Lock all or Omakase Lock is released.
- Only phone numbers appear even for calls from callers stored on the phonebook while Lock all or Omakase Lock is set.
- Calls that arrive while Lock all or Omakase Lock is set are recorded in "Received calls".

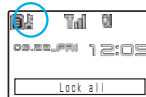
Using a FOMA terminal to set Lock all

Default setting
Release

1 “Lock/Security” ▶ “Lock all” ▶ Enter your security code

Operations during Lock all

- “Lock all” and “” appear on the display. Also, the message “Lock” appears on the Image display.
- Although a FOMA terminal automatically receives MessageR, MessageF, i-mode mails, SMS or chat mails while in setting Lock all, the receiving and reception results screens do not appear. After Lock all is released, the icon for received mails or messages appears on the standby screen.
- Setting Lock all does not affect the “IC card lock” settings. You cannot set or release “IC card lock” while Lock all is set.



Releasing Lock all

- If you fail to release Lock all 5 times in a row, a FOMA terminal is turned off. However, it can still be turned on again.

1 Enter your security code on a screen when Lock all is set

Lock all is released and “” disappears from the screen.



NOTE

- ◆ Even if an incorrect security code is entered for releasing Lock all, no error message appears. Press  and enter a correct security code again.

Using Omakase Lock

Default setting
Release

If you have lost your FOMA terminal, contact DoCoMo or operate from My DoCoMo to lock the FOMA terminal remotely. Protect your privacy and Osaifu-Keitai.

To unlock the FOMA terminal, call the Call Center.

Call Center (for setting/releasing Omakase Lock)

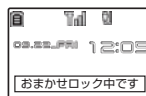
 **0120-524-360** (Operating time: 24 hours a day) (in Japanese only)

* My DoCoMo is also available to set/release Omakase Lock via a PC, etc.

- * For details about Omakase Lock, see “ご利用ガイドブック (User's Guide)” or contact the number listed in “For inquiries” on the back cover.

Operations during Omakase Lock

- The message “おまかせロック中です” appears on the display and image display.
- Omakase Lock is a service where you can lock the FOMA terminal with a FOMA card (UIM) you have subscribed to inserted.
- While Omakase Lock is set, all key operations are locked except receiving a voice call/ videophone call and turning the power on/off. Other functions (including IC card) are unavailable.
- Mails you receive while Omakase Lock is set are kept at the mail center.
- The FOMA card (UIM) and miniSD memory card remain unlocked.



NOTE

- ◆ Other active functions are terminated before Omakase Lock is set. (Edited data may be canceled before the function is terminated.)
- ◆ You can set Omakase Lock even when another lock function is set. If Omakase Lock is released, the lock function that had been set before Omakase Lock is reactivated (except for Secret mode and Secret data only mode).
- ◆ Omakase Lock cannot be set when:
 - The FOMA terminal is out of service area
 - The FOMA terminal is turned off
 - “” appears on a FOMA terminal because Self mode is set, data exchange via Infrared data exchange or cable connection is in progress, etc.

- * The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.371

- ◆ Omakase Lock cannot be set if you have subscribed to the “Dual Network” service and are using the mova service.
- ◆ Omakase Lock is a service where a subscriber to a FOMA card (UIM) inserted into the FOMA terminal asks to lock the terminal. Even if somebody else uses the FOMA terminal, it is locked at the subscriber's request.
- ◆ Omakase Lock can only be released when the same FOMA card (UIM) as used when the lock was set is inserted. When you cannot release the lock by yourself, contact Inquiries on the back cover of this manual.
- ◆ If you try to release Omakase Lock set in a FOMA terminal that is on a voice call or videophone call, the lock is released after the call ends.

<Secret mode/Secret data only mode>

Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule

Default setting	Secret mode: OFF Secret data only mode: OFF

This function enables you to prevent others from accessing “Phonebook” and “Schedule” entries by storing them as secret data that can only be accessed by entering your security code. To store information as secret data, store it in your “Phonebook” or “Schedule” while a FOMA terminal is in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.

In Secret mode, you can access all the data stored in your “Phonebook” or “Schedule”, including secret data. In Secret data only mode, you can access only “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entries that are stored as secret data.

- You can move and store data in “My picture”, “i-motion”, “Inbox”, “Outbox” or “Bookmark” into the “Secret” folder. → p.163
- If you make or receive a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call in Secret or Secret data only mode, the mode set is canceled. If data in a Secret folder is shown, it returns to the list screen of each folder.
- You cannot store entries in the UIM phonebook as secret data.
- Turning a FOMA terminal off cancels Secret mode or Secret data only mode.

Storing phonebook or schedule entries as secret data

MENU40

- The operations for using the “Phonebook” and “Schedule” entries in Secret mode or Secret data only mode are the same as when the secret modes are not set.

<Example: Storing an entry in Secret mode>

- 1   “Lock/Security” ▶ “Secret mode” ▶ Enter
your security code

Secret mode is set and “ ” appears on the screen.

Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time → p.28

■ To cancel Secret mode



Secret mode is canceled and “ ” disappears.



- 2 Store a “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entry

The entry is stored as secret data.

Adding information to the phonebook → p.111

Adding information to your schedule → p.406

1 “Lock/Security” “Secret data only mode” Enter your security code

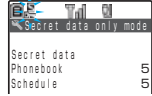
Secret data only mode is set and “” flashes.

Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time → p.28

■ To cancel Secret data only mode



Secret data only mode is canceled and “” disappears.



Secret data	5
Phonebook	5
Schedule	5

2 Search the phonebook or check your schedule

Searching the phonebook → p.115

Checking your schedule → p.407

NOTE

- ◆ Selecting “Set secret” from the phonebook detail function menu also enables you to store a phonebook entry as secret data.
- ◆ In Secret mode, “” flashes when you select or show secret data or show a Secret folder or data stored in a Secret folder.
- ◆ “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entries stored as secret data can only be accessed, edited, deleted or referred in Secret mode or Secret data only mode. When a FOMA terminal is in normal mode, you will be notified of scheduled events stored as secret data by an alarm, while no alarm message appears.
- ◆ If a “Phonebook” entry stored as secret data is assigned to a memory number between “000” and “009”, “Two-touch dialing” can only be used to call that number when a FOMA terminal is in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.
- ◆ Phonebook entries stored as secret data are also stored as secret data in the PushTalk phonebook.
- ◆ If the caller of an incoming call is stored as secret data and shows the caller ID, not the name but the phone number appears. Only the phone number appears also on “Received calls”. However, setting Secret mode or Secret data only mode shows the name stored in the “Received calls” record.
- ◆ If Secret mode or Secret data only mode is released and you receive a mail from a sender stored as secret data, not the name but the mail address appears. The mail address is not stored in the “Received address” record.
- ◆ The following functions cannot be set for “Phonebook” entries stored as secret data:
 - Automatic display → p.124
 - Restrictions → p.172
 - Discern connect → p.122
- ◆ If you edit a “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entry in Secret mode, the edited entry is stored as secret data. If a phonebook entry is edited, all the data stored in the edited phonebook entry are stored as secret data.
- ◆ You can also cancel Secret mode or Secret data only mode by pressing   “Lock/Security” and then selecting “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- ◆ If “Lock all/Omakase Lock” is set at the same time as “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”, releasing “Lock all/Omakase Lock” also cancels “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- ◆ If you receive a call while editing the phonebook or schedule, viewing the schedule or viewing the results of a phonebook search in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the Secret mode or Secret data only mode is canceled. Subsequently when you return to the phonebook or schedule screen and resume the interrupted operation, the security code entry screen appears. When you enter your security code on the screen, Secret mode or Secret data only mode is set and you can then continue the operation.
- ◆ When you make a call or send a mail by accessing a phonebook entry stored as Secret data, “Redial”, “Dialed calls” or “Sent address” is not updated.

Changing secret data back to normal

Set Secret mode or Secret data only mode and access a phonebook entry or scheduled event for which you want to cancel the mode.

<Example: Removing secrecy from a phonebook entry>

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.115) ► (FUNC) ► “Release secret”

The secrecy is removed. In Secret mode, the “” icon stops flashing and remains on screen.

■ For scheduled events

► Schedule list screen ► (FUNC) ► “Release secret”

In Secret mode, the “” icon stops flashing and remains on screen.

“Schedule list function menu” → p.408

<Secret folder>

Hiding Various Data

You can use “Secret” folders to store bookmarks, received mails, sent mails, images and movies that you want to hide from others.

- “Secret” folders appear in the folders of Bookmark, Inbox, Outbox and Data box only when Secret mode or Secret data only mode is set.
- The maximum numbers of files that can be stored in “Secret” folders are listed below.

Bookmark (i-mode)	Bookmark (Full Browser)	Inbox	Outbox	My picture	i-motion
10 (3K bytes)	10 (6K bytes)	100 (150K bytes)	100 (150K bytes)	100 (1.2M bytes)	10 (5M bytes)

* : Maximum number of files that can be stored may vary by the data size.

<Example: Moving an image in My picture to Secret folder>

1 Set “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”

“Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of your Phonebook or Schedule” → p.161

2 Image list screen (p.344) ► Select an image and press (FUNC) ► “Keep in secret”

NOTE

- ◆ Secret folders are pre-installed in a FOMA terminal. You cannot delete them, change their names or add another Secret folder.
- ◆ You cannot use Secret folders to store the images or i-motion programs in “Pre-installed” folders, unread mails or SMS and SMS reports stored in the FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ If you make or receive a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the mode set is canceled even without answering the call. You can also cancel Secret mode or Secret data only mode by pressing (menu) ►  ► “Lock/Security” ► “Secret mode” or (menu) ►  ► “Lock/Security” ► “Secret data only mode”. If a file in a Secret folder is shown, it returns to the folder list screen.

<Bookmark (i-mode and Full Browser)>

- ◆ When you use a bookmark in the Secret folder of i-mode or Full Browser to access a site, the URL of the site is not stored by the Last URL function.

<Inbox/Outbox>

- ◆ When mails are sent or received with mail folders full, mails stored in Secret folders are not deleted.
- ◆ For mails attached with large images, movies or i-motion programs in Secret folders, only the messages are stored and the attachments are not. On the list or detail screen, “”, “”, “” or “” indicating the attached file cannot be shown or played appears. Even if moving the mails into other folders, you cannot view or play the attached files.
- ◆ You cannot use the Phone To/AV Phone To function, Mail To function, Web To function or i-appli To function from mails stored in Secret folders. “” indicating i-appli to be activated from a mail message changes to “”.
- ◆ Since a mail becomes a normal if it is moved out of a Secret folder, a chronologically-older mail may be deleted when other mails are received or sent, depending on the status of the folder including the mail. We recommend you to protect mails before removing them from Secret folders.
- ◆ Even in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, chat mails stored in Secret folders appear on the i-mode mail screen instead of the chat screen.
- ◆ When receiving the SMS report of a SMS stored in a Secret folder, you cannot select “Disp. SMS report” from the function menu even if “” appears on the SMS list or detail screen. To check the SMS report by selecting “Disp. SMS report” from the function menu, move the SMS from a Secret folder into another one.

Continued on next page

<My picture/i-motion>

- ◆ If a file set for the standby screen, a phonebook entry or image on the chat screen is moved to a Secret folder, the setting is reset to default.
- ◆ You cannot use the Phone To/AV Phone To function, Mail To function or Web To function from i-motion.

<Desktop icon>

- ◆ If an image, movie or i-motion pasted as a desktop icon is stored in a Secret folder, you cannot access the data from the desktop icon.
- ◆ Even if a bookmark or mail address is pasted as a desktop icon and the bookmark, received mail or sent mail that contains the mail address is stored in a Secret folder, you can access the bookmark or mail address from the desktop icon.

● Secret folder function menu

The functions available with Secret folders and files in the folders are restricted. The functions available with Secret folders are:

■ Secret folder function menu

Open a folder list screen ► Highlight the “Secret” folder ► Press  (FUNC)

Bookmark (i-mode and Full Browser) (p.222)	Inbox/Outbox (p.271)	My picture (p.381)	i-motion (p.381)
Add folder No. of bookmarks* ¹ Send all Ir data* ¹ Copy all to miniSD* ¹ Delete all* ¹	Add folder No. of messages* ¹ Open folder Send all Ir data* ¹ Copy all to miniSD* ¹ Delete read* ^{1,2} Delete all* ¹	Add folder Delete all image* ¹	Add folder Delete all* ¹

*¹ : Not subject to the data in the “Secret” folder.

*² : Only shown on the Inbox folder screen.

■ Data list function menu

Bookmark (i-mode and Full Browser) (p.223)	Inbox/Outbox (pp.273, 275)	My picture (p.346)	i-motion (p.356)
No. of bookmarks Delete Put out	Color coding List setting Protect ON/OFF Unprotect all Mail info* No. of messages Delete Put out	Display image Image info Delete Memory info Title name, Picture Put out	i-motion info Delete Memory info List setting Put out

* : Only shown on the received mail list screen.

■ Data detail function menu

Inbox/Outbox (pp.276, 277)	My picture (p.348)	i-motion (p.359)
Protect ON/OFF Scroll Font size Delete Put out	Image info Set image disp. Delete this Retry	Normal play Slow Fast Stop i-motion info Set image disp.

Changing data in Secret folder back to normal

To change the data in a Secret folder to normal, move the data into another folder.

<Example: Restoring an image stored in the Secret folder under My picture to normal>

- 1 Set “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”**
“Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of your Phonebook or Schedule”→p.161
- 2 Folder list screen (p.344) ▶ “Secret” ▶ Select an image and press  (FUNC) ▶ “Put out”**
- 3 Select a folder to save the image**

NOTE

- ◆ Since a mail removed from a Secret folder is a normal mail, it may be deleted when other mails are received or sent. We recommend you to protect mails before removing them from Secret folders.

Locking the functions that use your personal information such as mails and phonebook entries allows you to prevent other people from viewing or improperly altering the personal information.

- Functions and items to be locked and data to become unavailable → p.167
- Functions and items to be locked can be customized. → p.169
- Turning a FOMA terminal off does not release the PIM lock.

Activating PIM lock

1 “Lock/Security” “PIM lock” Enter your security code “ON”

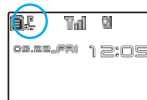
PIM lock is set and functions and data that are subject to PIM lock are locked. “ ” appears on the screen.

■ To release PIM lock

▶ “OFF”

“ ” disappears.

The customized settings are retained after PIM lock is released. When PIM lock is reactivated, the same settings as the previous time are applied.



● Operations while PIM lock is set

To use the functions or data that are subject to PIM lock while PIM lock is set, the security code entry is required.

- Entering your security code correctly disables PIM lock temporarily so that the functions and data that are subject to PIM lock become available. (“ ” disappears from the screen.) To reactivate PIM lock, exit all active functions to return to the standby screen.

<Example: Composing and sending an i-mode mail while PIM lock is set>

1 On the standby screen ()

The security code entry screen as shown on the right appears.

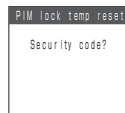
2 Enter your security code

PIM lock is disabled temporarily and the mail menu appears.

3 Compose an i-mode mail to send → p.247

4 Close the mail menu to return to the standby screen

PIM lock is reactivated and “ ” appears on the screen.



NOTE

- ◆ When multiple tasks are activated with the Multitask function (p.399), PIM lock is not reactivated even if the standby screen reappears after the operation. Ending all tasks reactivates PIM lock.
- ◆ The following functions are unavailable when PIM lock is set (release PIM lock to use them):
 - Reset settings
 - Initialize
 - Software update
 - “Update” and “Set auto-update” for the scanning function

● Functions and data that are subject to PIM lock

- The functions and data that are subject to PIM lock are listed below. You can specify whether to set PIM lock for each function and item. → p.169

Group	Item	When locked/Notes
Mail	Mail	Locks the mail menu display. • Mails cannot be composed and mail boxes cannot be displayed. • Though MessageR/MessageF, i-mode mails, chat mails and SMS are received, the receiving and reception results screens do not appear. Releasing PIM lock shows the desktop icon for received mails appears. • Even if you press ☐ (ASSIST) with a FOMA terminal folded, you cannot check "New mail" or "Chat mail" and have the terminal read out the messages.
	Mail member, Chat group	Locks the function activation.
i-mode	i-mode	Locks the i-mode menu display. • i-mode, Full Browser and i-channel are unavailable. • The telop text of i-channel does not appear.
	Bookmark	Locks the displays of the bookmark lists of i-mode and Full Browser.
i-appli	i-appli	Locks the i-appli menu and IC card list displays. All i-appli programs (including pre-installed programs) cannot be performed. • PIM lock does not lock the IC card function. • If the i-appli standby screen is set, it is deactivated while in PIM lock. If a shot or downloaded image had been set before the i-appli standby screen, the image reappears. However, if an image that had been set before the i-appli standby screen is subject to PIM lock, the default image appears. If a pre-installed image had been set before the i-appli standby screen, the image reappears.
ToruCa	ToruCa	Locks the ToruCa list screen display. ToruCa can be acquired using the reader/writer unit even if PIM lock is set, but the acquisition screen does not appear. Releasing the lock shows the "New ToruCa" desktop icon.
Multi media	My picture, i-motion, Melody, Chara-den, My document, Music, Voice announce	Locks the function activation. It cannot be accessed from another function. • If the data subject to PIM lock are set for a ring tone, the receiving screen and standby screen, they work according to the default settings while in PIM lock. • If "Chara-den" is subject to PIM lock and PIM lock is set, the "Pre-installed" substitute image is sent during a videophone call.
	Music Channel, Bar code reader, Camera, Access reader	Locks the function activation. • When PIM lock is set, the FOMA terminal downloads a Music Channel program without displaying the download screen. When PIM lock is released, the desktop icon appears to indicate that the program has been downloaded.
Schedule	Schedule, Alarm clock, To Do list	Locks the function activation. The alarm is not given even when the specified time is reached. • The alarm is not given and the "Missed alarm" desktop icon appears. • If "Schedule" is subject to PIM lock and the calendar is set for the standby screen, Schedule cannot be activated from the calendar on the standby screen while in PIM lock.
Memo	Record message	Locks the "Record message" setting operations. Furthermore, does not record messages when a call arrives. • Locks the "Quick message" activation.
	Play/Erase msg., Play/Erase VP msg.	Locks the function activation. • Even if pressing ☐ (ASSIST) with a FOMA terminal folded, you cannot check missed calls indicated by "Record message".
	Voice memo, Voice memo (in-call)	Locks the function activation.

Group	Item	When locked/Notes
Phonebook	Phonebook	Locks the phonebook and PushTalk phonebook activation. Phonebook entries cannot be accessed. (This affects many other functions that use the phonebook.) • Even for a person who is stored in the phonebook, only the phone number appears on the dialing or receiving screen of a voice or videophone call. When a new i-mode mail or chat mail is received, the mail address appears instead of the name stored in the phonebook. • If "Only number in PH-book" is set for "MSG display settings" in "Chaku-moji", a Chaku-moji message does not appear on the receiving screen. • Even for a person who is stored in the phonebook, only the phone number appears in the "Received calls", "Dialed calls" or "Redial" record. • On the mail list or detail screens, the mail addresses appear instead of the names stored in the phonebook. • If PIM lock is set after "ON" is set to "Set mute seconds" in "Ring time(sec.)" or "Reject unknown" is set, the "Ring time(sec.)" and "Reject unknown" settings become deactivated. • The "Call rejection", "Call acceptance", "Call forwarding" and "Voice Mail" settings are deactivated. • Even if pressing ☐ (ASSIST) with a FOMA terminal folded, you cannot have the FOMA terminal read out the caller or sender of "Missed call", "New mail", "Chat mail" or "Record message".
	Own number	Locks the "Own number" activation.
	Dialed calls	Locks the "Dialed calls", "Redial" and "Sent address" activations.
	Received calls	Locks the "Received calls" and "Received address" activations. • Even if pressing ☐ (ASSIST) with a FOMA terminal folded, you cannot check "Missed call".
Other settings	Text memo	Locks the "Text memo" activation.
	Notice designate calls	No alarm is given when the specified cost limit is exceeded. • Releasing PIM lock displays the "Notice designate calls" desktop icon on the standby screen. • PIM lock does not lock the "Notice designate calls" setting operations.
	Chaku-moji	Locks "Chaku-moji". • PIM lock does not lock the operations performed when Chaku-moji mails arrive. (They are performed according to "MSG display settings" in "Chaku-moji".) • Select "Create message" from the function menu to make a call with a Chaku-moji message.

NOTE

- ◆ If desktop icons of data that are subject to PIM lock are pasted into the standby screen, they do not appear while PIM lock is set.
- ◆ When PIM lock is set, you cannot receive Infrared data or exchange data via cable connection (OBEX exchange). (To use those functions, release the PIM lock temporarily.)

Customizing the functions and data that are subject to PIM lock

You can customize the functions and data that are subject to PIM lock. For example, you can lock only phonebook entries or use i-mode or mails while PIM lock is set.

- Specify whether to set PIM lock for each group or item.

List of the groups and items → p.167

- All groups and items are subject to PIM lock at the time of purchase.
- The customized settings are retained whether PIM lock is set or released.

1   ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “PIM lock” ▶ Enter your security code

2  (Detail)

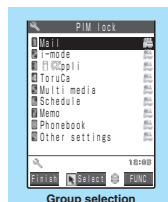
The “group selection” screen appears.

“” appears with the group in which any item is selected.

“” appears with the group in which all items are selected.

■ To select or deselect all items in a group

▶ Highlight a group ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Select” or “Release”



Function menu ▶ p.169

3 Select a group for which you want to change the settings

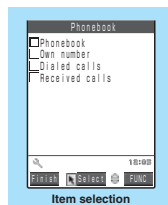
The “item selection” screen appears.

4 Use  to select a checkbox () ▶  (Finish)

The checked () items will be locked when PIM lock is set.

Deselect items you do not want to lock with PIM lock.

5  (Finish) ▶ “ON”



Function menu ▶ p.169

Function menu (group selection screen)

Select	Selects all items in a group.
Release	Deselects all the selected items in a group.
Select all	Selects all items in all groups.
Release all	Deselects all the selected items in all groups.

Function menu (item selection screen)

Select all	Selects all items.
Release all	Deselects all the selected items.

<External keys guard>

MENU X (1 second or longer)

Disabling the External Keys

Default setting
OFF

You can disable the external keys (□ (ASSIST), □ (HOME) and □ (MEMO/CHECK)) by folding a FOMA terminal.

You cannot disable □ using this function.

- In the situations listed below, the external keys are enabled regardless of this setting. However, you cannot activate the camera by pressing □ () for 1 second or longer with a FOMA terminal folded.
 - FOMA terminal is open.
 - An equipment such as attached stereo earphone (sample) is connected to the earphone terminal.
 - An external connector is connected to PC or other device and " " and " " appear on the screen.
 - An external connector is connected to a printer and " " appears on the screen.

1



(1 second or longer)

The external keys are disabled (when a FOMA terminal is folded) and " " appears on the screen.

■ To cancel this function

- ▶ Repeat step 1

" " disappears.



<Keypad dial lock>

Locking the Keypad

Default setting
Release

This function prohibits you from making voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk calls by dialing a phone number or sending i-mode mail and SMS by using dial keys. Calls can only be made by using "Phonebook" entries stored before the keypad is locked or using the "Dialed calls", "Redial" or "Sent address" records logged after the keypad is locked.

In situations where a FOMA terminal is being used for business purposes for example, you can prevent private calls or mails by storing the required work numbers and mail addresses in the "Phonebook" beforehand and then setting this function.

- While the keypad is locked, you cannot use the following functions or procedures to make voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk calls, compose i-mode mails or SMS:

• Keypad entry	• Received calls	• Received address	• Mail member
• Desktop icon	• Access reader	• Bar code reader	• Record message playback
• Videophone message playback	• Service Numbers	• Play messages	• Voice Mail setting
• Additional service (numbers stored using "Enter number")			
- The following are not possible while the keypad is locked:
 - Adding, editing or deleting phonebook entries
 - Using the "Phone To", "AV Phone To" or "Mail To" function
 - Sending or receiving phonebook data using Infrared data exchange
 - Copying or deleting phonebook entries using "UIM operation"
 - Copying phonebook entries from the miniSD memory card
 - Sending AT commands
- Locking the keypad deletes all the records of "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address" and "Sent address". However, all entries logged in those records after keypad is locked remain. If an address, subject and message are included in a mail, the address is deleted and the message and subject remain. If only an address is entered, the mail is deleted.
- Setting this function deletes chat group members.

1



▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Keypad dial lock" ▶ Enter your security code

Keypad dial lock is set and " " appears on the screen.

Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time → p.28

■ To release Keypad dial lock

- ▶ Repeat step 1

" " disappears.



NOTE

- ◆ You can still directly dial and make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when the keypad is locked.

<Record display set>

Showing/Hiding Redial or Received Calls Record

Default setting

Received calls: ON Redial/Dialed calls: ON

This function enables you to hide the "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address" and "Sent address" records. This is useful for preventing other people from viewing your records of incoming and outgoing calls.

- 1**   **"Lock/Security"** **"Record display set"** **Enter your security code** **Select any item**

Received calls	Specifies whether to show or hide the Received calls record. Select "OFF" to hide the record.
Redial/Dialed calls	Specifies whether to show or hide the Redial or Dialed calls record. Select "OFF" to hide the record.

NOTE

- When you have a missed call while "Received calls" is set to "OFF", the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby screen. If you attempt to access "Received calls" from this desktop icon, the message notifying "Received calls" is set to "OFF" appears and the desktop icon remains on the screen. To clear the "Missed call" desktop icon, press  for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.
- To show the Dialed calls or Received calls record that are logged when "Record display set" is set to "OFF", set it to "ON".
- You cannot play Record messages when the "Received calls" record display is set to "OFF".

<Mail security>

Setting Security for Mail Folders

Default setting
No security

This function enables you to apply security to your Inbox, Outbox, Draft or other folders so that their contents cannot be viewed by other people without your permission. Secured mailboxes or folders cannot be opened unless the security code is entered.

- The entered security code is valid until you exit the mail menu to end a mail task. While it is valid, you do not need to enter the security code to open a box or folder protected with other security functions.
- The  icon appears with secured mailboxes.
- For a secured folder, an icon such as , ,  or  appears before the folder name on the folder list screen.
- If you set security for Inbox or Outbox, e-mail addresses are not recorded in the Sent address or Received address list.

Setting security for individual mailboxes

- 1**   **"Mail settings"** **"Mail security"** **Enter your security code**
- 2** Use  to select a checkbox (☐)
The selected mailbox is ticked.
To deselect the ticked mailbox, select it again.
- 3** Press  (Finish) after the settings



Setting security for individual folders

You can also set security for each folder. Secured folders cannot be shown unless the security code is entered.

- 1** **Inbox folder screen (p.266)/Outbox folder screen (p.266)**  (FUNC)
"Mail security" **Enter your security code** **"YES"**
- To cancel mail security**
▶ Repeat step 1

<Restrictions>

Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers

Default setting
All OFF

To prevent users from making private calls or receiving nuisance calls, you can restrict calls to/from the specific phone numbers stored in the phonebook.

- The functions listed below can be set:

Item	Description
Restrict dialing	Disables calls to phone numbers other than the specified ones. Use the phonebook to call the numbers specified in this function.
Call rejection	Rejects calls from the specified phone numbers.
Call acceptance	Accepts calls only from the specified phone numbers.
Call Forwarding	Forwards calls from the specified phone numbers regardless of whether Call Forwarding is activated or deactivated.
Voice Mail	Automatically connects calls from the specified phone numbers to the Voice Mail service center regardless of whether Voice Mail is activated or deactivated.

- You can specify up to 20 phone numbers in each directory.
- You cannot set this function for UIM phonebook entries.
- Restrictions are only valid when a caller shows the caller ID. Restrictions should be set in conjunction with “Caller ID Request” and “Call setting w/o ID”.
- You cannot concurrently set Call rejection and Call acceptance, or Call forwarding and Voice Mail for the same number.
- This function cannot be set for phonebook entries added in “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- If you edit or delete a phone number specified in this function, the restrictions are released. However, setting “Restrict dialing” restricts the phonebook editing or deleting, which prevents you from changing or deleting a phone number to release Restrict dialing.
- The “Restrict dialing”, “Call rejection” and “Call acceptance” settings are also applied to the PushTalk phonebook entries.

● When Restrict dialing is set

- You cannot dial using all the records of Dialed calls and Received calls including the specified phone numbers. Also, you cannot retrieve phone numbers other than the specified ones, add to, edit or delete phonebook entries, exchange data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM), or operate the phonebook using “UIM operation”.
- The Redial/Dialed calls records and Sent address list that had been stored before the Restrict dialing setting are deleted. However, you can dial or send mails using the records of Redial/Dialed calls or Sent address list that have been stored after the setting.

Setting dialing/receiving restrictions on phone numbers

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.115) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Restrictions” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select a function

A star (★) appears with the selected function.

■ To deselect selected functions

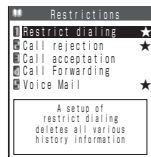
- ▶ Select a function with a star (★)

The function is deselected and the star “★” disappears.

■ To set dialing/receiving restrictions on multiple phone numbers

- ▶ Press [CALL] to return to the phonebook detail screen ▶ Use [F5] to show the desired phone number ▶ Repeat step 1

Once you press [F5] to return to the standby screen after setting Restrict dialing, you can no longer set further restrictions. To set more restrictions, cancel the restrictions that have already been set for a phone number and then set restrictions again for phone numbers including the unrestricted one.



NOTE

<Restrict dialing>

- ◆ You can still make calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when Restrict dialing is set.
- ◆ To use “Automatic display” at the same time as Restrict dialing, set Restrict dialing for phonebook numbers for which “Automatic display” has already been set.
- ◆ Only the phone numbers specified in Restrict dialing appear in the phonebook.

<Call rejection/Call acceptance>

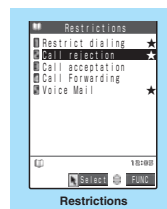
- ◆ A FOMA terminal receives i-mode mails and SMS regardless of this function.
- ◆ If you receive a call from a phone number specified in Call rejection or from a number not specified in Call acceptance, the number is recorded as a missed call in the "Received calls" record and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- ◆ If you receive a call from a phone number specified in Call rejection or from a number not specified in Call acceptance, the call is rejected even when the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service is set to "Activate". However, if the ring time for the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service is set to 0 (zero) seconds, or if a FOMA terminal is turned off or out of service area, the call is handled by the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service. When this happens, the phone number of the received call is not logged in the "Received calls" record and the "Missed call" desktop icon does not appear on the standby screen.
- ◆ While PIM lock is set for "Phonebook" items, this function is disabled and a FOMA terminal accepts calls from the phone numbers specified in Call rejection or the numbers not specified in Call acceptance.
- ◆ You can still make calls even when Call rejection or Call acceptance is set.

<Call Forwarding/Voice Mail>

- ◆ If you receive a call from a phone number specified in this function, a FOMA terminal rings for roughly 1 second and the call is then either forwarded to the forwarding number or connected to the Voice Mail service center.
- ◆ If no forwarding number is designated or you have not subscribed to "Call Forwarding" or "Voice Mail", calls from the phone numbers specified in this function are handled as missed calls.
- ◆ While PIM lock is set for "Phonebook" items, this function is disabled and a FOMA terminal acts normally when receiving a call from a specified phone number.

Checking the restriction settings**MENU 12**
**1 Phonebook list screen (p.115) ▶ [] (FUNC) ▶
 "Restrictions" ▶ Enter your security code**

The "Restrictions" screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.173

Function menu (Restrictions screen)
**1 Restrictions screen ▶ Highlight a function with a star (★)
 ▶ [] (FUNC) ▶ Select any item**

Check settings	Shows a list of the phonebook entries for which the highlighted function is set.
Release settings	Cancels all the highlighted function settings.

Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers

Default setting

All Accept (Select ring tone: Same as ring tone Select calling disp.: Same as display)

This function enables you to accept or reject voice calls, videophone calls and Push-to-Talk calls from callers who do not show the caller ID based on the reason given.

1



▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Call setting w/o ID” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item

Unknown	Specifies whether to accept calls from callers who are unable to show the caller ID, such as calls from overseas or pay phones or calls sent via a call forwarding service. Relaying phone companies may show caller IDs in some cases.		
	Accept	Accepts calls.	
		Select ring tone	Selects the ring tone for “Unknown” calls from “Same as ring tone”, “Melody”, “i-motion”, “Music”, “Voice announce”, “Random melody” and “OFF”. → p.128 When “Same as ring tone” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Phone” setting in “Select ring tone”.
		Select calling disp.	Selects the image shown when “Unknown” calls arrive from “Same as display”, “My picture” and “i-motion”. → p.138 When “Same as display” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Calling” setting in “Display setting”.
	Reject	Rejects calls.	
Payphone	Specifies whether to accept calls from pay phones.		
	Accept	Accepts calls.	
		Select ring tone	Selects the ring tone for “Payphone” calls from “Same as ring tone”, “Melody”, “i-motion”, “Music”, “Voice announce”, “Random melody” and “OFF”. → p.128 When “Same as ring tone” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Phone” setting in “Select ring tone”.
		Select calling disp.	Selects the image shown when “Payphone” calls arrive from “Same as display”, “My picture” and “i-motion”. → p.138 When “Same as display” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Calling” setting in “Display setting”.
	Reject	Rejects calls.	
User unset	Specifies whether to accept calls that hide the caller ID due to the setting of the caller's phone.		
	Accept	Accepts calls.	
		Select ring tone	Selects the ring tone for “User unset” calls from “Same as ring tone”, “Melody”, “i-motion”, “Music”, “Voice announce”, “Random melody” and “OFF”. → p.128 When “Same as ring tone” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Phone” setting in “Select ring tone”.
		Select calling disp.	Selects the image shown when “User unset” calls arrive from “Same as display”, “My picture” and “i-motion”. → p.138 When “Same as display” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Calling” setting in “Display setting”.
	Reject	Rejects calls.	

NOTE

- ◆ The ring tone and call receiving image selected in this function are for voice calls hiding the caller ID. For videophone calls hiding the caller ID, the “Videophone” setting in “Select ring tone” and “V.phone Calling” setting in “Display setting” are applied. If you receive Push-to-Talk calls hiding the caller ID, the “PushTalk” setting in “Select ring tone” is applied.
- ◆ When “Reject” is set, the other party hears a busy tone.
- ◆ If you receive a call from a caller who is set to “Reject”, the call is rejected even when the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to “Activate”. However, if the ring time for the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to 0 (zero) seconds, or if a FOMA terminal is turned off or out of service area, the call is handled by the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal receives i-mode mails and SMS regardless of this function.
- ◆ Accept/Reject of “User unset” can only be set for Push-to-Talk calls.

Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook

Default setting

Set mute seconds: OFF

Mute seconds(sec): 1 second

Missed calls display: Display

Use this function to set the mute time until a FOMA terminal starts ringing when receiving a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call of which caller is not stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook or UIM phonebook (Set mute seconds). You can prevent accidentally making a call using the Received calls record to a number such as a nuisance caller that only rings for a short period of time.

- The specified mute seconds is also enabled when you receive a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call hiding the caller ID, or receive a call during another voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call.
- "Set mute seconds" cannot be selected when "Reject unknown" is set to "Reject".

1



▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Ring time(sec.)" ▶ Select any item

Set mute seconds	ON	▶ Enter a mute time (01 to 99 seconds) Sets the time for which a ring tone is muted before a FOMA terminal starts ringing. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, press
	OFF	Sets 0 seconds to the time for which a ring tone is muted before a FOMA terminal starts ringing.
Missed calls display		Specifies whether to show received calls for which no ring tone sounded in the Missed calls record.

NOTE

- ◆ While a FOMA terminal is ringing, the terminal emits a ring tone or vibrates, the incoming call lamp lights up or flashes and an incoming call/mail is indicated on the image window.
- ◆ When you receive a call from a caller stored in the phonebook as a secret entry, a FOMA terminal operates as specified in this function.
- ◆ If the time set in Set mute seconds is longer than the ring time for the Record message function, a FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing. To have a ring tone sound before a message is recorded, set a longer ring time for Record message than the time set in Set mute seconds. The same applies to the ring times for Voice Mail, Call Forwarding and Automatic answer.

<Reject unknown>

Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook

Default setting
Accept

You can specify whether a FOMA terminal accepts or rejects calls from phone numbers that are not stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) or UIM phonebook.

- This function is only valid when a caller shows the caller ID. "Caller ID Request" and "Call setting w/o ID" should be set in conjunction with this function.
- This function cannot be selected when "Set mute seconds" of "Ring time (sec.)" is set to "ON".

1



▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Reject unknown" ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "Reject"

■ To receive calls from callers who are not stored in the phonebook

▶ "Accept"

NOTE

- ◆ When "Call setting w/o ID" accepts calls hiding the caller ID, a FOMA terminal acts according to the "Call setting w/o ID" setting even if this function is set to "Reject".
- ◆ When you receive a call from a caller who is stored in the phonebook as a secret entry, the call is accepted even if this function is set to "Reject".
- ◆ When phone numbers are specified in "Call acceptance" in "Restrictions", you can only receive calls from the phone numbers even if this function is set to "Accept".
- ◆ When "Reject" is selected for this function and you receive a call from a phone number not stored in the phonebook, the call is logged as a missed call in the "Received calls" record and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby screen. Even if you have activated the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service, the caller hears a busy tone. However, if a FOMA terminal is turned off or out of service area, or if the ring time set for "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" is 0 (zero) seconds, the caller does not hear the busy tone and is connected to the "Voice Mail service center" or forwarding number. When this happens, the phone number of the received call is not logged in the "Received calls" record and the "Missed call" desktop icon does not appear on the standby screen.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal receives i-mode mails and SMS regardless of this function.

You can set a FOMA terminal not to make or receive voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk calls, use i-mode, or send or receive mails. This function is useful when you want to use a FOMA terminal without having to worry about interruptions such as incoming voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk calls.

- You can still make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) while in Self mode. Making a voice call to an emergency number cancels Self mode.

1 ► “Lock/Security” ► “Self mode” ► “YES”

A FOMA terminal is set to Self mode and “**self**” appears on the screen.

■ To cancel Self mode

► Repeat step 1

Self mode is canceled and “**self**” disappears.

● When Self mode is set

- Received calls are not logged in the Received calls record and the “Missed call” desktop icon does not appear on the standby screen.
- Callers of voice calls hear a message that your FOMA terminal is out of service area or turned off. Callers of videophone calls see a message that your FOMA terminal is out of service area or turned off. If the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is activated, calls are handled in the same way as when a FOMA terminal is turned off.
- If a Push-to-Talk call arrives, a “Disconnected” response is sent to the members.
- MessageR/MessageF and i-mode mails sent to you while Self mode is set are kept at the i-mode Center, and SMS are kept at the SMS Center.
- Data exchange using Infrared data exchange or OBEX, packet communication with a PC connected and 64K data communication are also unavailable. However, you can read and write IC card data by using the Osaifu-Keitai i-appli.

Other Security Settings

Apart from those explained in this chapter, there are functions/services relating to security settings as shown below.

Purpose	Function/Service	Refer to
To prevent others from using IC card functions	IC card lock	p.330
To avoid “nuisance phone calls” such as prank phone calls or unsolicited sales phone calls	Nuisance Call Blocking	p.428
To ignore calls hiding the caller ID	Caller ID Request	p.428
To send data securely by using a digital authentication service *Only available on sites that support FirstPass	FirstPass	p.236
To update FOMA terminal software when necessary	Software Update	p.489
To protect a FOMA terminal against malicious data	Scanning function	p.493
To accept only necessary i-mode mails	Receive option	p.260
To leave/hear the information about the safety using i-mode at the time of disaster	“i-mode Disaster Message Board” service	See “i-mode User’s Manual”.
To change your mail address	Change Mail Address	
To check your mail address if you forget it	Confirm Mail Address	
To accept/reject mails from the specified domains only	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/Receive Mail Settings)	
To accept/reject mails only from i-mode terminals		
To accept/reject mails only from the specified addresses		
To reject short messages (SMS)	Spam Mail Prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)	
To reject any further incoming i-mode mail sent from an i-mode mobile phone once you have received 200 messages a day from that phone	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To reject advertisements sent unilaterally	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To restrict the size of a received mail	Limit Mail Size	
To check the status of mail function settings	Confirm Settings	
To temporarily stop the mail function	Suspend Mail	

NOTE

- ◆ Be careful when making calls to unknown numbers logged as missed or received call. In particular showing your caller ID to other unknown parties may cause unnecessary problems.

<Nuisance Call Blocking priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows when Nuisance Call Blocking function is set at the same time.
 - ① Nuisance Call Blocking
 - ② Reject unknown or Ring time(sec.)/Call setting w/o ID/Call rejection

● Camera

Before Using the Camera		180
Shooting Still Images	Photo mode	187
Shooting Movies	Movie mode	194
Changing the Shooting Settings		199
Using the Bar Code Reader.....	Bar code reader	200
Scanning Text	Access reader	203

Before Using the Camera

You can shoot still images and movies using the built-in camera.

Using the camera

To switch between the front camera and rear camera, press  (FUNC) on the shooting screen and select "Front camera" or "Rear camera" from the function menu.

■ Rear camera

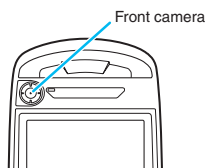
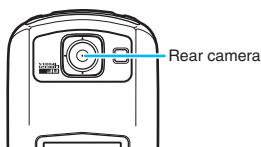
This camera is useful for taking photos of other people, animals or scenery. What you see is what you get on the screen (Normal display: photographed as it appears on the screen). This camera is available for close-up shooting.

→ p.180

You can also shoot still images by using auto focus. → p.187

■ Front camera

This camera is useful for taking photos of yourself. Images appear as if you were looking in the mirror (Mirror display) and shot images are reversed (Normal display) when saved in a FOMA terminal.



- The cameras are developed based on the extremely high-precision technology. However, the shots may include lines or spots that appear dark or bright. Random color points (statistical noise) may also appear on the photographed images particularly when you shoot in very poorly lit locations.
- Before shooting, wipe the lens clean with a soft cloth. Fingerprints or grease spots on the lens may prevent the camera from focusing properly and cause blurred images.
- Take care not to press on the lens when folding a FOMA terminal. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Image quality may be adversely affected if a FOMA terminal is left in a hot location for a long period of time.
- Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight for a long period of time or shoot directly the sun or a powerful lamp. Doing so may lead to discoloration of photographed images or cause the camera to malfunction.

● Close-up

- To take close-up photos, select "Close-up" from "Photo mode" (p.196) under "Image quality". The camera is focused on an object 7 to 9cm away from the rear lens.

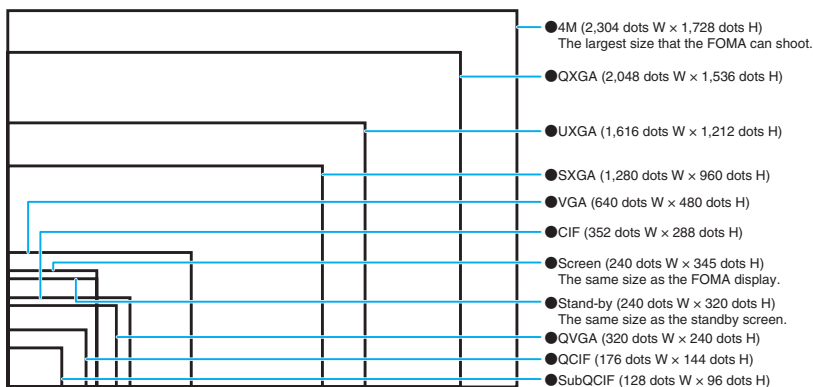
● Shake correction function

Your FOMA terminal incorporates the shake correction function. Using this function prevents the rear camera from being shaken while shooting of images or movies.

Shake correction function → p.197

Image size

- The following shows the image sizes supported by FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED. Choose the size that suits your purpose:



* : The image sizes framed above are not the actual sizes.

Image shooting specifications

- Up to 480 still images can be saved in a FOMA terminal (Phone). This may vary depending on the image size settings or number of downloaded images.
- The displayed remaining storage count is an approximate value determined according to the settings activated when shooting. Depending on the situation, the count may not change or shot data may be saved even if 0 is displayed.
- The following table lists the sizes and approximate numbers of images that can be stored: (A: Available, U: Unavailable)

Image size	Camera		Storage setting	Maximum number of images	
	Rear camera	Front camera		N902iX HIGH-SPEED (Phone)	miniSD memory card (32M bytes)
4M (2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 6	Approx. 25
			Fine	Approx. 6	Approx. 30
			Normal	Approx. 8	Approx. 40
QXGA (2,048 dots wide × 1,536 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 6	Approx. 30
			Fine	Approx. 8	Approx. 40
			Normal	Approx. 14	Approx. 59
UXGA (1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 12	Approx. 49
			Fine	Approx. 14	Approx. 59
			Normal	Approx. 22	Approx. 94
SXGA (1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 12	Approx. 49
			Fine	Approx. 14	Approx. 59
			Normal	Approx. 22	Approx. 94
VGA (640 dots wide × 480 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 14	Approx. 59
			Fine	Approx. 72	Approx. 270
			Normal	Approx. 130	Approx. 472
CIF (352 dots wide × 288 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 14	Approx. 59
			Fine	Approx. 130	Approx. 472
			Normal	Approx. 180	Approx. 630
Screen (240 dots wide × 345 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 72	Approx. 270
			Fine	Approx. 130	Approx. 472
			Normal	Approx. 180	Approx. 630

Stand-by (240 dots wide × 320 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 72	Approx. 270
			Fine	Approx. 130	Approx. 472
			Normal	Approx. 180	Approx. 630
QCIF (176 dots wide × 144 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 72	Approx. 270
			Fine	Approx. 360	Approx. 945
			Normal	Approx. 480	Approx. 1,890
SubQCIF (128 dots wide × 96 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 72	Approx. 270
			Fine	Approx. 360	Approx. 945
			Normal	Approx. 480	Approx. 1,890

* : The FOMA terminal defines UXGA as 1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high and SXGA as 1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high.

Movie shooting specifications

- Up to 100 movies can be saved in a FOMA terminal (Phone). This may vary depending on the image size settings or number of downloaded i-motion programs.
- The default length of movie shooting is roughly 45 seconds. However, the shooting time per movie varies depending on factors such as the types of objects.
- The maximum number of movies that can be stored varies depending on shooting lengths.
- The following table lists the sizes and approximate numbers/time of movies that can be stored:
(A: Available, U: Unavailable)

Image size	Camera		File size setting	Movie type set	Maximum number of movies	
	Rear camera	Front camera			N902iX HIGH-SPEED (Phone)	miniSD memory card (32M bytes)
QVGA (320 dots wide × 240 dots high)	A	U	Local playback	Normal	Approx. 19	Approx. 35
				Video	Approx. 19	Approx. 35
				Voice	Approx. 19	Approx. 35
			Long time	Normal	—	Approx. 9 min.
				Video	—	Approx. 9 min.
				Voice	—	Approx. 90 min.
QCIF (176 dots wide × 144 dots high)	A	A	Restricted (Short)	Normal	Approx. 52	Approx. 93
				Video	Approx. 52	Approx. 93
				Voice	Approx. 52	Approx. 93
			Restricted (Long)	Normal	Approx. 31	Approx. 57
				Video	Approx. 31	Approx. 57
				Voice	Approx. 31	Approx. 57
			Local playback	Normal	Approx. 19	Approx. 35
				Video	Approx. 19	Approx. 35
				Voice	Approx. 19	Approx. 35
			Long time	Normal	—	Approx. 60 min.
				Video	—	Approx. 60 min.
				Voice	—	Approx. 90 min.
SubQCIF (128 dots wide × 96 dots high)	A	A	Restricted (Short)	Normal	Approx. 52	Approx. 93
				Video	Approx. 52	Approx. 93
				Voice	Approx. 52	Approx. 93
			Restricted (Long)	Normal	Approx. 31	Approx. 57
				Video	Approx. 31	Approx. 57
				Voice	Approx. 31	Approx. 57
			Local playback	Normal	Approx. 19	Approx. 35
				Video	Approx. 19	Approx. 35
				Voice	Approx. 19	Approx. 35
			Long time	Normal	—	Approx. 60 min.
				Video	—	Approx. 60 min.
				Voice	—	Approx. 90 min.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.371

Notes on using the camera

■ Notes on shooting

- A sound heard when the rear camera is launched is no problem.
- The color and brightness in still images or movies shot with the built-in camera may differ from those of the actual objects.
- Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight for a long period of time or shoot directly the sun or a powerful lamp. Doing so may lead to discoloration of photographed images or cause the camera to malfunction.
- Take care that your fingers, hair or the camera strap do not cover the lens when shooting.
- Shooting images or movies uses a large amount of battery. It is recommended that you turn off the camera immediately after you finish shooting. The screen may look dark or blurred if you shoot with low battery.
- If one of the following events occurs during continuous or movie shooting, the shooting is interrupted and then the respective screen appears. After the screen is finished, the camera screen reappears and the shots can be saved. If one of the following events occurs during zoom or brightness adjustment, the adjustment is fixed and the camera menu reappears. If one of the following events occurs during self-timer operation, the operation is interrupted:
 - A voice call, videophone call, Push-to-Talk call or 64K data communication data arrives.
 - The alarm of Alarm clock, Schedule or To Do list is given.
 - An operation of another function is performed.
- Note the following:
 - If you receive a message, MessageR or MessageF while using the camera (including while the shooting screen appears), the shooting continues without the Receiving results screen being displayed regardless of the "Receiving display" settings (p.279).
 - Selecting "Operation preferred" in "Alarm setting" does not stop shooting, performing the camera settings or operating the auto timer even when it is time to give an alarm.
- Even in "Manner mode" or "Public mode (Driving mode)", a FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound, auto timer tone and AF lock sound. Even if "Earphone" is set to "Earp.(Speaker in 20s)" or "Earphone(only)" and the attached stereo earphone (sample) is attached to the terminal, these sounds come out of the speaker.
- If Shake correction is set to "OFF", moving a FOMA terminal while shooting may blur images. It is recommended to set Shake correction to "Auto".
- When shooting a still image, keep a FOMA terminal steady until it emits the shutter sound and finishes loading the shot image (the shooting checking screen appears). (Furthermore, keep the FOMA terminal steady while a message indicating the shot is being processed appears.)
- After you display the shooting screen, switch the camera modes or change the camera settings, it may take long for the brightness or color tone to become its best.
- Setting "Auto save set" (pp.188, 195) to "ON" allows you to automatically save the shots to the folder specified in "Select to save" without showing the shooting checking screen.
- The camera is automatically finished if you do not press any keys for three minutes or longer.

■ Copyright Information

- Take care not to infringe copyrights when you duplicate or edit the images you shot or recorded with a FOMA terminal. Also take care not to infringe portrait rights by using or altering another person's portrait without his or her permission. It may be prohibited to shoot or record the stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it.

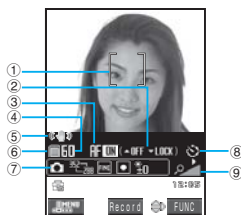


Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

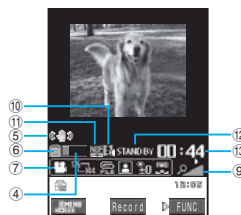
Guide to the shooting screen

The shooting screens show the icons of the camera settings.

Photo mode shooting



Movie mode shooting



Function	Icon	Description	Refer to
① Focus frame		Setting AFchange to "ON" changes the auto focus frame as follows: - White: Before focusing - Dotted white: Focusing - Green: Focused - Dotted red: Focusing failed	p.187
② AF operation guidance		Shows the guide to the AF change and focus lock.	p.187
③ Auto focus change		"AFchange" is set to "ON".	p.187
		"AFchange" is set to "OFF".	
④ Remaining storage count/ Memory info ^{*1}		Shows the number of photos that can be saved in the FOMA terminal (Phone) or miniSD memory card on the Photo mode screen. - White: 11 or more - Yellow: 10 or fewer - Red: No memory available	—
		Shows the amounts of total and available memories on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or miniSD memory card using a bar and colors before shooting a movie. - Blue: 500K bytes or more remaining - Yellow: Less than 500K bytes remaining - Red: No memory available^{*2}	—
⑤ Shake correction		Appears when Shake correction is set to "Auto".	p.197
⑥ Select to save		Shows the destination folder.	pp.188, 195
⑦ Shooting menu		Shows the shooting settings. You can access functions to perform the settings by pressing or to .	p.185
⑧ Auto timer		Shows that the auto timer is set.	p.200
⑨ Zoom		Shows the zoom settings. When a zoom arrow (or) appears, you can zoom in or out by pressing or .	p.199
⑩ Movie type set		Shoots movies with video and voice.	p.195
		Shoots movies with video only.	
		Shoots movies with voice only.	

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.371

11 Storage setting		Shoots movies with "Normal" set for the image quality.	p.194
		Shoots movies with "Fine mode" set for the image quality.	
		Shoots movies with "Long dur. mode" set for the image quality.	
		Shoots movies with "Move mode" set for the image quality.	
12 Shooting status		Shows that a movie is being shot.	p.194
		Shows that movie shooting is in standby.	
13 Remaining shooting time		Shows the time left (minutes:seconds).	p.194

- *1 : The icon does not appear if miniSD is selected for the destination and the miniSD memory card is not inserted.
 *2 : Still images or movies can be shot as long as the "File size" is not set to "Long time" to shoot movies. The shot is saved or overwritten in the FOMA terminal (Phone)/miniSD memory card.

NOTE

- ◆ The displayed remaining storage count is an approximate value determined according to the settings activated when shooting. Depending on the situation, the count may not change or shot data may be saved even if 0 is displayed.

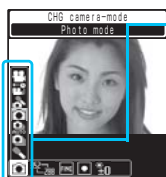
● Guide to the shooting menu

- Pressing or to shows the shooting menu.
- Press (FUNC) and select "Help" or press to show the keys assigned to the shooting menu or the shooting operations.
- The settings that can be performed from the shooting menu can also be accessed from the function menu.

1 Shooting screen Use to select any of the following

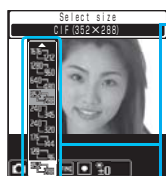
Neuropointer is also available for selecting items.

Items that can be selected from the shooting menu vary depending on the camera mode.



CHG camera-mode

- Movie mode Shoots a movie. → p.194
- Chance capture Shoots a movie retroactively from the point you end shooting. → p.198
- Picture voice Records voice to add to a still image you shot. → p.198 (Photo mode)
- Photo mode Shoots a still image. → p.187
- A-Continuous mode Shoots still images continuously at a time. → p.191
- M-Continuous mode Continuously shoots still images one by one. → p.191
- Voice mode Records voice only. → p.199



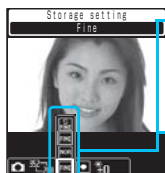
Select size
(Ex. "Photo mode")

- 4M Shoots in 4M (2,304 × 1,728).
- QXGA Shoots in QXGA (2,048 × 1,536).
- UXGA Shoots in UXGA (1,616 × 1,212).
- SXGA Shoots in SXGA (1,280 × 960).
- VGA Shoots in VGA (640 × 480).
- CIF Shoots in CIF (352 × 288).
- Screen Shoots in Screen (240 × 345).
- Stand-by Shoots in Stand-by (240 × 320).
- QCIF Shoots in QCIF (176 × 144).
- SubQCIF Shoots in SubQCIF (128 × 96).
- JAVA* Shoots in JAVA (240 × 240). (Default: CIF)

Select size
(Ex. "Movie mode")

- QVGA Shoots in QVGA (320 × 240).
- QCIF Shoots in QCIF (176 × 144).
- SubQCIF Shoots in SubQCIF (128 × 96). (Default: QCIF)

* : This option appears only when the camera is launched from an i-appli.



Storage setting
(Ex. "Photo mode")

- Super Fine Saves the shot as a large-sized file.
- Fine Saves the shot as a medium-sized file.
- Normal Saves the shot as a small-sized file.
(Default: Fine)

File size setting
(Ex. "Movie mode")

- Restricted(Short) Shoots up to 290K bytes as the file size
(Suitable for sending to an i-motion-message-compatible terminal.)
- Restricted(Long) Shoots up to 490K bytes as the file size
(Suitable for sending to a terminal supporting large-sized i-motion messages.)
- Local playback Shoots up to 800K bytes as the file size.
- Long time Shoots for a long time.
(Default: Restricted(Short))

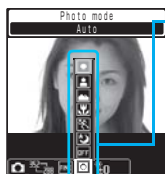
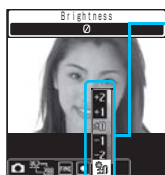


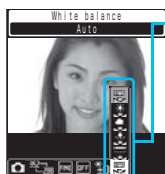
Photo mode
(Ex. "Photo mode")

- Auto Selects the shooting mode automatically.
- Portrait Suitable for shooting people.
- Scenery Suitable for shooting scenery (including night views).
- Close-up Suitable for close-up shooting. → p.180
- Sports mode Suitable for shooting moving objects.
- Night mode Suitable for shooting objects in poorly lit places.
- OFF Does not use any effects for shooting.
(Default: Auto (Photo mode, Continuous mode)/
Portrait (Movie mode))



Brightness

- Sets the brightness of the shot
(-2/-1/±0/+1/+2).
- (When the camera launches: ±0)



White balance

- Auto Automatically corrects the color.
- Fine Suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day.
- Cloudy Suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade.
- Light bulb Suitable for shooting under incandescent light.
- Fluorescent lamp Suitable for shooting under fluorescent light.
(Default: Auto)

NOTE

- ◆ You can create desktop icons of "Movie mode", "Photo mode" and "Voice mode" from the function menu launched from (LifeKit) ▶ "Camera". The "Photo mode" desktop icon is pasted at the time of purchase.
Desktop icons → p.149

Shooting Still Images

Use the built-in camera to shoot still images.

- You can shoot with a FOMA terminal folded.
→ p.190
- You can also save the shots directly in the miniSD memory card.
- You can specify the folder to store images. You can also set a FOMA terminal to save shot images automatically in the specified folder after shooting.

How to shoot still images

The auto focus function is available for shooting still images with the rear camera.

- Press  on the "Photo mode" screen (p.187) to turn on/off the auto focus.
- Switch between ON and OFF to select any of the following three shooting methods:

Method	Auto focus	Description
Auto focus	ON	When you release the shutter, the focus is automatically adjusted on the object in the center of the screen. → p.187 The center of the screen is focused and then a still image is shot. When the subject is focused, the focus frame turns green. When the subject is not focused, the focus frame turns red.
AF lock		Lock the focus on an object before releasing the shutter. → p.188 E.g. when an object you want to shoot is off-centered on the screen, you can manually focus on the object and change the composition.
Focus fixed	OFF	Shoots without using the auto focus. → p.187 You can quickly shoot a still image so that you do not miss the shutter chance.

NOTE

- ♦ The auto focus ON/OFF setting changed during shooting are retained while the camera runs. The auto focus is always set to "ON" when the camera launches.
- ♦ Keep a distance of at least 10cm from an object when using the auto focus function.

- ♦ Turn the auto focus "OFF" if the object cannot be properly focused because:

- It is dark
- The object is poorly contrasted (there is little difference between bright and dark)
- There are close objects and remote objects seen through the lens
- There is a light or something in the shooting area
- The object is moving
- You are shaking a FOMA terminal

- ♦ Completing the focus lock fixes the camera brightness. If the camera is moved after completing the focus lock, the camera brightness may be inappropriate then. In this case, retry the focus lock, or cancel the AF lock to adjust the brightness.

Shooting with a FOMA terminal opened <Shoot open>

1 On the standby screen▶ ▶ "Photo mode"



The "Photo mode" screen appears. Pressing  for 1 second or longer on the standby screen also launches the "Photo mode" screen.

■ To turn on/off the auto focus



■ To shoot with a FOMA terminal folded

"Shoot folded" → p.190



Function menu▶ p.188

2 Point the camera at an object▶ or



The image is shot. The incoming call lamp lights in red for approx. 3 seconds. The "image checking" screen appears.

■ To shoot with Focus fixed

▶ Set the auto focus to "OFF"▶  or 

■ To retake the shot

▶ ▶ "YES"



Function menu▶ p.189

3

The shot image is stored in the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.189).

● Shooting still images with AF lock

1 Photo mode screen (p.187) ▶ Press to set the auto focus to "ON"

Confirm that the auto focus icon is "".
→ p.184

2 Point the camera at an object ▶

Pressing  again resets the focus lock. Completing the focus lock turns the focus frame into green and sounds the AF lock tone.

3 or ()

The image is shot.

NOTE

- ◆ It may take some time to lock focus. If the focus lock is failed, the AF lock tone does not sound and the focus frame turns into dotted red.
- ◆ Following the steps below also displays the Photo mode screen:
 -  ▶  (LifeKit) ▶ "Camera" ▶ "Photo mode"
- ◆ Some images may go grainy, depending on the sizes. When you set the "Display size" to "Fit in display" and shoot an image in QCIF (176 × 144) or in SubQCIF (128 × 96), the image may look grainy.
- ◆ Do not remove the miniSD memory card while saving an image to the miniSD memory card. Doing so may cause a FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆ If the battery is low, you may be unable to save the shots.
- ◆ Turning off a FOMA terminal or removing the battery pack during the file saving process may save incomplete files.
- ◆ The incoming call lamp flashes in green while data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.

Function menu (Photo mode screen/Continuous mode screen)

Front camera/ Rear camera	Switches between front camera and rear camera.
CHG camera-mode	Changes the camera mode.
Select size	Performs the settings as you do with the shooting menu (p.185).
Storage setting	
AFchange	Turns on/off the auto focus on the rear camera.
Light	Turns on/off the light. The light cannot be turned on/off when using the front camera.
Interval/Number*1	Sets the shooting interval and the number of shots you want to take on the continuous mode. → p.192

Image quality	
• Photo mode	"Selecting the mode suitable for shooting" → p.196
• Brightness	▶ Use  to adjust the brightness ▶  Selects the brightness among 5 levels from "−2 to ±0 to +2". The brightness is automatically specified if you do not press any keys for two seconds. "±0" is the default setting when the camera launches.
• White balance	"Setting the white balance" → p.195 The white balance cannot be specified unless Photo mode is "OFF".
• Color mode set	"Setting the effects on the photographed images" → p.196
• Image tuning	"Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images" → p.196 Cannot be changed when using the front camera.
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. "Sound 1" is selected at the time of purchase.
Auto timer	Sets the auto timer. → p.200
Select frame*2	Sets a frame for the image. → p.193
Auto save set	Turns on/off the auto save set.
• ON	Does not display the image checking screen when you shoot an image. The image is automatically saved to the destination folder specified in "Select to save".
• OFF (default)	Displays the image checking screen when you shoot an image.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the shot is saved.
• Phone (default)	▶ Select a folder to save the image The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.
• miniSD	▶ Select a folder to save the image
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• File unrestricted (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• File restricted	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 × 320). The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 × 144) nor SubQCIF (128 × 96).
• Actual size (default)	Displays an image in the actual size.
• Fit in display	Enlarges an image to the display size.
Memory info	Shows the sizes of data stored and available spaces on the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.371

Help	Shows the shooting guide.
Shake correction^{*2}	Sets the shake correction. → p.197

*1 : The option cannot be set in Photo mode.

*2 : The option cannot be set in Continuous mode.

NOTE

<Shutter sound>

◆ A FOMA terminal does not emit the shutter sound in Manner mode. However, setting “Original” for “Manner mode set” and “ON” for “VM tone” emits the sound. You cannot set a downloaded melody as the shutter sound and cannot adjust the shutter sound volume.

<Select to save>

- ◆ Selecting miniSD creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the miniSD memory card.
- ◆ You cannot select miniSD if the number of files stored in the selected folder has already reached the maximum.

<File restriction>

- ◆ You can change the file restriction setting for a shot image after it is saved.

● Setting the image quality for still images

1 Photo mode screen (p.187)/Continuous mode screen (p.191)▶

 (FUNC)▶ “Storage setting”▶ Select “Super Fine”, “Fine” or “Normal”

The image quality can also be set from the shooting menu. → p.185

Data sizes caused by the combinations of “Storage setting” and “Select size” settings are listed below. Higher the image quality (in order of Super Fine, Fine and Normal), larger the data size becomes.

For saved images, add up to 5K bytes to the sizes below.

Storage setting Select size	Super Fine	Fine (default)	Normal
4M (2,304 × 1,728)	Approx. 1,200K bytes max.	Approx. 750K bytes max.	Approx. 750K bytes max.
QXGA (2,048 × 1,536)	Approx. 1,000K bytes max.	Approx. 750K bytes max.	Approx. 500K bytes max.
UXGA (1,616 × 1,212) SXGA (1,280 × 960)	Approx. 600K bytes max.	Approx. 500K bytes max.	Approx. 305K bytes max.
VGA (640 × 480)	Approx. 500K bytes max.	Approx. 100K bytes max.	Approx. 55K bytes max.
CIF (352 × 288)	Approx. 500K bytes max.	Approx. 55K bytes max.	Approx. 40K bytes max.

Storage setting Select size	Super Fine	Fine (default)	Normal
Screen (240 × 345) Stand-by (240 × 320)	Approx. 100K bytes max.	Approx. 55K bytes max.	Approx. 40K bytes max.
QCIF (176 × 144) SubQCIF (128 × 96) Small (117 × 96)*	Approx. 100K bytes max.	Approx. 20K bytes max.	Approx. 9,000K bytes max.

* : The sizes can be set for saving Chara-den as a still image. → p.367

Function menu (image checking screen)

Save	Saves the image to the folder specified in “Select to save” (p.188).
Mirror save	Saves the mirrored image (inverted left-right) to the folder specified in “Select to save”.
Compose message	“Composing an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted” → p.193
Edit image	▶ Edit the image Adds a frame or effect to the image. “Editing Images” → p.353 The image cannot be edited if the size is larger than VGA (640 × 480).
Set as display	■ To specify for screens such as standby, dialing or receiving ▶ Select a screen ■ To set to videophone-related screens (except V.phone dialing and V.phone calling) ▶ Select a screen▶ Check the image▶ ▶ “YES” Sets the image for the standby screen, etc. The image cannot be set if the size is SXGA (1,280 × 960) or larger or if the size is VGA (640 × 480) or CIF (352 × 288) and the Storage setting is Super Fine.
Change frame	“Changing the frame” → p.193
Mirror display	Changes the display to the mirror display. If the mirror display is currently selected, “Normal display” appears.
Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 × 320). The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 × 144) nor SubQCIF (128 × 96).
• Actual size (default)	Displays an image in the actual size.
• Fit in display	Enlarges an image to the display size.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the shot is saved.

• Phone (default)	▶ Select a folder to save the image The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.
• miniSD	▶ Select a folder to save the image
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• File unrestricted (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• File restricted	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Cancel	Deletes the photographed image and returns to the Photo mode screen.

NOTE

- ◆ Pressing () on the image checking screen also allows you to compose an i-mode message with the still image attached/inserted.

<Edit image>

- ◆ Selecting "Edit image" changes the display to the Normal display.

- ◆ "Compose message" and "Save" are available after you edit an image.

<Set as display>

- ◆ Selecting "miniSD" in "Select to save" saves the images to the Camera folder under My picture (you cannot save the images to the miniSD memory card).

<Mirror display>

- ◆ An image shot with the front camera appears mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" means what you see is what you get.

<Select to save>

- ◆ Selecting miniSD creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the miniSD memory card.
- ◆ You cannot select miniSD if the number of files stored in the selected folder has already reached the maximum.

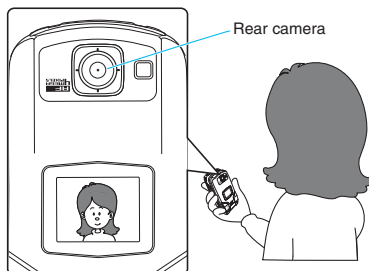
<File restriction>

- ◆ You can change the file restriction setting for a shot image after it is saved.

Shooting with a FOMA terminal folded <Shoot folded>

You can launch the camera to shoot still images with a FOMA terminal folded.

- You cannot shoot in AF lock.
- If "External keys guard" is set to "ON", you cannot launch the camera by pressing () , use the light by pressing () or shoot a still image by pressing () .



Look at the picture above. Make sure not to turn the rear camera and the image display upside down but to place the rear camera upward.

You can check the shot on the image display.

1 Press () for 1 second or longer with a FOMA terminal folded

The camera launches in Photo mode. The image size is the one used at the last shooting.

To change the image size, zoom or brightness, open the FOMA terminal.

■ To use the light

The light is turned on/off.

2 Point the camera at an object



The image is shot. The incoming call lamp lights in red for approx. 3 seconds.

3 Open the FOMA terminal, check and save the shot image as you do in "Shooting with a FOMA terminal opened" (p.187)

NOTE

- ◆ You can also shoot an image with a FOMA terminal folded when the shooting screen appears.
- ◆ Setting "Auto save set" (p.188) to "ON" allows you to automatically save still images shot with a FOMA terminal folded. Select the destination in "Select to save".
- ◆ The image is scaled down to fit the image display and intended as an approximate guide.

Shooting continuously

<Continuous mode>

Default setting	Select size: CIF(352 × 288) Shot interval: 0.5 seconds (A-Continuous mode) Shot number: 4

You can shoot a series of up to 20 continuous still images. The continuous mode is categorized into two types: Auto and Manual.

- Auto continuous mode allows you to specify the number of shots and the interval. Once you release the shutter, the FOMA terminal automatically shoots at the specified interval. The auto focus function is available only for the first shot. The second and subsequent shots are shot with the focus point placed for the first shot.
- Manual continuous mode allows you to shoot up to the specified number, one shot each time you release the shutter. You can change the auto focus settings for each shot ("Photo mode"→p.187).
- The following image sizes are available: CIF (352 × 288), Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144), SubQCIF (128 × 96)
- You can enjoy the continuous image shots as an animation added to the original animation.
- Continuous shooting is unavailable when a FOMA terminal is folded. Folding the FOMA terminal terminates the continuous shooting.

1 Photo mode screen

(p.187) ▶ (MENU) or "AUTO" or

The "Continuous shooting" screen appears.

■ To turn on/off the auto focus



Shot number/Max. shot count



Function menu▶p.188

2 Point the camera at an object▶ or

Locking the focus turns the focus frame into green. After the shooting, the "Continuous shooting checking screen" appears showing four of the shots at the same time.

■ To shoot with AF lock

"Shooting still images with AF lock"→p.188

■ To shoot with Focus fixed

▶Press to set the auto focus to "OFF"▶ or



Function menu▶p.192

■ To stop the continuous shooting

Auto continuous mode: ▶▶"NO"

Manual continuous mode: ▶ (or)▶"NO"

The shooting is finished and the continuous shooting checking screen appears.

■ To select the image to save

▶Use to select an image

The icon (check mark) appears for the selected image.

Repeat the step to select images.

To cancel the selected image, select the image again.

■ To check the images in detail

▶Use to select an image▶ (Detail)

Use to change the image to check.

To return to the list, press .

To save the image displayed in detail, press .

The images are saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.188).



Function menu▶p.192

3 (FUNC)▶Select the saving method (Store selection, Store all or Store all&anime)

"Function menu (continuous shooting checking screen)"→p.192

The images are saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.188).

If "Store selection" is selected, the "Continuous shooting checking screen" appears with the saved images removed after the image saving.

NOTE

- ◆ If you receive a call during continuous shooting, the shooting terminates. After you finish talking, the Continuous shooting checking screen shows the images you shot until the interruption.
- ◆ Do not remove the miniSD memory card while saving an image to the miniSD memory card. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆ If the battery is low, you may be unable to save the shots.
- ◆ Turning off a FOMA terminal or removing the battery pack during the file saving process may save incomplete files.
- ◆ In Manual continuous mode, the incoming call lamp lights in red each time you shoot. The lamp lights in red in Auto continuous mode. It flashes in green while data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.
- ◆ When you automatically shoot a strong light or moving object, the interval may become longer than the specified one.
- ◆ Keep a FOMA terminal steady until the checking screen appears or while a message indicating that the shot is being processed appears.

● Setting the shooting interval and number of shots

- “Shot interval 0.5 seconds and Shot number 5” are the default settings for Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144) and SubQCIF (128 × 96).

1 Continuous mode screen (p.191)▶

 (FUNC)▶ “Interval/Number”▶ Select any item

Shot interval	Selects the shooting interval among “0.5 seconds”, “1.0 seconds” and “2.0 seconds”. The interval cannot be set for Manual continuous mode.
Shot number	▶Enter the number of shots (2-digit) Sets the number of shots between “05 and 20” (5 to 20 shots). Entering a 2-digit number automatically sets the number of shots. To set the currently displayed number, press  .

* : “05 to 10” (5 to 10 shots) appears for Screen (240 × 345) or Stand-by (240 × 320)

2 After changing the settings, press



NOTE

<Shot number>

- ◆ When CIF (352 × 288) is set as the image size, the number of shots is always set to 4.
- ◆ Changing the image size from CIF (352 × 288) to another size changes the number of shots to 5.
- ◆ Changing the image size to Screen (240 × 345) or Stand-by (240 × 320) changes the number of shots set to 11 or more to 10.

Function menu (continuous shooting checking screen)

Store selection	Saves the selected still images. ▶“Save” or “Mirror save” The images are saved to the folder specified in “Select to save”.
Store all	Saves all the still images. ▶“Save” or “Mirror save” The images are saved to the folder specified in “Select to save”.
Store all&anime	Saves all the still images as the original animation. ▶“Save” or “Mirror save”▶Select No. for original animation The images are saved to the folder specified in “Select to save”.
Select this	Attaches  to the selected still image to show that it is selected.
Select all	Attaches  to all the still images to show that they are selected.
Release this	Deselects the selected still image.  disappears.

Release all	Deselects all the still images.  disappears.
Mirror display	Changes the display to the mirror display. If the mirror display is currently selected, “Normal display” appears.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the shot is saved.
• Phone (default)	▶Select a folder to save the image The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.
• miniSD	▶Select a folder to save the image
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the selected still image.
• File unrestricted (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• File restricted	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Restriction all	Sets file restrictions on all the still images.
• File unrestricted (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• File restricted	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Cancel	Deletes all shot the images and returns to the continuous shooting screen.

NOTE

<Store all&anime>

- ◆ “Store all&anime” cannot be selected if only one image has been shot or one or more of the photographed images have already been saved.
- ◆ Even if “miniSD” is selected in “Select to save”, images are saved to the Camera folder under My picture.

<Mirror display>

- ◆ An image shot with the front camera appears mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting “Normal display” means what you see is what you get.

<Select to save>

- ◆ Selecting miniSD creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the miniSD memory card.
- ◆ You cannot select miniSD if the number of files stored in the selected folder has already reached the maximum.

<File restriction/Restriction all>

- ◆ You can change the file restriction setting for a shot image after it is saved.

Function menu (Detail checking screen)

Save	Saves the displayed still image.
Mirror save	Inverts the left and right of the displayed image to save.
Compose message	“Composing an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted” → p.193

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.371

Mirror display	Changes the display to the mirror display. If the mirror display is currently selected, "Normal display" appears.
Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 × 320). The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 × 144) nor SubQCIF (128 × 96). Actual size (default) Displays an image in the actual size. Fit in display Enlarges an image to the display size.
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions. File unrestricted (default) Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it. File restricted Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.

NOTE

- Pressing on the Detail checking screen also allows you to compose an i-mode message with the still image attached/inserted.

<Mirror display>

- An image shot with the front camera appears mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" means what you see is what you get.

Shooting framed images

<Framed photography>

Images of CIF (352 × 288), Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144) or Sub-QCIF (128 × 96) can be framed.

- Pre-installed frames → p.459
- You can download frames from sites.

1 Photo mode screen (p.187) ▶

(FUNC) ▶ "Select frame" ▶ Select a frame

- To cancel framed photography**
▶ "OFF"

2 Point the camera at an object ▶

The "frame shooting check" screen appears.

3 Check and save the shot as you do in "Shooting with a FOMA terminal opened" (p.187)

You can change the frame before saving the still image. → p.193

NOTE

- Pressing (Play) on the Select frame screen allows you to check the selected frame.
- You can shoot a framed image with a FOMA terminal folded. The selected frame appears on the image display.

- Framed images shot with the front camera appear mirrored (inverted left-right). They are automatically saved in the normal display. When the images are converted from mirrored to normal, the frames are also inverted left-right.
- If the sizes of the image and frame are the same, the image can be framed regardless of portrait or landscape.
 - If a portrait frame is selected for a landscape image, the frame is rotated 90° counterclockwise.
 - If a landscape frame is selected for a portrait image, the frame is rotated 90° clockwise.
- Exiting the camera releases the frame.

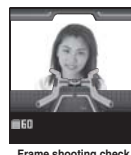
Changing the frame

You can change the frame before saving the still image.

- You cannot remove the frame.

1 Frame shooting check screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Change frame" ▶ Select a frame

Use to change the frame.



Frame shooting check

2 Check the framed image ▶

The screen returns to the frame shooting check.

- To rotate a frame 180°**

▶ (Rotate)

- To cancel the selected frame**

▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Cancel"

Composing an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted

If a still image cannot be attached/inserted, the image size or file size is reduced so that the image can be attached/inserted.

<Example: Selecting "Compose message" on the image checking screen>

1 Image checking screen (p.187) ▶

(FUNC) ▶ "Compose message" ▶ Select any item

Attach image*¹ (i-mode mail)	
• Attach mail*³	Reduces only the file size to attach the image.
• QVGA scale down	Reduces the image size and file size without changing the aspect ratio to attach the resized image.
Insert image*² (Deco-mail)	
• Insert mail*⁴	Reduces only the file size to insert the image.
• SubQCIF scale down	Reduces the image size and file size without changing the aspect ratio to insert the resized image.

*1 : Shooting an image of Stand-by (240 × 320) or smaller does not display the screen for selecting "Attach mail" or "QVGA scale down".

- *2 : Shooting an image of SubQCIF (128 × 96) does not display the screen for selecting "Insert mail" or "SubQCIF scale down".
- *3 : This option cannot be selected for 4M (2,304 × 1,728).
- *4 : This option cannot be selected for the image size other than QCIF (176 × 144).

2 Compose an i-mode/Deco-mail message

Composing and sending an i-mode message → p.247
Composing and sending a Deco-mail message → p.251

NOTE

- Pressing on the image checking screen also allows you to attach or insert the image to an i-mode mail or Deco-mail.
- An image whose size exceeds 10,000 bytes is called large image. A large image sent to an i-mode terminal is resized in the i-shot Center so that it can be received by the i-mode terminal.
- If you attach a large image whose size is 10,001 to 500K bytes, the image to attach is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.188). Selecting "miniSD" saves the image to the Camera folder under My picture (you cannot save the image to the miniSD memory card).
- You cannot compose an i-mode message when there are already 20 draft messages stored.

<Movie mode>

Shooting Movies

Use the built-in camera to shoot movies with voice.

- Movie shooting is unavailable when a FOMA terminal is folded. Folding the FOMA terminal terminates the movie shooting.
- If you set "File size" to "Long time" and shoot a movie, the movie checking screen does not appear, but the movie is saved directly to the miniSD memory card and then the shooting is finished.
- The shooting time depends on the conditions such as the object.
- You cannot shoot movies while talking on the phone.

1 Photo mode screen

(p.187) or " " " " " "

The desktop icon is also available for launching the "Movie mode" screen. → p.149



Function menu → p.194

2 Point the camera at an object or

The shooting starts. During shooting, the incoming call lamp flashes in red (it turns green when "File size" is set to "Long time").

You can zoom in/out during shooting.

The screen indicates the approximate time left to shoot.



■ If the file size reaches the limit specified in File size



The movie checking screen appears.

3 or

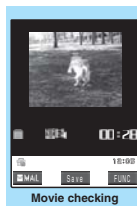
The shooting terminates and the "Movie checking screen" appears.

■ To play the movie you shot

(FUNC) ▶ "Play"

■ To reshoot a movie

(CLM) ▶ "YES"



Function menu → p.197

4

The movie is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.195).

NOTE

- Following the steps below also displays the Movie mode screen:

• (LifeKit) ▶ "Camera" ▶ "Movie mode"

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card while saving a movie to the miniSD memory card. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- If you receive a call during movie shooting, the shooting terminates. After you finish talking, the "movie checking" screen shows the movie you shot until the interruption.
- If the battery is low, you may be unable to save the movies.
- Turning off a FOMA terminal or removing the battery pack during the file saving process may save incomplete files.
- The incoming call lamp flashes in green while data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.
- If you press any key to perform a function such as zoom in/out during shooting, the sound may be recorded.

Function menu (Movie mode screen)

Front camera/Rear camera	Switches between the front camera and the rear camera.
CHG camera-mode	Changes the camera mode.
Select size	Performs the settings as you do with the shooting menu (p.185).
File size	
Storage setting	Sets the image quality and duration for movie shooting.
• Normal (default)	Shoots a movie with the typical quality and duration.
• Fine mode	Shoots a movie with quality higher. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
• Long dur. mode	Shoots a long movie. The quality is not as high as for Normal.
• Move mode	Shoots a movie when the object is moving around. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.371

Light	Turns on/off the light. The light cannot be turned on/off when using the front camera.
Image quality	
• Photo mode	"Selecting the mode suitable for shooting" → p.196
• Brightness	▶ Use  to adjust the brightness  Selects the brightness among 5 levels from "−2 to ±0 to +2". The brightness is automatically specified if you do not press any keys for two seconds. "±0" is the default setting when the camera launches.
• White balance	"Setting the white balance" → p.195
• Color mode set	"Setting the effects on the photographed images" → p.196
• Image tuning	"Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images" → p.196 Cannot be changed when using the front camera.
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. "Sound 1" is selected at the time of purchase.
Auto timer	Sets the auto timer. → p.200
Movie type set	
• Normal (when the camera launches)	Records video and voice.
• Video	Shoots a movie without voice.
• Voice	Records a voice without movies.
Auto save set	Turns on/off the auto save set.
• ON	Does not display the movie checking screen when shooting a movie. The movie is automatically saved to the folder specified in "Select to save".
• OFF (default)	Displays the movie checking screen when shooting a movie.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the movie is saved.
• Normal or Video	Specifies the folder where movies with video are saved.
• Phone (default)	▶ Select a folder to save the movie The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
• miniSD	Saves the movie to the SD Video folder in the miniSD memory card.
• Voice	Specifies the folder where movies with voice only are saved.
• Phone	▶ Select a folder to save the movie The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
• miniSD	Saves the movie to the Multimedia folder in the miniSD memory card.

File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• File unrestricted (default)	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• File restricted	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Display size	Sets the display mode for movies.
• Actual size (default)	Displays a movie in the actual size.
• Fit in display	Enlarges a movie to the display size.
Memory info	Shows the sizes of data stored and available spaces on the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card.
Help	Shows the shooting guide.
Face stamp	▶ Select a face stamp Places a stamp that follows facial movements on the Movie mode screen. Face stamps cannot be selected if the image size is not QCIF (176 × 144).
Shake correction	Sets the shake correction. → p.197

NOTE

<Shutter sound>

◆ A FOMA terminal does not emit the shutter sound in Manner mode. However, setting "Original" for "Manner mode set" and "ON" for "VM tone" emits the sound. You cannot set a downloaded melody as the shutter sound and cannot adjust the shutter sound volume.

<Movie type set>

◆ The movie type cannot be set in Voice mode.

<Auto save set/File restriction>

◆ The auto save or file restriction cannot be set if the file size is set to "Long time".

<Select to save>

◆ Selecting "miniSD" in "Normal or Video" creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the miniSD memory card.

◆ You cannot set "miniSD" if:

- The number of files in the specified folder reaches the maximum (for "Normal or Video").
- The number of files in the specified folder other than the SD Multimedia folder reaches the maximum (for "Voice").

<File restriction>

◆ You can change the file restriction setting for a shot movie after it is saved.

● **Setting the white balance**

- 1 Photo mode screen (p.187)/Continuous mode screen (p.191)/Movie mode screen (p.194) ▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Image quality" ▶ "White balance" ▶ Select any item**

The white balance can also be set from the shooting menu. → p.185

Auto (default)	Automatically corrects the color balance in the entire image under the typical shooting conditions. The color intensity may be slightly reduced if the colors in the image are distorted.
Fine	Suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day.
Cloudy	Suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade.
Light bulb	Suitable for shooting under incandescent light.
Fluorescent lamp	Suitable for shooting under fluorescent light.

NOTE

- ◆ If the camera is set to the Photo mode, Auto continuous mode, Manual continuous mode or Picture voice and the Photo mode is not “OFF”, the white balance is automatically set to “Auto”.
- ◆ Selecting “Fine”, “Cloudy”, “Light bulb” or “Fluorescent lamp” may make the image more vivid under the specified conditions than Auto.
- ◆ The settings are retained after you exit the camera, and applied to the videophone shooting. → p.83

● Setting the effects on the photographed images

- 1 **Photo mode screen (p.187)/Continuous mode screen (p.191)/Movie mode screen (p.194) ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Image quality” ▶ “Color mode set” ▶ Select any item**

Normal (when the camera launches)	Shoots with the typical color settings.
Sepia	Shoots a sepia-tone image.
Monochrome	Shoots a black-and-white (monochrome) image.

● Selecting the mode suitable for shooting

- 1 **Photo mode screen (p.187)/Continuous mode screen (p.191)/Movie mode screen (p.194) ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Image quality” ▶ “Photo mode” ▶ Select any item**

The mode can also be set from the shooting menu. → p.185

Auto ^{*1} (default: Photo mode/ Continuous mode)	Selects the shooting mode automatically.
Portrait (default: Movie mode)	Is the shooting mode for people.

Scenery	Is the shooting mode for scenery (including night view).
Close-up	Is the shooting mode for close-up. → p.180
Sports mode ^{*1}	Is the shooting mode for moving objects.
Night mode ^{*1*2}	Is the shooting mode for objects in a dark place.
OFF ^{*1}	Disables any effects for shooting.

^{*1} : The options cannot be set in Movie mode.

^{*2} : The option cannot be set in Continuous mode.

NOTE

- ◆ Only Portrait, Night mode and OFF can be selected for the front camera in shooting a still image. Portrait is selected for shooting in Continuous mode or Movie mode with the front camera.
- ◆ In Night mode or Scenery, the shake correction may not properly work even if Shake correction is set to “Auto”.
- ◆ Auto, Scenery, Close-up or Sports mode is restored to Portrait when the camera is switched to the front.
- ◆ Auto, Sports mode, Night mode (in Photo mode only) or OFF is restored to Portrait when Photo mode or Continuous mode is switched to Movie mode or Chance capture.
- ◆ Night mode is restored to Auto when Photo mode is switched to Continuous mode.

● Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images

Setting this function according to the frequency of power supply in the area you use the FOMA terminal may decrease flicker on the screen that is caused by fluorescent light, etc.

- 1 **Photo mode screen (p.187)/Continuous mode screen (p.191)/Movie mode screen (p.194) ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Image quality” ▶ “Image tuning” ▶ Select any item**

Auto (default)	Avoids flicker automatically.
Mode 1(50Hz)	Is the mode for shooting in 50Hz-frequency areas.
Mode 2(60Hz)	Is the mode for shooting in 60Hz-frequency areas.

NOTE

- ◆ The flicker may not be fully avoided depending on the ambient brightness or the colors of objects.

● Setting the shake correction

The shake correction function is available for shooting with the rear camera.

- This function is available in Photo mode, Movie mode, Chance capture or Picture voice. It is unavailable in Continuous mode.

1 Photo mode screen (p.187)/Movie mode screen (p.194) (FUNC) ▶ “Shake correction” ▶ Select any item

Auto (default)	■ Photo mode (Photo mode, Picture voice) Automatically corrects camera shake in a place where camera shake can easily occur or in a dark place. ■ Movie mode (Movie mode, Chance capture) Always corrects camera shake regardless of the situation.
OFF	Shoots without using the shake correction.

NOTE

- ◆ This function only reduces the camera shake, and the effect depends on the objects or situations.
- ◆ The shake correction may not properly work when:
 - The camera shake is large
 - The zoom is used
 - The object is moving
 - “Photo mode” is set to “Night mode” or “Scenery”
- ◆ The spectrum or noise may be seen if part of the object is moving. In this case, set this function to “OFF” to shoot.
- ◆ The shake correction uses the ambient pixels. The shooting area varies depending on the “Auto”/“OFF” setting.
- ◆ If this function is activated, the processing time after shooting may be longer (about two seconds) due to the shake correction process.

Function menu (movie checking screen)

Play	Plays the movie you shot.
Save	Saves the movie to the folder specified in “Select to save”.
Compose message	▶ Compose an i-mode message Composes an i-mode message with the movie attached. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → p.247
Set as stand-by	Sets the movie for the standby screen.

Display size	Sets the display mode for movies. The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 × 144) nor SubQCIF (128 × 96). • Actual size (default) Displays a movie in the actual size. • Fit in display Enlarges a movie to the display size.
Edit title	Edits a movie title.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the movie is saved.
• Normal or Video • Phone (default) ▶ Select a folder to save the movie The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase. • miniSD ▶ Select a folder to save the movie Saves the movie to the SD Video folder in the miniSD memory card.	
• Voice • Phone ▶ Select a folder to save the movie The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase. • miniSD ▶ Select a folder to save the movie Saves the movie to the Multimedia folder in the miniSD memory card.	
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• File unrestricted (default) Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it. • File restricted Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.	
Cancel	Deletes the movie to reshoot new one.

NOTE

<Compose message>

- ◆ Movies to send are saved to the folder specified in “Select to save”. Selecting “miniSD” saves the movies to the Camera folder under i-motion (you cannot save them to the miniSD memory card).
- ◆ If a movie of QVGA (320×240) is to be attached, a message asking whether to reduce the size so that it can be attached appears. If you select to reduce the size, it is reduced to QCIF (176×144) so that the movie is saved in Data box and attached to an i-mode mail.
- ◆ Pressing  on the movie checking screen also allows you to compose an i-mode message with the movie attached.

<Set as stand-by>

- ◆ The movie to set for the standby screen is saved to the folder specified in “Select to save”. Selecting “miniSD” saves the movie to the Camera folder under i-motion (you cannot save the movie to the miniSD memory card).
- ◆ A movie with only voice cannot be set.

<Select to save>

- ◆ Selecting “miniSD” in “Normal or Video” creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the miniSD memory card.
- ◆ You cannot set “miniSD” if:
 - The number of files in the specified folder reaches the maximum (for “Normal or Video”).
 - The number of files in the specified folder other than the SD Multimedia folder reaches the maximum (for “Voice”).

Capturing important scenes

<Chance capture>

Use the chance capture function if you do not want to miss important moments in shooting a movie.

- A movie you shot for the specified shooting time (roughly 45 seconds by default) before ending the shooting is saved. The part shot before the shooting time is not saved.

1 Photo mode screen (p.187)▶



2 Point the camera at an object▶



The shooting starts.

You can zoom in/out during shooting.

After the available shooting time runs out, the displayed remaining time turns to the “00:00” flash.

3 ● or (📷)

The shooting terminates.

4 Check and save the movie as you do in “Shooting Movies” (p.194)

NOTE

- ◆ You can also activate the chance capture function by selecting (FUNC) ▶ “CHG camera-mode” ▶ “Chance capture” on the “Photo mode” screen.
- ◆ The shot finished before the available shooting time is saved from the beginning to the end as well as the “Movie mode”.

Adding voice to still images

<Picture voice>

Add the voice to a still image of QCIF (176 × 144) or SubQCIF (128 × 96) to make a movie.

<Example: Shooting a still image and adding voice>

1 Photo mode screen (p.187)▶



2 Point the camera at an object▶



A still image is shot.

The “recording start” screen appears.

You can set the file size by selecting “File size” from the function menu before recording the voice.



Function menu▶p.198

3 ● or (📷)

The recording starts.

The screen indicates the approximate seconds left to record.



4 ● or (📷)

The recording terminates.

5 Check and save the created picture voice as you do in “Shooting Movies” (p.194)

NOTE

- ◆ You can also create a picture voice by selecting (FUNC) ▶ “CHG camera-mode” ▶ “Picture voice” ▶ “Photo mode” on the Photo mode screen.
- ◆ If you want to create a picture voice using the existing still image, follow Step 3 and later after following the steps below:
On the Photo mode screen, press (FUNC) ▶ “CHG camera-mode” ▶ “Picture voice” ▶ “My picture” ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image

Function menu (recording start screen)

File size	Sets the file size for recording.
• Restricted (Short) (when the camera launches)	You can record up to 290K bytes. Select this option to attach the data to an i-mode message as a typical movie.
• Restricted (Long)	You can record up to 490K bytes. Select this option to attach the data to an i-mode message as a large-sized movie.
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. “Sound 1” is selected at the time of purchase.

Using Voice mode

- A voice can be recorded without movies.

1 Photo mode screen (p.187)▶



The desktop icon is also available for launching the “recording start” screen. → p.149

2 or (📷)

The recording starts.

The screen indicates the approximate seconds left to record.

3 or (📷)

After the recording is finished, the “recording check” screen appears.

4

The movie is saved to the folder specified in “Select to save” (p.195).

NOTE

- ◆ Setting “File size” to “Long time” allows you to record up to about 90 minutes.
- ◆ You can also record in Voice mode by selecting (FUNC) ▶ “Movie type set” ▶ “Voice” on the “Movie mode” screen.
- ◆ Voice that can be recorded in Voice mode is MP4 (Mobile MP4) format.

Changing the Shooting Settings

Perform the camera settings such as the zoom, auto timer or image quality.

Using the zoom

Using the zoom allows you to adjust an image so that it will be shot in your desired size.

- You cannot adjust the zoom if you are using the front camera and the image size is VGA (640 × 480), Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320) or JAVA (240 × 240).
- You can zoom in/out while shooting a movie.
- The zoom is digital.

1 Photo mode screen (p.187)/Continuous mode screen (p.191)/Movie mode screen (p.194)▶Use to adjust the zoom

: Zooms in by one step each time you press the key.

: Zooms out by one step to 1× (default) each time you press the key.

Press and hold or to zoom in/out continuously.

Still image/ Movie	Rear/ Front	Size	Zoom	Maximum
Still image	Rear camera	4M (2,304 × 1,728)	16 steps	Approx. 4x
		QXGA (2,048 × 1,536)		
		UXGA (1,616 × 1,212)		
		SXGA (1,280 × 960)		
		VGA (640 × 480)		
		CIF (352 × 288)		
		Screen (240 × 345)		
		Stand-by (240 × 320)		
		JAVA (240 × 240)* ¹		
		QCIF (176 × 144)		Approx. 9x
SubQCIF (128 × 96)				
Movie	Rear camera	QVGA (320 × 240)	3 steps (7 steps* ²)	Approx. 1.44x (Approx. 3.6x* ²)
		QCIF (176 × 144)	16 steps	Approx. 7.2x (Approx. 9x* ²)
		SubQCIF (128 × 96)		
Still image/ Movie	Front camera	VGA (640 × 480)	—	—
		CIF (352 × 288)	2 steps	Approx. 1.8x
		Screen (240 × 345)	—	—
		Stand-by (240 × 320)	—	—
		JAVA (240 × 240)* ¹	—	—
		QCIF (176 × 144)	2 steps	Approx. 2x
		SubQCIF (128 × 96)		

*1 : This option appears only when the camera is launched from an i-appli.

*2 : If “Shake correction” is set to “OFF”

NOTE

- ◆ “1x” is set when the camera launches. Changing the image size or camera mode also changes the zoom to “1x”.

- ◆ Changing the zoom may slightly change the image quality.

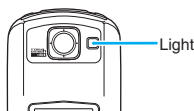
Turning on the light

When it is not so bright (e.g. in a room), turning on the light of a FOMA terminal brightens the object.

- If you do not shoot for 30 seconds or so after turning on the light, it is automatically turned off.

1 Photo mode screen (p.187)/Continuous mode screen (p.191)/Movie mode screen (p.194) ▶

To turn off the light, press  .



NOTE

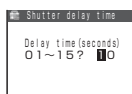
- ◆ You cannot turn on the light when using the front camera to record a voice without movies.
- ◆ This function is only supplementary. You cannot always get enough light.

Using the auto timer

Setting the auto timer allows you to shoot images without holding a FOMA terminal (e.g. to shoot people including yourself or to avoid the camera shake).

- The auto timer is available for Photo mode, Auto Continuous mode and Movie mode. It is unavailable for Manual Continuous mode.
- The auto timer is reset to "OFF" each time you finish shooting.
- The auto focus is available for Photo mode. When shooting with AF lock, focus on the object before setting the auto timer.

1 Photo mode screen (p.187)/Continuous mode screen (p.191)/Movie mode screen (p.194) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Auto timer" ▶ "ON" ▶ Enter a 2-digit number for the auto timer



Enter a 2-digit number between "01" and "15" for the auto timer.

Entering a 2-digit number automatically sets the auto timer. To set the currently displayed number, press .

"10 seconds" is set at the time of purchase.

● If the auto timer is set

The  icon appears on the screen to show that the auto timer is set.



Pressing  or , sounds the auto timer tone, and then the auto timer starts running.

The incoming call lamp, ,  and  flash.

The countdown tone sounds roughly five seconds before the shooting. The incoming call lamp, , and  flash rapidly.

During the auto timer countdown, you can shoot manually by pressing  or .

■ To cancel the auto timer settings

▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Auto timer" ▶ "OFF"

■ To stop the timer while it is running

▶  (Quit) or 

NOTE

- ◆ Exiting the camera sets the auto timer to "OFF".

<Bar code reader>

Using the Bar Code Reader

Using the rear camera allows a FOMA terminal to scan JAN codes and QR codes. The data scanned especially from QR codes can be used for displaying/copying the text, using the functions of Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To, i-appli To, or adding to bookmark/phone-book. The FOMA terminal can also scan image or melody data to play or save.

- A FOMA terminal can save up to five scanned data.
- Hold a FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not shake during scanning.
- When scanning a bar code, keep about 7 to 9cm between the rear camera and the code.

■ JAN code and QR code

- JAN code



4942857113068

JAN code is a series of vertical lines (bars) with various widths and spaces to represent numbers. A FOMA terminal can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) bar codes.

* Scanning the JAN code above displays "4942857113068".

● QR code



QR code is a type of two-dimensional symbology expressing numbers, alphabets, kanji, kana or pictographs both horizontally and vertically. Some QR codes express images or melodies. Some data are divided into several QR codes.

* Scanning the QR code above displays “株式会社NTT ドコモ” (NTT DoCoMo, Inc.).

Scanning codes

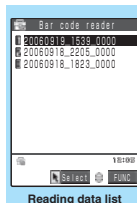
- 1 **“Bar code reader”**
The “Bar code reader” screen appears.
- 2 **“New”**
The shooting mode is automatically set to “Close-up”.
- 3 **Position a JAN code or QR code inside the recognition field**
The area surrounded by “┐”, “┌”, “└”, “┘” at the corners of the screen is the recognition field.
Focus the JAN code or QR code so that the entire code appears as large as possible inside the recognition field.
- **To adjust the zoom**
: Returns to default.
: Zooms in.
 - **To turn on the light**
 (ON) or (OFF).
 To turn off the light, press (OFF) or (OFF).
- 4 **Check the scanned data**
The focus frame changes as follows during scanning:
 • White: Before focusing
 • Dotted white: Focusing
 • Green: Focused
 • Dotted red: Focusing failed
 It may take long to scan some data.
 - **To cancel scanning**
 - **To scan data divided into several QR codes**
 Repeat Steps 3 to 4
 A FOMA terminal can scan up to 16 QR codes expressing one data.
 - **To discard scanned data**
 “YES”
- 5 (FUNC) **“Store”** **“YES”**

NOTE

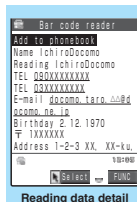
- ◆ Codes other than JAN or QR cannot be scanned. Some bar codes may not be scanned, depending on the size.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal may fail to scan a code, depending on the scratch, stain, damage, print quality or the reflection of light.
- ◆ You can also launch the Bar code reader from the text editing screen. The scanned data is entered into the screen. However, you cannot display the already stored data or save the scanned data here. Image or melody data cannot be scanned correctly on the screen. Characters that cannot be entered on the text editing screen are replaced with space (blank) characters.
- ◆ A data cannot be stored if it is a JPEG image whose width or height exceeds 2,304 dots, a JPEG image whose size exceeds 2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high, a GIF image whose size exceeds 640 dots wide or 640 dots high, a GIF image whose total dots exceed 640 × 480, or the file size exceeds 100K bytes.
- ◆ You cannot store a progressive JPEG image whose size exceeds 640 dots wide or 640 dots high or whose total dots exceed 640 × 480. Progressive JPEG image → p.225
- ◆ The scanned data cannot be stored on the miniSD memory card.
- ◆ On the Bar code reader screen, selecting (FUNC) “Add desktop icon” adds the desktop icon for this function.

Using the scanned data

- 1 **“Bar code reader”** **“Reading data list”**
The “Reading data list” screen appears.
- 2 **Select the scanned data**
The “Reading data detail” screen appears.



Function menu → p.202



Function menu → p.202

3 Select any of the displayed items

- "Add to phonebook" : Adds the name, reading, phone number, mail address, birthday, postal code, address and memo to the phonebook
→ p.111, 112
- "Compose message": Composes an i-mode message with the recipient address, subject and message already entered
→ p.247
- "Add bookmark" : Bookmarks the URL and title → p.222
- "Activate i-opp1" : Launches the specified i-opp1 → p.318
- Melody icon : Plays the melody → p.368
- Phone number : Calls the number using the Phone To (AV Phone To) function → p.229
- Mail address : Composes an i-mode message using the Mail To function → p.230
- URL : Accesses the site using the Web To function → p.230

NOTE

- ◆ The title of the scanned data would be:
 - Title: yyyyymmdd_hhmm_xxxx (Year/month/day_time_4-digit)
 If two or more data are to be stored at the same time, 4-digit numbers are assigned to the data in numerical order.

Function menu (Reading data list screen)

Edit title	▶ Edit a title Edits the title of the selected data. The title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.
Result	Displays the Reading data detail screen.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted data.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all data.

Function menu (Reading data detail screen)

Store	Saves the scanned data.
Display list	Displays the Reading data list screen. If the displayed data is not stored yet, a message asking whether to delete the data appears.
Internet	Accesses the site if the URL is selected. "Web To function" → p.230

Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the recipient address, subject and message entered in the scanned data if "Compose message" is selected. Composes an i-mode message with a mail address entered if the mail address is selected. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.247
Dialing	Calls the phone number if it is selected. "Phone To function" → p.229
Add to phonebook	Adds the name, reading, phone number, mail address, birthday, postal code, address and memo in the scanned data to the phonebook if "Add to phonebook" is selected. Adds the phone number to the phonebook if it is selected. Adds the mail address to the phonebook if it is selected. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → p.111 "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" → p.112
Add bookmark	Adds the URL and title in the scanned data to Bookmark if "Add bookmark" is selected. Adds the URL to Bookmark if it is selected. "Adding bookmarks" → p.222
Save image	▶ Select a folder ▶ "YES" ▶ Select an item Saves the selected image to My picture under Data box. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Save melody	▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder ▶ "YES" ▶ Select an item Saves the selected melody to Melody under Data box. If you do not set the melody as the ring tone, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Activate i-opp1	Launches the i-opp1 specified in the scanned data if "Activate i-opp1" is selected. "Launching an i-opp1 from the Bar code reader" → p.318
Copy	Copies text contained in the scanned data. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → p.450

NOTE

- ◆ If the data you want to scan contains characters that cannot be scanned by the Bar code reader, those characters are converted to spaces (blanks).

<Internet/Add bookmark>

- ◆ You cannot use the Web To function or add a bookmark if there are unusable characters in the URL.

<Compose message>

- ◆ The address cannot be entered if it contains characters that cannot be entered.

<Dialing>

- ◆ Double-byte/single-byte numbers and symbols (#, * and +) can be contained in the phone number. You cannot make a call if any other characters are contained.
- ◆ The image settings for videophone are not retained after the dialing or talking is finished. Set the image each time you make a call.

<Activate i-appli>

- ◆ You cannot launch an i-appli from the scanned data if "Bar code "i-appli To"" under "i-appli To setting" (p.317) is not selected.
- ◆ You cannot launch an i-appli if no application is specified.

<Access reader>

Scanning Text

Using the built-in camera allows a FOMA terminal to scan printed text then add the scanned text data as a phonebook entry or bookmark, or use the data to compose a message. You can also make a call or access website.

- A FOMA terminal can save up to 8 scanned data.
- Hold a FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not shake during scanning.
- When scanning text, keep about 7 to 9cm between the rear camera and the text.
- Vertically written Japanese text can also be scanned.

■ Scan mode

The following are the scan modes. Select the mode suitable for the data to scan:

Card read	Scans the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address and memo printed on the business card to add to the phonebook.
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the scanned recipient address, subject and message entered.
URL	Scans URL, and accesses the site or adds the URL to Bookmark.
Mail address	Scans the mail address and composes an i-mode message.
Phone number	Scans the phone number and makes a call.
Free memo	Scans Japanese or English text to save to Text memo.

■ The number of characters that can be scanned

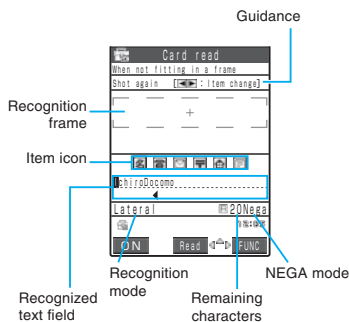
The following table shows the maximum number of characters that can be scanned for each item:

Item		Maximum number of characters that can be scanned
Card read	Name	16 in double-byte, 32 in single-byte
	Phone number	26 in single-byte numbers including #, *, +, p (pause), (,), -
	Mail address	50 in single-byte alphabets, numbers or symbols
	Postal code	7 in single-byte
	Address	50 in double-byte, 100 in single-byte
	Memo	100 in double-byte, 200 in single-byte
Compose message	Receiver	50 in single-byte alphabets, numbers or symbols
	Subject	15 in double-byte, 30 in single-byte
	Text	128 in double-byte, 256 in single-byte
URL		256 in single-byte alphabets, numbers or symbols
Mail address		256 in single-byte alphabets, numbers or symbols
Phone number		256 in single-byte numbers including (,), -
Free memo		128 in double-byte, 256 in single-byte
Dictionary*	Japanese	32 in double-byte, 64 in single-byte
	English	64 in single-byte

* : The option can be selected when the Access reader is launched from Dictionary.

■ Guide to the scanning screen

Taking Card read for example, the following describes the scanning screen:



Guidance : Shows the operation.

Recognition frame:

Shows the recognition field.

Item icon : Shows the item to scan.

Card read mode: "Name/phone number/mail address/postal code/address/memo"
Compose message mode: "Recipient/subject/message"

Recognized text field:

Shows the scanned text (The guidance appears on some screens).

Recognition mode:

Shows the recognition mode used for scanning "Kanji (lateral writing/vertical writing)/postal code/phone number/mail address/URL".

Remaining character count:

Shows the number of single-byte characters left that can be scanned.

NEGA mode : Appears if the NEGA/POSI mode is set to Negative fix.

Scanning text

<Example: Scanning text in Card read mode>

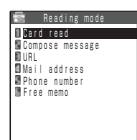
1 "Access reader"

The "Access reader" screen appears.



2 "New"

The "scanning mode selection" screen appears.
"Scan mode" → p.203



3 "Card read"

The "Access reader scanning" screen appears. The shooting mode is automatically set to "Close-up" on the rear camera. Use to select the icon for the item to save.



4 Display the text in the recognition field

Focus the text so that the entire text appears as large as possible inside the recognition field. If the recognition field cannot display the whole text, the text can be scanned several times.

■ To adjust the zoom

: Changes from "Normal" to "Large".

: Returns from "Large" to "Normal".

■ To turn on the light

(ON) or (OFF)

To turn off the light, press (OFF) or (OFF).

5

A FOMA terminal scans the text, and the recognized text appears in red.

■ To rescans the text

"YES"

If the screen does not display the entire text, press (HOME) or (MEMO/CHECK) to show the hidden text.

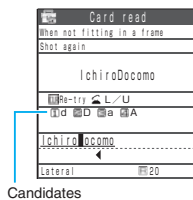
Pressing (Store) stores the scanned text, and then the text data details screen appears.

The following are the two methods to edit the scanned text:

■ To select the string to edit

▶ Use to highlight the string to edit ▶ Press the candidate No.

Use to change the cases between upper and lower if it can be changed.



■ To edit in the text editing

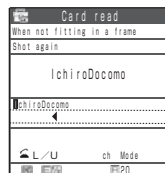
▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Edit"

▶ Edit the text

The text can be edited in the typical text editing.

To return to the candidate selection, press

(FUNC) and select "Select recog. data". Go on to Step 6 when you finish editing.



6

The entry is fixed as the text.

■ To scan the remaining text

▶ Repeat Steps 4 to 6

Ensure that the last two characters of the scanned text are included in the recognition field.

■ To scan another item

▶Use  to select the item to scan▶Repeat Steps 4 to 6
In Card read mode, you can scan up to 4 phone numbers and up to 3 mail addresses.

7 (FUNC)▶“Store”

The Reading data detail screen appears. Press  to return to the Reading data list screen.

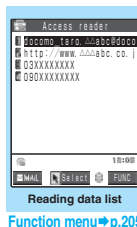
NOTE

- ◆ Do not move the FOMA terminal while the “Processing” message appears on the screen.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal can scan kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabets (upper case and lower case), numbers and symbols. However, all katakana characters are scanned as double-byte, and all numbers and alphabets as single-byte. Some of the JIS level 2 kanji characters cannot be scanned.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal cannot recognize handwritten characters. If the text is faxed or copied, if the fonts are decorated, if the character spaces are not fixed, or if the fonts and background cannot be easily distinguished, the FOMA terminal may fail to recognize the text. Whether the FOMA terminal can recognize the text correctly may depend on the ambient lighting.
- ◆ You can also launch the Access reader from the text editing screen. The scanned data is entered into the screen.
- ◆ When launching the Access reader from Dictionary, choose the reading mode between “Dic.(Japanese)” and “Dic.(English)”.
- ◆ If you do not press any keys for three minutes or so before scanning the text, the Access reader scanning screen exits and the screen returns to the Access reader.
- ◆ Before saving the scanned text data, if you receive a voice call, if you are notified of an alarm clock or if you use another function, the scanned text is saved, and then the corresponding screen appears. Finishing the operation afterwards that occurred during the saving returns the screen to the Reading data detail screen.
- ◆ On the Access reader screen, selecting  (FUNC) ▶ “Add desktop icon” adds the desktop icon for this function.
- ◆ In URL mode, “http://” is added to the beginning of the scanned string if it does not include “://”. If the scanned string includes “://” or “s://” at its beginning, it is replaced with “http://” or “https://”.

Using the text data

1 ▶▶“Access reader”▶“Reading data list”

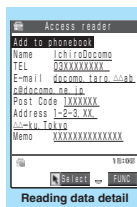
The “Reading data list” screen appears.



Function menu▶p.205

2 Select the scanned data

The “Reading data detail” screen appears.



Function menu▶p.206

3 Select any of the displayed items

“Add to phonebook”:

Adds the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address and memo to the phonebook→pp.111, 112

“Compose message”:

Composes an i-mode message with the recipient address, subject and message already entered→p.247

* Select any displayed item such as Phone number or Mail address to edit the data.

Function menu (Access reader scanning screen/Reading data list screen)

Edit*1	Edits the scanned text.
Store*2	Saves the scanned data.
Internet	Accesses the site in URL mode. “Web To function”→p.230
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with all data entered in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode message with the mail address entered in Mail address mode. Composes an i-mode message with the data entered in Free memo mode. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.247
Dialing	Calls the phone number in Phone number mode. “Phone To function”→p.229

Add to phonebook	Adds the scanned data to the phonebook. Adds the data all at once to the phonebook in Card read mode. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → p.111 "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" → p.112
Add bookmark	Bookmarks the URL in URL mode. "Adding bookmarks" → p.222
Search phonebook	Searches the data in the phonebook using the scanned data. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.116 You cannot search on the Access reader scanning screen, in Card read mode or in Compose message mode.
Add to memo	Adds the scanned data to Text memo. "Composing Text Memos" → p.415 You cannot add data in Card read mode or in Compose message mode.
Reading mode set²	Selects the scanning mode among "Card read", "Compose message", "URL", "Mail address", "Phone number" and "Free memo".
NEGA/POSI mode²	Sets the type of printing.
• Auto setting	Automatically sets the positive or negative.
• Positive fix	Is suitable for printing the dark text on the light background.
• Negative fix	Is suitable for printing the light text on the dark background.
Guidance OFF/ Guidance ON²	Shows or hides the guidance.
Vertical writing/ Lateral writing²	Selects the lateral writing or vertical writing for the Japanese text to scan.
Display detail³	Displays the Reading data detail screen.
Copy³	Copies text contained in the scanned data. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → p.450
Delete this³	Deletes the highlighted data.
Delete all³	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the data.

*1 : Only available on the Access reader scanning screen.

*2 : Only appears on the Access reader scanning screen.

*3 : Only appears on the Reading data list screen.

Function menu (Reading data detail screen)

Edit	Edits the text of the selected item. You cannot edit the text when you select "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message".
Internet	Accesses the site in URL mode. "Web To function" → p.230
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the mail address entered if the mail address is selected in Card read mode. Composes an i-mode message with all data entered if "Compose message" is selected in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode message with the data entered if the recipient address, subject or message is selected in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode message with the mail address entered in Mail address mode. Composes an i-mode message with the data entered in Free memo mode. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.247
Dialing	Calls the phone number if it is selected in Card read mode. Calls the phone number in Phone number mode. "Phone To function" → p.229
Add to phonebook	Adds the data all at once to the phonebook if "Add to phonebook" is selected in Card read mode. Adds the data to the phonebook if the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address, or memo is selected in Card read mode. Adds the mail address to the phonebook if it is selected in Compose message mode. Adds the mail address to the phonebook in Mail address mode. Adds the phone number to the phonebook in Phone number mode. Adds the data to the memo of the phonebook in Free memo mode. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → p.111 "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" → p.112
Add bookmark	Bookmarks the URL in URL mode. "Adding bookmarks" → p.222

Search phonebook	Searches the phonebook using the selected data. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.116 You cannot search when you select "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message".
Add to memo	Adds the selected data to Text memo. "Composing Text Memos"→ p.415 You cannot add the data when you select "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message".
Display list	Displays the Reading data list screen.
Copy	Copies data contained in the scanned data. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → p.450
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted data.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the data.

NOTE**<Dialing>**

- ◆ Single-byte numbers and symbols (#, * and +) can be contained in the phone number. Only the numbers and symbols are dialed as the phone number if any other characters are included.
- ◆ The image settings for videophone are not retained after the dialing or talking is finished. Set the image each time you make a call.

● i-mode/i-motion

What is i-mode?	210
Displaying i-mode Menu	i-mode menu 215
■ Viewing sites	
Viewing Sites	216
Viewing and Using Sites	219
Registering My Menu Entries	My Menu 220
Changing your i-mode Password	Change i-mode Password 221
Viewing Websites	Internet connection 221
Accessing Websites and i-mode Sites Quickly	Bookmark 222
Saving Site Content	Screen memo 224
■ Downloading images and melodies from sites	
Downloading Images from Sites and Messages	Save image 225
Downloading Melodies from Sites	i-melody 226
Downloading PDF Documents from Sites	226
Downloading Chara-den Characters from Sites	228
Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® from Sites	228
Downloading Data Files from Sites	229
■ Useful i-mode functions	
Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions	Phone To/Mail To/Web To functions 229
■ Making i-mode settings	
Making i-mode Settings	230
■ Using message services	
When you Receive a Message	Receive message 232
Checking for Messages	Check new messages 234
Viewing Messages in the Message Box	MessageR/MessageF 234
■ Using certificates	
Using SSL Certificate	235
Setting FirstPass	236
Changing the Certificate Host	237
■ Using i-motion	
What is i-motion?	237
Downloading i-motion	Download i-motion 238
Setting i-motion	239

What is i-mode?

The i-mode service allows you to use an i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) display to access online services such as i-mode mail and connection to the Internet and i-mode sites (programs).

■ Accessing a site (program)

Select an option from the i-mode menu to use a range of online services provided by your IP (information service provider) such as weather report and news. In addition, download and enjoy games or images for the standby screen.

■ Internet access

Enter URLs on your i-mode terminal to access a wide range of i-mode-compatible websites.

■ i-mode mail

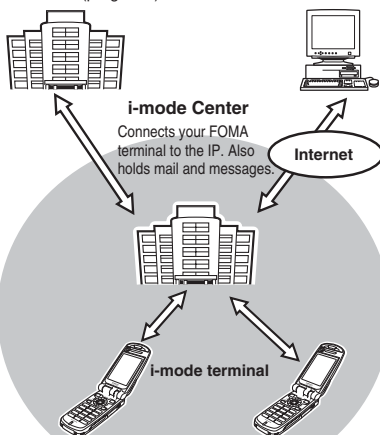
Exchange e-mail messages up to 5,000 double-byte characters long not only with another i-mode terminal but with anyone who has an Internet e-mail address. In addition, exchange and enjoy Deco-mail messages, still images and movies.

Service

IP (information service provider)

Hosts sites (programs).

PC etc.



FOMA service area

The i-mode service area is the same as the FOMA service area (the area in which calls can be made and received).

i-mode is a pay service you need to subscribe to. For information on subscription, see the back cover of the manual.

NOTE

- ◆ New subscribers to FOMA services can use all the services from the time of subscription.
- ◆ If you have updated your mova service (i-mode) subscription to the FOMA service subscription, you can continue to use the "My Menu" content used under the mova service. Some sites may not retain your "My Menu" data under the FOMA service. In this case, re-register. To check "My Menu"-compatible sites, see "お知らせ" (News) in the iMenu.
- ◆ You are charged for the amount of sent and received data (the number of packets). This manual does not provide any information on the charges. For information on the charges, etc., see the "i-mode User's Manual" provided at the time of subscription.
- ◆ The i-mode service details are subject to change. See the "i-mode User's Manual".

Accessing a site (program)

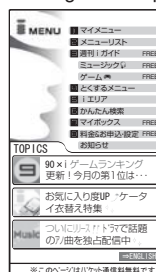
Simple key operations allow you to access sites provided by IPs (information service providers) and use various online services.

For instance, you can check your bank account balance, transfer money, reserve tickets, read news, use online dictionaries or download ring tones.

● Viewing sites

When you connect to the i-mode center, the iMenu screen appears first. From this screen, access a variety of sites such as "What's New".

Viewing a site → p.216



* Left is a screen image. The actual screen may be displayed differently depending on the settings.

① マイメニュー (My Menu)	Register a frequently visited site, so that you can visit the site easily and quickly from next time on (p.220). Pay sites in iMenu are automatically registered. Up to 45 sites can be registered.
② メニューリスト (Menu List)	Lists all sites by genre and area for your convenience. Select and access an interesting site.
③ 週刊 i ガイド (What's New)	Latest information on new and recommended sites is updated daily from Monday through Friday. Special features on music and games are also provided.
④ とくするメニュー (tokusuru menu)	Features campaign information, giveaways, discount coupons, etc. The information is updated weekly (Presented by D2 Communications).

 i エリア (i-area)	Provides quick access to information on the current area and vicinity, such as weather report, map and local facilities.
 かんたん検索 (Simple search)	Use categories such as "Games" and "Stand-by screen" to search for sites by keyword.
 マイボックス (My Box)	A member-only service that provides quick access to pre-registered service-providing shops or sites.
 料金&お申込・設定 (Options)	Check/pay i-mode charges, change your subscription options, make i-mode mail settings or change your i-mode password.
 お知らせ (News)	Provides news from DoCoMo, help on how to use i-mode, and the usage regulations.
 TOPICS	Offers the latest topics.
ENGLISH	Views iMenu in English mode.

NOTE

- ◆ Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are used by the IP (information service provider) to identify you and provide you with customized services and to confirm that you can use content provided by the IP.
- ◆ Your Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the IP (information service provider) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party. However, your phone number, address, age and sex are not disclosed to the IP (information service provider), etc.
- ◆ Some sites (i-mode pay sites) may charge you an information fee.
- ◆ A separate subscription is required to use some services provided by IPs (information service providers).
- ◆ Even if the i-mode icon is flashing, no packet communication charges apply unless you communicate with the i-mode center.
- ◆ If you have subscribed to the "Dual Network" service, the iMenu screen is slightly different.

Other useful features

Music Channel

Music Channel is a service which automatically delivers a program of maximum of about one hour at night by just setting your favorite music program in advance. Programs are updated regularly and you can enjoy the delivered program at your convenient time such as on commuting.

i-channel

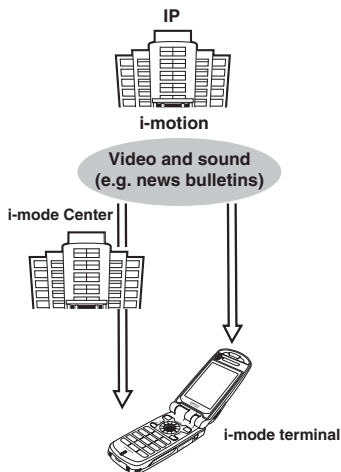
i-channel is a service whereby news, weather and other information is sent as graphical information to i-channel compatible terminals from DoCoMo or IPs (information service provider). Information is periodically received and the latest information appears as telop text on the standby screen. Pressing the i-channel key () displays the channel list. Selecting a channel from the list provides you with rich, detailed information.

*: Support model: i-channel-capable model is available. For more details, see "i-mode User's Manual".

i-motion

Download videos and sounds from i-mode sites to your i-mode terminal and play them or set them to the standby screen. → p.237

- To download an i-motion → p.238
- To play an i-motion → p.238
- To set an i-motion to be played automatically → p.239



Chaku-motion/Chaku-Uta®

Download an i-motion from an i-mode site to your i-mode terminal and set the i-motion as a ring tone or incoming call image. In addition to a melody, your favorite artist's voice can be set as a ring tone. (Some incompatible i-motion cannot be set for Chaku-motion.)

- To set a Chaku-motion → p.128

Chaku-Uta-Full®

You can download Chaku-Uta-Full® from i-mode sites and set it as a ring tone or alarm sound. You can use a part of selected song as a ring tone and can also set the entire song as a ring tone. (Some Chaku-Uta-Full® which do not support this cannot be set to the Point ring tone setting.)

- Chaku-Uta-Full® → pp.299, 302

i-appli

Downloading an i-appli from an i-mode site makes your i-mode terminal more useful and enjoyable. For example, download a range of games or an i-appli that updates stock prices periodically. A map i-appli downloads only necessary data, which enables smooth scrolling.

- To download an i-appli → p.309
- To launch an i-appli → p.310
- To launch an i-appli automatically → p.317

■ i-appli display

An i-appli can be set to the standby screen, and you can receive a message or make a call on the screen. The standby screen can be more useful; e.g. news or weather information can be displayed, or your preferred character notifies you of an incoming message or alarm.

- To set the i-appli display → pp.139, 318

■ i-appli DX

i-appli DX is linked to data stored on the i-mode terminal (e.g. messages, Dialed calls/Received calls, phonebook entries). i-appli can be more useful and enjoyable; e.g. you can compose a message on the screen with your preferred character appearing, the character notifies who gave you a call or sent you a message, or an i-appli is linked to a message and updates stock prices or game progress in real time.

- i-appli DX → p.308

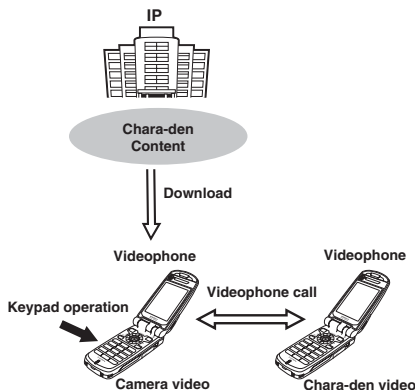
■ 3D sound

The stereo speaker (or stereo earphones) on a 3D sound compatible i-mode terminal produces a 3 dimensional and resonating sound, and you can enjoy rich sound of i-appli games, ring tones and i-motion programs. (Only available with 3D sound compatible content.)

■ Chara-den

When talking on a videophone call, you can send a cartoon character ("Chara-den" character) image to the other party's phone instead of your own image. You can even make the "Chara-den" character's mouth synchronize sounds or move using your phone's keypads. You can also download your preferred character, shoot it as a still image or movie and set it to the standby screen or attach it to a message. (You cannot send an image or movie if it is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal or attached to a message.)

- To download a Chara-den character → p.228
- To check a Chara-den character → p.364
- To set a Chara-den character → p.365
- To control a Chara-den character → p.365
- To shoot a Chara-den character → p.366



■ Infrared data exchange function

i-mode terminal can exchange data such as phonebook entries, messages and bookmarks with mobile phones, PCs and other devices equipped with infrared data exchange function.*

Use the infrared data exchange function with an i-appli, and the i-appli is linked to a device equipped with the infrared data exchange function, which provides a variety of usage patterns. For example, your mobile phone can be used as a TV remote control or member ID.

*: The FOMA terminal may be unable to communicate with some devices even if they are equipped with the infrared data exchange function.

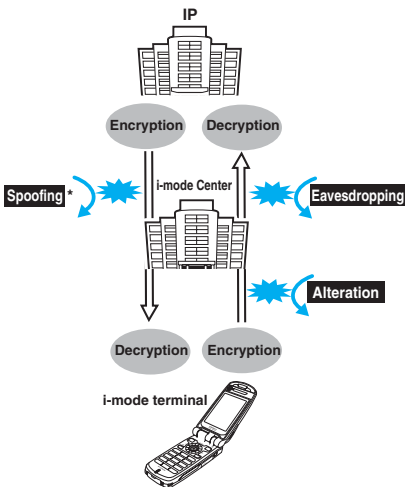
- To use the infrared data exchange function → p.382

■ SSL session

SSL is authentication/encryption technology to protect your privacy in data transmissions. Data sent to or received from a SSL page is encrypted to prevent hackers from eavesdropping data, site spoofing* or altering, thus making credit card transactions and the sending of personal information (e.g. address) safer. There are 2 types of SSL communication. In one, SSL certification authority (CA) (SSL certificates) stored in an i-mode terminal are used to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) without requiring the user to perform any special procedures. In the other, user certificates downloaded from the FirstPass Center are used to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages). The type of certificate used depends on the site.

→ p.218

- To view sites using SSL certificates stored in the i-mode terminal → p.218
- To use FirstPass user certificates → p.236



* Spoofing: A security attack that allows an adversary to observe all information entered into forms by the victim.

FOMA card operational restriction function

Restrictions are set on files such as melodies, images and movies loaded from mail or downloaded from sites when you insert a FOMA card (UIM) containing your data (such as phone number and phonebook data) into an i-mode terminal. When you insert another FOMA card (UIM) or turn the phone on without inserting the FOMA card (UIM), the function prevents retrieved files from being played or viewed.

* Images and movies shot with the camera function, and files saved to the FOMA terminal from external memory are not subject to this function.

* If a file subject to this restriction is set on your i-mode terminal (e.g. ring tone or standby screen), the setting is reset by this function.

i-melody

Download the latest songs or your preferred tunes from sites to your i-mode terminal, and set them as ring tones. → p.226

i-anime

Download your preferred animations from an i-mode site or website to your i-mode terminal and run the animations on the standby screen or receiving screen. → p.225

Flash®

Flash is an animation using images and sounds. Use a variety of animations and visually exciting sites. In addition, download a Flash movie to your i-mode terminal and set it to the standby screen. → p.220

Some Flash movies are able to use the terminal data on your i-mode terminal. The following are usable data:

- Battery level
- Ring volume setting
- Signal strength
- Bilingual setting
- Date and time
- Model data

Download dictionary

Download dialects or specialist dictionaries from sites to your i-mode terminal and set them as a conversion dictionary. → p.229

Message service

The message service automatically delivers required information (message) to your i-mode terminal.

The message service is categorized into MessageR (Request) and MessageF (Free).

MessageR (Request)	If you subscribe to the message service on the site, desired information is automatically delivered to your FOMA terminal.
MessageF (Free)	Messages are delivered with no packet communication charges applied.

Using the message service → pp.232, 234

As of October 1, 2004, MessageF (Free) is set to “受信する” (ON) by default for all new subscribers to the FOMA service who subscribe to i-mode at the same time. If you do not want to receive MessageF, set MessageF to “受信しない” (OFF).

* For subscribers other than the above to receive MessageF, change the settings in “料金&お申込 設定”→“オプション設定”→“メッセージ F 設定” (Can only be changed from the Japanese menu). The default setting is “受信しない” (OFF).

If you cannot receive messages because your FOMA terminal is turned off or is out of range (“” displayed), MessageR and MessageF are kept at the i-mode center.

• The table below shows the maximum number of messages that can be kept at the i-mode center and the maximum storage period. If the number or period exceeds the limit, the oldest message is to be deleted.

	Max. number of messages	Max. storage period
MessageR	300	72 hours
MessageF	300	72 hours

• Use “Check new messages” to receive MessageR and MessageF kept at the i-mode center. → p.234

■ トクだねニュース便 (Tokudane News Bin) (Only in Japanese)

DoCoMo uses the MessageR (Request) function to deliver information such as news and weather to i-mode terminals.

トクだねニュース便 (Tokudane News Bin) is a pay service you need to subscribe to. Once you have completed the subscription, the service is automatically registered to your My Menu list, and you can view the same information by accessing the service from My Menu.

Guide to the MessageR screen → p.234

● i-mode password

"i-mode password" is required to register or unregister sites in My Menu or make your i-mode mail settings. The i-mode password is set to "0000" (4 zeros) at the time of purchase. Change this number to a 4-digit number of your choice. → p.221

Take particular care not to disclose your i-mode password to others.

Internet access

Enter a website address to access the Internet and view an i-mode-compatible site.

Viewing websites → p.221

NOTE

- ◆ i-mode-incompatible websites may not be displayed correctly. To be i-mode-compatible, websites must be created using i-mode-compatible tags.
For details → p.221
- ◆ Operations for websites are the same as those for i-mode sites.
- ◆ A website viewed on your terminal and on a PC may be displayed differently.
- ◆ A webpage whose URL is over 256 single-byte characters long may not be displayed.
- ◆ You can view websites designed for a PC in full browser. → p.333

■ To view pages stored in cache

- A cache temporarily stores websites you have visited in the FOMA terminal. Use  to move to another page while you are viewing an i-mode site or website, and the FOMA terminal displays a page stored in cache without accessing the site. However, if the cache is full or if the page is set to always display the latest information, the FOMA terminal accesses the site even when you use . If the date and time information for a page has been updated, the FOMA terminal accesses the site and displays the latest information even when the page is stored in the cache.
- Even when site data are loaded from cache, the text and settings you entered previously do not appear.
- The cache is cleared when you exit i-mode.

- When you download an SSL-compatible page from the cache, a message appears indicating that an SSL page will be displayed.

■ Notes on using i-mode

- Site (program) or Internet website (page) content is generally protected by copyright laws. Documents, pictures and other data downloaded from these sites or websites to your i-mode terminal are permitted only for personal use. It is prohibited to copy or modify the whole or part of data for resale or redistribution without the copyright holders' permission.
- All data stored (messages, MessageR/MessageF, screen memos, i-αpli, i-motion, bookmarks, etc.) on your i-mode terminal may be lost when your i-mode terminal is damaged, repaired, or otherwise mishandled. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the data stored on your i-mode terminal.
- In the course of repairs or other works performed on your i-mode terminal, data downloaded via i-mode, i-αpli or i-motion will not be transferred to a new mobile phone due to copyright law. When the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the mobile phone is turned on with no FOMA card (UIM) inserted, some types of mobile phone may be incapable of viewing or playing melodies, images and movies downloaded from sites, files (images, movies, melodies, ToruCa (detailed images)) attached to sent or received messages, screen memos and Message R/MessageF messages.
- If a file for which the viewing and playback are restricted by a FOMA card (UIM) is set as the standby screen or a ring tone, the FOMA terminal operates using the default settings when the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the FOMA terminal is turned on without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted.

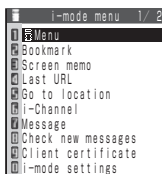
Important

- It is recommended to back up bookmark contents onto a miniSD memory card or note the contents down separately. You can also save the data to your PC by using the Data Link Software (p.475) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for data loss. Take notes of the data just in case.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.371

Displaying i-mode Menu

Starting i-mode



The “i-mode menu” screen appears. The i-mode menu consists of 11 items. Pressing  on the standby screen also displays the “i-mode menu” screen.

■ If “” appears

You are out of range or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move until the signal strength indicator e.g. “” appears.

■ If “” is flashing

The FOMA terminal is communicating with the i-mode center. If you attempt to access an i-mode site (p.216) or website (p.221) or send an i-mode message (p.247) while you are in range but not using the i-mode service, “” flashes and i-mode startup may take some time.

■ If “” is flashing

When you are receiving i-mode service (during i-mode), “” flashes.

Item	Description	Refer to
iMenu	This is the first page displayed when you access the i-mode center. From this screen, access a variety of sites such as “What’s New”.	pp.210, 216
Bookmark	Store the addresses of your favorite websites on your i-mode terminal so that you can jump directly to them next time.	p.222
Screen memo	Shows the i-mode site screens stored on your i-mode terminal.	p.224
Last URL	Displays the i-mode site or website that was displayed last time.	p.218
Go to location	Directly enter an address to access the i-mode-compatible website.	p.221
i-Channel	Shows the channel list screen.	p.322
Message	Displays received MessageR/MessageF. The message service automatically delivers required information to your FOMA terminal.	p.234

Item	Description	Refer to
Check new messages	Connects your FOMA terminal to the i-mode center to check for new messages or MessageR/MessageF.	pp.234, 261
Client certificate	Connects to the FirstPass Center to request or download user certificate.	p.236
i-mode settings	Make the i-mode settings.	p.230
Internet (Full Browser)	Displays a website designed for a PC in full browser.	p.333

NOTE

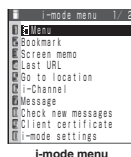
- ◆ The i-mode range is the same as the FOMA range (the area in which calls can be made and received).
- ◆ The i-mode menu can be displayed even when you are out of range. However, you cannot send/receive information to/from sites or via the Internet.

Displaying the iMenu screen



“iMenu”

The FOMA terminal connects to the i-mode center and the “iMenu” screen (the first i-mode screen) appears.



i-mode menu



iMenu

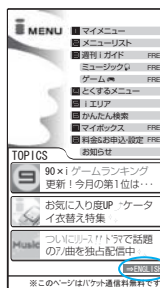
■ To cancel downloading pages

Press  or  (Quit)

iMenu in English

The iMenu can be displayed in English.

1 Display the i-mode menu and select iMenu and press



“English”

2 Select “ENGLISH” and then press



Select “日本語” to return to the Japanese display.

NOTE

- ◆ とくするメニュー (tokusuru menu), i エリア (i-area), かんたん検索 (Simple search), マイボックス (My box), お知らせ (News) and TOPICS are not shown on the English iMenu.
- ◆ Generally, the What's New site is updated every other Monday.
- ◆ English sites in Menu List differ from Japanese version.

Exiting i-mode

1 During i-mode, press “YES”

“” flashes, then “” disappears.

NOTE

- ◆ Press and hold  for 2 seconds or longer, and the FOMA terminal is turned off.

Viewing Sites

You can use various services provided by the IP (information service provider). (A separate subscription may be required.)

1 “iMenu”

2 “ENGLISH” ▶ “Menu List” ▶ Select a site

The “sites” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.216

● “みんなNらんど” (Only in Japanese)

You can download and save i-oppai, dictionaries, face stamps and Deco-mail templates available on your FOMA terminal from the site “みんなNらんど” under iMenu, and use them for various purposes.

The following shows how to access “みんなNらんど”.

Select “iMenu” → “メニューリスト” → “ケータイ電話メーカー” → “みんなNらんど”



The QR code on the right is also available to access “みんなNらんど”.

NOTE

- ◆ Some sites may charge you an information fee.
- ◆ You may be unable to view images on some sites.
- ◆ If an image cannot be downloaded, the “” icon appears. However, “” does not appear for a background image that cannot be downloaded.
- ◆ You can make and receive voice calls even while accessing a site (p.398). You can also send and receive messages.
- ◆ You can select any of the underlined items on the site screen to access the related page (link destination).
- ◆ The displayed site screen is not updated automatically. To see the latest information, select “Reload” from the function menu.
- ◆ The number of colors displayed on certain sites exceeds the maximum number of colors that the FOMA terminal can display. In this case, the site may not appear as intended.
- ◆ On some i-mode-compatible sites or websites, characters may be difficult or impossible to see depending on the selected colors.

Function menu (sites screen)

Add bookmark	Adds the URL of the currently displayed page to the bookmark list. “Adding bookmarks” → p.222
Bookmark	Displays the Bookmark folder list screen. You can use bookmarks to access i-mode sites or websites. → p.222
Add screen memo	Saves the displayed page as a screen memo. “Saving a screen memo” → p.224
Screen memo list	Displays the screen memo list screen. “Displaying a screen memo” → p.224
Save image	Saves an image on the displayed page. Select “Normal image” or “Background image”. “Downloading Images from Sites and Messages” → p.225
Scroll mode	Sets the scroll mode. → p.218
Compose message	Paste the URL of the currently displayed page or insert/attach an image to compose an i-mode message or Deco-mail message.

• Attach URL	Paste the URL of the displayed page to compose an i-mode message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.247
• Attach image	▶ Select an image Attach an image on the displayed page to compose an i-mode message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.247
• Insert image	▶ Select an image Insert an image on the displayed page to compose a Deco-mail message. "Composing and Sending Deco-mail" → p.251
Enter URL	▶▶▶ Enter a URL ▶▶▶ OK ▶▶▶ OK Enters a URL to access the website.
Add to phonebook	"Adding phone number and e-mail address to the phonebook" → p.220
Add desktop icon	Pastes the URL of the displayed page as a desktop icon. "Using Desktop Icons" → p.149
Save schedule	Saves a schedule while browsing the displayed page. "Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries" → p.404
Refer dictionary	Uses a dictionary on the displayed page. "Using dictionaries from other functions" → p.417
Home	
• Set as home URL	Registers the URL of the displayed page as the home page. One URL can be registered.
• Display home	Displays the home page.
Change CHR code	Changes the character code to redisplay a page that is not displayed correctly.
Reload	Refreshes the displayed page.
Retry	Plays a Flash movie or animation on the displayed page from the beginning.
iMenu	Displays the iMenu screen.
i-mode menu	Displays the i-mode menu.
Site info	
• Title	▶ Check the title ▶▶▶ OK Displays the title of the displayed page.
• URL	▶ Check the URL ▶▶▶ OK Displays the URL of the displayed page.
• Certificate	Displays the contents of the SSL certificate on an SSL-compatible page.
Site settings	Sets the image display mode, i-motion type and sound effects for the displayed page.

• Set image disp.	Sets the image display mode for a page. If "OFF" is selected, "OFF" appears instead of an image on the page.
• i-motion type	"Setting the i-motion type to download" → p.239
• Sound effect	Sets sound effects for Flash movies.
Switch to FB	Displays the current page in full browser. → p.337

NOTE**<Compose message>**

- ◆ You can paste a URL up to 256 single-byte characters long on a message. Longer URLs cannot be pasted.

<Set as home URL>

- ◆ Storing a URL in the "Set as home URL" option does not change the "Valid"/"Invalid" under "Home URL".

<Display home>

- ◆ "Display home" is not available when "Home URL" is set to "Invalid".
- ◆ If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, pressing the switch on the standby screen will also display the home page.

<Title>

- ◆ Up to 64 double-byte or 128 single-byte characters are displayed.

<URL>

- ◆ If the entire URL does not appear, press  to display the cursor. Use  to move the cursor and check the URL. Press  again to hide the cursor. Select "OK" to return to the page screen.

<Certificate>

- ◆ Up to 5 certificates are displayed. If there are two or more certificates, use  to check the previous or next certificate.
- ◆ When certificates are displayed, the screen scrolls by line regardless of the "Scroll" setting.

<Change CHR code>

- ◆ If text is not displayed correctly, repeat the procedure. If you perform the procedure 4 times in a row, the site is displayed in the original character code.
- ◆ Some sites may not be displayed correctly even when character codes are changed.
- ◆ If you change the character code on a site displayed correctly, the site may no longer be displayed correctly.
- ◆ "Change CHR code" only applies to the currently displayed site.

<Retry>

- ◆ Selecting this option during playback restarts playback from the beginning.

<Switch to FB>

- ◆ Some sites may not be displayed in full browser.

Viewing SSL pages

To view SSL pages, the following certificates are required:

- CA Certificate: Issued by an certification organization and stored on your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.
- DoCoMo Certificate: Required to connect to the FirstPass center and stored on the FOMA card (green).
- User Certificate: Downloaded from the FirstPass center by selecting "Client certificate" (p.236) from the i-mode menu and stored on the FOMA card (green).

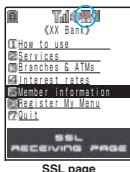
1 Open an SSL page

An SSL page and "SSL" appear.

■ To cancel opening during authentication



■ To cancel loading an authenticated page



2 Move from the SSL page to a normal page▶"YES"

SSL communication ends and "SSL" disappears.

NOTE

◆ The message "This site is not certified Do you connect?" may appear when you attempt to open an SSL page. This message appears when the SSL certificate for the page has expired or is not supported. In this case, you can continue to view the page by selecting "YES". You may not be able to safely send your personal information such as your credit card number or contacts. To cancel displaying, select "NO". When the "SSL session was terminated" message appears, press to return to the original screen.

Scroll function

When you are viewing a webpage, MessageR/MessageF, i-mode message or SMS and the text or list cannot appear on a screen, scroll up and down to view the rest.

■ Scrolling by line

Press to scroll down by line to view the next list item or text line.

Press to scroll up by line to view the previous list item or text line.

You can set the number of lines to scroll when pressing or . → p.230

■ Scrolling by page

Press (MEMO/CHECK) to scroll down by screens to view the next part of the list or text.

Press (HOME) to scroll up by screens to view the previous part of the list or text.

■ To use the scroll mode

If "Scroll mode" is selected from the sites function menu (p.216) or screen memo detail function menu (p.224), you can scroll in the direction (up or down) as you slide . Pressing on the sites screen also sets/releases the scroll mode.

Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers

If you select an item on an i-mode site or website, a message may appear indicating that the mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers will be sent. If it is OK to send the numbers, select "YES". Otherwise, select "NO". Press (Return) or to return to the previous screen.

- Before the manufacturer numbers are sent, a message appears indicating that they will be sent. They will not be sent automatically.

NOTE

- ◆ Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are used by the IP (information service provider) to identify you and provide you with customized services and to confirm that you can use content provided by the IP.
- ◆ Your Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the IP (information service provider) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party. However, your phone number, address, age and sex are not disclosed to the IP (information service provider), etc.

Reconnecting to the last viewed page <Last URL>

Each time you view a page, the URL of the currently viewed page is set to "Last URL". When you end an i-mode session, the URL of the last viewed page is saved to "Last URL". Use "Last URL" to reconnect to the last viewed page.

1 ▶▶"Last URL"▶"YES"

NOTE

- ◆ The current URL is not saved to "Last URL" if:
 - You accessed the page from Bookmark under the Secret folder
 - You downloaded a PDF document showing separate charges
- ◆ The URL of the data acquisition screen is not saved to "Last URL". In this case, "Last URL" will save the URL of page viewed before the data acquisition screen.

Viewing and Using Sites

This section describes operations available while viewing an i-mode site or website.

Displaying images

- The FOMA terminal displays GIF and JPEG images and Flash movies (p.220). Some images and movies may not be displayed even if the formats are supported.
- When a Flash movie is used, display operations may differ from on a normal page.
- You can set whether to display images in “Set image disp.” (p.217) under “Site settings”.

Image icons

-  (color) : Appears during image loading or if “Set image disp.” is set to “OFF”.
-  : Appears if image loading failed.
-  (BW) : Appears if the image cannot be loaded.

Select an item

When you are using i-mode, you may need to perform the operations below.

- For more details, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.

Radio button

Radio buttons allow you to choose one of a range of options.  indicates a selected radio button.

Checkbox

Checkboxes allow you to select multiple options from a range of options.  indicates a selected checkbox.

Text box

You can enter text directly into a text box. When you select a text box, the text entry screen appears.

Pull-down menu

A pull-down menu allows you to choose one of a range of options. Some options are shown and hidden sub-options appear as a list when you select an option.

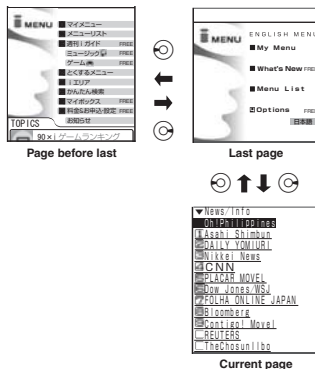
NOTE

- ◆ Depending on how the site is constructed, a pull-down menu may include multiple available options that can be selected by checking . Each time you use  to move the focus between  and press  the option  is selected or deselected. When you have completed your selections, press  (Finish) or  to end the procedure.

Jumping forward/back to a page

You can jump forward or back to a page that has been retrieved and stored in the FOMA terminal’s cache (up to 30 pages are stored).

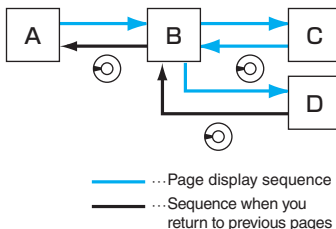
- 1 Press  to jump back to the previous page or  to jump forward to the next page



NOTE

- ◆ You can review the pages you have visited in the current i-mode session by repeatedly pressing . However, when you have pressed  to return to an earlier page (from “C” to “B”) and then gone from that page to another page (from “B” to “D”), pressing  twice from page “D” will not display page “C”, but will take you back to “B” and then to page “A” (see below). The previous page is displayed in order of “D”, “B”, and “A”.

- When the page display sequence is “A”, “B”, “C”, “B” and “D”



- ◆ Cache → p.214

Reloading data

Use this procedure to refresh the displayed page.

- 1 Sites screen (p.216)  (FUNC)  “Reload”

NOTE

- ◆ If you perform “Reload” on the final completion screen for pages such as questionnaires or other forms, a message asking whether to resend the data appears. Note that selecting “YES” will resend information that has already been sent once.

Adding phone number and e-mail address to the phonebook <Add to phonebook>

You can add a phone number or e-mail address displayed on a site page or screen memo to your phonebook.

<Example: When adding a phone number displayed on a site page>

① Sites screen (p.216)▶ (FUNC)▶ “Add to phonebook”▶“YES”▶Add the phone number to phonebook

“Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook”→p.111
“Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook”→p.112

If the name, reading and mail address are attached to a phone number, they are also entered to the phonebook together with the phone number. Enter remains of needed items and then save to the phonebook.

Handling Flash movies

Flash is an animation technique supported by the FOMA terminal that uses both images and sound. Flash gives you access to a wide range of animations and visually exciting sites. You can also download a Flash movie to your FOMA terminal and set it in the standby screen.

- A Flash playing error prevents successful completion of the saving.
- Note that if you play a Flash movie to which vibration is set, your FOMA terminal vibrates regardless of the “Vibrator” setting.
- Some Flash movies may not run correctly.
- You may also be able to control a Flash movie even when “ ” does not appear at the bottom of screen.
- Flash movies are not displayed if you select “OFF” in “Set image disp.”.
- Selecting “YES” in “Use phone information” (p.232) enables you to use data stored on the FOMA terminal (time, date, signal strength, battery level, ring volume, language, model type and model info).

NOTE

- ◆ To rerun a Flash movie, select “Retry” from the Sites function menu or other menus. →p.217
- ◆ Some Flash movies use sound effects. To run a Flash movie without the sound effects, select “Sound effect” in “Site settings” from the Sites function menu and then select “OFF”. Even if “Vibrator” is set to “Melody linkage”, this setting is invalid for sound effects of Flash movie.

- ◆ When a Flash movie is set as a screen such as standby by using “Display setting”, the sound effects or vibrator that are set in the Flash movie do not run. Furthermore, “Retry” is unavailable for repeating a Flash movie.
- ◆ Some Flash movies may appear differently from the way they do on a site (e.g. a part of movie is not saved) if they are saved or stored as screen memo.
- ◆ Display behavior may differ when a Flash movie appears.
- ◆ For some Flash movies, the vibrator function is activated. If such Flash movie is set in the ringing screen, videophone ringing screen or mail receiving screen, the FOMA terminal vibrates according to the “Vibrator” or “Manner mode set” setting. However, a terminal does not vibrate when a Flash movie is set in the standby screen or as Wake-up display.
- ◆ Depending on the activated Flash movie, you may not be able to use the neuropointer to select menu screens.

<My Menu>

Registering My Menu Entries

My Menu provides you with a quick and convenient way to connect to frequently visited sites.

- You can register up to 45 sites in My Menu.
- Some sites cannot be registered to My Menu.
- To connect quickly to a website, use “Bookmark” (p.222).

① Sites screen (p.216)▶Select “マイメニュー登録”, “My Menu Add” or “My Menu Registration”▶Select the “Input password” box▶Enter your 4-digit i-mode password▶“Select”

i-mode password→p.156

NOTE

- ◆ Charged sites in the iMenu list are automatically registered to My Menu upon subscription.

Viewing sites registered to My Menu

① ▶▶“iMenu”▶“ENGLISH”▶ “My Menu”▶ Select a site you want to view

NOTE

- ◆ To connect to a site from My Menu, the site must first be registered to My Menu.
- ◆ Dual Network service users may find that My Menu entries registered on their mova-compatible i-mode terminal are not available on the FOMA terminal and similarly that entries registered on their FOMA terminal are not available on the mova-compatible i-mode terminal.

<Change i-mode Password>

Changing your i-mode Password

You need a 4-digit “i-mode password” to register or unregister sites in My Menu, to subscribe to or unsubscribe from message services or charged i-mode sites, and to set your mail preferences.

- Until you change the i-mode password, it is set to “0000” (4 zeros) by default. You can change your i-mode password at any time from your FOMA terminal.
- Take particular care not to disclose your i-mode password to others.
- If you forget your i-mode password, the registered service subscriber need to take a form of identification (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo service counter. A service representative will reset your i-mode password to “0000”.

1  ▶ “iMenu” ▶ “ENGLISH” ▶ “Options” ▶ “Change i-mode Password”

2 Select the “Current Password” box ▶ Enter your current i-mode password

The numbers of the entered security code is displayed as “*”.

3 Select the “New Password” box ▶ Enter a new password

Enter a 4-digit number as your i-mode password.

4 Select the “New Password (Confirmation)” box ▶ Enter a new i-mode password again

Enter the number you entered in step 3.

5 Select “Select”

■ If you enter your “Current Password” incorrectly

A message notifying that the entered i-mode password is incorrect appears.

■ If you enter different numbers in “New Password” and “New Password (Confirmation)”

A message notifying that the entered i-mode passwords do not match appears.

<Internet connection>

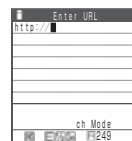
Viewing Websites

This function enables you to view any website simply by entering its URL.

- i-mode-incompatible websites may not be displayed correctly.

- A website viewed on your terminal and on a PC may be displayed differently.
- You can view websites designed for a PC in full browser. → p.333

1  ▶ “Go to location” ▶ “Enter URL” ▶ Select “<NEW>”



2 Enter a URL ▶ “OK”

A message appears warning that it may not be possible to display the site for the entered URL. Press  or  to connect to the website with the entered URL.

■ If you enter no URL or a URL that does not begin with “http://” or “https://”

A message notifying that the URL is incorrect appears.

NOTE

- ◆ Some websites may not be displayed correctly on a FOMA terminal.
- ◆ If the received data exceeds the maximum amount that can be loaded for a single page, data reception stops. You may be able to view the data loaded so far by pressing .
- ◆ You can enter a URL up to 256 single-byte characters long including “http://” or “https://”.

Accessing sites from the URL history

The FOMA terminal records the last 10 URLs you entered in the URL history.

1  ▶ “Go to location” ▶ “Enter URL”

The “Enter URL” screen appears.

2 Select a URL number ▶ “OK” ▶ “OK”



Function menu ▶ p.222

■ To edit the selected URL

▶ Select the “Internet address” box ▶ Edit the URL

NOTE

- ◆ Once the URL history contains 10 entries, the oldest entry is automatically replaced as new entries are added.
- ◆ Multiple visits to the same site by entering the URL are logged as separate entries.
- ◆ The URL history indicates URLs up to 22 single-byte characters long, excluding the “http://” or “https://” prefix.

Function menu (Enter URL screen)

Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with the selected URL pasted in the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.247
Set as home URL	Stores the selected URL as home URL. One URL can be stored.
Delete	Deletes URLs.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted URL.
• Delete selected	▶Use to select a checkbox ▶(Finish)▶"YES" Deletes multiple URLs.
• Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶"YES" Deletes all the registered URLs.

<Bookmark>

Accessing Websites and i-mode Sites Quickly

Adding frequently visited sites to your Bookmark folders enables you to access those sites quickly and easily.

- You can change titles of your bookmarks and organize the bookmarks into categories by using folders.

Adding bookmarks

- You can bookmark up to 100 sites.
- The URL for each bookmark can contain up to 256 single-byte characters. Pages with longer URLs cannot be bookmarked.
- Up to 10 URLs can be stored in the Secret folder separately from normal bookmarks.
- Some sites cannot be bookmarked.

<Example: When displaying a site>

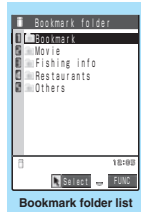
- 1 **Sites screen (p.216)**▶▶(F(UNC))▶**"Add bookmark"**▶**"YES"**▶**Select a folder number**

NOTE

- ◆ A bookmark title can consist of up to 12 double-byte or 24 single-byte characters. Longer title is truncated when the bookmark is added. If no title is given, the URL is shown (excluding "http://" or "https://").

Using a bookmark to access an i-mode site or website

- 1 ▶▶**"Bookmark"**
The "Bookmark folder list" screen appears.



Bookmark folder list
Function menu▶p.222

- 2 **Select a folder number**
The "Bookmark" screen appears.
- 3 **Select a bookmark number**



Bookmark
Function menu▶p.223

NOTE

- ◆ Page titles in the bookmark list are shown in the order they were used.

Function menu (Bookmark folder list screen)

You cannot rename or delete the "Bookmark" folder already created on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

Add folder	▶ Enter a folder name You can add up to 9 folders. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for a folder name.
Edit folder name	▶ Enter a folder name You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for a folder name.
Sort folder	▶ Select the destination Rearranges folders.
No. of bookmarks	Indicates the total number of bookmarks in all the folders. However, bookmarks in the Secret folder are not included.
Send all Ir data	Sends all the bookmarks via Infrared data exchange. "Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.386

Copy all to miniSD	▶Enter your security code▶ “YES” Copies all the stored bookmarks to the miniSD memory card. However, bookmarks in the Secret folder are not copied.
Delete folder	▶Enter your security code▶ “YES” Deletes the highlighted folder and bookmarks in the folder.
Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶ “YES” Deletes all the bookmarks. Bookmarks in the Secret folder are not deleted.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot apply security to bookmark folders.
- ◆ All folders including Secret folders are displayed when Secret mode and Secret data only mode are set.

<Add folder>

- ◆ Newly added folders appear below the existing folders.
- ◆ The Secret folder location is not changed even if a folder is added.

<Send all Ir data>

- ◆ Bookmarks in the Secret folder are not sent.

Function menu (Bookmark screen)

Move	Moves bookmarks.
• Move this	▶Select a folder number▶ “YES” Moves the highlighted bookmark.
• Move selected	▶Select a folder number▶ Use  to select a checkbox (□) of a bookmark▶  (Finish)▶ “YES” You can move bookmarks to other folders to organize them by category.
• Move all	▶Select a folder number▶ “YES” Moves all the bookmarks stored in the folder.
Edit title	▶Edit a title You can enter up to 12 double-byte or 24 single-byte characters for a folder name.
Add desktop icon	Pastes a bookmarked URL as a desktop icon. “Using Desktop Icons” → p.149
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with a bookmarked URL pasted into the message. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → p.247
Send Ir data	“Transferring One Data at a Time” → p.385

Copy to miniSD	Copies bookmarks to the miniSD memory card.
• Copy this	Copies the highlighted bookmark.
• Copy selected	▶Use  to select a checkbox (□) of a bookmark▶  (Finish)▶ “YES” Copies multiple bookmarks.
• Copy all	▶Enter your security code▶ “YES” Copies all the bookmarks stored in the folder.
Set as home URL	Stores a bookmarked URL as home URL. One URL can be stored.
Copy URL	▶Use  to highlight the head of text to copy▶  Use  to highlight the end of text to copy▶  to copy▶ Copies a bookmarked URL.
No. of bookmarks	Shows the number of bookmarks in the folders.
Delete	Deletes bookmarks.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted bookmark.
• Delete selected	▶Use  to select a checkbox (□)▶  (Finish)▶ “YES” Deletes multiple bookmarks.
• Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶ “YES” Deletes all the bookmarks stored in the folder.
Keep in secret*	“Hiding Various Data” → p.163

* : The options appear only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, “Put out” appears. → p.163

NOTE**<Move>**

- ◆ You cannot move a bookmark to the Secret folder.

<Edit title>

- ◆ If you delete a title and press , the URL is stored without the “http://” or “https://” prefix.

<Add desktop icon>

- ◆ You can display the bookmark pasted into the desktop by selecting its desktop icon even if the bookmark is stored in the Secret folder.

<Delete all>

- ◆ “Delete all” deletes all the bookmarks in the currently displayed folder. Bookmarks in other folders are not deleted.

<Screen memo>

Saving Site Content

When you have found some useful information (travel information, etc.), you can save the displayed page on your FOMA terminal as a screen memo for later reference.

- You can save up to 100 screen memos. However, the number you can actually save varies between 1 and 100 depending on the amount of data on each saved page.

Saving a screen memo

- 1 Sites screen (p.216)  (FUNC) 
 “Add screen memo”  “YES”

NOTE

- ◆ When you save an SSL page as a screen memo, the SSL certificate for the page is also saved.
- ◆ A title for a saved screen memo can be up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters long. Longer title is truncated.
- ◆ If you save the same page twice, they are saved separately as a screen memo.
- ◆ Even if an item is entered in a radio button, checkbox, text box, pull-down menu or selection box when you save a site page as screen memo, the item does not appear in the saved screen memo.
- ◆ When you save a screen such as the data acquisition, the data is saved along with the screen. However, the data acquisition screen for i-motion with set playback period cannot be saved as a screen memo.
- ◆ Other than the data acquisition screen itself, the URL for that page (up to 256 single-byte characters) can be saved.

Displaying a screen memo

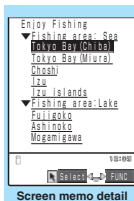
- 1  “Screen memo”

The “Screen memo list” screen appears.

Function menu  p.224

- 2 Select a screen memo number

The “Screen memo detail” screen appears.

Function menu  p.224

NOTE

- ◆ Information on a screen memo is the one stored and may differ from the latest one.
- ◆ If a saved page has no title, the page appears in the Screen memo list screen as “No title”.

Function menu (Screen memo list screen)

Edit title	▶ Edit a title You can enter up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects a screen memo. Protected memo title is marked with “  ”. The “  ” icon disappears when the protection is removed. Protected screen memos cannot be deleted.
No. of memos	Displays the numbers of stored and protected screen memos respectively.
Delete	Deletes screen memos.
• Delete this • Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox  (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple screen memos.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the registered screen memos.

NOTE

<Protect ON/OFF>

- ◆ Up to 50 screen memos can be protected. However, the number of screen memos storable varies depending on the data size.

<Edit title>

- ◆ If you delete the title, the screen memo is added as “No title”.

<Delete>

- ◆ Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them for deletion.

Function menu (Screen memo detail screen)

Save image	Saves an image or background image displayed in a screen memo. Select “Normal image” or “Background image”. “Downloading Images from Sites and Messages” → p.225
Add to phonebook	Add a phone number and e-mail address displayed on a screen memo to the phonebook. “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook” → p.111 “Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook” → p.112
Edit title	▶ Edit a title You can enter up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects a screen memo. Protected memo title is marked with “  ”. The “  ” icon disappears when the protection is removed. Protected screen memos cannot be deleted.

Scroll mode	Sets the scroll mode. → p.218
Compose message	Enables you to compose an i-mode mail or Deco-mail with a URL for a screen memo pasted into a message or with an image pasted/attached.
• Attach URL	Composes an i-mode mail with a URL in a screen memo pasted in a message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.247
• Attach image	▶ Select an image Composes an i-mode mail with a URL in a screen memo pasted in a message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.247
• Insert image	▶ Select an image Composes a Deco-mail with an image displayed in a screen memo pasted into a message. "Composing and Sending Deco-mail" → p.251
Save schedule	Stores a scheduled event by browsing a screen memo. "Adding schedule entries" → p.406
Refer dictionary	Uses a dictionary from a screen memo. "Using dictionaries from other functions" → p.417
URL	Displays the screen memo URL.
Certificate	Displays the SSL certificate details when the screen memo is from an SSL page.
Sound effect	Sets sound effects for Flash movies. Select "ON" or "OFF".
Retry	Replays the Flash movie or animation in a screen memo from the beginning.
Delete	Deletes the displayed screen memo.

NOTE

<URL>

- ◆ You cannot edit the displayed URL.

<Retry>

- ◆ Selecting this option during playback restarts playback from the beginning.

<Delete>

- ◆ Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them for deletion.

<Save image>

Downloading Images from Sites and Messages

If saving an image or animation attached to or displayed in an i-mode mail, MessageR/MessageF, screen memo or site, you can set the saved image on a screen such as the standby or wake-up display.

<Example: When saving an image displayed on a site page>

- 1 **Sites screen (p.216)/Message detail screen (p.234)** ▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Save image" ▶ "Normal image" ▶ **Select an image** ▶ "YES" ▶ **Select a folder number**

Position the frame  over the image to be saved.

■ **To display a background image**

- ▶ "Save image" ▶ "Background image"
- ▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder number

- 2 "YES" ▶ **Select an item**

■ **To not set the image for the standby screen, etc.**

- ▶ "NO"

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot save a JPEG image of which height or width exceeds 2,304 dots, JPEG image whose total number of dots exceeds 2,304 × 1,728 or GIF image of which size exceeds 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or height or width exceeds 2,304 dots.
- ◆ A progressive JPEG image* larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or whose width or height exceeds 640 dots cannot be stored.
* : Progressive JPEG is a format widely used for websites. The whole image is displayed as very low-quality and fuzzy, which becomes sharper as the lines fill in.
- ◆ You cannot save an image with a file size larger than 100K bytes.
- ◆ Up to 36 single-byte characters can be used in the file name of the saved image. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) in the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. However, if there is nothing between "/" and "." or in other cases, the file name is saved as "imagexxx" (xxx are numerals).
- ◆ An image cannot be saved if  is displayed.
- ◆ If you try to save an image during reception of a large image, a confirmation message appears saying that you cannot perform the operation while a large size of file is downloaded.
- ◆ A transparent GIF file that is not an animation GIF file and has the extension "ifm" is saved as a frame or stamp in one of the following sizes:
 - Frame that has an image size of CIF (352 × 288), CIF Vert. (288 × 352), QVGA (320 × 240), Screen (240 × 345, 345 × 240), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144), QCIF Vert. (144 × 176), Sub-QCIF (128 × 96), SubQCIF Vert. (96 × 128)
 - Stamp that is not a frame image and has a size of 240 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller

■ Important

- It is recommended to copy the stored images to the miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using the Data Link Software (p.475) and FOMA USB Cable (optional). (You cannot save images in the miniSD memory card or transfer them to PC if you are prohibited to attach them to mails or to output them from the FOMA terminal.)
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. Please note that NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for such loss.

<i-melody>

Downloading Melodies from Sites

You can set your favorite song, the latest hit song downloaded from a site or a stored melody attached to an i-mode mail as a ring tone on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 400 melodies can be stored (the number of melodies that can be stored depends on the amount of melody data stored).

<Example: Storing a melody downloaded from a site>

1 Sites screen (p.216) ▶ Select a melody

2 “Save” ▶ “YES” ▶

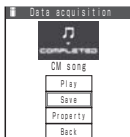
Select a folder

- To play a melody

▶ “Play”

- To display melody information

▶ “Property”



3 “YES” ▶ Select an item

- To not set the melody as a ring tone, etc.

▶ “NO”

NOTE

- ◆ You may not be able to download a melody depending on the site or melody size.
- ◆ A downloaded melody may be subject to restrictions such that only a pre-designated part of the melody can be played. While a melody of this type will be played in full when played back on a FOMA terminal, when it is set as a ring tone, only the designated section will be played.
- ◆ Some downloaded melodies may not be played correctly.
- ◆ When the file name of saved melody consists of only single-byte alphanumeric characters, the melody is saved using up to 36 single-byte characters of that file name. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) in the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. However, if there is nothing between “/” and “.” or in other cases, the file name is saved as “melodyxxx” (xxx are numerals).

- ◆ Downloaded melodies are played at the ring volume specified in “Phone” in “Ring volume”.

■ Important

- It is recommended to copy the stored melodies to the miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using the Data Link Software (p.475) and FOMA USB Cable (optional). (You cannot save melodies in the miniSD memory card or transfer them to PC if you are prohibited to attach them to mails or to output them from the FOMA terminal.)
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. Please note that NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for such loss.

Downloading PDF Documents from Sites

Use this procedure to download a PDF-format document from a website and display it on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 400 documents can be stored on the FOMA terminal (the number of documents that can be stored depends on the amount of document data stored).

1 Sites screen (p.216) ▶ Select a PDF document

When a document that requires download of all data is selected, the “PDF document” screen (p.388) appears after all the data is downloaded. When a PDF document that enables you to download the specified pages is selected, the first downloaded page appears. The subsequent pages are downloaded when you move to those pages.

Operation for viewing a PDF document → p.389

- To cancel download in the middle

▶ (Quit) or (CLR)

When the message asking whether to save the partly downloaded data appears, select “YES” to save it. In this case, you can download the remaining data later. → p.227

- If the password entry screen appears

Enter the password set to the document.

- To save the document

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Save” ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a folder

For a document that requires download of all data, all the pages are saved. For a document that enables you to download the specified pages, the downloaded data (pages) are saved. You can download the remaining pages later. → p.227

- To close the document

▶ (CLR)

When the document is not saved, the message asking whether to close the document appears. Select “YES” to close the document without saving it and “NO” to save it. To save the document, see “To save the document” above.

● Downloading remains of document that was downloaded partly

When you save the partly downloaded document, you can download the remaining pages (data) later. The ways of downloading vary depending on the status of downloaded document that can be checked with icons on the "PDF list" screen (p.388).

Icon	Description
 (Pale blue)/  (Pale blue)	All pages are downloaded (no additional download is required).
 (Pale blue)	Only a part has been downloaded by page. You can download the remaining data together or by specifying pages.
 (Pale blue)/  (Pale blue)	Only a part has been downloaded for some reason e.g. because the download was interrupted. To view the document, download all the remaining pages (some documents may not be viewable even if the download is finished successfully).

<For a document in which the specified pages have been downloaded ("PDF" (Pale blue))>

1 PDF list screen (p.388)▶Select a PDF document to view

The message informing that the document may be downloaded appears and then the "PDF document" screen (p.388) appears.

2 (Tool)▶Press on toolbar to display pages not downloaded

When you try to display pages not downloaded, you connect to the site to download the pages.
Operation for viewing a PDF document → p.389

■ To specify the pages you want to download

▶Select a page number indicated on toolbar▶Enter a page number you want to view

■ To download all the remaining data together

▶ (FUNC)▶"DL remaining data"▶"YES"

■ To save the document

▶ (FUNC)▶"Save"▶"YES"

The document including newly downloaded pages is saved.

<For a document in which only a part has been downloaded for reasons such as download interruption ("" (Pale blue), "" (Pale blue))>

1 PDF list screen (p.388)▶Select a PDF document to view

Before the document is displayed, the message asking whether to download all the remaining data appears.

2 "YES"

You connect to the site and downloading all the remaining data starts. After the downloading, the "PDF document" screen (p.388) appears. (Some document may not be viewed so that the document screen may not appear.)

You can also download all the remaining data by selecting "DL remaining data" → "YES" → "YES" from the function menu in the PDF list screen.

■ To save the document

▶ (FUNC)▶"Save"▶"YES"

After the save, the icon changes to "" (Pale blue) or "" (Pale blue).

NOTE

- ◆ It may take long to display a document.
- ◆ A document may not be properly displayed if it contains formats unsupported by PDF viewer or complicated designs.
- ◆ Note that the communication fee for downloading large amounts of data will be expensive.
- ◆ If you attempt to download a document larger than 500K bytes, a confirmation message asking whether to download the document appears.
- ◆ You cannot download a document if the file size is unknown or larger than 2M bytes.
- ◆ Depending on sites, you may not download a document.
- ◆ When a document that you try to download has the same definition file (information file for defining PDF) as a document stored in the FOMA terminal (not in miniSD memory card), they are recognized as the same document. Consequently the document will not be downloaded and the document in the FOMA terminal will be displayed.
- ◆ When you try to download a document with unsupported format, the download may not run and the screen showing only "" may appear. In this case, press  to return to the previous screen.
- ◆ Up to 36 single-byte characters can be saved for a file name of a document saved in Inbox or a user-created folder. If no file name is specified for the document, characters between the last "/" (slash) of URL and "." (period) are used for a file name. If no characters are between the last "/" and "." or in other cases, "pdfXXX" (XXX are numeric characters) is used for the file name. For file names of documents saved in the miniSD memory card, "PDFDCXXX.PDF" (XXX are numeric characters) is always used.

Downloading Chara-den Characters from Sites

You can download your favorite Chara-den cartoon characters from i-mode sites and save the characters on your FOMA terminal.

- You can save up to 10 Chara-den characters, including the pre-installed ones.
- If you delete a pre-installed Chara-den character on the FOMA terminal and you want to re-install it, download it from “みんなNらんど” (Only in Japanese) in “ケータイ電話メーカー” site.

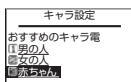
The QR code on the right is also available to access “みんなNらんど”.

Accessing “みんなNらんど” → p.216



1 Sites screen (p.216) ▶

Select a Chara-den character



2 “Save” ▶ “YES”

■ To play the Chara-den character

▶ “Play”

Controlling a Chara-den character → p.365

■ To view the Chara-den information

▶ “Property”



NOTE

- ◆ The maximum size of one Chara-den file you can download is 100K bytes.

Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® from Sites

Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® from sites to play

1 Sites screen (p.216) ▶ Select a Chaku-Uta-Full®

The “data acquisition” screen appears when the data download is completed.

■ To cancel download in the middle

▶ (Quit) or (CLR)

When the message asking whether to resume downloading appears, select “YES” to save it. Select “NO”, data download is interrupted and you can save a Chaku-Uta-Full® when the “data acquisition” screen is displayed.

2 “Play”

Plays the downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full®. → p.301

■ To display Chaku-Uta-Full® information

▶ “Property”



NOTE

- ◆ Some Chaku-Uta-Full® are restricted to be played. “” appears at the beginning of the title for the Chaku-Uta-Full® with restrictions on the play count, period or time limit. Chaku-Uta-Full® restricted on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period.

“Music information” → p.300

- ◆ You cannot download Chaku-Uta-Full® if the file size is unknown or larger than 5M bytes.

- ◆ Select “Add screen memo” from the data acquisition function menu (p.228) to save a Chaku-Uta-Full® as a “screen memo” (p.224), then play the Chaku-Uta-Full® from the screen memo.

However, you cannot save the data acquisition screen of the following Chaku-Uta-Full® types as screen memo:

- Chaku-Uta-Full® with playback restrictions
- Incomplete Chaku-Uta-Full®
- Chaku-Uta-Full® whose file size exceeds 500K bytes
- ◆ Chaku-Uta-Full® saved in screen memos are not listed in the Music folder of Data box. Therefore, you cannot create a playlist or ring tone function with these Chaku-Uta-Full®.

Saving Chaku-Uta-Full®

- You can save up to 200 Chaku-Uta-Full® songs (the number of songs that can be saved may be less depending on the data size of saved Chaku-Uta-Full®).

1 Data acquisition screen (p.228) ▶

“Save” ▶ “YES”

■ To cancel saving

▶ “NO”

Returns to the data acquisition screen without saving the Chaku-Uta-Full®.

2 Select the destination folder

You receive a message that the Chaku-Uta-Full® was saved.

■ Chaku-Uta-Full® which can be set as a ring tone

After Chaku-Uta-Full® is saved, a message appears asking whether to set it as a ring tone. Changing the ring tone → p.128

● Downloading remains of Chaku-Uta-Full® that was downloaded partly

If you select a partly-obtained Chaku-Uta-Full® from Music in Data box, a message appears asking whether to download the rest of the data. Select "YES" to connect to the site and download the rest of the data.

When the whole data is downloaded and saved, the partly-saved data is deleted.

- The data acquisition status can be checked with icons on the "Music list" screen. → p.299
- When the playback period or time limit of the partly-downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full® is expired, the rest of data cannot be downloaded. In addition to this, you can delete the partly-saved data when you execute a download operation.

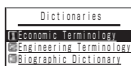
Downloading Data Files from Sites

You can enormously expand the range of uses for your FOMA terminal by downloading additional data files such as dictionaries, face stamps, Deco-mail template files from i-mode sites.

- Up to five dictionaries, up to 720 images including face stamps and Deco-mail pictures, and up to 45 Deco-mail templates including the pre-installed data can be stored (the number of data that can be stored depends on the amount of data stored).

<Example: Downloading a dictionary file from a site>

1 Sites screen (p.216)▶ Select a data file



2 "Save"▶"YES"

- To display dictionary information

▶"Property"

- When the memory for storing dictionaries is full

▶Select a dictionary to delete▶"YES"

New dictionary is stored by overwriting the selected dictionary.



NOTE

- ◆ The title used for a template is "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).
- ◆ You may not be able to download a data file depending on the site or file size.

<Phone To/Mail To/Web To functions>

Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions

These functions provide quick and simple procedures for making voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk calls, sending mails and viewing websites using information (phone numbers, e-mail addresses, URLs, etc.) displayed in a mail or on a site.

- You may not be able to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions with a mail sent from a PC.

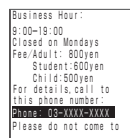
Phone To function

You can make a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call to a phone number displayed on a site, in the body of an e-mail message or document (PDF data).

- When used for videophone calls, this function is called the AV Phone To function.
- Not all sites support this function.
- You can enter up to 26 single-byte characters as a phone number.

<Example: Making a voice call to a number displayed on a site>

1 Sites screen (p.216)▶ Select a phone number



2 "Voice phone"

- To make a videophone call

▶"V.phone"

- To make a Push-to-Talk call

▶"PushTalk dial"

This operation is available only for one-to-one call.



3 "Dial"

- To withhold your caller ID when "Caller ID Notification" is set to "ON"

▶"Notify Caller ID"▶

"Don't notify"

- To provide your caller ID when "Caller ID Notification" is set to "OFF"

▶"Notify Caller ID"▶"Notify caller"

- To follow the setting of "Caller ID Notification"

▶"Notify Caller ID"▶"Cancel prefix"



NOTE

- ◆ You may be able to use the Phone To function with the item in which a phone number is not indicated but linked (e.g. "please contact here").
- ◆ You can use this function to make a call to the sender of a received mail or the receiver of a sent mail if the address is a phone number or in the "phone number@..." format.
- ◆ You cannot use the Phone To function in the full browser screen.

Mail To function

You can send a mail to a mail address displayed on a site, in the body of an e-mail message, document (PDF data) or the full browser screen.

- Not all sites support this function.
- You cannot use the Mail To function if you already have 20 draft mail messages.
- You may not be able to use the Mail To function when 2 or more e-mail addresses are displayed consecutively.
- Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered for the mail address.

<Example: Sending a mail from the received mail detail screen>

- 1 Received mail detail screen (p.268) ▶ Select a mail address



- 2 Compose an i-mode mail and send it
For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.247.

NOTE

- ◆ If an entered e-mail address is incorrect, correct the address before sending the mail.
- ◆ You may be able to use the Mail To function with the item in which a mail address is not indicated but linked (e.g. "please contact here").

Web To function

You can view the website of a URL displayed on a site, in the body of an e-mail message, document (PDF data) or the full browser screen.

- Not all sites support this function.
- You can enter up to 512 single-byte characters for a URL.

<Example: Displaying a webpage from the received mail detail screen>

- 1 Received mail detail screen (p.268) ▶ Select a URL ▶ "YES"



NOTE

- ◆ You may be able to use the Web To function with an item in which a URL is not indicated but linked (e.g. "for more information").

Making i-mode Settings

- 1 menu ▶ i-mode settings

The "i-mode settings" screen appears.

- 2 Select any item



Scroll (default: 1 line)	Sets the number of scrolling lines on a site page or the detail screen for screen memo or MessageR/MessageF.
Font size (default: Standard)	Sets the font size on a site page or the detail screen for screen memo or MessageR/MessageF.
Set image disp. (default: ON)	Sets the image display setting for a site page or the detail screen for screen memo. When "OFF" is set, " " icon appears instead of an image. Flash movies are not displayed.
i-motion setting	Specifies the settings for i-motion.
• Automatic replay	"Specifying whether to automatically play an i-motion" → p.239
• i-motion type	"Setting the i-motion type to download" → p.239
i-Channel setting	Sets the telop and its speed for i-channel. "Making the i-channel Settings" → p.324
Message auto-display (default: MessageR preferred)	Sets the automatic display mode for MessageR/MessageF.
Start attachment(auto) (default: ON)	Sets whether the attached/pasted melody automatically plays when opening a MessageR/MessageF.
Use phone information (default: YES)	"Specifying whether to use stored data in Flash movies" → p.232
Message list display (default: 2 lines)	Sets the number of lines on the message list screen.
Home URL	Sets whether to enable the home URL display. Up to 256 single-byte characters can be entered.

• Invalid (default)	Disables the home URL display.
• Valid	Enables the home URL display. Select the Home URL field and enter a URL to be stored.
Sound effect (default: ON)	Sets whether to play sound effects for Flash movies on a site or screen memo.
Check settings	Enables you to check the settings specified in "i-mode settings".
Reset last URL	Clears the stored last URL. The last URL reverts to the iMenu URL once cleared.
Reset	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Resets the settings specified in "i-mode settings" to the defaults.

NOTE**<Scroll>**

◆ When displaying the SSL certificate, you can scroll one line at a time even if this function is not set to "1 line".

<Set image disp.>

◆ Even if "ON" is selected, the images may not be downloaded. If so, " " is displayed.

<Sound effect>

◆ Even if "ON" is set, some Flash movies may not make any sound.

<Reset last URL>

◆ When you purchase the FOMA terminal, or after you reset the i-mode settings or last URL, selecting "Last URL" displays the iMenu screen.

Setting the connection timeout

<Set connection timeout>

Default setting
60 seconds

This option sets the delay after which a FOMA terminal automatically stops trying to connect when a site is busy and there is no response.

- 1 ▶ ▶ **"Connection setting"** ▶ **"Set connection timeout"** ▶ **Select an item**

Select "60 seconds", "90 seconds" or "Unlimited".

NOTE

◆ Even when you select "Unlimited", the connection may drop out due to poor signal reception.

Setting a host different from i-mode host (ISP connection)

<Host selection> **MENU81**

Default setting
i-mode

*** There is normally no need to change this setting.**

Use this procedure to select a different host for using a service other than i-mode. If you set a host other than i-mode, you can no longer use i-mode or i-mode mail.

- You can store up to 10 hosts besides "i-mode".

- 1 ▶ ▶ **"Connection setting"** ▶ **"Host selection"** ▶ **Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press (Edit)** ▶ **Enter your security code** ▶ **Select any item**

Host name	Sets a host name. You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters for a host name.
Host number	Sets a host number. You can enter up to 99 single-byte characters.
Host address	Sets a host address. You can enter up to 30 single-byte characters.
Host address2	Sets a host address 2. You can enter up to 30 single-byte characters.

- 2 Press (Finish) after changing the settings

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot change hosts while using i-mode. End i-mode before changing the host.
- ◆ Note that costs of packet communication while you are connected to a host other than i-mode are not covered by the "Pake-Houdai" deal.
- ◆ To change a stored "User defined host", use the procedure for storing the host.
- ◆ To delete a stored "User defined host", select a host you want to delete, select "Delete" from the function menu, enter the security code and select "YES". If the deleted host was set as the host to connect, it returns to "i-mode".
- ◆ If you use a different FOMA card (UIM) from that used when the host was stored, the host may revert to "i-mode".
- ◆ If you change a host to connect, the i-channel telop text is not displayed. When the information is automatically updated or you receive the latest information by pressing (ch), the telop text appears automatically.
- ◆ If you change a host to connect, the i-channel information may not be updated. To receive the latest information, press (ch) to display the channel list.

Specifying whether to use the stored data in Flash movies

<Use phone information>

Use this function to specify whether to use the stored data when running Flash movies.

- The stored data may be used depending on the Flash movie. To enable Flash movies to use the stored data, set "YES" to "Use phone information" in "i-mode settings". The default setting is "YES". Such movies may use the following types of stored data:

- Battery level
- Ring volume setting
- Signal strength
- Bilingual setting
- Date and time
- Model data
- Signal status

1 i-mode settings screen (p.230) ▶ "Use phone information" ▶ Select an item

Select "YES" or "NO".

<Receive message>

When you Receive a Message

When a FOMA terminal is in an i-mode service area, MessageR and MessageF are automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode Center.

- The FOMA terminal will save up to 100 received MessageR and MessageF respectively. The number that can actually be saved varies between 20 and 100 for MessageR and between 10 and 100 for MessageF depending on the amount of data in each saved message.

Viewing newly received messages

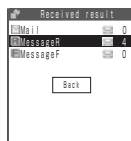
- To prevent the FOMA terminal from automatically displaying new messages when they arrive, select "OFF" in "Message auto-display" (p.230).

The "R" (white) or "F" (white) icon flashes and the "MessageR Receiving..." or "MessageF Receiving..." message appears.

- Once reception is finished, the icon stops flashing and remains displayed.
- To stop the reception while a message is being received, hold down (Quit) or (CLR) for 1 second or longer. However, a message may be downloaded depending on the timing of the cancellation.



- Once reception is finished, the numbers of each type of mail and MessageR/MessageF received are displayed on the reception results screen for roughly 15 seconds. The display time for the receive result screen depends on the "Mail/Msg. ring time" setting.
- To view the MessageR or MessageF list screen, select "MessageR" or "MessageF".
- If you receive a message while on the standby screen, the contents of the received MessageR or MessageF are displayed for roughly 15 seconds. However, if the standby screen appears while another function is being used, messages are not automatically displayed.
- While you perform an operation such as scrolling on the MessageR or MessageF screen, the message continues to be displayed.



■ When automatic display is disabled

The reception results screen appears when you receive a MessageR or MessageF while using a FOMA terminal.

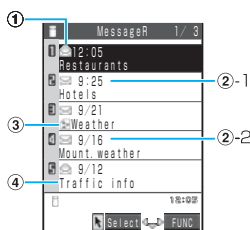
NOTE

- ◆ Automatic display for MessageR/MessageF can be selected in "Message auto-display". If you do not want to display messages automatically, select "OFF".
- ◆ When a new MessageR/MessageF arrives, the FOMA terminal receives the message together with other MessageR/MessageF or i-mode mail held at the i-mode center.
- ◆ Received MessageR/MessageF are not automatically displayed if the current screen is not the standby screen, the FOMA terminal is in Public mode (Driving mode), an i-appli program is running, Lock all is set, or PIM lock is set to mail.
- ◆ If you have already stored the maximum allowable number of MessageR/MessageF when you receive a new MessageR/MessageF, the oldest MessageR/MessageF that is neither unread nor protected is deleted before the new message is received.
- ◆ When the "R" (red) or "F" (red) icon appears, a FOMA terminal can receive no further MessageR/MessageF. To receive a new message, delete the unnecessary MessageR/MessageF or read the unread MessageR/MessageF until those icons no longer appear.
- ◆ When the "R" (white) or "F" (white) icon appears, there is a MessageR/MessageF held for you at the i-mode center. Use "Check new messages" to receive your MessageR/MessageF held at the center.
- ◆ When the "R" (red) or "F" (red) icon appears, the space for your MessageR/MessageF at the i-mode center is full. Delete the unnecessary MessageR/MessageF or read the unread MessageR/MessageF before checking for messages held at the center.

- ◆ After displayed automatically, messages are still marked as unread on the MessageR or MessageF list screen. However, if you perform an operation such as scrolling of screen while a message is being automatically displayed, the message is then marked as read on the MessageR or MessageF list screen.
- ◆ When you receive multiple items of i-mode mail, SMS, chat mail and MessageR/MessageF at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp flashing pattern that are set for chat mail.
- ◆ You can download the ToruCa (detail) from ToruCa attached to a MessageR/MessageF.

Guide to the MessageR/MessageF screen

- Some of the icons displayed on the MessageR and MessageF list screens are also shown on the MessageR and MessageF detail screens. Some icons are not displayed.



List screen (2-line display)



List screen (1-line display)



Detail screen

- ① Shows the MessageR/MessageF status.
 -  : Unread MessageR/MessageF
 -  : Read MessageR/MessageF
 -  : Unread and protected MessageR/MessageF
 -  : Read and protected MessageR/MessageF
 - ② Shows the message arrival time and date.
 - ②-1 The time is shown for MessageR/MessageF that arrived today.
 - ②-2 The date is shown for MessageR/MessageF that arrived yesterday or earlier.
 - ③ Shows any attached or pasted file.
 -  : Attached or pasted melody.
 -  : Multiple attached or pasted melodies, some of which are invalid.
 -  : All the attached or pasted melodies are invalid.
 -  : Attached image.
 -  : Multiple attached images, some of which are invalid.
 -  : All the attached images are invalid.
 -  : Multiple pasted files.
 -  : Attached ToruCa.
 -  : Multiple attached ToruCa, some of which are invalid.
 -  : All the attached ToruCa are invalid.
- The following icons appear when 1-line display is selected for a list screen:
-  : Attached or pasted file.
 -  : Multiple attached or pasted files, some of which are invalid.
 -  : All the attached or pasted files are invalid.

- ④ Shows the message subject.

<Check new messages>

Checking for Messages

Default setting	Check for all (mail, MessageR and MessageF)

- MessageR and MessageF delivered to the i-mode center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, in the following situations, your messages are held at the i-mode center:
 - The FOMA terminal is turned off
 -  appears
 - Message boxes are full
 - During a videophone call or remote observation
 - Self mode is set
 - During a Push-to-Talk call
 - The FOMA terminal is connected to the First-Pass center
- Use "Set check new messages" (p.281) to specify which items are checked for.

1 "Check new messages"

The check new messages screen appears.

The following procedures are also available to check new messages.

-  (i-mode) ▶ "Check new messages"
-  (MAIL) (1 second or longer)
-  (MAIL) ▶ "Check new messages"

The FOMA terminal checks for "Mail" → "MessageR" → "MessageF".

The  (white),  (white) and  (white) icons flash during checking, and the "Mail Checking..." message appears on the screen. The FOMA terminal then receives your i-mode mail and MessageR/MessageF.

The numbers of newly received i-mode mails, MessageR and MessageF are displayed.

■ To cancel the inquiry

- ▶ Hold down  (Quit) or  (for 1 second or longer) during the inquiry

Even if you cancel an inquiry, you may still receive the i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF depending on when cancelled.

2 Check the numbers of the newly received i-mode mails, MessageR and MessageF messages

NOTE

- ◆ When the  (white) or  (white) icon appears, there is a MessageR or MessageF held for you at the i-mode center. Once the space allotted at the i-mode center for holding your MessageR/MessageF is full, the  (red) or  (red) icon appears.

- ◆ The table below shows the maximum number of MessageR/MessageF that can be held at the i-mode center and the maximum storage period.

	Maximum number	Longest period
MessageR	300	72Hours
MessageF	300	72Hours

Once the maximum number of stored messages is reached, messages are deleted as a new message arrives, starting with the oldest one.

- ◆ Even if a MessageR or MessageF is stored at the i-mode center, the  (white) or  (white) may not appear if a FOMA terminal is turned off or  appears.

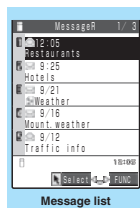
<MessageR/MessageF>

Viewing Messages in the Message Box

- When a FOMA terminal receives a MessageR/MessageF from the i-mode center,  (white) or  (white) icon appears at the top of the screen.

1 "Message" ▶ "MessageR" or "MessageF"

The "message list" screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.234

2 Select a message you want to read

The "message detail" screen appears.

To display the next or previous message on the message detail screen, use .

Press  on the message detail screen to return to the message list screen.



Function menu ▶ p.235

NOTE

- ◆ Keys such as "OK" and "Cancel" may appear in a MessageR/MessageF. The keys can be used in the same way as those on a site.

Function menu (message list screen)

Display all	Reverts a sorted or filtered display to the original (all items shown in reverse chronological order).
Sort	Sorts messages according to the specified criterion.
Filter	Displays only the messages that meet the specified criterion.

Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects MessageR/MessageF.
Unprotect all	Unprotects all the protected MessageR/MessageF.
No. of messages	Displays the number of stored MessageR/MessageF, unread messages and protected messages.
Delete	Deletes MessageR/MessageF.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted MessageR/MessageF.
• Delete selected	▶Use to select a checkbox ▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Deletes multiple MessageR/MessageF.
• Delete read	Deletes the read MessageR/MessageF.
• Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all the stored MessageR/MessageF.

NOTE**<Sort>**

- ◆The Sort display and Filter function can be used together.
- ◆Sort and Filter are released when you exit the MessageR/MessageF list screen.

<Filter>

- ◆To return to the original display, select “Display all”.
- ◆Sort and Filter are released when you exit the MessageR/MessageF list screen.

<Delete this>

- ◆You can also delete the unread MessageR/MessageF.
- ◆You cannot delete the protected MessageR/MessageF.

<Delete selected>

- ◆You can also delete the unread MessageR/MessageF.
- ◆You cannot delete the protected MessageR/MessageF.

<Delete read>

- ◆The protected and read MessageR/MessageF are not deleted.

<Delete all>

- ◆The unread MessageR/MessageF are also deleted.
- ◆The protected MessageR/MessageF are not deleted.
- ◆When only filtered MessageR/MessageF are displayed, selecting “Delete all” deletes all the unprotected MessageR/MessageF shown on the current list screen.

Function menu (message detail screen)

Add to phonebook	Adds the phone number and e-mail address displayed in MessageR/MessageF to the phonebook. “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook” → p.111 “Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook” → p.112
Save melody	Saves a melody attached to or pasted into MessageR/MessageF.
Save image	Saves an image attached to MessageR/MessageF. “Downloading Images from Sites and Messages” → p.225
Save ToruCa	Saves a ToruCa attached to MessageR/MessageF.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects MessageR/MessageF.
Delete	Deletes the MessageR/MessageF displayed on the message detail screen.

NOTE**<Save melody>**

- ◆Select an attached melody to play it.
- ◆When you save a pasted melody, it is saved under its title instead of the file name. If a melody has no title, its file name is appended.
- ◆Some saved melodies may not be played correctly.

<Save image>

- ◆All attached images are displayed regardless of the “Set image disp.” setting.

<Delete>

- ◆You cannot delete the protected MessageR/MessageF.

Using SSL Certificate

Use this procedure to check the details of an SSL certificate or to set it to valid/invalid.

- 1 ▶▶“Connection setting”▶“Certificate”
- 2 **Select a certificate▶**
Check the details
 - **To validate and invalidate an SSL certificate**
 - ▶Highlight a certificate▶ (FUNC)▶“Valid/Invalid”

NOTE

- ◆All certificates are set to “Valid” at the time of purchase.
- ◆The “” icon appears when you select “Valid”. The “” icon appears when you select “Invalid”.

Continued on next page

- ◆ If you select “Invalid”, you cannot view SSL pages with that SSL certificate.
- ◆ DoCoMo Cert 2 is always set to “Valid” and this setting cannot be changed.

Setting FirstPass

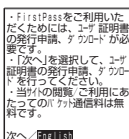
User certificates prove that the user is a bona-fide FOMA service subscriber. Downloaded user certificates are saved on your FOMA card (UIM) and enable you to access FirstPass compliant sites.

Connecting to the FirstPass Center

Use this procedure to request and download the user certificate.

- You can request a user certificate or download it from the FirstPass Center.
- User certificates cannot be used with a FOMA card (blue).
- Date and time must be set before connecting to the FirstPass Center. → p.46
- The screens and procedures used at the FirstPass Center are subject to change.

- 1 **“Client certificate”** ▶ Check the details ▶ **“English”**



- 2 **“Request your certificate”**

- If you are using FirstPass for the first time
Select “The usage regulation (Japanese only)” and carefully read the information provided.



- To apply invalidation
Select “Other settings” then “Revoke your certificate”.
Enter your PIN2 code and then proceed as directed by the on-screen instructions.

- 3 **Check the details** ▶ **“Continue”**

- 4 **Enter the PIN2 code**

PIN2 code → p.156

- 5 **Check the message**
▶ **“Download”** ▶
Check the details ▶
“Continue” ▶ **“Menu”**



The confirmation message appears.
The FirstPass menu screen reappears after the downloading is complete.

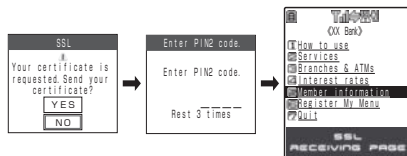
NOTE

- ◆ Packet communication charge for connection to the FirstPass Center is free.

- ◆ Before using the FirstPass Center, select “The usage regulation (in Japanese only)” and read the information.
- ◆ You cannot use the following functions while you are connected to the FirstPass Center.
 - Push-to-Talk calls
 - Sending or receiving i-mode mails (sending or receiving SMS is available)
 - Check new messages (Check new SMS is available)
 - Sending or receiving speed photo mails
 - Receiving MessageR/MessageF
 - Downloading i-motion
 - Web To function
- ◆ Always send a certificate request before downloading a new or updated user certificate. You cannot download a certificate without first requesting the certificate.
- ◆ Once an application for user certificate invalidation has been completed, you can no longer access FirstPass-compliant sites that require that user certificate.
- ◆ To use FirstPass after completion of invalidation, apply issue for the user certificate again and download it.
- ◆ To check a downloaded user certificate, see “Using SSL Certificate” (p.235).

Using a user certificate to connect to a site

- 1 **Sites screen (p.216)** ▶ Confirm the user certificate transmission ▶ **“YES”** ▶ Enter the PIN2 code



NOTE

- ◆ Packet communication charge for connection to FirstPass-compliant sites is covered by “Pake-Houdai” deal.
- ◆ FirstPass is also available in full browser. However, the packet communication charge for connecting to FirstPass-compliant sites is not covered by the “Pake-Houdai” deal.
- ◆ If you connect to a FirstPass-compliant site without a user certificate, or if your user certificate has expired, a message informing you of that fact is displayed. You may still connect to the site and view subsequent pages by selecting “YES”, but note that it may not be safe to send your personal information (credit card number, contact details, etc.) on the site. To disconnect, select “NO”. When the “SSL session was terminated” message appears, press ● to return to the original screen. Reconnect the site after downloading the user certificate from the FirstPass Center.

■ Notes on using FirstPass

- FirstPass is a DoCoMo's digital authentication service. FirstPass enables client authentication, where a site authenticates the FOMA terminal.
- FirstPass can be used either when a FOMA terminal is directly connected to the Internet or when it is connected via a PC. When the FOMA terminal is connected to the Internet via a PC, the FirstPass PC software provided on the "FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED 用CD-ROM" (CD-ROM for FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED) bundled with the FOMA terminal must be installed on the PC. For more information, refer to the "FirstPassManual" (PDF file) contained in the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder on the CD-ROM. (The "FirstPassManual" is in Japanese only.)
To view the "FirstPassManual" (PDF), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required.
If this software is not installed on your PC, install the Adobe Reader from the CD-ROM to read the document. For how to use it, see the Adobe Reader help.
- When requesting a user certificate, carefully read and agree to the "FirstPass usage regulations" shown on your screen before proceeding with your request.
- To use a user certificate, you need to enter your PIN2 code (p.156). Take great care to prevent unauthorized persons from using your FOMA card (UIM) or PIN2 code since all the actions performed subsequent to the PIN2 code entry will be assumed to have been performed by you.
- If your FOMA card (UIM) is lost or stolen, you can have your user certificates invalidated by calling "Inquiries" described on the back cover.
- NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for and accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the sites or the content provided by FirstPass-compliant sites. Any disputes are to be resolved between the customer and the FirstPass-compliant site.
- NTT DoCoMo and its authentication company provide no guarantee regarding security or secrecy in the use of FirstPass and SSL certificates. Such certificates are used entirely at the discretion of the user.

Changing the Certificate Host

Default setting
DoCoMo

* There is normally no need to change this setting.

Use this procedure to set the host for downloading the user certificate.

1   "Connection setting" ▶
"Certificate host"

2 Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press  (Edit) ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item

Default URL	Sets the URL of the initial screen for the host. You can enter up to 100 single-byte characters.
Host number	Sets a host number. You can enter up to 99 single-byte characters.

3 Press  (Finish) after changing the settings

NOTE

- ◆ To change a stored "User defined host", use the procedure for storing the host.
- ◆ To delete a stored "User defined host", select "Delete" from the function menu.

What is i-motion?

i-motion is a file containing video, voice and music data and downloaded from an i-motion site to your FOMA terminal. You can also set an i-motion as a ring tone.
Chaku-motion → p.128

● i-motion types

i-motion can be broadly divided into two types. The type of i-motion downloaded depends on the site or file type.

i-motion		Description
Type	Replay type	
Standard type (Can be saved)	Playable after downloaded (Up to 5M bytes)	Can be played after the whole data is downloaded.
	Playable during download (Up to 5M bytes)	Can be downloaded and played at the same time.

i-motion		Description
Type	Replay type	
Streaming type (Cannot be saved)	Playable during download (Up to 5M bytes)	Can be downloaded and played at the same time. The data is deleted after played. Cannot be played repeatedly or stored on the FOMA terminal.

* : Some i-motion programs cannot be saved.

NOTE

- ◆ The FOMA terminal can play i-motion in the MP4 format (Mobile MP4).
- ◆ The i-motion of ASF format cannot be downloaded.

<Download i-motion>

Downloading i-motion

Downloading i-motion from sites to play

- 1   ▶ “iMenu” ▶ “ENGLISH” ▶ “Menu List” ▶ Select a site

2 Select i-motion

The “data acquisition” screen appears when the data download is completed.

■ Standard-type i-motion

Use the “Automatic replay” setting in “i-motion setting” (p.239) to specify whether to play standard i-motion automatically during download. Some i-motion may be played after download.

■ Streaming-type i-motion

You cannot download streaming i-motion if “Standard type” is selected in “i-motion type”. When you receive a message “Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay”

- “Standard type” is selected in the “i-motion type” (p.239) in “i-motion setting”. Select “Site Settings” → “i-motion type” from the function menu, change the settings to “Std·Streaming type”, and then download the i-motion again.

When you receive a message “Replay streaming?”

- Selecting “YES” plays the i-motion. Selecting “NO” returns you to the site screen.
- To cancel playback in progress after selecting “YES”, press  (Quit).

■ To cancel download in the middle

▶  (Quit) or 

When the message asking whether to resume downloading appears, select “YES” to save it. Select “NO” to play or save (save a part) the downloaded part (some i-motion programs cannot be saved partly).

3 “Play”

Plays the downloaded i-motion.
“Operation during i-motion playback” → p.358



NOTE

- ◆ Untitled i-motion appears as “No title” on the data acquisition screen.
- ◆ Some sites and i-motion do not allow playback during download.
- ◆ Even if you stop playback of a standard-type i-motion program during download, the download continues.
- ◆ Even if “ON” is selected in “Automatic replay”, the data played during download is not automatically played after download.
- ◆ Some i-motion are restricted to be played. “⌚” appears at the beginning of the title for the i-motion with restrictions on the play count, period or time limit. i-motion restricted on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period. If the battery pack is removed from the FOMA terminal for a long period of time, the date and time settings stored on the FOMA terminal may be reset. In this case, i-motion restricted on the playback period or time limit cannot be played. “i-motion information” → p.358
- ◆ Some downloaded i-motion may not be played correctly.
- ◆ When you download and play standard-type i-motion at the same time (the first replay only), you cannot play fast, step or slow. When playing the streaming-type, press  (Quit) to stop playback.
- ◆ If data download is interrupted due to problems with signal reception or the downloaded data exceeds the maximum data size, a message saying that the data could not be downloaded and the data acquisition screen appear (some i-motion allows you to play or save (save a part) the downloaded part).
- ◆ The reception status may affect the replay or motion during download. After the data download is completed, you can play the standard-type i-motion repeatedly, but not the streaming-type.
- ◆ Select “Add screen memo” from the data acquisition function menu (p.238) to save an i-motion as a “screen memo” (p.224), then play the i-motion from the screen memo.
However, you cannot save the data acquisition screen of the following i-motion types of i-motion as screen memo:
 - i-motion with playback restrictions
 - Streaming-type i-motion
 - Incomplete i-motion
 - i-motion whose file size exceeds 500K bytes
- ◆ i-motion programs saved in screen memos are not listed in the i-motion folder of Data box. Therefore, you cannot use the playlist or Stand-by display function with these i-motion programs.

Saving i-motion

- Some i-motion programs may not be saved.
- Up to 100 i-motion programs can be saved, including movies shot by the camera. The maximum number of i-motion programs that can be saved varies between 3 and 100 depending on the amount of i-motion data.
- i-motion folder → p.342

1 Data acquisition screen (p.238) ▶ “Save” ▶ “YES”

■ To cancel saving

▶ “NO”

Returns to the data acquisition screen without saving the i-motion.

2 Select the destination folder

You receive a message that the i-motion was saved. i-motion partially retrieved cannot be set as a standby screen.

● Downloading remains of i-motion that was downloaded partly

If you select a partly-obtained i-motion from i-motion in Data box, a message appears asking whether to download the rest of the data. Select “YES” to connect to the site and download the rest of the data.

When the whole data is downloaded and saved, the partly-saved data is deleted.

- The data acquisition status can be checked with icons on the “Movie list” screen. → p.356

NOTE

- ◆ An i-motion without a title is listed as “movieXXX” (XXX are numeric characters).
- ◆ When the playback period or time limit of the partly-downloaded i-motion is expired, the rest of data cannot be downloaded. In addition to this, you can delete the partly-saved data when you execute a download operation.
- ◆ You can set an i-motion downloaded from a site to the standby screen. → p.139
Some i-motion programs cannot be set for the standby screen. i-motion partially retrieved cannot be set as a standby screen.
- ◆ For some i-motion, the “Movable contents” folder can be selected in the step 2. However, partly obtained i-motion cannot be saved in the “Movable contents” folder.
- ◆ You cannot use the Phone To, Mail To or Web To function from an i-motion set to the standby screen.

Viewing i-motion details

You can check the i-motion details, including the title, file size and replay restrictions.

1 Data acquisition screen (p.238) ▶ “Property”

The “i-motion info” screen appears. Use  to scroll the display up and down to check the details such as the remaining replay count, playback period and time limit.

After checking the information, press .

Setting i-motion

Specifying whether to automatically play an i-motion

<Automatic replay>

Default setting
ON

You can specify whether to automatically play an i-motion when:

- Downloading i-motion from a site
- Downloading i-motion from the received mail screen
- Displaying a screen memo of the data acquisition screen
- The “Automatic replay” setting is available only for standard-type i-motion. Streaming-type i-motion is automatically played regardless of the setting.

i-motion types → p.237

1 i-mode settings screen (p.230) ▶

“i-motion setting” ▶ “Automatic replay” ▶ Select any item

ON	Automatically plays the i-motion after downloading. Some i-motion are played during download.
OFF	Opens the data acquisition screen without automatically playing the i-motion after downloading.

Setting the i-motion type to download <i-motion type>

Default setting
Standard type

Use this procedure to set the type of i-motion you want to download from a site.

1 i-mode settings screen (p.230) ▶

“i-motion setting” ▶ “i-motion type” ▶ Select any item

Standard type	Downloads only standard-type i-motion.
Std · Streaming type	Downloads standard-type and streaming-type i-motion.

NOTE

- ◆ When you want to download a streaming-type i-motion, you need to select “Std · Streaming type” in “i-motion type”. If it is not selected and you try to download a streaming-type i-motion, you receive a message saying that you need to change the i-motion type and cannot download the streaming-type i-motion.

● Mail

What is i-mode Mail?	242
Displaying Mail Menu	Mail menu 246
■ Composing i-mode mail/Deco-mail	
Composing and Sending i-mode Mail	Compose message/Send 247
Composing and Sending Deco-mail	Deco-mail 251
Self-Decorating a Mail to Text	Auto Deco-mail 253
Using Templates to Create Deco-mail	254
Attaching Files	Attach Melody/Image/Movie/i-motion/ToruCa 255
Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later	Save i-mode mail 257
Storing Addresses in Mail Member	257
■ Receiving and handling i-mode mail	
When you Receive i-mode Mail	Auto receive mail 258
Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively	Receive option 260
Checking for i-mode Mail	Check new messages 261
Replying to i-mode Mail	Reply to mail 262
Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients	Forward mail 262
Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook	263
Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail	Save melody 263
Saving Images in Image Mail	Receive image mail 264
Playing and Saving i-motion from i-motion Mail	i-motion mail 264
Displaying/Saving ToruCa	Receiving ToruCa 264
■ Using mailboxes	
Displaying Mail in the Inbox and Outbox	Inbox/Outbox 264
■ Using mail records	
Using Mail Records	Sent address list/Received address list 278
■ Specifying mail settings	
Setting up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions	Mail settings 279
■ Using chat mail	
Composing and Sending Chat Mail	Compose chat/Send 283
Registering Chat Session Members in a Chat Group	286
■ Using SMS (Short Message)	
Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)	Compose SMS/Send 288
When you Receive an SMS (Short Message)	Receive SMS 289
Checking for SMS (Short Message)	Check SMS 290
Specifying SMS (Short Message) Settings	SMS settings 290
Saving SMS (Short Message) to your FOMA Card (UIM)	UIM operation 291

What is i-mode Mail?

The mail function provided on the FOMA terminal enables you to send and receive i-mode mail and SMS. Subscribing <i-mode> is required for using i-mode mail.

How to send and receive i-mode mail → pp.247, 258

- You can send and receive SMS (text) with other FOMA terminals without subscribing to i-mode.
- How to send and receive SMS → pp.288, 289

● i-mode mail

Subscribing to i-mode, as well as allowing you to exchange mail with other i-mode terminals (including mova terminals), also lets you send and receive e-mail messages via the Internet. Your mail address when you subscribe to i-mode is determined as described below.

■ For subscribing i-mode first time

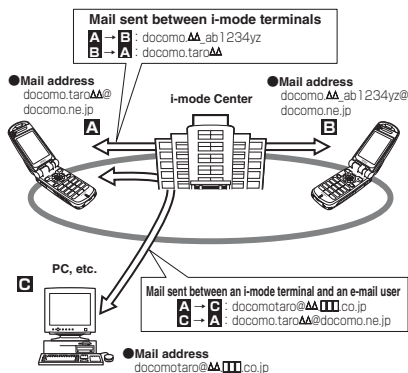
The part before the @ symbol in your e-mail address is randomly created using a combination of alphanumeric characters. You should check what your e-mail address is after you subscribe to the i-mode service.

Example: abc1234-789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

<To check your own e-mail address>

Menu screen▶ENGLISH▶Options▶Mail Settings▶“Confirm Mail Address”

- When mail is exchanged between i-mode terminals (including mova terminals), only the part before the “@” symbol in the e-mail address needs to be entered.
- To receive mail sent from a PC via e-mail, the full e-mail address, including “@docomo.ne.jp”, must be used.



- Sending i-mode mail → p.247
- Receiving i-mode mail → p.258

■ Receive option

You can check information such as the subject lines of mail held at the i-mode Center and then select the mail you want to receive or delete items of mail at the i-mode Center before receiving your mail. → p.260

■ Specifying mail settings

You can customize your mail settings as follows:

<Setting procedure>

Menu screen▶ENGLISH▶Options▶Mail Settings▶Each setting

- * For details, refer to the “i-mode User’s Manual” provided when you subscribed to i-mode.

■ Changing your mail address <Mail Address (Change Mail Address)>

For example, if your address is “docomo.taro_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp”, you can change the part that precedes the “@” symbol to your preferred name.

■ Confirming your mail address <Mail Address (Confirm Mail Address)>

This allows you to check your current mail address.

■ Secret code registration <Mail Address (Other Settings) ▶ Register a Secret Code>

When your phone number is used as your e-mail address, you can include your 4-digit secret code in the address. In that way, you can avoid receiving unwanted mail since only incoming mail that provides the secret code will be accepted.

■ Resetting your mail address <Mail Address (Other Settings) ▶ Reset Mail Address>

Use this feature to reset your mail address to “[your-phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp”.

■ Rejecting spam mail

You can restrict the mail you receive by using any of the following methods to specify your mail accept and mail reject settings:

① Reject/Receive Mail Settings <Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention)▶Reject/Receive Mail Settings>

- Allows you to accept only mail from specified service providers among DoCoMo, au, Vodafone, TU-KA and WILLCOM. Also accepts only mail from specified domains or addresses when the mail is not from one of the above providers. You can reject messages from addresses disguising mobile phone/PHS domains.

② SMS Rejection Settings <Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention)▶SMS Rejection Settings>

- You can restrict receiving SMS using one of the following four rejection settings: “Reject All SMS”, “Reject Anonymous SMS”, “Reject Intl. SMS” and “Reject Anonymous and Intl. SMS”. You can also check the setting status.

- ③ Reject mass i-mode mail senders <Receiving Mail (Other Settings)> Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders>
- This function gives you the choice of accepting or rejecting i-mode mail from an i-mode terminal (including mova terminal) once you have received 200 messages from that terminal in one day. The default setting is "Reject", so you do not have to change the setting to reject mail from large-volume i-mode mail senders.
- ④ Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail <Receiving Mail (Other Settings)> Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail>
- This feature lets you reject mail marked as "未承諾広告※" that is sent to you without your consent. The default setting is "Reject", so you do not have to change the setting to reject unsolicited advertising. Senders are legally required to include "未承諾広告※" (6 double-byte Japanese characters) at the beginning of the mail subject line.

■ Restricting mail size <Receiving Mail (Limit Mail Size)>

Using this option enables restriction to an incoming i-mode mail by size specified in advance.

■ Checking your settings <Receiving Mail (Confirm Settings)>

Use this option to check your current mail settings, including your mail accept/reject settings.

■ Stopping the mail functions <Suspend Mail>

Use this option to stop the mail functions at the i-mode Center when you are not using them.

■ Preventing nuisance mail

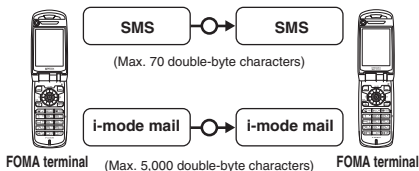
Effective ways of preventing nuisance mail include changing your mail address and using address-specific accept/reject.

● Your SMS (Short Message)

Your SMS address is your "subscriber mobile phone number".

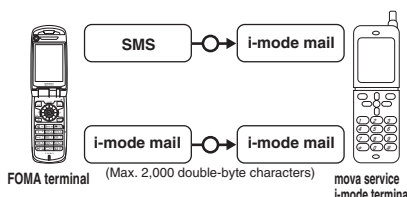
● Sending and receiving mail using the 3 mail functions

FOMA terminal-to-FOMA terminal



FOMA terminal-to-mova service i-mode terminal

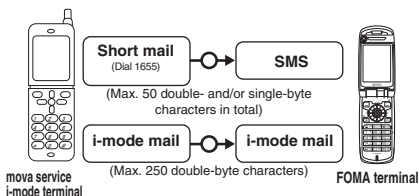
SMS from the FOMA terminal is received as an i-mode mail at the mova service i-mode terminal.



* If "ON" is selected in "SMS report request" (p.289), you cannot send SMS to the mova terminal.

mova service i-mode terminal-to-FOMA terminal

Short Mail* sent from a mova service i-mode terminal can be received on a FOMA terminal as SMS.



* : Short Mail is a text messaging service provided by DoCoMo for mobile phones.
 • On FOMA terminals, Short Mail sent from a mova service i-mode terminal is received as SMS.

● Numbers of characters that can be sent/received

The table below shows the maximum number of characters that you can send or receive using i-mode mail or SMS.

■ i-mode mail

Item	Double-byte characters (kanji, hiragana, pictographs, etc.)	Single-byte characters (alphabetic characters, numbers, katakana etc.)
Subject	15	30
Mail address	—	50
Message	5,000*	10,000*

- * : The number of characters in the message that you can send or receive decreases if a file (melody, image, i-motion or ToruCa) is attached to the message. Note also that the number characters that can be sent in Deco-mail is no more than half the numbers shown above.

■ SMS (Short Message)

The maximum number of characters vary depending on the SMS input character setting. "Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)" → p.288

Item	SMS input character "Japanese"	SMS input character "English"
Recipient	20 (numbers only) *1	
Message	Double-byte characters (kanji, hiragana, pictographs, etc.) or single-byte characters (alphabetic characters, numeric, katakana etc.) 70 *2	Single-byte characters (alphabetic characters and numeric) 160 *3

*1 : 21 characters if a single-byte "+" is included at the beginning.

*2 : 70 characters for both single- and double-byte

*3 : Entering symbols such as | ^ _ { } [] \ ~ @ decreases the number of sendable characters.

NOTE

- ◆ You can send and receive i-mode mail where the message body contains up to 5,000 double-byte characters (10,000 bytes), but the number of characters that can be sent and received is reduced depending on the amount of data in any attached files. You cannot send and receive attached files that are not supported by i-mode mail. Such attached files are automatically deleted in the i-mode Center and you receive only the message. When an attachment has been deleted in this way, the "添付ファイル削除" (Attached file delete) message is added to the corresponding i-mode mail message (The "添付ファイル削除" (Attached file delete) message is included the count of the number of characters that can be received).
- ◆ If the number of characters in the i-mode mail message body exceeds the maximum number of characters permitted, either "P" or "I" is inserted at the end of the message and the remaining portion is automatically deleted.
- ◆ When you send i-mode mail to a mova terminal, the message body can contain up to 2,000 double-byte characters. An i-shot or i-motion mail is sent as a message with URL to show the mail and other attached files are deleted.
- ◆ If the number of characters in the subject exceeds the maximum number of characters permitted, all characters that exceed the limit are automatically deleted.
- ◆ If you send an i-mode mail message with pictographs to other cellular phone service providers (i.e., au, Vodafone, and TU-KA), similar pictographs will be shown in the receiver's display automatically.
 - * There are some cases when the pictographs may not be correctly displayed depending on the receiver's model and function.
 - * If there are no corresponding pictographs on the side of the receiver, they will be converted into the symbol "■" or a more common character.

● If the FOMA terminal cannot receive mail

When mail is delivered to the i-mode Center, it is immediately sent to your FOMA terminal. However, if your FOMA terminal is turned off or you are outside the i-mode service area and cannot receive mail, or if you have selected "ON" in "Receive option setting" (p.279), the mail is stored at the i-mode Center. When keeping your mail at the i-mode Center, it is resent up to three times at regular intervals. Using other settings, you can select and receive your mail at the i-mode Center.

NOTE

<i-mode mail>

- ◆ The table below shows the maximum number of messages that can be held at the i-mode Center and the maximum storage period.

	Maximum number of messages	Maximum storage period
i-mode mail	207 to 1,000 (up to approx. 2 M bytes)	720 hours

- ◆ SMS left at the SMS Center for longer than the maximum storage period is automatically deleted.
- ◆ The limit on the number of messages that can be held differs depending on the mail file sizes. When the amount of held mail exceeds the limit, the i-mode Center no longer accepts incoming mail and any new mail is returned to the sender together with an error message. In this case, the "red" icon appears on the i-mode terminal. If you have selected "ON" in "Receive option setting" (p.279), the "red" icon may not appear on your i-mode terminal for excess of the limit.
- ◆ You can receive mail held at the i-mode Center to your FOMA terminal using "Check new messages" (p.261) or "Receive option" (p.260). When the new mail arrives on your FOMA terminal, other held mail and messages are also received at the same time.
- ◆ All the mail held at the i-mode Center is deleted once it has been received on your i-mode terminal. The received mails are stored on the i-mode terminal. → p.258
- ◆ Very large e-mail messages may not be accepted at the i-mode Center.
- ◆ If you use "Suspend Mail" function, new mail is not held at the i-mode Center.

<SMS>

- ◆ SMS are held at the SMS Center for a maximum of 72 hours. You can set the holding period for sent SMS using "SMS validity period" (pp.279, 289).
- ◆ SMS left at the SMS Center for longer than the maximum storage period is automatically deleted.
- ◆ You can receive SMS held at the SMS Center to your FOMA terminal using "Check new SMS" (p.290).
- ◆ SMS held at the SMS Center is deleted once it has been received on your FOMA terminal. The received SMS is stored on the FOMA terminal.

● Other useful features

■ Attachments

• Attached melodies

You can attach melodies that you have downloaded from i-mode sites or website to i-mode mail and then send and receive mail with the attached melodies. (Note that you cannot attach melodies when their use

as e-mail attachments or their transmission from the FOMA terminal is prohibited.)

- To send i-mode mail with melodies → p.255
- For receiving i-mode mail with melodies → p.263

■ Attached images

You can attach melodies that you have downloaded from i-mode sites or website to i-mode mail and then send and receive mail with the attached melodies. (Note that you cannot attach melodies when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission from the FOMA terminal is prohibited.)

- To send i-mode mail with images → p.255
- For receiving i-mode mail with images → p.264

■ Attached ToruCa

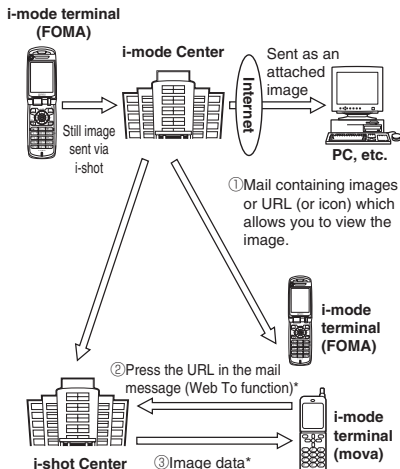
With attached to an i-mode mail, you can send or receive ToruCa which is downloaded from the websites or i-mode sites, or is acquired from the reader/writer unit for ToruCa or the external memory.

- To send i-mode mail with ToruCa → p.255

■ i-shot

You can use i-shot to exchange still images shot using a terminal with a camera function as attached files with i-mode terminals (including mova terminals), PCs or third-party mobile phones. A mail that includes the attached file format or the URL (or icon) to view the image and the storage expiration date of the image is sent to the recipient, and selecting the URL can download the image. The body of mail sent to a mova terminal can be up to 184 double-byte (369 bytes) long. If you attach multiple files, the attached files are deleted and only the message itself is sent.

- To send i-mode mail with images → p.255
- For receiving i-mode mail with images → p.264



* : If you receive a mail showing URL for the attached image

- Images are held for up to 10 days at the i-shot Center, after which they are automatically deleted.
- An i-mode terminal can send a still image up to 500K bytes. When an attached image of 20K bytes or larger is sent to an i-mode terminal, the recipient receives the image automatically compressed in size.

■ i-motion mail

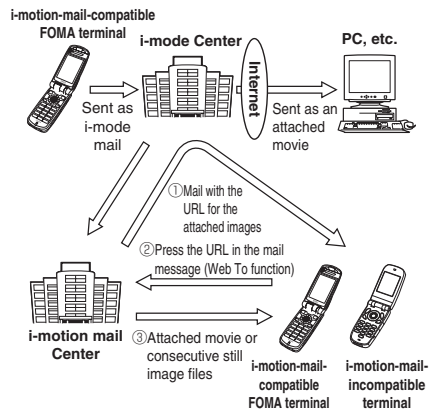
You can use i-motion mail to exchange movies you have shot or downloaded from i-mode sites with phones that support i-motion mail, PCs or third-party mobile phones. (Note that you cannot attach movie files when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission from the FOMA terminal is prohibited.)

- To send i-motion mail → p.255
- For receiving i-motion mail → p.264

■ How the service works

Movie files attached to i-mode mail are sent to the i-motion mail Center where they are saved. (If the mail is sent to a PC, the data is sent directly as an attached file.)

When i-motion mail is received by a phone that supports i-motion mail, the URL appears in the message body of the mail and the recipient can then download the movie by pressing the URL. If you send i-motion mail to a phone that does not support i-motion mail, the i-motion is converted into consecutive still images and the recipient receives a mail message containing the URL for the images. The recipient can then download the images by selecting the URL displayed in the mail.



- Movies are stored at the i-motion mail center for up to 10 days. If this storage period is exceeded, the images are automatically deleted.
- A terminal that supports i-motion mail can receive a movie up to 500K bytes. The size of downloaded movie is automatically changed to the one that matches the terminal that supports i-motion mail.

■ Deco-mail

The FOMA terminal enables you to compose and send your own distinctive personalized mail or attractively decorated mail by allowing you to vary the text size or change the background color, etc. when editing mail, or by pasting images into the message body. (If you receive Deco-mail from a PC, it may not run as it did on the PC because some decorative features are not supported on i-mode terminals.) If you send Deco-mail to a non-Deco-mail-supported-terminal, it is sent with URL showing the Deco-mail site. The recipient selects on the URL to view the Deco-mail.

- Composing and Sending Deco-mail → p.251
- Support model: Deco-mail-capable model is available. For more details, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.

■ Sending broadcast mail

This feature allows you to send the same i-mode mail message to multiple addresses (up to 5) at once. → p.249

■ Cc/Bcc sending and receiving

As on a PC, you can select “To”, “Cc” and/or “Bcc” as the recipient when editing i-mode mail. However, if there is no address in the “To” field, the mail cannot be sent.

- “Change rcv. type” in the function menu (New mail screen) → p.248

■ Chat mail

This allows you to exchange mail with several people just as if you were having a normal conversation.

NOTE

<Attachments>

- ◆ When “File restricted” is selected in “File restriction”, you can still send still images shot using the FOMA terminal’s built-in camera.
- ◆ If you send i-mode mail to a mova service i-mode terminal (excluding all the 501 models, R691i, and R209i), you can send only one JPEG-format image as an attachment.

<i-motion mail>

- ◆ If you send i-mode mail to an i-motion terminal, each browser URL for the i-motion stored at the i-motion Center can be accessed and the i-motion can be downloaded up to 50 times. Once it has been accessed and downloaded 50 times, the i-motion can be no longer downloaded any more.
- ◆ When “File restricted” is selected in “File restriction”, you can still send movies shot using the FOMA terminal’s built-in camera.
- ◆ To play an i-motion on a PC, you must have compatible software. See the DoCoMo website for details.

<Sending broadcast mail>

- ◆ The communication charges for broadcast mail are the same as if one message were sent to each recipient. However, you are charged for the data in the additional recipient addresses.

<Chat mail>

- ◆ Communication charges for chat mail with multiple recipients are the same as when broadcast mail is sent.

■ Important

- We recommend that you take memos of the contents of your received, sent, and saved mails, and store them on the miniSD memory card. If you have a PC, you can also save them on your PC by using the Data Link Software (p.475) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal may erase any recorded messages or memos. We take no responsibility in such an event so please take memos of the contents of your mail.

<Mail menu>

Displaying Mail Menu



Pressing  () in standby screen also displays Mail menu.

Inbox	Shows the Inbox folder list screen. Mail can be organized into different folders. Chat mail or mail from mail-connected i-appli is sorted into a dedicated folder. Open the respective folders to check the record and details of your received i-mode mail and SMS. → p.264
Outbox	Shows the Outbox folder list screen. Mail can be organized into different folders. Chat mail or mail from mail-connected i-appli is sorted into a dedicated folder. Open the respective folders to check the record and details of your sent i-mode mail and SMS. → p.264
Draft	Shows the Draft mail list screen. Use this to check the details of temporarily saved i-mode mail and SMS. → p.257
Compose message	Shows the screen used for composing i-mode mail. → p.247
Chat mail	Shows the chat screen. → p.284
Compose SMS	Shows the screen used for composing SMS. → p.288
Check new messages	Sends an inquiry to the i-mode Center and receives any i-mode mail held at the Center. → p.261
Receive option	Checks the subject of the i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center and then selects the i-mode mail to be received or deletes items of i-mode mail before it is received when “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”. → p.260
Check new SMS	Receives new SMS stored in the SMS center → p.290
Template	Shows the template screen. → p.255

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.371

Mail settings	"Setting up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions"→p.279

<Compose message/Send>

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

Use this procedure to compose and send a new i-mode mail message.

- You can change the size and color of the text used in the message body, assign actions to the text and insert images, lines and other decorative features. Deco-mail →p.251

1 "Compose message"

The "New mail" screen appears.

Pressing  on "Mail menu" also displays the "New mail" screen.



Function menu→p.248

2 "To" Select the address entry method

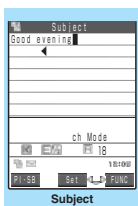
Phonebook	Enters an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.116
Sent address	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
Received address	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
Mail member	Enters e-mail addresses from a mailing list. "Entering mailing list member addresses" →p.249
Enter address	Enters the e-mail address directly.

3 "Subject"

The "Subject" screen appears.

4 Enter a subject

You can enter the subject up to 15 double-byte characters or 30 single-byte characters.



Function menu→p.249

5 "Message"

The "Message" screen appears.

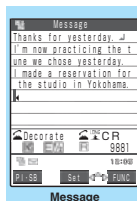
6 Enter message body

You can enter the message body up to 5,000 double-byte characters.

You can also insert a line feed while editing the message. A line feed is counted as 1 double-byte character and shown as "↵". Spaces are also counted in the same way as characters.

You can select the font size for the Message screen. →p.441

You can compose and send the Deco-mail. →p.251
You can use templates to compose and send the Deco-mail. →p.254



Function menu→p.249

Screen shown when you enter an i-mode mail message

The screen when you enter an i-mode mail message is shown below.

1 Mail message entry area

2 Text entry (editing) area



1 Mail message entry area: Shows the message that has been entered and confirmed so far.

2 Text entry (edit) screen: Shows the text to be entered, operation guidance and other information. This area shows the entered text before you confirm it. You can use the word prediction function to enter text in the text entry (editing) area. →p.443

7 Check the details

(Send)

An animation is displayed while then i-mode mail is being sent. Press  to return to the Mail menu screen.

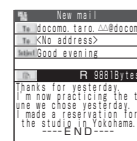
To interrupt transmission

▶  (Quit) or  (1 second or longer)

Depending on the timing, the i-mode mail may be sent.

For another transmission request

▶ "YES"



● Composing i-mode mail from the phonebook screen

Locate and display an e-mail address stored in the phonebook and then press



The currently displayed phonebook e-mail address is pasted into the address field in the new mail screen.



NOTE

- ◆ If the total number of sent mail items (including both i-mode mail and SMS) stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds 400 messages or the storage capacity for sent mail, sent mail is automatically replaced starting with the oldest message, except i-mode mails and SMS in the Secret folder are not deleted.
- ◆ When pictographs included in a subject or message are sent to a mobile phone of other company (au/Vodafone/Tu-Ka), they are automatically changed to similar pictographs supported by the receiver's mobile phone. However, pictographs may not be displayed correctly depending on the model or functions supported by a receiver's mobile phone.
- ◆ When the recipient address is a phone number and the number is preceded by the "184" or "186" prefix, a message appears when you try to send i-mode mail asking whether to delete the prefix before sending the mail. Select "YES" to send the i-mode mail without the "184" or "186" prefix. Selecting "NO" returns you to the previous screen.
- ◆ You cannot send i-mode mail to addresses that include a comma (,) or a space (blank).
- ◆ Depending on the signal quality, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly. Also, the "Transmission failed" message may appear even after the message has been sent.
- ◆ If you enter an address that was stored in the phonebook with a "Secret code" assigned (p.119), the secret code is automatically added to the address when the message is sent. However, the secret code is not saved in the record of sent mail addresses.

Function menu (New mail screen)

Send	Sends i-mode mail.
Preview	Allows you to check the mail address and content before sending a message. Selecting "Save" from the function menu when previewing is also available for saving a mail.
Save	Saves the i-mode mail message you are currently editing in the Draft mailbox. "Saving i-mode mail" → p.257
Delete receiver	Deletes an added address. When other addresses are entered after the deleted address, the addresses close up to fill the space. If there is only 1 address entered, you cannot delete the address.

Change rcv. type	Changes the receiver type with a receiver highlighted.
• To	The recipient's address. The mail address entered in the "To" field is displayed in other recipients' terminals.
• Cc	Broadcasts address. E-mails address entered in the Cc field are also displayed to the other recipients. Select this option to send copies of the message sent to the address in the To field to other addresses.
• Bcc	Broadcasts address. E-mails address entered in the Bcc field are not displayed to the other recipients.
Template	You can use templates to compose and send the Deco-mail. "Using Templates to Create Deco-mail" → p.254
Attach file	Attaches the image, i-motion, melody or ToruCa data to an i-mode mail message. "Attaching files" → p.255
Activate camera	Activates camera function. "Shooting Still Images" → p.187 "Shooting Movies" → p.194
• Photo mode	Starts up the camera function so you can shoot an image. The image sizes you can shoot are Stand-by (240 × 320) or SubQCIF (128 × 96).
• Movie mode	Starts up the camera function so you can shoot a movie. File size setting can be specified as Restricted (Short) or Restricted (Long). The image sizes you can shoot are QCIF (176 × 144) or SubQCIF (128 × 96).
Delete att. file	Deletes the highlighted attachment file.
Del all att. files	Deletes all the attachment files.
Add header	Pastes a header into the i-mode mail message.
Add signature	Pastes your signature into the i-mode mail message.
Erase message	Erases the message body in the current i-mode mail message.
Delete	Deletes the current i-mode mail message.

NOTE

<Change rcv. type>

- ◆ You can use To, Cc and Bcc to send an i-mode mail message to different addresses. Note that "To" must be filled in for sending it.
- ◆ E-mail addresses entered in the "To" and "Cc" fields are usually displayed to the recipient. However, some terminal devices or mailing applications may not show the address on the receiving side.

<Add header> <Add signature>

- ◆ If you select the "Insert" checkbox in "Header/Signature", the header or signature is automatically pasted into the new i-mode mail message. → p.280

Searching for an address in the phonebook

You can enter an address by searching for e-mail addresses in the phonebook.

1 New mail screen (p.247) ▶ “To” ▶ “Phonebook” ▶ Select the search method

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.116

2 Select a mail address in the phonebook entry detail screen

3 Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.247.

Adding addresses

You can enter additional addresses so that an i-mode mail message is sent to multiple addresses at the same time (broadcast mail).

- You can enter up to 5 addresses.

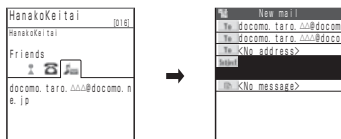
<Example: Looking up and adding addresses from the phonebook>

1 New mail screen (p.247) ▶ “To” with a blank address ▶ “Phonebook” ▶ Select the search method

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.116

2 Select a mail address in the phonebook entry detail screen

To add more mail addresses, repeat steps 1 and 2.



■ To change the entered recipient

- ▶ Select the address you want to change
- ▶ Select the address entry method

If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data, select “YES”.

3 Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.247.

Entering mailing list member addresses <Mail member>

Using Mail member allows you to add multiple addresses at once.

To use Mail member, you need to register the addresses of the mailing list members beforehand. → p.257

1 New mail screen (p.247) ▶ “To” ▶ “Mail member”

2 Select a mail member

The selected mail member is entered into the recipient column.



3 Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.247.

NOTE

- ◆ If addresses are already entered and you specify another address from a mail member, a message appears to confirm whether to overwrite them after selecting the search method. Select “YES” if you want to overwrite the entered addresses. Otherwise, select “NO”.

Function menu (Address/Subject screen)

- The same function menu of the “Text entry (edit)” screen → p.448

Function menu (Message screen)

- See the function menu of the “Text entry (edit)” screen (p.448) for the following items.

Decorate mail	“Decorating a message” → p.251
Select area	Decorating the area-selected characters or cut and paste is available. → p.252
Load template	Creates Deco-mail using templates. “Using Templates to Create Deco-mail” → p.254
Activate camera	Activates camera. → p.187
Property	Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message.
Undo	Returns the entered text or message decoration to its status in the previous step.
Preview	Displays the message preview.

NOTE

<Activate camera>

- ◆ The size of image that can be shot using the camera function is SubQCIF (128 × 96).

<Undo>

- ◆ After you press “Undo” and return the text or message decoration to its state one step ago, you cannot cancel “Undo”.
- ◆ On the message screen, if you press  to return to the new mail screen and then go back to the message screen, you cannot “Undo”. (If you select “Preview” on the message screen, after previewing the text, you are able to return.)

<Preview>

- ◆ When you have included a phone number, e-mail address, URL or a link to an i-oppli in an i-mode mail message, it is shown underlined in the preview screen. However, the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions cannot be used.

Sending the still image shot in talking <Speed photo mail>

This function allows you to take a picture while you are in the middle of a voice call and then send the picture to the other party.

- To use Speed photo mail, the phone number and e-mail address of the person you are talking to must be stored in the phonebook under the same memory number beforehand.

<Example: To send a picture taken as you speak>

1 In-call screen (p.50) (FUNC) “Speed photo mail” “Photo mode”

■ To send an image saved on the FOMA terminal

 “Speed photo mail”  “My picture”

Images that cannot be sent cannot be selected. You can only send “QCIF” or “SubQCIF” images that are 9,000 bytes or less in size when they are attached to mails.

2 or

The image is shot.

The FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound as it takes the picture.

You can use the camera functions to adjust the brightness or set the image size before taking the picture. → p.188

The “speed photo mail image” screen appears.



Function menu → p.251

■ To save and send the still image you shot

 Speed photo mail image function menu  “Save & send”

If you send the image without selecting “Save & send”, it is not saved in My picture.

3

A send confirmation message appears.

■ When multiple e-mail addresses are registered

-  Select the e-mail address of the intended recipient



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

NOTE

- ◆ This function cannot be used in the following situations:

- When the other party's phone number and e-mail address are not stored in the phonebook
- When the other party's phone number and e-mail address are stored in the phonebook in “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”
- When the called party has not provided a caller ID (User unset or Not support, etc.)
- During packet communication using a FOMA terminal as a modem in data communication
- When the Draft mailbox is full
- During call waiting
- When the call was made during software updating

- ◆ Mail sent using this function is stored in the Outbox with your phone number as the subject.

- ◆ Even if “Select size” is set to other than “QCIF (176 × 144)” or “SubQCIF (128 × 96)”, launching this function reverts the setting to “QCIF”.

- ◆ If you change the “Select size” while this function is running, only the “QCIF (176 × 144)” and “SubQCIF (128 × 96)” formats can be selected.

<Priority sequence for addresses highlighted in the send confirmation screen>

- ◆ If there are multiple e-mail addresses stored for the other party, the addresses shown in the send confirmation screen are highlighted in the following priority order:

- ① i-mode address (where the “@” symbol is followed by “docomo.ne.jp”)
- ② Phone numbers or addresses without domains (the domain is the part that follows the “@” symbol)
- ③ The first address stored in the phonebook

Speed photo mail image function menu

Save & send	Saves the photographed image in My picture and then sends it as speed photo mail. → p.250
Compose message	Sends the photographed image as speed photo mail without saving it.
Set as display	Saves and pastes the photographed image before sending it as speed photo mail. This is the same procedure as "Set as display" in the function menu (image checking screen). → p.189
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• File unrestricted (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• File restricted	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Cancel	Deletes the photographed image and returns to the Photo mode screen.

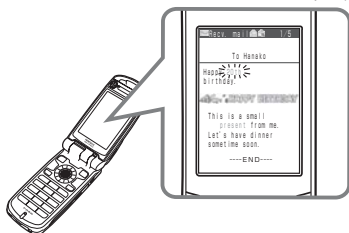
<Deco-mail>

Composing and Sending Deco-mail

The Deco-mail function allows you to make your i-mode mail (text mail) more visually appealing and exciting by changing the size and color of the text, changing the background color, assigning actions to text, and inserting lines or images into your message.

- To create a Deco-mail, you can either select the decoration and then enter the message body, or you can enter the message body first and then decorate the mail.

Deco-mail display
(Displayed in the received mail detail screen after the reception)



NOTE

- If you forward received Deco-mail or quote Deco-mail in a reply, inserted images and decorations appear as quoted in the message.
- If you use "Reply with quote" or "Forward" with Deco-mail that includes an image that cannot be sent as mail, the image is deleted.

Composing a Deco-mail message

- The Deco-mail pictures are saved in the "Deco-mail-picture" folder in "My picture".
- Decomail-picture preinstalled at default → p.459
- If you decorate the message in Deco-mail, you can enter fewer characters than in the text mail.
- The decoration affects the number of characters available for entering characters and decorating.
- You can preview the decoration by selecting "Preview" from the function menu on the message screen.

<Example: Changing the font size>

1 Inputting the address and subject on the "New mail" screen (p.247)▶



The "Message" screen appears.

2 Enter message body▶ (FUNC)▶ "Decorate mail"

The decoration menu appears.

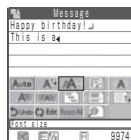
Pressing (F) also displays the decoration menu on the message screen while in composing the new i-mode mail.

3 "A"▶

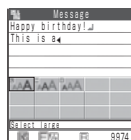
■ To decorate the text already entered

- ▶ "Edit"▶ Use (F) to select a start point of the text to be decorated▶ Use (F) to select the end of the text to be decorate▶ "A"▶ Select size

The size of letters in the specified area is changed.



4 Select size



5 Enter text to be decorated

Press (Exit) or (CLR) to end the decoration menu.



Decorating a message

1 Message screen (p.247)▶ (FUNC)▶ "Decorate mail"▶ Select any item

Auto	"Self-Decorating a Mail to Text" → p.253
A	▶ Use (F) to select a color▶ Enter message body Selects the color of the entered text or lines from the color palette. The palette switches between 25 colors and 256 colors every time (Change) is pressed.

	▶Select any item▶Enter message body Selects the size of the entered text.
	Sets large text.
	Sets standard-size text. Sets standard-size text.
	Sets small text.
	Selects the image to be inserted from the images saved in My picture. → p.344
	▶[A]Begin▶Enter text to be blinked Makes the entered text blink.
	Sets the point at which blinking starts.
	Sets the point at which blinking ends.
	▶[A]Begin▶Enter text to be displayed as ticker Scrolls the entered text horizontally (displays as tickers).
	Sets the point at which the ticker starts.
	Sets the point at which the ticker ends.
	▶[A]Begin▶Enter text to be swung Swings the entered text horizontally (swinging text).
	Sets the point at which swinging starts.
	Sets the point at which swinging ends.
	▶Select any item▶Enter message body Selects the position of the entered text. If the line length at the text entry position is too short to hold all the text, the setting is changed to however many lines are needed to accommodate the text.
	Sets left-justified text.
	Sets centered text.
	Sets right-justified text.
	Inserts a line.
	▶Use [Color Wheel] to select a color Selects the background color from the color palette. The palette switches between 25 colors and 256 colors every time [Change] (Change) is pressed.
	Returns the entered text or message decoration to its status in the previous step. (You cannot use this operation after ending the message input screen.)
	"Changing the decorations" → p.252
	Deletes all the decorations.
	Previews the entered text and decoration in sending image

NOTE

- ◆ 5 colors last selected from the 256-color pallet appear in the lowest row of the 25-color pallet.
- ◆ If you change the background color setting, the cursor color also changes in accordance with the selected colors.
- ◆ Pictographs are also displayed in the specified color. To return them to their original color, select "[Edit]", specify the extent to be changed and then select "[Reset]".
- ◆ If you enter a character in the area you want to decorate, the character is decorated as well.
- ◆ You can insert JPEG images or GIF images such that the total size of the message and the image does not exceed 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters).
- ◆ If you insert multiple copies of the same image, they are handled as 1 image. However, if you save or send an image once and then edit and insert it again, it is handled as a separate image.
- ◆ If you copy and paste an image that has already been inserted in the edit screen, it is also regarded as the same image and the original and copied images are handled as a single image.
- ◆ When inserting an animation to Deco-mail, you can see its action during a preview until a certain time has elapsed to stop operation.
- ◆ If you make the text blink, set ticker or swing, those actions are shown during a preview until a certain time has elapsed to stop operation.
- ◆ If you select "Add header" or "Add signature" on the compose message screen to paste a non-decorative text-only header or signature, the pasted header or signature takes over the decorative size and color attributes of the message text at the beginning or end of the message, respectively.
- ◆ Some background colors may overlap with the color of URL text to download image or i-motion and hence the URL text may be unreadable.
- ◆ Even if you delete the decorated text, the decoration data itself is retained and reduces the number of characters that can be entered. You should remove the decorations and then delete the text. Also, if you delete all texts by holding down [Delete] for 1 second or longer, all data including the decoration is deleted.
- ◆ If a mail is exchanged with PC or other devices other than an i-mode compatible terminal that supports Deco-mail, decorations may not be displayed correctly.
- ◆ If a Deco-mail is sent to a non-Deco-mail-supported-terminal, it is held for up to 10 days at the i-mode Center. The message can be viewed in i-mode using the Web To function during those days.

Changing the decorations

- 1 Message screen (p.247) ▶ [FUNC] (FUNC)
 - ▶ "Decorate mail" ▶ "[Edit]" ▶ Use [Color Wheel] to select the start ▶ Use [Color Wheel] to select the end ▶ Select any item

■ To change the decoration after specifying the area

- ▶ Message screen (p.247) ▶ [FUNC] (FUNC) ▶ "Select area" ▶ Use [Color Wheel] to select the start ▶ Use [Color Wheel] to select the end ▶ "Decorate mail" ▶ Select any item

	▶ Use  to select a color Selects the color of the text or lines to be changed from the color palette. The palette switches between 25 colors and 256 colors every time  (Change) is pressed.
	Changes the font size in the specified range.
	Changes to large text.
	Changes to standard-size text.
	Changes to small text.
	Changes or cancels blinking for the text in the specified area.
	Changes the blink setting.
	Cancels blink.
	Changes or cancels ticker for the text in the specified area.
	Changes the ticker setting.
	Cancels ticker.
	Changes or releases swinging for the text in the specified area.
	Changes swinging.
	Cancels swinging.
	Changes the position of the text in the specified area.
	Changes to left-justified text.
	Changes to centered text.
	Changes to right-justified text.
	Returns the entered text or message decoration to its status in the previous step. (You cannot use this operation after ending the message entry screen.)
	Cancels blinking.
	Previews the entered text and decoration in sending image

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot change the inserted images or lines. If you do, delete the images or lines in the message entry screen and try to insert them.
- ◆ To change the specified background color, select "Decorate mail" from the message input function menu and choose  (Change background color).

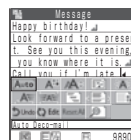
<Auto Deco-mail>

Self-Decorating a Mail to Text

Your FOMA terminal recognizes emotion expressed on the message you enter, and chooses the best suited decoration to your message in self-decorating. The entire message is displayed in the background color standing for the message emotion, as well as decorated with the font color, font size and tickers which are suited for the sentences.

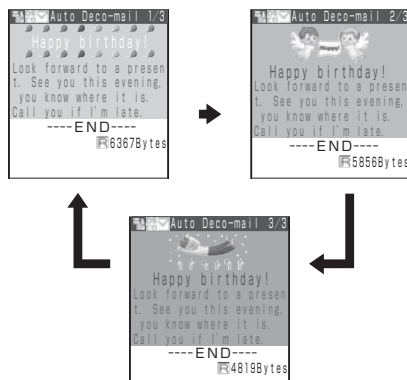
- 1 **Message screen (p.247)▶  (FUNC)**
▶ "Decorate mail"

- 2 "Auto"



- 3 Press  (Next) to select a decoration pattern

Three decoration patterns are available.

**NOTE**

- ◆ You cannot use the auto Deco-mail in the following case:
 - When ten files are attached
 - When 5,000 bytes or less remains in total of the attached files and messages
 - When a message alone has a 1,000-byte capacity or more
- ◆ If an invalid termination occurs during preview of the decoration patterns for auto Deco-mail, the mail data including the decoration patterns are stored.
- ◆ Immediately after returning to the message screen from the auto Deco-mail screen, selecting "Undo" is not available on the function menu.
- ◆ When running the auto Deco-mail to the message already decorated, the message appears to say "All decorations of mail will be released OK?".

- The following emotions are recognized and classified by priority.

Priority	Classification by emotion
1	Hurry
2	Love/Dislike/Happy/Angry/Sad/Fun/Surprise
3	Question/Advice/Cheer up/Join/Remark/Please/Information/OK
4	Reply/Notice

- The auto Deco-mail provides the following decoration pattern:
 - Background color
 - Font color/font size (big or small)
 - Word alignment (Center)
 - Ticker/swing/blink
 - Insert image (animation GIF or still image)
- The best picture, which matches the contents of the message, is automatically selected from "Auto Decomail-picture". Depending on the contents, the picture displayed may not be the one you imagined.
Auto Decomail-picture preinstalled at default
→p.461

Using Templates to Create Deco-mail

You can create Deco-mail by using preinstalled templates at default. A template is a form for Deco-mail to which the layout and the ornament were already set. By using a template, Deco-mail can be created and transmitted easily.

- Preinstalled templates at default → p.462
- You can download templates from sites.
"Downloading Data Files from Sites" → p.229
- You can edit a template on the template preview screen. → p.255
- The decoration information is already included in the templates. Consequently, the number characters that can be entered may be fewer than for text mail.
- When you try to use a template in the following situations, a message appears asking whether to delete the edited content in the message:
 - When there is already text entered in the mail message
 - When the header or signature is automatically inserted
 - When there is an attached file

1 New mail screen (p.247) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Template" ▶ "Load template" ▶ Select a template

■ To display a preview of the template

▶ Highlight the template ▶ (Play)

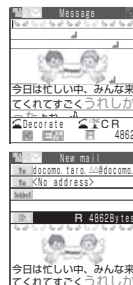
- The template is shown in the preview.
→ p.255
- During preview, use ⏮ to display other templates.
- If the template will not fit into the screen, use ⏮ to scroll the screen.
- During preview, you can select the template by pressing ⏹.

■ To load the template from the message screen

▶ Message screen (p.247) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Load template" ▶ Select a template

2 Edit the message

After you have applied the template, you can still edit the message. You can use "Decorate mail" (p.251) to add arrangement of decorative features.



3

This confirms the edited i-mode mail message and returns to the new mail screen.

4 (Send)

Saving a template

This function allows you to save the Deco-mail you are composing as a template.

- You can save up to 45 templates.
- If the message has any attachments other than inserted images, those attachments are deleted.
- Text mail cannot be saved as a template.
- Templates are saved in "Template" in the Mail menu.
- You can save a template from the menu function of the received mail detail screen (p.276) or sent mail detail screen (p.277).

1 New mail screen (p.247) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Template" ▶ "Save template" ▶ "YES"

NOTE

- ◆ The subject of the message being composed is used as the template title. If no subject is entered, "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" is used as the title (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).

Viewing the templates list

1 "Template"

The "Template" screen appears.



Function menu→p.255

Function menu (Template screen)

Compose message	Creates Deco-mail using templates. "Using Templates to Create Deco-mail"→p.254
Sort	Sorts the templates according to the specified criteria.
Edit title	▶ Enter a title You can enter the title up to 15 double-byte or 30 single-byte characters.
Info	Displays the template size, save date and whether or not it includes images.
No. of messages	Shows the number of saved templates.
Delete	Deletes templates.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted template.
• Delete selected	▶Use to select a checkbox ▶ (Finish)▶"YES" Deletes multiple templates.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶"YES" Deletes all the saved templates.

NOTE

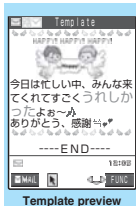
<Compose message>

- ◆ If you attempt to use "Header/Signature" to automatically paste the header or signature, the header or signature is not pasted.

Previewing a template

1 Template screen (p.255)▶Select a template

The "Template preview" screen appears.



Function menu→p.255

Function menu (Template preview screen)

Compose message	Creates Deco-mail using templates. "Using Templates to Create Deco-mail"→p.254
Edit	Edits the template.
Save insert image	▶ Select an image ▶"YES"▶ Select a folder ■ If the image can be set as a screen such as standby ▶"YES"▶ Select an item Saves the images inserted in the template. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.

NOTE

<Compose message>

- ◆ If you attempt to use "Header/Signature" to automatically paste the header or signature, the header or signature is not pasted.

<Edit>

- ◆ The title used when the template is saved as a separate file is "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).
- ◆ If the template contains no decorations at all after editing, it cannot be saved.

<Attach Melody/Image/Movie/i-motion/ToruCa>

Attaching Files

1 New mail screen (p.247)▶ (FUNC)▶"Attach file"▶Select any item

Attach image	▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image Attaches an image.
Attach i-motion	▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-motion Select i-motion
Attach melody	▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a melody Attaches melody.
Attach ToruCa	▶ Select a folder ▶ Select ToruCa Attaches the ToruCa.

■ To switch the image list screen

- ▶On the image list screen▶ (FUNC)▶"Title name"

The Picture list screen changes to the Titles list screen. You cannot select images that cannot be attached to mail.

To return to the Picture list screen, select "Picture" from the function menu.

■ To display an image

- ▶Use to highlight the image to be displayed▶ (Play)

Images that cannot be sent as attachments are not displayed.

To return to the list screen, press .

■ To play a melody

▶ Highlight a melody you want to play ▶

(Play)

Melodies that cannot be attached cannot be selected.

To stop melody playback, press any one of (), (), (), (), (HOME), (MEMO/CHECK).

If the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a message appears asking whether to play the melody. Select "YES" to play the melody.

■ To View ToruCa

▶ Highlight ToruCa you want to view ▶

(Play)

You cannot select the ToruCa (detail) that is not attachable.

The ToruCa (detail) is transferred as ToruCa without detail information.

To return to the list screen, press ().

■ To send an image as an i-shot mail to the mova service i-mode terminal

You can send an image-attached mail as an i-shot mail to the mova service i-mode terminal. If you send an i-shot mail to the mova service i-mode terminal, you can attach only one JPEG image. If you attach multiple files or attach a GIF-format image downloaded from an i-mode site or website, all the attached files are deleted and only the message reaches the recipient.

To send mails to the mova service i-mode terminal, a message that the other party can receive is up to 184 double-byte characters long (369 bytes) when the number of the received characters is not set on the other side. When the number of the received characters is set on the other side, a message that the other party can receive is up to 2,000 double-byte characters long including i-shot URL (where the image is stored).

■ To re-size and change the file size of an image attached to a mail

If the file size of an image stored in the Inbox, Camera or User-created folder exceeds 500K bytes, select "Size for mail" from the image list function menu. → p.346

■ To re-size an i-motion attached to a mail

To attach an i-motion larger than 500K bytes to a mail, select "Trim for mail" from the video edit function menu, and cut the file into sections less than 500K bytes. → p.363

NOTE

- ◆ The table below shows the files that can be attached to i-mode mail.

File type	Max. files attached to 1 mail
Melody	Up to 10 files and 10,000 bytes (5,000 double-byte characters worth) including melodies, images and ToruCa. The maximum number of files may vary depending on the file sizes. *: You may be unable to attach ToruCa downloaded from a site or acquired via i-rppli, etc., depending on the data size.
Image ^{*1}	
ToruCa	
Large image ^{*2}	Either a large image or movie/i-motion can be attached.*
Movie/i-motion ^{*3} (i-motion mail)	*: Some i-motion programs cannot be attached.

^{*1} : Still image shot using the built-in camera or a JPEG or GIF format image of 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters) or less that was downloaded from a site.

^{*2} : JPEG format image larger than 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters) but no larger than 500K bytes (256,000 double-byte characters). Note that the size is changed at the i-shot Center to the one suitable for being received at an i-mode terminal before being sent to the recipient. You cannot attach a GIF image that exceeds 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters).

^{*3} : Movie or i-motion of up to 500K bytes (equivalent to 256,000 double-byte characters)

- ◆ If an image selected for "Attach image" is more than the QVGA (320 dots wide × 240 dots high) or Stand-by (240 dots wide × 320 dots high), "Attach image" comes out and you can select any one from "Attach mail", "QVGA scale down" or "QVGA trim away".
- ◆ If the amount of data remaining for the message (including attached files) is less than 200 bytes for i-mode mail (equivalent to 100 double-byte) or less than 400 bytes for Deco-mail (equivalent to 200 double-byte), you cannot attach a large image, movie or i-motion.
- ◆ When you attach a large still image, movie or i-motion to i-mode mail, the number of characters that can be entered decreases by 200 bytes for i-mode mail (equivalent to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters) or 400 bytes for Deco-mail (equivalent to 200 double-byte or 400 single-byte characters).
- ◆ When you send an i-motion mail, a mail with a URL for viewing an i-motion is sent and you can view an i-motion.
- ◆ Depending on the recipient's mobile phone model, the sent image may be displayed incorrectly or may not be displayed. A coarse image may also be displayed.
- ◆ When you send an i-motion mail, depending upon the phone model of the recipient, movies may be choppy and may be converted to continuous still images for viewing.
- ◆ You cannot attach movies or melodies stored on a miniSD memory card. Copy those data to the FOMA terminal (Phone) first and attach them. → p.378
- ◆ You can send still images shot on the built-in camera as attachments to an i-mode terminal, PC or third-party mobile phone. However, when attached images are sent to a mova service i-mode terminal, they are sent as an image browser URL with an automatically assigned storage period. The mova service user can then retrieve the image by selecting the URL. The message body sent to a mova service i-mode terminal can be up to 184 double-byte (369 bytes) long (for "250 double-byte characters" on the received character count of the mova service i-mode terminal). If you attach multiple files, the attached files are deleted and only the message itself is sent.
- ◆ Attached melodies or GIF images cannot be received by a mova service i-mode terminal.
- ◆ You cannot attach a file if it is forbidden to send that file as a mail attachment or output it from the FOMA terminal.
- ◆ You can attach the still images or movies shot using the built-in camera even if "File restriction" is set to "File restricted".
- ◆ If the recipient is not using a FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED, melodies you send may not be playable.
- ◆ A recipient cannot receive ToruCa without ToruCa-supported-terminal.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.371

<Save i-mode mail>

Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later

If you have to break off while composing i-mode mail, you can temporarily save the unfinished message on your FOMA terminal. This feature also enables you to edit and resend a message that you have saved.

Saving i-mode mail

The unfinished message is stored in the Draft mailbox.

- The Draft mailbox will hold up to 20 i-mode mail and SMS in all.
- Once there are 20 message stored in the Draft mailbox, you cannot compose any more new i-mode mail messages.

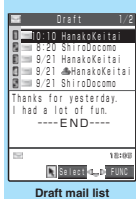
1 New mail screen (p.247) (FUNC) ▶ “Save”

If there are no characters in the address, subject, or message body, the mail cannot be saved. Note that if there is an attached file, the mail can be saved even when no text is entered.

Sending draft i-mode mail

1 “Draft” The “Draft mail list” screen appears.

2 Select a mail ▶ Edit the address, subject or message body and then send the mail



Function menu▶p.257

Function menu (Draft mail list screen)

List setting	Selects a mail-list format from “Subject”, “Name” or “Address”.
Send Ir data	“Sending on data at a time via infrared data exchange”→p.385
Send all Ir data	Sends all mails in Draft using Infrared data exchange. “Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time”→p.386

Copy to miniSD	Copies the mails in Draft to the miniSD memory card.
• Copy this	Copies the highlighted mail.
• Copy selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox () ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES” Copies multiple mails.
• Copy all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Copies all mails stored in Draft.
No. of messages	Shows the number of mails in Draft.
Delete	Deletes Draft mail.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted mail.
• Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox () ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple mails.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all mails in Draft.

MENU97

Storing Addresses in Mail Member

Default setting
Not stored

Store two or more addresses to a mail member in the FOMA terminal, and you can simply enter several addresses with the mail member specified.

- Up to 20 mail members (5 addresses for each) can be stored.

1 “Mail member” The “mail member list” screen appears.



Function menu▶p.258

2 Select a mail member The “mail member detail” screen appears.

3 Highlight “<Not stored>” and press (Edit) ▶ Enter the e-mail address

Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered for the mail address.

To add another mail address, repeat step 3.



Function menu▶p.258

- To look-up and enter the mail address
 <Example: Look-up and enter the phonebook address>
 ▶ Select "<Not recorded>"▶ "Phonebook"▶
 Select a look-up item
 Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.116

Function menu (Mail member list screen)

Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the mail member pasted to the address field. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.247
Edit member name	▶ Enter a name Edits the name. You can enter the title up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Reset member name	Restores Name to default.

Function menu (Mail member detail screen)

Edit address	▶ Enter an address Edits the e-mail address. Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered.
Look-up address	■ When no addresses are recorded ▶ Select any item ■ When the address is recorded ▶ "YES"▶ Select any item Enters a mail address by looking-up the phonebook or history.
• Phonebook	Enters mail addresses from a phonebook detail list screen. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.116
• Sent address	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
• Received address	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted address.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code▶ "YES" Delete all members in the selected mail member.

<Auto receive mail>

When you Receive i-mode Mail

If the FOMA terminal is in service area, i-mode mail is automatically sent from the i-mode center.

- Inbox can contain up to 1,000 messages* (i-mode mail and SMS in total).
 * : Secret folder in Inbox can contain up to 100 messages separately.
- You can receive i-mode mail on your FOMA terminal which sent from the mova service i-mode terminal.

1 When you receive an i-mode mail, " (white)" icon blinks and "Mail Receiving..." is displayed

After receiving is completed, the number of messages appears for the received messages, MessageR and MessageF.

When "Mail" is selected, the received mail list screen appears.

No operation for about 15 seconds returns to the previous screen. The display time for the receive result screen depends on the "Mail/Msg. ring time" setting.

The ring tone volume for the mail conforms to the setting of "Mail" under "Ring volume".



■ When the i-shot service mail is received

When you receive the i-shot service mail sent from the mova service i-mode terminal, an image file is received as an attachment.

■ When a mail with a large size of image file is received

If you automatically retrieve a large size of the image file exceeding 10,000 bytes, " (red)" is displayed and the received image is stored in "My picture". If not, display the mail detail screen and select " (red)", then a large size of the image file is retrieved and stored in "My picture".

NOTE

- ◆ " (white)" icon blinks when the mail reception is in progress. When reception is completed, this icon lights up.
- ◆ When the " (red)" or " (red)" icon appears, the FOMA terminal can receive no further i-mode mail. To receive a new message, delete some unnecessary mails or read the unread mails until those icons no longer appear. Mails or messages are overwritten starting with the oldest one as a new mail or message is received.

◆ If the total number of received i-mode mail messages (both i-mode and SMS) stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds 1,000 or the storage limit even if the number of messages does not reach 1,000, received mail is automatically replaced starting with the mail in the trash box and the oldest message. Note that the following mails are not deleted: unread mails, received mails in protected or i-mode mails and SMS in the Secret folders. You should protect any important received mail that you want to keep. → p.274

◆ If you select "ON" in "Receive option setting" (p.279) and set your FOMA terminal not to automatically receive i-mode mail, mail sent to you is stored at the i-mode Center (the standby screen shows the message saying mails at the i-mode Center and the "New" icon appear). In this situation, you can use "Check new messages" (p.261) to receive all the i-mode mails held at the i-mode Center, or use "Receive option" to check the subject lines of the i-mode mails held at the i-mode Center and then choose the mail to be downloaded. → p.260

◆ Very large e-mail messages may not be accepted at the i-mode Center.

◆ You can use "Attached file" (p.279) to specify whether you will accept melodies or images attached to your mail.

◆ When i-mode mail is received in the FOMA terminal, i-mode mail is deleted stored in the i-mode center.

◆ You can send or receive the i-mode mails, melodies, images or ToruCa as attachment. Unsupported attachments are automatically deleted at the i-mode Center. When an attachment has been deleted in this way, the "添付ファイル削除" (Attached file delete) message is added to the corresponding i-mode mail message.

◆ When new i-mode mail is delivered, you also receive any other i-mode mail or MessageR/MessageF stored on the i-mode Center.

◆ If you receive i-mode mail from a phone on which specifying To, Cc and Bcc is available, you can confirm which address type you receive that is To, Cc, Bcc in the mail detail screen. → p.268

◆ You can set a limit in advance on the sizes of the i-mode mail you receive. → p.243

◆ When you receive multiple items of i-mode mail, SMS, chat mail and MessageR/MessageF at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp flashing pattern that are set for chat mail.

<When a mail with a large size of image file is received>

◆ When you select "New" while in active service at other function, a message may appear saying that you cannot retrieve a large size of the image file. Quit the active function before retrieving the image.

◆ If you select "New" before finishing data edited in the other function, the message appears and prompts you to discard the editing data. Choose "YES", and the editing data is discarded and the image is loaded. If "NO", it stops loading the image. No editing data proceeds to load the image.

<Priority sequence for ring tone and incoming call lamp operations>

◆ Priority is assigned as follows for ring tone and illumination when you receive i-mode mail.

- ① "Discern connect" specified for each e-mail address → p.122
- ② "Discern group" specified for each group → p.122
- ③ "Select ring tone" → p.128, "Illumination" → p.147

Displaying the new i-mode mail

◆ Set "3D display setting" to "ON" and select the desktop icon of a new mail, and an icon expressing the emotion that matches the message body and photographs in the subject are displayed as animations.

1 On the standby screen



Highlighting the "New" (white) icon displays the unread mail list. The function menu of the unread mail list screen is the same as that of the received mail list screen (p.273).



NOTE

- ◆ Characters that cannot be displayed appear as spaces.
- ◆ If the number of characters in the i-mode mail message body exceeds the maximum number of characters permitted, either "/" or "//" is inserted at the end of the message and the remaining portion is automatically deleted.
- ◆ If the size of mail to be sent to you exceeds the value set in "Limit Mail Size" in "Options", the file or data that is attached or pasted in the mail is deleted in the i-mode Center so that you cannot download it.
- ◆ The FOMA terminal may sometimes be unable to correctly display images attached to i-mode mail. Images larger than 240 dots wide are shown reduced.
- ◆ Some background colors may overlap with the color of URL text to download image or i-motion and hence the URL text may be unreadable.
- ◆ If you receive decorated mail (HTML mail) from a PC, the decorations may not be displayed correctly.
- ◆ You may not be able to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions included in a mail message received from a PC.

● Emotion-expressing mail

An icon pops up and shows the emotion matching the contents of the received mail.

You can also find the icon in the received mails containing the keywords specified in advance.

- The following are the icons for the emotion-expressing mail:

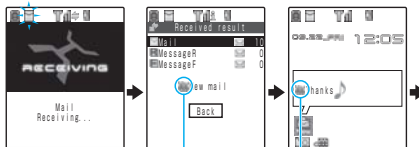
Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning
	Hurry		Advice		OK
	Love		Cheer up		Reply
	Dislike		Question		Information
	Happy		Join		Angry
	Remark		Sad		Please
	Fun		notice		Icon unsupported*
	Surprise				

* : "Icon unsupported" icon is displayed for the following mails:

- Mail forwarded by Infrared data exchange or cable connection
- Mail copied from miniSD memory card
- SMS copied or moved from FOMA card (UIM)
- SMS in FOMA card (UIM)
- You can specify whether to display icons in "Emotion/Keyword notice". → p.283
- The followings are "Disp keyword" icons that appear when you receive a mail that includes the specified keyword.
You can specify the settings of "Disp keyword" in "Emotion/Keyword notice". → p.283



- If the received mail includes the contents for the icons of emotion-expressing mails or keywords, the following priority will be applied.
 - ① Disp keyword 1
 - ② Disp keyword 2
 - ③ Disp keyword 3
 - ④ Emotion
- Using the filter function allows you to list only mails containing the emotion-expressing icons specified. → p.273
- For the received i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS, the icons are displayed as follows. They are also displayed on the image display. → p.30



Emotion-expressing mail icon



Emotion-expressing mail icon

NOTE

- ◆ Depending on the received i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS, the wrong icons may be displayed misunderstanding the contents.
- ◆ The icons for an emotion-expressing mail does not appear on MessageR/MessageF.
- ◆ The reception date and time, subject and up to 1,000 bytes (500 double-byte characters) from the beginning in the message are searched for determining an appropriate emotion-expressing mail icon and the subject and all the message texts are searched for "Disp keyword" icon.
- ◆ When you receive two mails or more at the same time, only the icon for the latest mail is displayed on the reception results screen and as a popup on desktop.

<Receive option>

Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively

You can check information such as the subject lines of mail held at the i-mode Center and then select the mail you want to receive or delete items of mail at the i-mode Center before receiving your mail.

- To use this function, you must first select "ON" in "Receive option setting" (p.279). Note that you cannot automatically receive i-mode mail if you set this function to "ON".

When mail arrives

When the i-mode Center notifies you of mail reception, your FOMA terminal shows the message saying mails at the i-mode Center and the "📧" icon is displayed rather than "📧 (white)" or "📧 (white)".

Receiving mail selectively

- If you used this function to show the receive option screen, the "📧" icon disappears even when you do not receive or delete mail.
The "📧" icon also disappears if you turn the FOMA terminal off or display the mail screen.

1 “Receive option”

- If “Receive option setting” is set to “OFF”
A message appears asking whether you want to enable mail receive options. Select “Receive option setting” to specify the “Receive option” setting. When you set the receive option to “ON”, the Mail menu screen reappears.

2 Select and set an option for each item of i-mode mail

“受信” (Accept): Accepts the selected mail.

“削除” (Delete): Deletes the selected mail.

“保留” (Hold): Leaves the selected mail at the i-mode Center.

Use “Check new messages” (p.261) to receive the mail.

■ To delete all mails

- ▶ “削除” (Delete) at the bottom of the page
- ▶ “決定” (Set)

■ When there are multiple pages of mail

- ▶ “前ページ” (Previous page) or “次ページ” (Next page) ▶ Move to other pages and select the mail to be accepted

When you view the 2nd page, your selections on the 1st page remain valid.
The meanings of the icons displayed after “サイズ”(Size):XXXバイト(bytes)” are as follows:

	Image file attached.
	Melody file attached.
	Attaches an i-motion.
	Attaches the ToruCa.

3 “受信／削除” (Receive/Delete) ▶ “決定” (Set)

The completion screen appears and mail reception begins.

■ To cancel selective reception

- ▶ “キャンセル” (Cancel)

■ When there are multiple pages of mail

Selecting “受信／削除” (Receive/Delete) midway through the pages applies your options (hold, accept or delete) to the mail up to the selected page and mail on the remaining pages remains held at the i-mode Center.

NOTE

- ◆ You can also access “Receive option” as follows (only Japanese mode available):

-  (i-mode) ▶ “iMenu” ▶ “メニューリスト” (Menu List) ▶ “メール選択受信” (Receive option)

- ◆ If you manually check for a new message, all messages will be received even if the “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”. Deselect “Mail” in “Set check new messages” (p.281) if you do not want to receive any mail.

<Check new messages>

Checking for i-mode Mail

Default setting

Check for all (mail, MessageR and MessageF)

- i-mode delivered to the i-mode center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, in the following situations, your messages are held at the i-mode center:
 - The FOMA terminal is turned off.
 - When  is displayed
 - When the Inbox is full
 - When “Receive option setting” (p.279) is set to “ON”
 - During a videophone call or remote observation
 - Self mode is set
 - Push-to-Talk call in progress
 - The FOMA terminal is connected to the First-Pass center
- Use “Set check new messages” (p.281) to specify which items are checked for.

1 “Check new messages”

The check new messages screen appears.

The following procedures are also available to check new messages.

-  ▶ “Check new messages”
-  (1 second or longer)
-  ▶ “Check new messages”

The FOMA terminal checks for “Mail” → “MessageR” → “MessageF”.

The  (white),  (white) and  (white) icons flash during checking, and the “Checking...” message appears on the screen. The FOMA terminal then receives your i-mode mail and MessageR/MessageF.

■ To cancel the inquiry

- ▶ Hold down  (Quit) or  (for 1 second or longer) during the inquiry

Even if you cancel an inquiry, you may still receive the i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF depending on when cancelled.

2 Check the numbers of the newly received i-mode mails, MessageR and MessageF messages

NOTE

- ◆ Depending on the signal status, you may not check new message or interrupt your checking.
- ◆ When the  (white) icon appears, i-mode mail is held at the i-mode Center. Once i-mode mail is full on storage at the i-mode Center, the icon is changed to  (red”).



- ◆ Even when there is i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center, the  (white) icon may not be displayed if the mail arrived at the Center while the FOMA terminal is turned off or the  is displayed.
- ◆ This function is not available for receiving SMS. Use "Check new SMS" to receive SMS.

<Reply to mail>

Replying to i-mode Mail

Use this procedure to send a reply to an i-mode mail message. To return the mail, there are two manners: inputting the new message or quoting the received i-mode mail.

- A reply has "Re:" automatically inserted into the front of the subject. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 double-byte characters (including "Re:"), the part that exceeds this limit is deleted.

Replying by composing a new message

- 1 Received mail list screen (p.267) or Received mail detail screen (p.268)
▶  (Reply) ▶ Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.247.

■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

▶ "Reply" ▶ "To sender"

To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses, select "Reply" and then "To all".

If replies cannot be sent to the sender, all the addresses, including the other broadcast addresses, are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

If the list of broadcast addresses includes some to which replies cannot be sent, only those addresses to which replies cannot be sent are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the  icon changes to .

NOTE

- ◆ The  icon is displayed for senders to whom you cannot reply (e.g. senders with e-mail addresses longer than 50 single-byte characters).
- ◆ When you reply to i-mode mail that has "Re:" (all single-byte characters) already included in the subject line, "Re2:" is inserted into the reply's i-mode mail subject line instead of "Re:". Similarly, if "Re2:" is included, "Re3:" is inserted in the reply, and "Re4:" if "Re3:" is included and so on up to "Re99:". If the "Re:" in the original mail includes double-byte characters or an upper case "E" ("RE:"), this is discarded and replaced by "Re:" in your reply.
- ◆ You cannot reply to an i-shot mail sent from the address "photo-server@docomo-camera.ne.jp".

Replying by quoting the received message

Use this procedure to quote the received i-mode mail in your reply.

- Attached files of i-mode mail or Deco-mail you quote are deleted.

- 1 Received mail detail screen (p.268)
▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Reply with quote" ▶ Edit the subject and message body and send it

■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

▶ "Reply with quote" ▶ "To sender"

To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses, select "Reply with quote" and then "To all".

The message in the received i-mode mail is quoted in the body of the reply.

A quotation mark (set to ">" by default) is displayed at the start of the quoted message in the reply. Quotation marks are not placed at every beginning of lines.

To edit the quotation symbol → p.280

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.247.

After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the  icon changes to .

NOTE

- ◆ If files attached or pasted into an i-mode or Deco-mail message to quote are not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal, those files or contents are deleted.
- ◆ If i-mode message contains data such as melodies or i-appli start modules, you cannot reply message with quoting the pasted data.

<Forward mail>

Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients

Use this procedure to forward the received i-mode mail to other people.

- Forwarded mail has "Fw:" added in the subject line of i-mode mail. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 double-byte characters (including "Fw:"), the part that exceeds this limit is deleted.

- 1 Received mail detail screen (p.268) ▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Forward" ▶ "To" ▶ Select the address entry method

For detailed information on entering addresses → p.249

You can edit the subject and message body. You can forward i-mode mail consisting of up to 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters) including the received message body and any additional messages, headers, signatures and attached melodies or images.

2 (Send)

After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the  icon changes to .

NOTE

- ◆ When you reply to i-mode mail that has "Fw:" (all single-byte characters) already included in the subject line, "Fw2:" is inserted into the reply's i-mode mail subject line instead of "Fw:". Similarly, if "Fw2:" is included, "Fw3:" is inserted in the forwarded mail, and "Fw4:" if "Fw3:" is included and so on up to "Fw99:". If the "Fw:" in the original mail includes double-byte characters or an upper case "W" ("FW:"), this is discarded and replaced by "Fw:" in the forwarded mail.
- ◆ If files attached or pasted into an i-mode or Deco-mail message to forward are not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal, those files or contents are deleted.
- ◆ Images are not attached when you forward an i-mode mail without retrieving the large size of a still picture after you receive it.
- ◆ If i-mode message contains data such as melodies or i-oppli start modules, you cannot forward message with quoting the pasted data.
- ◆ If you transfer the received mail containing URL for referencing the Deco-mail in the message, the person who receives the transferred mail cannot view the Deco-mail through the URL selection and the Web To functions. Moreover, it is not available to input the URL directly and view the Deco-mail.

Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook

Use this procedure to add the e-mail address or phone number of the sender of received mail to your phonebook.

<Example: Adding the sender's e-mail address to the phonebook>

1 Received mail detail screen (p.268)

▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Save address"

■ When there are multiple e-mail addresses to be added

▶ On the e-mail address selection screen, select the e-mail address you want to add

■ To add the e-mail address or phone number of a recipient specified in a sent i-mode mail

▶ Sent mail detail screen (p.268) ▶

 (FUNC) ▶ "Save address"

If the i-mode mail was sent to multiple addresses, select the e-mail address to be added from the displayed list of e-mail addresses.

■ To add an e-mail address or phone number included in the body of sent or received i-mode mail

▶ "Sent mail detail screen" or "Received mail detail screen" ▶ Highlight an e-mail address or phone number you want to add ▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Add to phonebook"

2 "YES" ▶ "Phone" ▶ "New"



The add new phonebook entry screen appears with the entered information displayed. Enter the required items and store the entry.

"Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → p.111

"Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" → p.112

■ To add information to the UIM phonebook

▶ "YES" ▶ "UIM"

When you add information to the UIM phonebook, "Overwrite" is displayed as the storage method instead of "Add".

<Save melody>

Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail

Use this procedure to save a melody ( or ) attached to or pasted into received i-mode mail on your FOMA terminal.

- You cannot play a melody during a call.
- If the sender is not using a FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED, melodies you receive may not be playable.
- Select the melody beforehand.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.268)

▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Save data" ▶ "YES" ▶

Select a folder

■ To stop the melody

▶ ,  to , , , ,

 (ASSIST)

Pressing  (ASSIST) reads out the mail message after stopping the melody.

■ To prevent melodies from playing automatically when you open a mail

▶ Set "Start attachment (auto)" (p.279) to "OFF"

2 "YES" ▶ Select an item

■ To not set the melody as a ring tone, etc.

▶ "NO"

NOTE

- ◆ If there are multiple pasted files, you may not be able to view the pasted files themselves.

<Receive image mail>

Saving Images in Image Mail

This function enables you to save images () (10,000 bytes max.) inserted or attached to received i-mode mail.

Saving inserted images → p.276

1 Select the image to be saved in “Received mail detail screen” (p.268)

■ To change from image display to file name display

▶ Select the image

To return to image display again, select the file name.

2 (FUNC) ▶ “Save data” ▶ “YES”

▶ Select a folder

3 “YES” ▶ Select an item

■ To not set the image for the standby screen, etc.

▶ “NO”

NOTE

- ◆ Images in JPEG format with the size of over 10,000 bytes (large image) are downloaded automatically at the time of reception of mails. You do not need to follow this process. → p.258
- ◆ Images in formats that are larger than the display are shown reduced. However, too large images may not be displayed.
- ◆ Images may be displayed differently between i-mode mail and My picture. To view an image correctly, you must first save the image in the “Inbox” folder.

<i-motion mail>

Playing and Saving i-motion from i-motion Mail

When you receive an i-motion data sent as i-motion mail, the data is not downloaded to the FOMA terminal when you receive mail. This function downloads the i-motion from the i-motion Mail Center and saves it on your FOMA terminal.

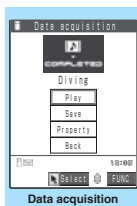
- You receive the mail to which the URL to browse the i-motion is attached.
- Select an i-motion mail beforehand.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.268) ▶ Select a URL ▶ “YES”

The “data acquisition” screen appears when the data download is completed.

■ To cancel i-motion downloading mid-way

▶  (Quit)



■ To save a downloaded i-motion

▶ Data acquisition screen ▶ “Save” ▶ “YES” ▶

Select a folder

Can be saved in the “Inbox” folder under i-motion. → p.342

■ To display information about the downloaded i-motion

▶ Data acquisition screen ▶ “Property”

→ p.239

NOTE

- ◆ If “ON” is selected in “Automatic replay” (p.239), the FOMA terminal plays the i-motion during downloading. However, depending on the signal quality, playback may pause or the image may break up. When this occurs, play the i-motion again after it has finished downloading.
- ◆ You cannot use fast playback, frame advance or slow playback when an i-motion is playing during downloading (first playback only).

<Receiving ToruCa>

Displaying/Saving ToruCa

Displays or saves ToruCa attached to the received i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.268)

▶ Select a file

The ToruCa appears.

■ To save ToruCa

▶ When the ToruCa is displayed ▶  (Save)

▶ Select a folder

■ To display the ToruCa (detail)

▶ When the ToruCa is displayed ▶ “詳細” (Detail) ▶ “YES”

■ To save the ToruCa (detail)

▶ On the ToruCa (detail) screen ▶  (Save)

▶ Select a folder

■ To cancel the ToruCa (detail) downloading mid-way

▶  (Quit) or 

NOTE

- ◆ The “詳細” (Detail) button may not appear for some ToruCa.

<Inbox/Outbox>

Displaying Mail in the Inbox and Outbox

The FOMA terminal will hold up to 1,000* i-mode received mail and/or SMS and up to 400* sent mail and/or SMS. Both received mails and sent mails can be protected up to half of the maximum storage capacity. The number of mail messages that can be saved and protected varies depending on the amount of data in each message. When

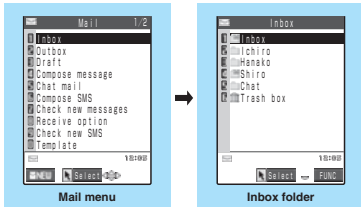
files sizes are large, the number of messages that can be saved and protected decreases.

* : Up to 100 mails can be stored in the Secret folders of the received mails and sent mails, respectively.

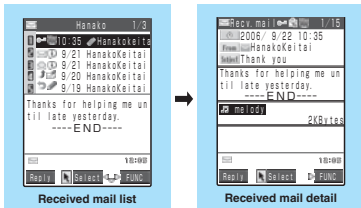
Reading i-mode mail messages

<Example: Reading a received mail message>

1.   "Inbox" Select a folder
- ▶ Select a mail



Function menu▶p.271



Function menu▶p.273

Function menu▶p.276

To view the previous or next mail

▶ Mail detail screen▶ 

Press  to return to the Mail menu screen.

NOTE

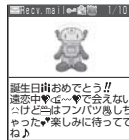
- ◆ You can also place the received address for the sender or broadcast member, or the address to be sent (a phone number for SMS and a mail address for an i-mode mail) into your standby screen as a desktop icon. You can then use the placed desktop icon to compose a new i-mode mail message addressed to that e-mail address (or to compose a new SMS message addressed to the phone number). However, you cannot paste e-mail addresses with the "FmX", "ToX", or "CcX" icon as desktop icons. Also for broadcast mail, only one e-mail address can be pasted in each operation.
- ◆ You can also view the mails contained in other than the "Secret" folder even in the Secret data only mode.
- ◆ You cannot view the large size of images or play i-motion from the mails in the Secret folder.

Mail-connected i-appli

- i-mode mail sent using a mail-connected i-appli is sorted into the dedicated folder for that mail-connected i-appli.

- Where the sender used a mail-connected i-appli to send i-mode mail and the recipient has created a dedicated mail folder for that mail-connected i-appli, the i-mode mail is sorted into that folder.
- If there is no dedicated folder but the "Auto-sort" function has been set, mail is sorted into the folder designated in the "Auto-sort" settings. If the "Auto-sort" function has not been set, mail is sorted into the Inbox.
- Selecting the dedicated folder for a mail-connected i-appli activates the software.
- To view the mail list screen for a folder without activating the software, highlight the folder and select "Open folder" from the function menu.

Having the FOMA terminal read out mail (i-mode mail or SMS)

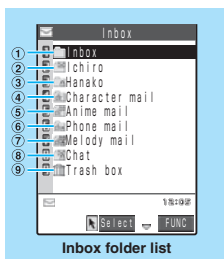


Messages written in English are read out in alphabetic reading.

- By selecting "Read out message" from the function menu in the received mail detail screen, you can have the FOMA terminal read out the body of the received message in the designated voice.
- To cancel reading, press . (Pressing  after reading has been canceled restarts the reading from the beginning of the message.) To exit reading-out mode, press  (Exit).
- You can set the voice used to read out received mail using "Read out setting" (p.281).
- A FOMA terminal reads out mails at the volume level set in "Phone" in "Ring volume". If "Silent" or "Step" is set, messages are read out at the "Level 2" volume. Volume in Manner mode→p.136
- While a message is being read out, an image appears in the top half of the screen, as shown in the figure. If the sender's address and image are stored in the phonebook, the stored image is displayed.
-  (ASSIST) also reads out the message of the mail.→p.400
- While a message is being read out, you can scroll around the message by pressing ,  (HOME) or  (MEMO/CHECK). Also, holding down  for 1 second or longer turns the display light on or off. Pressing any of the FOMA terminal's other keys stops the reading.
- If you receive a call while a message is being read out, reading ends and the ringing screen appears.
- If you receive new mail or messages while a message is being read out, the setting in "Receiving display" takes effect. Also, if the specified alarm time is reached while a message is being read out, the setting in "Alarm setting" takes effect.
- The FOMA terminal may be unable to read out some message body in the received mail from PC, etc.

Guide to the folder list screens

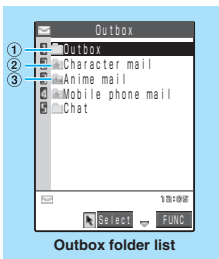
- Mails can be organized into different folders in the Inbox. At the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal only has the "Inbox", "Secret", "Chat" and "Trash box" folders, but you can add folders using the function menu of the Inbox folder list screen and mail-connected i-appli.
 - Mails can be organized into different folders in the Outbox. At the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal only has the "Outbox", "Secret", "Chat" and "Trash box" folders, but you can add folders using the function menu of the Outbox folder list screen and mail-connected i-appli.
- * : The Secret folders are only displayed in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.



Inbox folder list

Function menu→p.271

- : Inbox folder with Auto-sort set for a mail-connected i-appli
- : Inbox folder with Auto-sort set for a mail-connected i-appli containing unread mails
- : Inbox folder with security and Auto-sort set for a mail-connected i-appli containing unread mails
- : Inbox folder with security and Auto-sort set for a mail-connected i-appli containing unread mails
- : Trash box folder
- : Trash box folder with security set
- : Secret folders (only displayed in Secret mode or Secret data only mode) → p.163



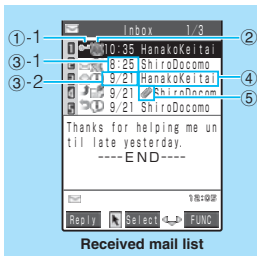
Outbox folder list

Function menu→p.271

- : Folder containing no unread mails
- : Folder containing unread mails
- : Folder with security (p.271) set containing no unread mails
- : Folder with Auto-sort (p.272) set containing no unread mails
- : Folder with security set containing unread mails
- : Folder with Auto-sort containing unread mails
- : Folder with security and Auto-sort set containing no unread mails
- : Folder with security and Auto-sort set containing unread mails
- : Inbox folder for a mail-connected i-appli (p.308)
- : Inbox folder for a mail-connected i-appli containing unread mails
- : Inbox folder with security set for a mail-connected i-appli
- : Inbox folder with security set for a mail-connected i-appli containing unread mails

- : Outbox folder
- : Outbox folder with security (p.271) set
- : Outbox folder for a mail-connected i-appli (p.308)
- : Outbox folder with security set for a mail-connected i-appli
- : Outbox folder with Auto-sort (p.272) set
- : Outbox folder with security and Auto-sort set
- : Outbox folder with Auto-sort set for a mail-connected i-appli
- : Outbox folder with security and Auto-sort set for a mail-connected i-appli containing unread mails
- : Secret folders (only displayed in Secret mode or Secret data only mode) → p.163

Guide to the mail list screens



Received mail list
Function menu▶p.273

① Shows the mail status.

①-1 receive

- : Unread mail
- : Read mail
- : Forwarded mail
- : Replied-to mail
- : Unread protected mail
- : Read protected mail
- : Forwarded protected mail
- : Replied-to protected mail



Sent mail list
Function menu▶p.275

①-2 Transmission

- : Mail sent successfully
- : Mail sent unsuccessfully
- : Mail to multiple recipients, all sent successfully
- : Mail to multiple recipients, some sent successfully
- : Mail to multiple recipients, none sent successfully
- : Protected mail sent successfully
- : Protected mail sent unsuccessfully
- : Protected mail to multiple recipients, all sent successfully
- : Protected mail to multiple recipients, some sent successfully

: Protected mail to multiple recipients, none sent successfully

② Emotion-expressing mail icon that indicates characteristics of the message

etc.: Emotion-expressing mail icons
→ p.260

③ Shows the time and date of transmission

③-1 The time is shown for mail sent and received

③-2 The date is shown for mail sent and received yesterday or before.

④ Shows the sender/recipient or subject of a mail. You can switch the display mode by address or phone number, by name or by subject. Where i-mode mail has no subject, "No title" is displayed. For SMS, the message header is displayed. (For an SMS report, "SMS report" is displayed.) For Voice Mail notices, "Noticecall voicemail" is displayed.

⑤ Shows the message type and the attached or pasted file information type.

<2 lines>

: SMS

: SMS with SMS report received

: SMS on the FOMA card (UIM)

: Attached melody

: Multiple attached melodies, some of which were invalid or deleted.

: All the attached melodies were invalid or deleted.

: Attached images

: Multiple attached images, some of which were invalid or deleted.

: All the attached images were invalid or deleted (too much pasted images to be displayed in the mail detail screen).

: Large image downloaded and confirmed as OK.

: Large image downloaded but was then found to be invalid or was deleted.

: Large image attached but was not automatically downloaded.

: Before downloading, attached large image was found to be invalid.

: Displayed when an i-mode mail with an attached i-motion has been sent.

: An i-motion attached to sent mail was deleted or the file name was edited.

: Before downloading a large image pasted to a Deco-mail, the type of file was found to be unknown.

: Launching i-appli available from the message body

-  : Moving the mail which can start an i-apply from the message to the Secret folder.
-  : A mail that the mail-connected i-apply transmits.
-  : Multiple data pasted (also displayed when pasted with i-apply To together)
-  : Attaches the ToruCa.
-  : Multiple attached ToruCas, some of which were invalid or deleted.
-  : All the attached ToruCas were invalid or deleted.
-  : Attached or pasted file or data cannot be used because a different FOMA card (UIM) was used when the mail was sent or received.

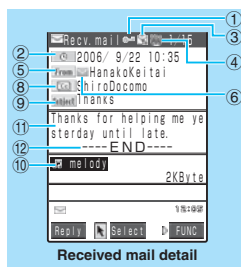
<1 line/1line+body>

-  : One or more files attached or pasted, none of which are large.
-  : Multiple files attached or pasted, none of which are large but some of which are invalid.
-  : One or more files attached or pasted, none of which are large but all of which are invalid.
-  : One or more files attached, including one or more large files
-  : Multiple files attached, one or more of which are large and some of which are invalid.
-  : Multiple files attached, one or more of which are large and all of which are invalid.
-  : Attached or pasted file or data cannot be used because a different FOMA card (UIM) was used when the mail was sent or received.

NOTE

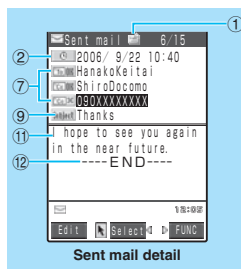
- ◆ When you view i-mode mail with an attached image in the received mail detail screen or sent mail detail screen, the screen switches between image display and file name display every time you press .

Guide to the mail detail screens



Function menu▶p.276

- ① Shows the mail status. (See the explanation for item ① in the mail list screen on p.267.)
- ② Shows the time and date of transmission (time and date of arrival at the Center).
- ③ Shows the sending type of received mail.
 -  : Received mail addressed specifically to the recipient by the sender.
 -  : Received mail addressed specifically to the recipient in broadcast sent as a copy from the sender
 -  : Received mail broadcast by the sender with the other recipients not shown.
- ④ Emotion-expressing mail icon that indicates characteristics of the received message etc.: Emotion-expressing mail icons
→ p.260



Function menu▶p.277

- ⑤ Shows received mail with the sender's e-mail address.
 -  : Sender's mail address
 -  : E-mail address to which replies cannot be sent (shown when the e-mail address exceeds 50 single-byte characters, etc.)
- ⑥  : If the sender's address and phone number are stored in the phonebook, the icon stored in the phonebook is displayed.

- ⑦ Shows sent mail with the recipient's address and recipient type.

Use this to check whether the message was sent successfully. If the message was sent to multiple recipients, all the recipients are shown.

 : Recipient to which mail was successfully sent.

 : Recipient to which mail was not successfully sent.

 : Recipient to which mail was successfully sent for broadcasting as a copy.

 : Recipient to which mail failed to sent for broadcasting as a copy.

 : Broadcast mail that was set up not to display the addresses of other recipients was sent successfully.

 : Broadcast mail that was set up not to display the addresses of other recipients was not sent successfully.

- ⑧ Received mail with multiple addresses (not including the recipient itself). Up to 4 addresses can be shown.

 : The sender addressed the message specifically to the recipient.

 : An e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent to which the sender specifically addressed the message.

 : An e-mail address to which the sender sent a copy of the message as broadcast mail.

 : An e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent to which the sender sent a copy of the message as broadcast mail.

The "", "" or "" icons are used to indicate an e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent.

If the sender of received mail or the recipient of sent mail is stored in the phonebook, the "Name" stored in the phonebook appears in fields ⑤, ⑦ and ⑧.

To display the name, the other party's e-mail address must be stored correctly in the phonebook. →p.111

- ⑨ Shows the message subject. Where there is no subject, "No title" is displayed. For received SMS, " " is displayed (" " if the SMS is in the FOMA card (UIM)) and "SMS" is displayed as the title (or "SMS report" for SMS reports). When an SMS report has been received, the " " icon is also displayed.

- ⑩ When a message includes attached or pasted files, this shows the icon, file name and file size (in bytes).

 : Pasted melody (if the pasted melody file is faulty, it is displayed as text in the message.)

 : Multiple data pasted (also displayed when pasted with i-appli To together)

 : An i-motion attached to sent mail was deleted or the file name was edited.

 : i-motion attached to sent mail is subject to PIM lock

 : An attached image was deleted.

 : Large image was deleted after downloading (also displayed when data was edited or overwritten after downloading).

 : Attached large images are subject to PIM lock

 : An attached melody was deleted.

 : Attaches the ToruCa.

 : Attached ToruCa are invalid or the ToruCa (detail) is attached.

 : An attached ToruCa was deleted.

Attached file icons → p.267

- ⑪ Shows the mail message.
⑫ Shows the end of the message body.

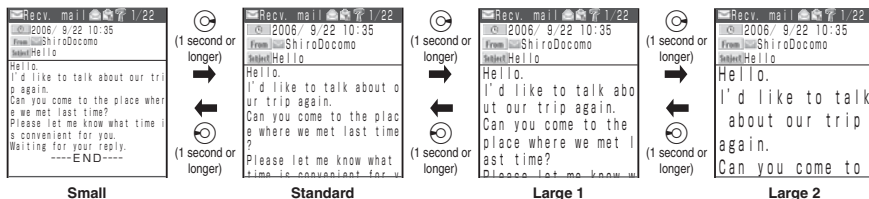
On the following situations, the e-mail address and not the "Name" is displayed, even when the phone number or e-mail address is stored in the phonebook.

- When "Restrict dialing" (p.172) is set and the phone number is not designated in the "Restrict dialing" settings
- When details are displayed in Secret data only mode for mail sent to an e-mail address or phone number that was not stored as secret data or for mail received from an e-mail address or phone number that was not stored as secret data
- When the FOMA terminal is not in Secret mode or Secret data only mode and details are displayed for mail sent to an e-mail address or phone number that was stored as secret data or for mail received from an e-mail address or phone number that was stored as secret data

Changing the mail character size or list display mode

● When changing the mail character

On the mail detail screen, you can change the size of the text in the message body.

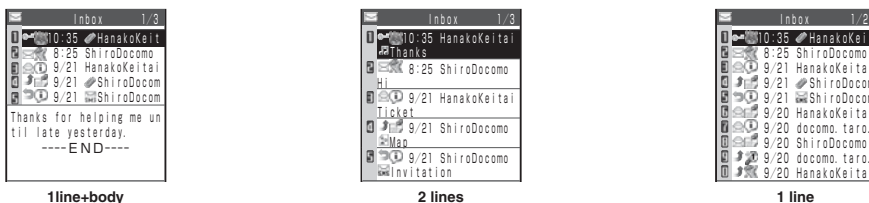


NOTE

- ◆ When you use the keys shown above to change the text size, the setting in “Font size” (p.279) also changes.
- ◆ The character size can be changed in the same way in the mail message reading out screen (p.265).

● Changing the mail list screen display mode (1line+body/1 line/2 lines)

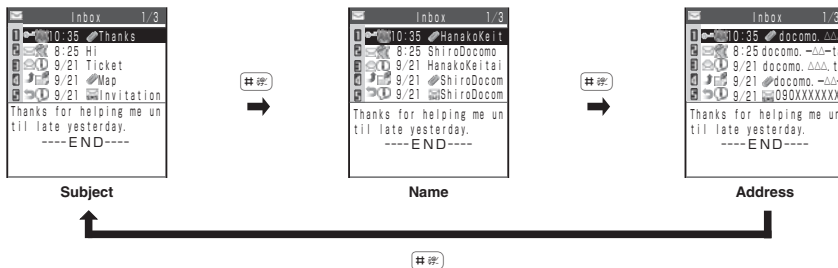
You can switch to any one of 1line+body, 1 line and 2 lines using the “Mail list disp.” setting in “Mail settings” in the Mail menu.→p.279



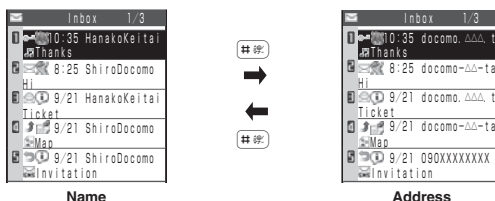
● Changing the mail list screen display mode (Name/Address/Subject)

In the mail list screen, you can switch between displaying mail by recipient or sender, by e-mail address or phone number, and by subject. If the name of the recipient or sender is stored in the phonebook, his or her name can also be displayed.

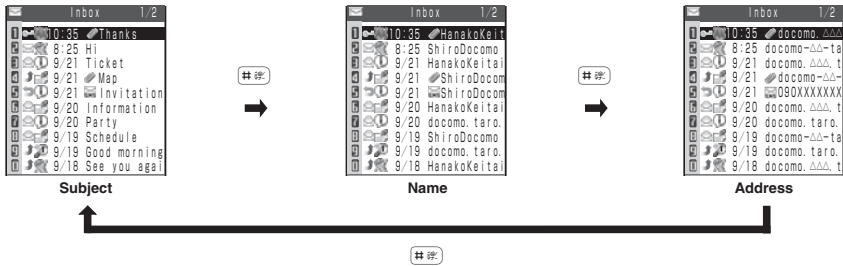
- Mail list screen (1line+body)



- Mail list screen (2 lines)



● Mail list screen (1 line)



NOTE

- ◆ You can also change the display mode by selecting “List setting” from the function menu in the received mail list screen, sent mail list screen or draft mail list screen and then selecting “Subject”, “Name”, or “Address”.

● Checking the number of received or sent mail messages

To check the total number of saved messages in all the folders, select “Memory info” from the function menu in the folder list screen.

To check the number of messages stored in each folder, display the list screen for mails in the folder you want to check and then select “No. of messages” from the function menu.

● Backlight function

When you open the FOMA terminal, press a key or send or receive an i-mode mail or SMS, the FOMA terminal's backlight comes on for around 15 seconds. (You can change the time for which the backlight stays on in “Mail/Msg. ring time”.) However, when an i-mode mail or SMS is displayed, the time for which the backlight stays on varies depending on the length of the message. The backlight does not turn on if “Lighting” is set to “OFF” in “Backlight”.

Inbox/Outbox folder list function menu

- You can add up to 22 folders.

Add folder	▶Enter a folder name▶Set the filter conditions Adds a new folder. Sets the auto-sort settings for the added folder. “Automatic sorting settings”→p.272
Auto-sort	“Automatic sorting settings”→p.272
Edit folder name	▶Enter a folder name You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for a folder name.
Mail security	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Sets or cancels folder security. “Setting security for individual folders”→p.171
Delete folder	▶Enter your security code▶“YES”
Sort folder	▶Select the destination Rearranges folders.

No. of messages	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in all the folders.
Open folder	Displays list of the mails in the selected folder.
Add desktop icon*	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.149
Send all Ir data	Sends all the mail in the selected box using Infrared data exchange. However, neither mails in the Secret folder nor SMS on FOMA card (UIM) are sent. “Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time”→p.386
Copy all to miniSD	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Copies all mails in the selected box. However, the SMS on the FOMA card (UIM) and mails in the Secret folder are not copied.
Delete read*	Deletes all the read mails.
Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all mails.

* : Only displayed in the Inbox folder list screen.

NOTE

<Add folder>

- ◆When you download a mail-connected i-αppli, an i-αppli mail folder is automatically created (5 folders max.) separately from a folder which you can add using “Add folder”.

<Edit folder name>

- ◆You cannot edit the folder name for the “Inbox”, “Outbox”, “Chat”, a mail-connected i-αppli, “Trash box” or “Secret” folders.
- ◆You cannot edit the names of folders for which mail security is set.

<Mail security>

- ◆You cannot set the mail security to the “Secret” folder.

<Delete folder>

- ◆ You cannot delete a folder that contains protected mail or a folder for which mail security is set. Remove the protection or mail security and then delete the folder.
- ◆ You cannot delete an i-appli mail folder if there is a corresponding mail-connected i-appli. You can delete an i-appli mail folder if there is no corresponding software, but the folder created in the Inbox folder screen or Outbox folder screen is also deleted.
- ◆ If you delete a folder that is specified in the "Auto-sort" settings, the automatic sorting setting for that folder is also canceled.
- ◆ You cannot delete the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", "Trash box" and "Secret" folders that are already installed on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

<Sort folder>

- ◆ You cannot sort the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", "Trash box" or "Secret" folders.
- ◆ You cannot run "Sort folder" when only one folder was added.

<No. of messages>

- ◆ Mail messages stored in the Secret folder are not included.

<Delete read>

- ◆ This option does not delete read SMS or i-mode mail that is protected.
- ◆ i-mode mails and SMS in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.

<Delete all> on the Outbox folder list screen

- ◆ This option does not delete SMS or i-mode mails that are protected.
- ◆ i-mode mails and SMS in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.

<Delete all> on the Inbox folder list screen

- ◆ This option deletes unread mails except for the protected i-mode mail or SMS.
- ◆ i-mode mails and SMS in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.

● Automatic sorting settings

You can automatically sort i-mode mail (including broadcast mail) or SMS to the specified folders by making conditions in advance such as the e-mail addresses, phone numbers or subjects used in the received or sent mails.

- You can set a total of 700 e-mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for automatic sorting in all the folders in the Inbox and Outbox. You can set multiple e-mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for the same folder. Only one subject can be set for each folder.
- When PIM lock is in setting to the phonebook, the group name is displayed as "Group". When PIM lock is in setting to the mail member on the contrary, the mail member name is displayed as "Mail member".
- If received or sent mail meets multiple sort criteria, the Auto-sort settings are prioritized as shown below. Note that mail for mail-connected i-appli is sorted into the respective dedicated folder regardless of the Auto-sort settings.

① Sort all ② Subject sort ③ Reply/Send impossible ④ Address/Number sort ⑤ Mail member ⑥ Phonebook group

- When setting automatic sorting, if a mail address which is registered as a secret data is assigned to a folder by group look-up, the mail is sorted into "Inbox" folder at the time of receipt of the mail from the sender if the secret mode or secret data only mode is not selected. If the secret mode or secret data only mode is selected, the mail is sorted into the folder that you selected by sorting settings.

If a mail address is assigned to a folder by address look-up, the mail that you receive from a person who is registered as secret data is sorted into the folder that you selected by sorting settings, regardless of the secret mode or secret data only mode settings.

- Mail received or sent before the automatic sorting settings are specified remains in their original folders.

1 Select the destination folder for sort

2 Inbox folder list screen (p.266) or Outbox folder list screen (p.266)

▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Auto-sort" ▶ Set Auto-sort from the following item

Address sort	Sets an e-mail address or phone number to be used for automatic sorting.
• Look-up address	Sets the e-mail address or phone number by browsing the phonebook and records.
• Phone-book	Sets the e-mail address or phone number by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.116
• Received address	Sets an e-mail address or phone number from the Received address list.
• Sent address	Sets an e-mail address or phone number from the sent address list.
• Look-up group	▶ Select a group Sets the mail address or phone number of the selected group.
• Look-up member	▶ Select a mail member Sets the mail address or phone number of the selected mail member.
• Enter address	Sets an e-mail address or phone number directly entering each character.
Subject sort	▶ Enter a subject Sets a mail subject as an auto-sort criterion.
Reply impossible*	Sets an e-mail address or phone number to which you cannot reply (or which failed to be sent).
Sort all	This can only be set for mail-connected i-appli folders. Sorts all mails into a mail-connected i-appli folder.

Edit addr/subj	Edits a previously specified e-mail address, phone number or mail subject.
List setting	Selects from "Name" or "Address" about how to view the list of mail addresses or phone number to be automatically sorted.
Release	Releases the auto-sort conditions.
• Release this	Deselects the selected auto-sort criterion.
• Release selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox  ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deselects the selected auto-sort criteria.
• Release all	Deselects all the auto-sort criteria.

* : If you have selected the Auto-sort settings in the Outbox folder, "Send impossible" is displayed.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot set the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", "Trash box" or "Secret" folders in automatic sorting.
- ◆ If even a single address on the broadcasted mail fits the auto-sort condition, the message is sorted to the folder set in "Address sort" or "Send impossible". Sort condition is looked up to in order of entries for address.
- ◆ For the folder with mail security (p.271) set, you need to enter the security code after selecting "Auto-sort" from the Inbox/Outbox folder list function menu.

<Address sort (Look-up group)>

- ◆ You cannot set "Group 00" or groups in the FOMA card (UIM).

<Address sort (Enter address)>

- ◆ Ensure that the e-mail address domain (the part that follows the @ symbol) is entered correctly. If the address format is "[phone number@docomo.ne.jp]", simply enter the phone number.

<Subject sort>

- ◆ If the subject meets the sort criteria for multiple folders, the mail is sorted into the folder closest to the "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.
- ◆ Only 1 subject can be set for each folder.
- ◆ You cannot sort i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" even if setting "No title" as a sort criteria.
- ◆ You cannot use this option to sort SMS.

<Reply impossible>

- ◆ You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports.
- ◆ "Reply impossible" can only be set for one folder within Inbox.

<Send impossible>

- ◆ "Send impossible" can only be set for one folder within Outbox.

<Sort all>

- ◆ You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports or SMS received directly to the FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ "Sort all" can only be set for 1 i-appli mail folder for received and sent i-appli mail respectively.

<List setting>

- ◆ You can also switch between the "Name" and "Address" by pressing  in the Auto-sort settings screen.

Function menu (received mail list screen)

- The available functions vary between the received mail list screen and unread mail list screen, which means that the functions to be listed are different.

Reply	"Replying by composing a new message" → p.262
Move	▶ Select a folder ▶ Use  to select a checkbox  ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Moves the selected mail to another folder.
Search mail	Searches for mail using a specified sender or subject.
• Search sender	Specifies the mail address by browsing the Phonebook or history, or by entering characters.
• Phonebook	Specifies an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.116
• Received address	Specifies an e-mail address from the Received address list.
• Sent address	Specifies an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
• Enter address	Specifies an e-mail address by entering each character.
• Search subject	▶ Enter a subject
Display all	Returns the search and sort displays or displays that use filter functions to their original display settings (all "Chronological ↑").
Sort	Sorts mail according to the specified criteria.
Filter	Displays mail according to the specified criteria.
• Unread	Displays only unread i-mode mail and SMS.
• Read	Displays only read i-mode mail and SMS.
• Protected	Displays only protected i-mode mail and SMS.
• Image	Displays only i-mode mail with attached or inserted images, or with pasted downloading information for large images.
• Melody	Displays only i-mode mail with attached or pasted melodies.
• ToruCa	Displays only i-mode mail with ToruCa attached.
• i-appli	Displays only i-mode mail that includes i-appli startup setting.
• SMS	Displays only SMS

• keyword	▶Select a “Disp keyword” (1 to 3) icon Displays only i-mode mail and SMS with the selected “Disp keyword” icon added. “Emotion/Keyword notice”→p.283
• Emotion	▶Select a “Disp emotion” icon Displays only i-mode mail and SMS with the selected “Disp emotion” icon added.
Color coding	Selects the color to the received mail (date, address/name and subject) from “Default” (Black), “Red” and “Blue”.
List setting	Selects a mail-list format from “Subject”, “Name” or “Address”.
Read all	Marks all the unread mail in the folder as read
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Unprotect all	Unprotects all protected mail.
Send Ir data	“Sending one data at a time via infrared data exchange”→p.385
Copy to miniSD	Copies the received mails to the miniSD memory card.
• Copy this	Copies the highlighted mail.
• Copy selected	▶Use  to select a checkbox ▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Copies multiple mails.
• Copy all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Copies all mails stored in the folder.
UIM operation	Moves or copy the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone).→p.291
Mail info	Displays information such as the sender without opening the i-mode mail.
No. of messages	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in the folder.
Move trash box	▶Use  to select a checkbox ▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Moves the selected mail to the trash box folder.
Delete this ^{*1}	Deletes the highlighted mail.
Delete	Deletes received mail.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted mail.
• Delete selected	▶Use  to select a checkbox ▶ (Finish)▶“YES”
• Delete read	Deletes read mails.
• Delete all SMS-R	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all SMS reports.
• Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all the received mails.
Keep in secret ^{*2}	“Hiding Various Data”→p.163

*1 : The option only appears on the unread mail list screen.

*2 : The option appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, “Put out” appears.→p.163

NOTE

<Move>

- ◆ You cannot use this option to move mail to the “Trash box” or “Secret” folder.
- ◆ You cannot move SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to another folder.

<Search mail>

- ◆ You can also search the results of a search.
- ◆ Filter and Sort can be used together.
- ◆ To return to the original display, select “Display all”.
- ◆ You cannot search i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as “No title” even if setting “No title” as a criterion for searching by subject.

<Sort/Filter>

- ◆ Sort and Filter can be used together.
- ◆ Sort and Filter are released when you end the received mail list screen.

<Color coding>

- ◆ You can switch colors by pressing  in the received mail list screen as well.

<List setting>

- ◆ You can switch to the “Subject”, “Name” or “Address” by pressing  in the received mail list screen as well.

<Read all>

- ◆ If you view mail with Filter and then select “Read all”, only the currently displayed mail is marked as read.

<Protect ON/OFF>

- ◆ Once you reach the maximum number of the received mails stored on the FOMA terminal (the total number of i-mode and SMS) (p.264), precedence is given to deleting mail in the “Trash box” folder when new mail arrives. If there is no mail in the “Trash box” folder, read received mail with unprotected is deleted starting with the oldest message. However, i-mode mails and SMS in the “Secret” folder are not deleted.
- ◆ You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ Mails in the “Trash box” folder cannot be protected.

<Unprotect all>

- ◆ If you view mail with the Filter function and then select “Unprotect all”, protection is only removed from the currently displayed mail.

<UIM operation>

- ◆ When you move or copy the received SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the relevant SMS appears in the Inbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<Move trash box>

- ◆ This option moves mail to be deleted to the “Trash box” folder. Mail moved to the “Trash box” folder is not deleted immediately and can be retrieved and returned to another folder until it is deleted. Once the Inbox is full, mail moved to the “Trash box” folder is the first to be deleted as new mail arrives.
- ◆ You cannot move protected mail or SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to the “Trash box” folder.
- ◆ If you move unread mail to the “Trash box” folder, it is marked as read.

<Delete this>

- ◆ You can use this option to delete unread i-mode mail or SMS (including SMS in the FOMA card (UIM)).
- ◆ You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.371

<Delete selected>

- ◆ You cannot use this option to select protected i-mode mail or SMS.

<Delete read>

- ◆ If you select "Delete read" after the mails are shown using Filter, those mails shown are deleted except i-mode mails or SMS which are protected and already read.

<Delete all SMS-R>

- ◆ You cannot use this option to delete protected SMS reports.

<Delete all>

- ◆ You can delete unread i-mode mail or SMS.
- ◆ If you select "Delete all" after the mails are shown using Filter, those mails shown are deleted except i-mode mails or SMS which are protected.

Function menu (sent mail list screen)

Edit	▶ Edit the address, subject or message body ▶ (Send) Re-edits the message.
Move	▶ Select a folder ▶ Use to select a checkbox ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Moves the selected mail to another folder.
Search mail	Searches for mail using a specified receiver or subject.
• Search receiver	Specifies the mail address by browsing the Phonebook or history, or by entering characters.
• Phone-book	Specifies an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.116
• Sent address	Specifies an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
• Received address	Specifies an e-mail address from the Received address list.
• Enter address	Specifies an e-mail address by entering each character.
• Search subject	▶ Enter a subject
Display all	Reverts a display resulted from search, sort or filter to the original (all items shown in reverse chronological order).
Sort	Sorts mail according to the specified criteria.
Filter	Displays only mails that meet the specified criterion.
Color coding	Selects the color to the sent mail (date, address/name and subject) from "Default"(Black), "Red" and "Blue".
List setting	Selects a mail-list format from "Subject", "Name" or "Address".
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.

Unprotect all	Unprotects all protected mail.
Send Ir data	"Transferring One Data at a Time" → p.385
Copy to miniSD	Copies the sent mails to the miniSD memory card.
• Copy this	Copies the highlighted mail.
• Copy selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Copies multiple mails.
• Copy all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Copies all mails stored in the folder.
UIM operation	Moves or copy the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone). → p.291
No. of messages	Displays the number of messages and protected messages in the folder.
Delete	Deletes sent mail.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted mail.
• Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple mails.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the sent mails.
Keep in secret*	"Hiding Various Data" → p.163

* : The option appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears. → p.163

NOTE**<Move>**

- ◆ You cannot move a bookmark to the Secret folder.
- ◆ You cannot move SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to another folder.

<Search mail>

- ◆ You can also search the results of a search.
- ◆ Filter or Sort can be used together.
- ◆ To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- ◆ You cannot search i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" even if setting "No title" as a criterion for searching by subject.

<Sort/Filter>

- ◆ The Sort display and Filter function can be used together.
- ◆ Sort and Filter are released when you end the sent mail list screen.

<Color coding>

- ◆ You can switch colors by pressing in the sent mail list screen as well.

<List setting>

- ◆ You can switch to the "Subject", "Name" or "Address" by pressing in the received mail list screen as well.

<Protect ON/OFF>

- ◆ Once you reach the maximum number of the received mails stored on the FOMA terminal (the total number of i-mode and SMS) (p.264), unprotected sent mail is deleted starting with the oldest message. i-mode mails and SMS in the Secret folder are not deleted.
- ◆ SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) cannot be protected.

<UIM operation>

- ◆ When you move or copy the received SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the relevant SMS appears in the Inbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<Delete>

- ◆ You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.
- ◆ If you select "Delete all" after the mails are shown using Filter, those mails shown are deleted except i-mode mails or SMS which are protected.

Function menu (received mail detail screen)

Reply	"Replying by composing a new message"→p.262
Reply with quote	"Replying by quoting the received message"→p.262
Forward	"Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients"→p.262
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Move	▶ Select a folder Moves a mail to another folder.
Copy	Copies the message body, subject or e-mail address. "Copying (or cutting) text"→p.450
Save address	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook"→p.263
Add to phonebook	
Save data	Saves a melody, image or ToruCa that is attached to or pasted into mail. "Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail"→p.263 "Saving Images in Image Mail"→p.264 "Displaying/Saving ToruCa"→p.264
Save insert image	▶ Select an image ▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder ▶ "YES" ▶ Select an item Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Add desktop icon	Pastes a sender address as a desktop icon. "Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
Save template	Saves a received i-mode mail as a template. "Saving a template"→p.254
Refer dictionary	Starts the dictionary. "Using Dictionaries"→p.416

Property	▶ Select an image Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
URL	Displays the URL of the large image attached to mail.
Read out message	Has the FOMA terminal read out the message in an i-mode mail.→p.265
Chat	Starts chat mail.→p.284
Send Ir data	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.385
Copy to miniSD	"Data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card"→p.375
UIM operation	Moves or copy the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone). →p.291
Scroll	Selects the number of scrolling lines in a screen from "1 line", "3 lines" or "5 lines".
Font size	Selects the size of displayed characters from "Standard", "Small", "Large 1" or "Large 2".
Delete att. file	Deletes the attached file. Note that data saved in the data box is not deleted.
Move trash box	Moves the mail to the "Trash box" folder.
Delete	Deletes the received mail displayed in the received mail detail screen.
Keep in secret*	"Hiding Various Data"→p.163

* : The option appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears.→p.163

NOTE**<Move>**

- ◆ You cannot use this option to move mail to the "Trash box" or "Secret" folder.
- ◆ You cannot move SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to another folder.

<UIM operation>

- ◆ When you move or copy the received SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the SMS appears in the Inbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<URL>

- ◆ Select  or  on the received mail detail screen, then "URL" from the function menu, and you can check the destination URL for the images. You can enter URLs up to 150 single-byte characters long including "http://".

<Delete att. file>

- ◆ You cannot use this option to delete a file pasted into the message body.

<Move trash box>

- ◆ You cannot move protected mail or SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to the "Trash box" folder.

Function menu (sent mail detail screen)

Edit	▶ Edit the address, subject or message body ▶(Send) Re-edits the message.
Resend	Resends the message.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Move	▶ Select a folder Moves a mail to another folder.
Copy	Copies the message body, subject or e-mail address. "Copying (or cutting) text"→p.450
Save address	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook"→p.263
Add to phonebook	
Save data	Saves a melody, image or ToruCa that is attached to mail "Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail"→p.263 "Saving Images in Image Mail"→p.264 "Displaying/Saving ToruCa"→p.264
Save insert image	▶ Select an image ▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder ▶ "YES" ▶ Select an item Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Add desktop icon	Pastes an address (recipient) as a desktop icon. "Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
Save template	Saves a sent i-mode mail as a template. "Saving a template"→p.254
Refer dictionary	Starts the dictionary. "Using Dictionaries"→p.416
Property	▶ Select an image Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
Disp. SMS report	Displays the SMS report for an SMS.→p.288
Send Ir data	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.385
Copy to miniSD	"Data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card"→p.375
UIM operation	Moves or copies the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone). →p.291
Scroll	Selects the number of scrolling lines in a screen from "1 line", "3 lines" or "5 lines".

Font size	Selects the size of displayed characters from "Standard", "Small", "Large 1" or "Large 2".
Delete att. file	Deletes the attached file. Note that data saved in the data box is not deleted.
Delete	Deletes the sent mail displayed in the sent mail detail screen.
Keep in secret*	"Hiding Various Data"→p.163

* : The option appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears.→p.163

NOTE

<Resend>

- ◆ Selecting "Resend" resends the message unedited. Use this option as a simple way to resend mail when the initial transmission has failed.
- ◆ When you resend a message for which a previous transmission failed, the message is saved as a sent mail. When you resend broadcast mail for which the previous transmission failed at all the addresses, the message is also saved as a sent mail.

<Disp. SMS report>

- ◆ If there is no SMS report for the selected SMS, this function cannot be used.
- ◆ When receiving the SMS report of a SMS stored in a Secret folder, you cannot select "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu even if "📧" appears on the SMS list or detail screen. To check the SMS report by selecting "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu, move the SMS from the Secret folder into another one.

<UIM operation>

- ◆ When you move or copy the sent SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the SMS appears in the Outbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

Using Mail Records

When you send or receive mail, destination addresses are recorded in the Sent address list and sender addresses are recorded in the Received address list. You can use this procedure to send mail by selecting an address from these address lists. Different icons are used for the i-mode mail and SMS address lists so that you can quickly distinguish the record types.

- Up to 30 i-mode mail address or SMS phone number entries can be stored in the respective Sent address and Received address lists.
- If you set security for Inbox or Outbox, e-mail addresses are not recorded in the Sent address or Received address list.

Checking an address list

<Example: To display the received address list screen>

- 1 "Received calls" "All calls" (FUNC) "Receive d address"

The "Received address" screen appears.

You can also display the "Received address" screen by pressing and holding for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.

Pressing also displays this screen when selecting the address in editing mail.



Received address list
Function menu p.278

■ To display the sent address list screen

- (Own data) "Dialed calls" (FUNC) "Sent address"

You can also display the Sent address list by pressing and holding for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.

Pressing also displays this screen when selecting the address in editing mail.

2 Select a sender

"Received address detail screen" appears.

3 Check the details



NOTE

◆ The following icons are used in the sent address list and sent address detail screens:

- : i-mode mail transmission succeeded.
- : i-mode mail transmission failed.
- : SMS transmission succeeded.
- : SMS transmission failed.

◆ The following icons are used in the received address list and received address detail screens:

- : Received i-mode mail.
- : Received SMS.

◆ When "Keypad dial lock" is set, the registered Sent/Received address lists are deleted. After setting "Keypad dial lock", Sent address and Received address are stored respectively.

◆ Turning the FOMA terminal off or deleted sent or received mail does not delete the entries in the address lists. You should delete the record entries themselves to prevent others from seeing them.

Function menu (Sent address/Received address list screen)

This explanation also applies to the function menus in the sent address and received address detail screens.

Add to phonebook	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook" → p.263
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.149
Compose message^{*1}	Composes an i-mode message with the mail address pasted to the address field. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.247
Dialing	Uses the Phone To or AV Phone To function to make a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call to the phone number on the phonebook which the e-mail addresses are stored. → p.229
Received calls^{*2}	Switches to the received calls screen (or dialed calls screen) (list). → pp.58, 66
Delete	Deletes e-mail addresses.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted e-mail address.
• Delete selected	to select a checkbox (Finish) "YES" Deletes the selected sent or received address.
• Delete all	Enter your security code "YES" Deletes all items in the Received address or Sent address list.

*1 : If an SMS is selected, this option changes to "Compose SMS", which composes an SMS with the phone number pasted to address. "When you Receive an SMS (Short Message)" → p.288

*2 : "Redial" is for the sent address list screen from redials and "Dialed calls" is for the sent address list screen from dialed calls.

NOTE

<Received calls>

- ◆The displayed received calls screen is "All calls" (shows the entire received calls record).

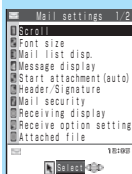
<Mail settings>

Setting up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions

1 "Mail settings"

The "Mail settings" screen appears.

2 Select any item



Scroll (default: 1 line)	Selects any of "1 line", "3 lines" and "5lines" to specify the number of lines scrolled when using on the mail detail screen.
Font size (default: Standard)	Selects the size of displayed characters on the mail detail screen from "Standard", "Small", "Large 1" or "Large 2".
Mail list disp. (default: 1line+body)	Sets the number of lines and item to be displayed on the mail list screen. You can select either of "2 lines", "1 line" or "1line+body". ■ To switch the mail list display ▶ Select the display mode Switches to "Subject", "Name" or "Address".
Message display	Sets the position from where to start displaying the message body.
• Standard (default)	Displays the message from the headers onwards (date and time received/sent).
• From message	Displays the message from the message body onwards.
Start attachment(auto) (default: ON)	Sets whether to automatically play the attached or pasted melody when opening an i-mode mail.
Header/Signature	"Editing headers, signatures and quotation marks" → p.280
Mail security	"Setting security for individual mailboxes" → p.171
Receiving display	Sets whether to give display priority to receiving and reception results screens if a mail, MessageR or MessageF is received while you are using the FOMA terminal.
• Alarm preferred (default)	Shows the receiving and reception results screen.
• Operation preferred	Gives priority to the screen being used rather than showing the receiving and reception results screens.

Receive option setting	Sets whether to receive mail selectively.
• ON	Does not automatically receive mail.
• OFF (default)	Receives mail automatically.
Attached file (default: Receive all)	Sets the mode to receive the attached files selecting from "Receive all", "Receive image", "Receive melody" or "No receive".
Speed photo auto disp. (default: ON)	Sets whether to automatically display a still image when receiving a speed photo mail. If you set Speed photo auto display to "OFF" and you receive a speed photo mail, the attached image is not automatically displayed. To display the image, display the received mail.
Read out setting	Sets Read out message.
• Select voice (default: Female 1)	Select a voice for reading a received mail from "Female 1", "Female 2", "Male 1", "Male 2" or "Robot".
• Read out received mail (default: ON)	Sets Read out message to "ON" or "OFF" when pressing (ASSIST).
Chat	"Specifying the chat mail settings" → p.287
Emotion/Keyword notice	"Setting Emotion/Keyword for emotion-expressing mail" → p.283
SMS settings	Sets the options for SMS.
• SMS report request (default: OFF)	Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS. Select "ON" or "OFF".
• SMS validity period (default: 3 days)	Sets the period of time that the sent SMS is stored at the SMS Center by selecting "None", "1 day", "2 days" or "3 days". Set "None" not to store SMS at the SMS Center.
• SMS input character (default: Japanese (70char.))	Sets the SMS body character input method. Up to 70 of all double-byte and/or single-byte characters can be entered for Japanese. Up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered for English.
Check settings	Allows you to check the settings specified in "Mail settings".
Reset	Resets the settings specified in "Mail settings" to the default. → p.283

NOTE

<Scroll>

- ◆ The number of lines scrolled can also be set on the mail detail screen by selecting "Scroll" from the function menu. Using that method also changes this setting.

- ◆ You can also change the character size on the mail details screen by pressing  or  for 1 second or more. You can also change the character size on the mail detail screen or Read out mail screen by selecting "Font size" from the function menu. Using any of these methods also changes this setting.
- ◆ When you switch to a screen other than the mail detail screen, an enlarged or reduced display automatically reverts to normal display. When you return to the mail detail screen, it is again shown enlarged or reduced.

<Message display>

- ◆ If the entire message body can be displayed on a single page, all or part of the mail headers (date and time received/sent) may be displayed even when you select "From message".

<Start attachment(auto)>

- ◆ Even when you select "ON" in this option, you may be unable to play melodies sent from devices other than a FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED correctly.

<Receiving display>

- ◆ When you receive a mail or MessageR/MessageF while receiving an incoming voice call, making a voice call, being on a call or using FOMA terminal functions such as an i-appli, i-motion, Chara-den or the camera, the receiving and reception results screens may not appear even if you have set "Alarm preferred".

<Receive option setting>

- ◆ This setting applies only to i-mode mail. SMS, MessageR and MessageF are automatically received regardless of this settings.

<Attached file>

- ◆ Setting to "Receive all" receives all attached files of the images, melodies and ToruCa.
- ◆ When you receive a mail with the files attached, those files are deleted as follows at the i-mode Center depending on the Attached file setting: Setting to "No receive", "Receive melody" and "Receive image" deletes all attached files, files other than the melody files and files other than the image files, respectively. You cannot retrieve the attached file once you have deleted even if you check new messages.
- ◆ The melody may not be played correctly if you receive it through other than FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED terminals.
- ◆ When the "No receive" or "Receive melody" is set, an image inserted to a Deco-mail or still image on a speed photo mail is deleted at the i-mode Center.

<SMS report request>

- ◆ You can view received SMS reports in the "Inbox" folder. You can also check the report by selecting "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu in the detail screen of the sent SMS.

Editing headers, signatures and quotation marks

Default setting

Header/Signature (Not stored):

Insert

Quotation marks: >

Storing text to be inserted at the beginning of an i-mode mail message body (a header) and your name or other information (signature) to be added at the end in advance allows you to quickly and easily paste that information into an i-mode mail (text mail) or Deco-mail message. This function also allows you to edit a symbol or comment (quotation mark) at the beginning of quoted text when you reply to received mail by quoting the original message.

1 Mail settings screen (p.279) ▶ "Header/Signature"

2 "Edit header" or "Edit signature" ▶

■ To edit the quotation symbol

▶ "Edit Quotation marks"

3 Enter your header and signature ▶ (Finish)

You can enter up to 5,000 double-byte (10,000 single-byte) characters for header or signature, and up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for quotation marks.

■ To enter a quotation mark

▶ Enter a quotation mark

■ To decorate header or signature

You can decorate header or signature.

"Composing a Deco-mail message" → p.251

4 "Insert setting" ▶ Select the checkbox for the header or signature ▶ (Finish)

■ To compose mail without adding a header or signature automatically

▶ Deselect the checkbox for the header or signature

NOTE

- ◆ Even if you select the "Insert" checkbox, the header or signature is not pasted into speed photo mail, template, chat screen or i-mode mail composed from an i-mode mail-connected i-appli.
- ◆ You cannot set the background color to the decoration for header or signature. It changes to the background color of a mail to be pasted.
- ◆ When pasting the decorated header or signature to i-mode mail (text mail), it is Deco-mail.

Specifying which items are checked for in Center inquiries <Set check new messages>

messages>

Default setting
Check new messages

Use this option to select the items checked for when you send an inquiry to the i-mode Center by "Check new messages". You can specify whether to check for "Mail" (i-mode mail), "MessageR" and "MessageF".

- A deselected checkbox (☐) denotes that the FOMA terminal will not check for that item.

1   ▶ "Connection setting" ▶
"Set check new messages"

2 Use  to select a checkbox (☐)
▶  (Finish)

● Rules used for reading out mail

The read out mail function generally follows the rules given below when reading out received mail.

■ Symbols, special characters and pictographs

- Symbols, special characters and pictographs are not read out, except for certain symbols.
- * The FOMA terminal may be unable to correctly read out sentences that include symbols, special characters or pictographs.

■ Numbers

- The FOMA terminal will read out numbers up to 16 digits long.

E.g.: 1234 → "Sen nihyaku sanju yon"

■ Monetary amounts

- If a currency symbol (e.g. "¥" (double-byte or single-byte character)) is placed at the beginning of a number up to 16 digits long, the FOMA terminal reads out the number as a monetary amount.

If commas (,) are used as a delimiting character in an input string, the FOMA will recognize the string as a monetary amount only if the commas are used every 3 digits.

E.g.: ¥ 12345  "Ichiman nisen sanbyaku yonju go en"
¥ 12,345

■ Phone number

- If numbers are delimited by hyphens (-) or parentheses (()) in the patterns listed below, the FOMA terminal reads them out as phone numbers but not as sequences of digits. The FOMA terminal will also read numbers preceded by "Tel:" as phone numbers.

E.g. Tel: 0120-102-001 → "Teru zeroichinzero ichizeroni zerozeroichi"

land line			
XX-XXXX-XXXX	XXX-XXX-XXXX	XXXX-XX-XXXX	XXXXX-X-XXXX
(XX)XXX-XXXX	(XXX)XX-XXXX	(XXX)XX-XXXX	(XXXX)X-XXXX
XX(XXX)XXX	XX(XX)XXX	XXX(XX)XXX	XXXX(X)XXXX
XXXX-XXXX	XXX-XXXX	XX-XXXX	X-XXXX
Mobile phone			
XXX-XXXX-XXXX	XXXX-XXX-XXXX	(XXX)XXXX-XXXX	(XXXX)XXX-XXXX
XXX(XXX)XXX	XXXX(XXX)XXX		
Toll-free			
XXXX-XXX-XXX	XXXX-XXXXXX		

* "X" indicates a number.

Setting the voice to read out received mails

- The FOMA terminal cannot read out SMS report (p.288), mail without messages, mail only including attached melodies or URLs for an i-appli activation, or Deco-mail without messages.
- The FOMA terminal cannot read out mail during a voice call or Push-to-Talk call, while running the music player or during 64K data communication.

1 Mail settings screen (p.279)
▶ "Read out setting" ▶ "Select voice" ▶ Select a voice

■ Time

- Numbers separated by a colon (:) are read out as time*. If the hour component is a 1- or 2-digit number and the minute component is a 2-digit number, the number is read out as time. If "AM" or "PM" is added before or after the number, it is read out before the number.

"Hour": "Minute" ("Hour" = 0-29; "Minute" = 00-59) E.g. 23:15 → "Nijusanji jugofun"
AM "Hour": "Minute" or "Hour": "Minute" AM ("Hour" = 0-12; "Minute" = 00-59) E.g. AM 5:05 → "Gozen goji gofun"
PM "Hour": "Minute" or "Hour": "Minute" PM ("Hour" = 0-12; "Minute" = 00-59) E.g. PM 5:05 → "Gogo goji gofun"

* The time entered in the format of "Hour": "Minute": "Second" (e.g. 23:15:10) is not read out.

■ Date

- Numbers separated by a slash (/) or a period (.) are read out as time. If "M", "T", "S" or "H" (upper case) is inserted before a date, the corresponding (Japanese) era name is read out.

"Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0-9999; "Month" = 1-12; "Day" = 1-31) E.g.: 2006/9/22 2006/09/22 2006.9.22 2006.09.22 — "Nisenrokunen kugatsu nijuuniniti"
"M" "Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "M" "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0-99; "Month" = 1-12; "Day" = 1-31) E.g. M10/04/20 → "Meiji junen shigatsu hatsuka"
"T" "Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "T" "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0-99; "Month" = 1-12; "Day" = 1-31) E.g. T8.10.15 → "Taishou hachinen jugatsu jugonichi"
"S" "Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "S" "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0-99; "Month" = 1-12; "Day" = 1-31) E.g. S50.3.6 → "Shouwa gojunen sangatsu muika"
"H" "Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "H" "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0-99; "Month" = 1-12; "Day" = 1-31) E.g. H17.10.3 → "Heisei junanenan jugatsu mikka"

- The above formats for numbers, monetary amounts, phone numbers, time and date can also be used with double-byte characters.
- When monetary amounts, phone numbers, time or date are read out and the string read out is immediately preceded or followed by any of the characters shown below, the numbers will not be delimited correctly. When you want to have monetary amounts, phone numbers, time or date read out correctly, you should use a space as the delimiting character before and after the item.
0-9, A-Z (upper case), colon (:), ¥, slash (/), period (.), hyphen (-) (single-byte/double-byte)

■ Symbols

- The FOMA terminal can read out the symbols shown below. (These symbols are read out as shown when used with numbers.)

\$ (dollars) → doru	% (percent) → paasento	¥ (yen) → en	° (degrees) → do
℃ (degrees) → do	¥ (yen) → en	\$ (dollars) → doru	% (percent) → paasento
ミリ (mm) → miri	キロ (kilograms) → kiro	センチ (cm) → senchi	メートル (meters) → meetoru
グラム (grams) → guramu	トン (tons) → ton	アール (ares) → aaru	ヘクタール (hectares) → hekutaaru
リットル (liter) → rittoru	ワット (watts) → watto	カロリー (calories) → karorii	ドル (dollars) → doru
セント (cent) → sento	パーセント (percent) → paasento	ミリバール (millibars) → miribaaru	ページ (pages) → peeji
ミリ (millimeters) → mirimeetoru	センチメートル (centimeters) → senchimeetoru	キロメートル (kilometers) → kiromeetoru	ミリグラム (milligrams) → miriguramu
キロ (kilograms) → kiroguramu	シーシー (cc) → siisii	メートル ² (square meters) → heihoumeetoru	

■ Others

- Alphabetic letters are read out in alphabet reading, but may be read otherwise in certain combinations.
- Depending on the content of a sentence or description (particularly where place names or proper nouns are used), the FOMA terminal may not read out the sentence or may read it out incorrectly.
- Mail is not read out in a natural voice. In some cases the sounds or stress may be difficult to understand.
- Items such as punctuation marks (periods and commas), line feeds and spaces serve as separators for passages read out, except where a period (.) or comma (,) is preceded and/or followed by numbers. In text that has no delimiting punctuation, reading is paused automatically. Depending on the content being read out, there may be a pause before the FOMA terminal starts speaking. The FOMA terminal may also be unable to correctly read out passages where kanji characters are used. To ensure that the content of your received mail is read out correctly, you should recommend the following guidelines to people with whom you frequently correspond:
 - Compose your e-mail using katakana for nouns, particularly proper nouns such as place names and personal names.
 - Use punctuation marks when composing mails.

Setting Emotion/Keyword for emotion-expressing mail <Emotion/Keyword notice>

Default setting	Disp emotion: ON Disp keyword: OFF

You can specify whether to display the emotion-expressing mail icons when receiving i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS. You can also set to use icons for notifying you of the received mails containing the keywords specified.

- “Emotion-expressing mail” → p.260

1 Mail settings screen

(p.279)▶ “Emotion/Keyword notice”

The “Emotion/Keyword notice” screen appears.



■ To use “Disp emotion”

- ▶ Select the checkbox (☐) of “Disp emotion”

The checkbox is checked (☒) and an emotion-expressing mail icon is displayed when you receive a mail. [Function menu▶p.283](#)

■ To use “Disp keyword”

- ▶ Select the checkbox (☐) of “Disp keyword”▶ Enter one keyword or more
- The checkbox is checked (☒) and when you receive a mail containing the strings entered in “keyword”, the corresponding emotion-expressing mail icon is displayed. Enter at least one keyword (available for entering up to 3 keywords consisting of 15 double-byte or 30 single-byte characters).

2 (Finish)

Function menu (Emotion/Keyword screen)

Delete keyword	Deletes the selected keyword.
Delete all keyword	Deletes all the keywords specified.

NOTE

- ♦ Changing or deleting the keywords also deletes the keyword icons displayed on received mail list screen, etc.

Resetting your mail function settings <Reset>

1 Mail settings screen (p.279)▶

- “Reset”▶ Enter your security code
- ▶ “YES”

<Compose chat/Send>

Composing and Sending Chat Mail

This allows you to exchange mail with several people just as if you were having a normal conversation.

- You cannot launch Chat mail in the following situations:
 - When “ON” is selected in “Receive option”
 - If your Inbox is full of saved mail
- The communication fee for sending chat mail to several people is the same as sending a mail with multiple recipients. → p.246
- You can set a ring tone specifically for chat mail. When you receive multiple items of mail that includes chat mail, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for chat mail.

Selecting chat session members <Chat member>

Use this procedure to select the people you want to chat with.

- 1 menu▶ (F)▶ “Chat mail”▶ (F)▶ “Chat member”

The “Chat member” screen appears. For details of the subsequent procedure, see “Refer address” in the Chat member function menu list.



[Function menu▶p.283](#)

Function menu (Chat member screen)

You can register up to 6 chat session members (including yourself).

Edit	Enters and registers the e-mail addresses of chat session members other than yourself.
Refer address	■ If no address is stored ▶ Select any item ■ When the address is recorded ▶ “YES”▶ Select any item Enter the chat member's mail address from the phonebook or history.
• Phonebook	Enters an e-mail address from the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.116
• Sent address	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
• Received address	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.

Change member	"Changing chat session members" → p.284
Add chat group	Adds the current chat member to the chat group at a time.
Display setting	Displays the details of the chat session member settings.
Delete	Deletes a selected chat session member other than yourself.
Delete all	Deletes all the chat session members other than yourself.

NOTE

<Edit>

- ◆ If the added e-mail address is registered in a chat group, the member's name is displayed. If the address is not registered in a chat group but registered in the phonebook, up to 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters of the name stored in the phonebook are displayed. If the address is not registered in the phonebook, up to 8 single-byte characters of the address are displayed.

<Refer address (Phonebook)>

- ◆ If you change an e-mail address of the registered chat member by searching it in the phonebook, the name of a person and an image file (if an image is registered) on the phonebook is used for the chat member screen.

<Display setting>

- ◆ If you display your own details, your e-mail address is not shown.

<Delete> <Delete all>

- ◆ You cannot delete yourself.

● Changing chat session members

- 1 Chat member screen (p.283)▶**
 (FUNC)▶ "Change member"▶ Select any item

Chat group	Select the member to be replaced from the group list or member list.
• Group list	▶Select "Chat group"
• Member list	▶Use  to select a checkbox ()▶  (Finish)
Mail member	▶Select a mail member

NOTE

- ◆ If you receive chat mail from a group member who has been deleted from the list of chat group members, the chat mail does not appear on the chat screen. Even if you select "Quit" without deleting the chat mail, it is not displayed on the chat screen when starting the next chat mail, but saved as an i-mode mail.

Composing and Sending Chat Mail

Use this procedure to compose and send a new chat mail message.

- 1** ▶▶ "Chat mail"

The "Chat" screen appears.

- 2** ▶ **Enter your message▶**

 (Send)

You can send up to 250 double-byte characters from the chat screen.

When sending is completed, your message appears in the latest message area.

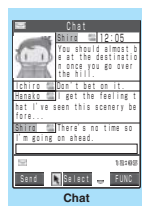
To send another message, repeat step 2.

■ If message transmission fails

The latest message area turns gray and your message remains displayed in the text editing area, so you can simply resend the failed chat mail message.

■ To end a chat mail session

▶ Chat function menu▶ "Quit"



Function menu▶ p.284

Latest message area

NOTE

- ◆ Attached and pasted files are not displayed.
- ◆ Sent and received chat mail is stored in the "Chat" folder. To resend chat mail, send it from the "Chat" folder.
- ◆ The subject used for chat mail you send is "チャットメール" (single-byte characters).
- ◆ Chat mail received in the chat screen is marked as read in the "Chat" folder.
- ◆ If you receive i-mode mail while a chat mail is running, the reception results screen does not appear.
- ◆ Even in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, chat mails stored in Secret folders are not displayed on the chat screen.

Function menu (Chat screen)

Send	Sends chat mail.
Select receiver	▶Use  to select a checkbox ()▶  (Finish)
Chat member	"Selecting chat session members" → p.283
Broadcast address	"Adding chat session members by referring to broadcast mail" → p.285
Refresh	Receives the chat mail held at the i-mode Center.
View first line	Displays the most recent message in the latest message area
View last line	Displays the oldest message in the latest message area.

Delete read	Deletes the read and unprotected chat mail you have sent and received.
Quit	Selects whether to delete a chat mail message, and then quits the chat mail.

NOTE**<Delete read>**

- ◆ This option also deletes chat mail that could not be sent.

<Quit>

- ◆ The unsent chat mails are deleted when quitting a chat mail.
- ◆ To quit a chat mail without deleting the chat mail, select "NO" after you select "Quit".
- ◆ If you quit chat without deleting the chat mail, the sent and received chat mail is saved in the "Chat" folder in the Outbox screen and Inbox screen respectively.
- ◆ Chat mails failed to send are stored in the "Chat" folder under the Outbox list.
- ◆ If you did not delete the chat mails at the end of a session, the chat mail appear in the message record area in reverse chronological order at the start of next session.
- ◆ When closing the chat screen, you can delete all chat mails. In this case, chat mails are deleted from the chat folder as well. However, a protected chat mail is not deleted.

● Adding chat session members by referring to broadcast mail

- You can use this function only for the broadcast mail from the FOMA terminal supporting to the chat mail.

1 Chat screen (p.284) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Broadcast address" ▶ "YES" ▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish)

- When all the addresses are for chat session members

▶ "Broadcast address" ▶ "OK"

Receiving chat mail

<Chat mail recv.>

If you receive a chat mail while chat is not running, the  icon appears on the FOMA terminal's standby screen. Selecting this icon launches a chat mail so that you can start using it.

- Chat mail can display up to 250 double-byte characters (or 500 single-byte characters).
- If a file is attached to a received chat mail, only the message body is displayed in the chat screen.
- If you launch chat by selecting  or by selecting "Chat" from the function menu in the received mail detail screen, the chat session members and recipients change as follows:

- When the sender's e-mail address was set in the list of chat session member, the session members from the last time you quit a chat session are again set. However, if you launched chat from the received mail detail screen, session members in the recipients list other than the sender are excluded. If you select  and the sender's e-mail address is not specified as a recipient, it is added to the list of recipients in accordance with the "Select receiver" setting.
- If the sender's e-mail address is not set as a chat session member but is registered in a chat group, all the members of the chat group to which the sender belongs are set as chat session members. Note that members on the recipients list other than the sender are not included as recipients.
- If the sender's e-mail address is not set as a chat session member and is not registered in a chat group, only the sender's e-mail address is set as a chat session member.
- Set "3D display setting" to "ON" and select the desktop icon of a new mail, and an icon expressing the emotion that matches the message body is displayed as animations.

1 On the standby screen



- When the sender is not registered as a chat session member

▶ "YES"

A message appears asking whether to delete the chat members and launch a chat mail. Select "YES" to change the current chat members and launch a chat mail.

- To remain the currently specified chat members

▶ "NO"

The current chat session member settings are retained and the Mail menu screen appears.



Standby

2 Start chat mail

Received chat mail appears in the latest message area. If you have undeleted chat mail, it appears in the message record area in reverse chronological order.

NOTE

- ◆ The FOMA terminal recognizes the mails as a Chat mail when it meets the following criteria:
 - The subject line includes "チャットメール" (all single-byte or all double-byte characters)
 - The sender's or recipient's e-mail address is registered as a chat member or chat group
 - When it is not mail-connected i-oppli
 - When it is not Deco-mail
 - When it is not SMS

- ◆ You cannot use Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To function on the chat screen. You can use those functions in the mail screen that you opened from Inbox.

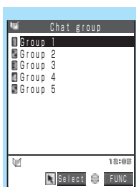
Registering Chat Session Members in a Chat Group

Registering proposed chat session members in a chat group beforehand simplifies the task of registering chat session members.

- You can register up to 5 people in a chat group. You do not need to register yourself.
- You can register up to 5 chat groups.
- You cannot register the same chat session member in more than 1 chat group.
- When you register a chat session member in a chat group, you can edit that member's name and set an image for him or her.

1 "Chat group"

The "Chat group" screen appears.



Function menu▶p.286

2 Select a chat group

The "group member list" screen appears.

3 Highlight "<Not stored>" and press (Edit)▶ Enter the e-mail address▶

Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered for the mail address.

To store more e-mail addresses, simply repeat steps 2 and 3.

■ To enter a mail address by looking up the phonebook

▶ "<Not stored>"▶ "Phonebook"▶ Select the search method▶ Select a mail address you want to enter

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.116



Function menu▶p.286

NOTE

- ◆ If your i-mode address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp" for registration to Chat member, enter only phone number. If your address is an e-mail address, you can use either letters preceded before @ (at mark) or the entire address including "@docomo.ne.jp".

- ◆ The first 8 characters of the registered e-mail address are set as the member name. If the registered e-mail address is stored in the phonebook, the first 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters of the name stored in the phonebook are set. The registered image is also set if it is stored on the phonebook.

Function menu (Chat group list screen)

Active chat	Sets the member of the chat group as a chat member and launches a chat mail.
Edit group name	▶ Edit a group name Edits a group name. You can enter the title up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Reset group name	Resets the group name to the default.

Function menu (group member list screen)

Edit	▶ Enter the e-mail address Edits the e-mail address. Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered.
Refer address	■ When no addresses are recorded ▶ Select any item ■ When the address is recorded ▶ "YES"▶ Select any item Enters the group member's mail address from the phonebook or history.
• Phonebook	Enters mail addresses from a phonebook detail list screen. The registered name and image are stored in the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.116
• Sent address	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
• Received address	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
Change member	■ If no member is registered ▶ "Mail member"▶ Select a mail member ■ If a member is registered ▶ "Mail member"▶ "YES"▶ Select a mail member
Member setting	"Setting member details"→p.287
Delete this	Deletes the mail address of the highlighted group member.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the members in the selected group.

● Setting member details

1 Group member list screen (p.286)▶

☰ (FUNC)▶“Member setting”▶

☰ (FUNC)▶Select any item

Edit member name	▶ Enter a name Edits a member name. Name can consist of up to 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters.
Set image	Selects the image shown for each member in the chat screen. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.
• Inbox	Selects an image stored in the Inbox.
• Camera	Selects an image shot using your FOMA terminal.
• Pre-installed	Selects an image pre-installed on the FOMA terminal. Choose from “Beans”, “Sunday”, “Momo”, “Bitter”, “P-tan” and “Tong · Tong”.
Set voice (default: Female 1)	Selects a voice to be used for reading chat mail in the chat screen, from “Female 1”, “Female 2”, “Male 1”, “Male 2” or “Robot”.

NOTE

<Edit member name>

- ◆ If there is no member name entered, the first 8 characters of the e-mail address are set as the member name.

<Set Image>

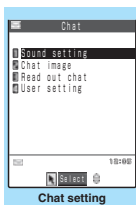
- ◆ You cannot change the background color.

Specifying the chat mail settings

1 Mail settings screen (p.279)▶“Chat”

The “Chat setting” screen appears.

2 Select any item



Sound setting	Sets the tone sounded in the chat screen when new chat mail is received or chat mail is sent. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.
• Inbox	Selects a melody downloaded from an i-mode site or website.
• Pre-installed	Select the chat sound from “Alarm 1” to “Alarm 3”.
• Voice announce	Selects the notification tone from the recorded melody or ring tone in “Voice announce”.
• OFF	No notification tone sounds.

Chat image (default: ON)	Sets whether to display an image in the latest message area.
Read out chat (default: OFF)	Sets whether to read out new chat mail on the chat screen.
User setting	“Setting user details”→p.287

NOTE

<Sound setting>

- ◆ The notification tone does not sound when you receive chat mail from someone who is not a registered chat group member

● Setting user details

1 Chat setting screen (p.287)▶“User setting”▶Select any item

Name	▶ Enter a user name Enters a user name. Name can consist of up to 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters.
Image	Selects the image you want to display on the chat screen. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.
• Inbox	Selects an image stored in the Inbox.
• Camera	Selects an image shot using your FOMA terminal.
• Pre-installed	Selects an image pre-installed on the FOMA terminal. Choose from “Beans”, “Sunday”, “Momo”, “Bitter”, “P-tan” and “Tong · Tong”.
Voice (default: Female 1)	Selects a voice to be used for reading chat mail on the chat screen, from “Female 1”, “Female 2”, “Male 1”, “Male 2” or “Robot”.

NOTE

<Name>

- ◆ If you leave the name blank or enter only spaces, “Own” is used.

<Image>

- ◆ You cannot change the background color.

Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)

- This service allows you to exchange text messages with subscribers to overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. For information on the supported country and the supported overseas carriers, refer to the DoCoMo website.

1 “Compose SMS”

The “New SMS” screen appears.



Function menu→p.289

2 “To” Select the address entry method

You can only enter 1 SMS recipient.

Phonebook	Enters the phone number by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.116
Sent address^{*1}	Enters the phone number from the Sent address list.
Received address^{*2}	Enters the phone number from the received address list.
Enter address	Enters the phone number directly.

*1 : “Sent address list” can be displayed by pressing on the “New SMS” screen as well.

*2 : “Received address list” can be displayed by pressing on the “New SMS” screen as well.

■ If the recipient is using an overseas carrier other than DoCoMo

▶Enter + (hold down the key for 1 second or longer) - the country code - the other party's mobile phone number

If the mobile phone number begins with a zero (0), omit the zero.

You can also send SMS by entering in order of “010” - “Country code” - “the other party's mobile phone number” (To reply to SMS received from overseas, enter “010” to send overseas).

■ To change the entered recipient

▶Enter an address▶Select the address entry method

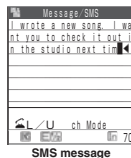
If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data, select “YES”.

In the following situations, SMS cannot be sent to the entered phone number:

- When it includes characters other than numbers, asterisks “X” or hash symbols (#)
- When it includes “+” as second or later character
- When it includes a space

3 “”

The “SMS message” screen appears.



4 Enter message body

The numbers and types of characters that can be entered in the message entry screen are as specified in the “SMS input character” settings (p.289). If “Japanese” input is selected, you can enter up to 70 double-byte or single-byte characters in all. If “English” input is selected, you can enter up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

Spaces are also counted in the same way as characters.

You can use the “Enter address” function menu (p.448) while entering a message.

5 (Send)

An animation is displayed while the SMS is being sent. Select “OK” to return to the Mail menu screen.

Editing sent and unsent SMS→p.277

● SMS (Short Message) reports <Disp. SMS report>

If “ON” is selected in “SMS report request” (p.289), you receive an SMS report after you send an SMS. SMS reports are saved in the Inbox along with the sent SMS, enabling you to check whether the message successfully reached the recipient.

To view an SMS with an SMS report (), select “Disp. SMS report” from the function menu.

You can also view an SMS report by selecting the SMS report in the received mail list screen. SMS reports are indicated by “ SMS report” in the subject line.

NOTE

- ◆ If you exceed the limit on the number of sent mail messages (total SMS and i-mode mail messages) that can be stored on the FOMA terminal, sent mail is automatically deleted starting with the oldest message. Note that the following mails are not deleted: sent mails in protected, or i-mode mails and SMS in the Secret folders.
- ◆ Depending on the signal quality, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly.
- ◆ Even when “Caller ID Notification” is set to “OFF”, your caller ID is provided to the recipient during SMS transmission.
- ◆ If additional number of the multi number is set to the default dial number, SMS cannot be sent. Set the default dial number to Basic Number.
- ◆ You can insert a line feed while editing the message text. The line feed symbol is counted as 2 characters in Japanese input mode and as 1 character in double-byte alphanumeric input mode.
- ◆ Some characters cannot be properly displayed at the received side depending on the font type to be sent or terminal at the sending side. → p.243

Function menu (New SMS screen)

Send	Send SMS
Preview	Allows you to check the SMS recipient and message before sending it.
Save	Saves the SMS you are currently editing in Draft. You can save up to 20 mails in total for SMS and i-mode mails. SMS saved by this function can be sent later.
SMS report req. (default: OFF)	Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS. Select "ON" or "OFF".
SMS valid. per. (default: 3 days)	Sets how long an SMS is stored at the SMS center when the SMS cannot be received. Select "None", "1 day", "2 days" or "3 days".
SMS input char. (default: Japanese)	Sets the SMS body character input method. Up to 70 of all double-byte and/or single-byte characters can be entered for Japanese. Up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered for English.
Erase message	Only the message body is deleted.
Delete	The SMS being edited is deleted.

NOTE

- ◆ If you set "SMS input char.", "SMS report req." or "SMS valid. per." in the mail settings screen, the setting is retained when the FOMA terminal is turned off. However, the "SMS input char.", "SMS report req." or "SMS valid. per." set in the function menu is only valid for the current SMS.
- ◆ If "SMS valid. per." is set to "None", an attempt continues to be made to resend an SMS for a given time, then the SMS is deleted from the SMS center.

<Receive SMS>

When you Receive an SMS (Short Message)

When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, SMS is automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the SMS Center.

- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 1,000 SMS and/or i-mode mail in all.

- 1 When you receive an SMS, the " (white)" icon flashes and the "Mail Receiving..." message appears



After receiving is completed, the number of messages appears for the received SMS or i-mode, MessageR and MessageF on the reception results screen.

When "Mail" is selected, the received mail list screen appears.

No operation for about 15 seconds returns to the previous screen. The display time for the receive result screen depends on the "Mail/Msg. ring time" setting.

The ring tone volume conforms to the setting of "Mail" under "Ring volume".

NOTE

- ◆ If the total number of received i-mode mail messages (both i-mode and SMS) stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds 1,000 or the storage limit even if the number of messages does not reach 1,000, received mail is automatically replaced starting with the mail in the trash box and the oldest message. Note that the following mails are not deleted: unread mails, received mails in protected or i-mode mails and SMS in the Secret folders. You should protect any important received mail that you want to keep. → pp.274, 276
- ◆ If the " (red)" icon is displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any further i-mode mail or SMS. To receive a new mail or message, delete the unnecessary i-mode or SMS, or read the unread i-mode or SMS until those icons no longer appear. The mails or messages are overwritten starting with the oldest one as a new mail or message is received.
- ◆ When you receive multiple mails (i-mode and/or SMS) at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp pattern set for the last item of mail received.
- ◆ If you receive short mail sent from the phone such as a mova terminal, the sender's phone number is displayed. If the caller ID is not provided, the reason is displayed.
- ◆ If you receive SMS while playing an i-motion, the video and sound may be interrupted.

<Priority sequence for ring tone and incoming call lamp operations>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows for ring tone and illumination when you receive SMS.
 - ① "Discern connect" specified for each phone number → p.122
 - ② "Discern group" specified for each group → p.122
 - ③ "Select ring tone" → p.128, "Illumination" → p.147

Viewing received SMS (Short Message)

- For received SMS, the beginning of the message is displayed as the subject in the received mail list screen.
- For received SMS reports, "SMS report" is displayed as the subject of the received mail list screen.
- For Voice Mail notices, "Noticecall voicemail" is displayed as the subject of the received mail list screen.
- Set "3D display setting" to "ON" and select the desktop icon of a new mail, and an icon expressing the emotion that matches the message body is displayed as animations.

1 On the standby screen



Selecting the " (white) " icon displays the unread mail list.

The function menu of the unread mail list screen is the same as that of the received mail list screen (p.273).



NOTE

- If a received SMS includes double-byte characters that are not listed in the kuten code table, those characters are shown as blanks (spaces).
- The phone number of the sender of the displayed SMS is highlighted. Pressing in highlighted condition makes a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call to the displayed number (Phone To/AV Phone To function). If the sender's phone number is stored in the phonebook, the stored "Name" is highlighted. In that case, you can call the sender in the same way.

Replying and forwarding to received SMS (Short Message)

You can forward SMS and send a reply to the sender.

- You cannot enter a subject.
"Replying by composing a new message"→p.262

NOTE

- You cannot reply to an SMS by quoting the received message.
- You cannot reply to an SMS when the sender has withheld his or her caller ID (User unset) or is sending from a pay phone (Payphone) or a phone that does not support Caller ID Notification (Not support).
- You cannot forward or reply to an SMS report.
- You cannot reply to Voice Mail notices.
- If you reply to or forward an SMS on the FOMA card (UIM), the " (white) " remains on the received mail list screen and received mail detail screen and the " (white) " icon does not appear.

<Check SMS>

Checking for SMS (Short Message)

- SMS that arrive at the SMS Center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal, but are held at the Center if the FOMA terminal is turned off, if you are outside the service area, if the FOMA terminal is in Self mode, or if the FOMA terminal's memory is full.

1 "Check new SMS"

"SMS Checking..." is displayed while you check for new SMS. Once the FOMA terminal has sent the inquiry, the message informing that the inquiry has done appears. Press .

If there are any messages held at the SMS Center, automatic receiving begins.

In some cases, automatic receiving may not begin immediately after the inquiry is sent.

NOTE

- Depending on the signal status, you may not check new message or interrupt your checking.
- This function is not available for receiving the i-mode mails or MessageR/MessageF. To receive an i-mode mail or MessageR/MessageF, use "Check new messages".

<SMS settings>

Specifying SMS (Short Message) Settings

Specifying the SMS (Short Message) center setting

Default setting
DoCoMo

*** There is normally no need to change this setting.**

Use this setting to specify whether the FOMA terminal uses the DoCoMo SMS Center or another provider's SMS center for SMS.

<Example: To use another provider's SMS center>

1 "Connection setting"▶ "SMS center selection"▶ Select any item

DoCoMo	Uses the DoCoMo SMS Center.
User setting	▶ Enter the SMS center address▶ "International" or "Unknown" Uses another provider's SMS center.
Reset	▶ Enter your security code▶ "YES" Deletes the "User setting" data and resets the setting to "DoCoMo".

NOTE

- If the entered SMS Center address includes "#" or "X", you cannot select "International".

<UIM operation>

Saving SMS (Short Message) to your FOMA Card (UIM)

This function allows you to move or copy SMS stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) to your FOMA card (UIM). You can also use this function to move or copy SMS stored on your FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone).

- The FOMA card (UIM) will hold up to 20 received or sent SMS.

Moving or copying SMS (Short Message) to the FOMA card (UIM)

<Example: Moving an SMS from the Inbox to the FOMA card (UIM)>

- 1   "Inbox" ▶ Select a folder
▶ Highlight SMS ▶  (FUNC) ▶ "UIM operation" ▶ Select any item

Move to UIM	Moves SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM).
Copy to UIM	Copies SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM).

NOTE

- ◆ Received or sent SMS that moved or copied to the FOMA card (UIM) is displayed in the Inbox or Outbox folder.
- ◆ If there appears ", " (white)" or " (red)" icons, you cannot move or copy SMS.
- ◆ You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM).
If you move or copy the protected SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the protection is removed from the SMS on the FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ If you remove the battery pack, the dates and times for sent SMS stored on the FOMA card (UIM) are erased and they appear at the end of the list. However, if an SMS report is stored with the sent SMS, the date and time are not erased.

Moving or copying SMS (Short Message) on the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone)

<Example: Moving an SMS from the FOMA card (UIM) to the Inbox>

- 1   "Inbox" ▶ Select a folder
▶ Highlight SMS ▶  (FUNC) ▶ "UIM operation" ▶ Select any item

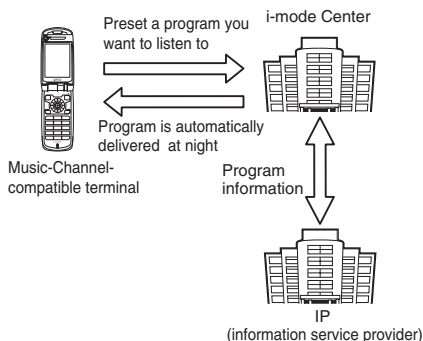
Move from UIM	Moves SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM) to a FOMA terminal (Phone).
Copy from UIM	Copies SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM) to a FOMA terminal (Phone).

● Music Channel/Music Playback

What is Music Channel?	294
Setting Programs	294
Playing a Program	295
Using Music Player	Music player 298
Playing Music.....	298
Moving Chaku-Uta-Full® to the miniSD Memory Card	Move contents 304
Saving SD-Audio Data to the miniSD Memory Card	304
Using Assist Key to Play Music.....	305

What is Music Channel?

Music Channel is a service which automatically delivers a program of maximum of about one hour at night by just setting your favorite music program in advance. Programs are updated regularly and you can enjoy the delivered program at your convenient time such as on commuting.



- Music Channel is a pay service you need to subscribe to (To subscribe to the Music Channel, you need to subscribe to i-mode and Pake-Houdai beforehand).
- Additional charges may apply for some programs besides the Music Channel service fee.
- For precautions or details on how to use Music Channel, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.
- If you use the FOMA card (UIM) on a non-Music Channel-compatible FOMA terminal after you subscribe to the Music Channel, you cannot use the Music Channel service. Note that the service fee applies unless you cancel the Music Channel subscription.

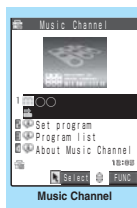
■ Important

- Stored data such as programs may be lost through damage or repair on your FOMA terminal. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on the FOMA terminal.

Setting Programs

If you set a program that you want to listen to, the FOMA terminal automatically downloads the program data at night.

- 1 **On the standby screen** ▶ “Music Channel” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.297

- 2 **Select “Set program”**
- 3 **Follow the on-screen instructions to set a program**

For more information, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.

NOTE

- ◆ You can set one program at once.
- ◆ You need to register a site of Music Channel program in your My Menu to set the program. → p.220
- ◆ If you are not currently subscribed to the Music Channel, a message appears on the step 2 screen to show that you are not subscribed to the Music Channel. On this screen, you can choose “About Music Channel” to see the Music Channel information page. You can also choose “ドコモe サイトへ” (Go to DoCoMo e-site) (available only in Japanese) to subscribe to the Music Channel.
- ◆ You can also display the “Music Channel” screen with the following operation.

- [MENU] ▶ [LifeKit] ▶ “Music Channel”

● Checking/canceling the set program

- 1 **Music Channel screen (p.294)**

▶ “Set program” ▶ Follow the on-screen instructions

You can check or cancel a program being set. For more information, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.

NOTE

- ◆ Even if the setting of a program is canceled, My Menu is not deleted.

When a program is set

- “” appears on the standby screen 12 hours before the download begins.



- The FOMA terminal automatically downloads a program at night, and the desktop icon, “Music Channel Update” appears on the screen when successfully downloaded. Select the desktop icon to display the Music Channel screen.



NOTE

- ◆ If the FOMA terminal is out of service area when the automatic download of a program is started, or the communication is discontinued during program downloading, the data will be automatically downloaded after three minutes (the terminal will repeat this maximum of five times).
- ◆ Ring tone/vibration does not notify you when the FOMA terminal starts/completes downloads. The incoming call lamp does not light/flash either.
- ◆ You can save one program at a time. When the FOMA terminal downloads a new program, the previous program is deleted and you cannot play the program anymore.
- ◆ You cannot copy or move a downloaded program to Data box.
- ◆ You cannot save a downloaded program on any external memory.
- ◆ The downloaded program cannot be deleted.
- ◆ Downloading the programs may take long and charge the battery enough to use the terminal in good radio wave condition.
- ◆ The reasons the download fails are as follows: "Out of range", "The power is off", "The battery is low", "Manually interrupted during download", "Some combinations of Multitask or multi access", etc. If the download fails due to one of these, it will be attempted again next night.
- ◆ You cannot retrieve a program whose playback limit is expired. Such a program cannot be renewed until the next distribution date.
- ◆ If you insert another FOMA card (UIM) than the one you used when you set a program, the FOMA terminal cannot download the program automatically. Set the program again from the Music Channel screen.
- ◆ If you insert the FOMA card (UIM) of the FOMA terminal that you have already set a program into another Music-Channel-compatible FOMA terminal, the FOMA terminal cannot download the program automatically. Select "Set program" again from the Music Channel screen to automatically renew the program entry on the FOMA terminal and download the program automatically.

Icons on Music Channel screen

The icons on the Music Channel screen indicate the download status.

Icon	Description
	Successfully downloaded program
	Successfully downloaded program with playback restriction*
	Partially downloaded program
	Partially downloaded program with playback restriction*
	Download failed
	Access information (URL) is included

* : " " turns to " " when the playback count reaches the limit or playback period expires.

Downloading a program manually

If download of a program failed and the "Music Channel Update Failed" desktop icon ("X") appears, you can download the program manually.

1 Music Channel screen (p.294)

▶Select a program▶"YES"

NOTE

- ◆ The "Music Channel Update Failed" desktop icon disappears when the "Music Channel" screen is displayed again. Even though the desktop icon disappears, you can download manually if there is program data which you failed to obtain.
- ◆ If a program download is cancelled, the part of the program that has been downloaded before cancelled is saved. The download of the rest of the program can be resumed manually except for certain hours.
- ◆ You cannot retrieve a program whose playback limit is expired twice. Such a program cannot be renewed until the next distribution date.
- ◆ You may not download a program manually depending on the time you access the i-mode Center.

Playing a Program**1 On the standby screen▶**

The "Music Channel" screen appears.

2 Select a program

The "Music Channel playback" screen appears to play the program.
Operations during playback
→ p.296



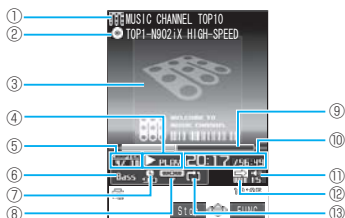
Function menu▶p.296

NOTE

- ◆ If the attached stereo earphone (sample) is connected to the FOMA terminal, the sound comes out only from the earphone regardless of the "Earphone" setting.
- ◆ If you select a program that you end the playback halfway last time, the program starts from the beginning of the chapter that was playing when you end the playback last time.
- ◆ The program keeps playing if you fold the FOMA terminal during playback. The image display shows information about the program being played. → p.306
- ◆ Some program are restricted to be played. " " appears at the beginning of the title for the program with restrictions on the play count, period or time limit. The program restricted on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period.
- ◆ "Program information" → p.297
- ◆ If you select a program partially retrieved, a message appears asking whether to start downloading the rest of the program or to start playing the part already downloaded.
- ◆ Following the steps below also displays the "Music Channel" screen:

• (LifeKit) ▶ "Music Channel"

Guide to the Music Channel playback screen



- ① Program title
- ② Chapter title-Artist
- ③ Chapter image/Program image
- ④ Playback status
▶ **PLAY** : Playing ⏸ **PAUSE** : Pausing
⏭ **FF** : Skipping forward ⏮ **REW** : Skipping backward
- ⑤ Chapter No. (in the program)
- ⑥ Sound quality
Sound quality set in "Equalizer set." (p.296)
EQ **OFF** : OFF
Bass : Bass **Treble** : Treble **Treble Reducer** : Treble Reducer
Pop / **Jazz** / **Rock** / **Techno** / **Classical** : Each genre
Speech : Speech
- ⑦ Off timer
Time set in "Off timer" (p.296)
- ⑧ Sound effects
Sound effects level from OFF or level 1 to 20.
- ⑨ Playback position display
A grey marker indicates the current playback position. If you move the marker using ⏮ (HOME) during pause and then press ⏭ (MEMO/CHECK), the music can be played from the position (The position can be specified within the range of a chapter during playback).
- ⑩ Time elapsed/Total playback time (Minute:Second)
- ⑪ Volume
Volume level from 1 to 20. **MUTE** appears during mute.
- ⑫ Web To function
Accesses to the URL included in the program data.
- ⑬ Repeat playback
Whether the program is repeatedly played is displayed.
 appears during repeat playback and appears when repeat playback is not selected.

Operations on the Music Channel playback screen

You can perform the following operations during Music Channel playback:

Control keys	Operation
⏸	Pauses/resumes playback.
⏮ (HOME), ⏭ (MEMO/CHECK)	Adjusts volume.
⏮ (or ⏮ (HOME) for 1 second or longer)	Plays from the beginning of the chapter. Plays the previous chapter when pressing the key from the beginning of the chapter within 1 second ^{*1} .

Control keys	Operation
⏮ (or ⏮ (MEMO/CHECK) for 1 second or longer)	Plays the next chapter ^{*2} .
⏮ for 1 second or longer	Skips backward.
⏭ for 1 second or longer	Skips forward.
During pausing ⏮	If you move the marker indication of the playback position (p.296) and press ⏭, the music can be played from the position (The position can be specified within the range of a chapter during playback).
/	Switches the image when two or more jacket image are registered in the chapter.
	Ends playback.

*1 : Press and hold ⏮ (HOME) to go back to the previous chapter consecutively.

*2 : Press and hold ⏭ (MEMO/CHECK) to move forward to the next chapter consecutively.

Function menu (Music Channel Playback screen)

- Setting can be changed while playing.

Chapter list	Displays the title, artist, and the playback time of each chapter by the list. When the chapter is selected, the selected chapter is played. ^{*1} "Chapter list" → p.297
Chapter info	Displays information about the chapter being played. "Chapter information" → p.297
Equalizer set.	Selects the sound quality from the following: • OFF (default) : Disables the equalizer setting. • Bass : Emphasizes bass. • Treble : Emphasizes treble. • Treble Reducer : Reduces sound leaking out of the earphone. • Pop : Sets the equalizer for each genre. • Jazz • Rock • Techno • Classical • Speech : Sets the equalizer for speech.
Off timer (default: 90 minutes)	Stops playback when a given time has elapsed since the start of playback. Select "OFF", "30 minutes", "60 minutes" or "90 minutes".
SRS_WOW (default: Level 10)	Sets sound effects from OFF or level 1 to 20.
Repeat setting (default: OFF)	Sets repeat playback/playback without repeat.
Chapter image	Displays an image associated with the chapter being played. ^{*2}
Connect to URL	Accesses the site using the Web To function (p.230) when URL is included in the program.

- *1 : You cannot select chapters which have not been completely downloaded.
- *2 : If the registered image is a GIF-formatted animation, the animation is played. You cannot save the program image which is registered to chapter.

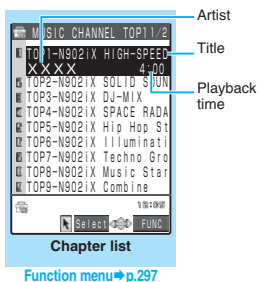
● When a flat-plug stereo earphone set (optional) is connected

You can perform the following operations using the switch of a flat-plug stereo earphone set (optional) or a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional):

Operation	Switch operation
Playing/Pausing	Press the switch to select between play/pause.
Playing the next chapter	Press the switch twice in a row.
Playing the previous chapter	Press the switch three times in a row. If the playback time of the current chapter is more than three seconds, it goes back to the beginning of the chapter.

● Chapter list

Displays the chapter list of a program. You can see the name of the artist and the playback time of each chapter.



Function menu → p.297

Function menu (Chapter list screen)

Chapter info	Displays information about the highlighted chapter. "Chapter information" → p.297
Chapter image	Displays the image associated with the highlighted chapter.*
Connect to URL	Accesses the site using the Web To function (p.230) when URL is included in the program.

- * : If the registered image is a GIF-formatted animation, the animation is played. You cannot save the image which is registered to chapter.

● Chapter information

Title	If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Artist	If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Comment	If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.

Composer	If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Lyricist	If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Rights holder	If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Selling agency	If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Rights information	If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Label	If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Play time	Playback time (minutes:seconds) of the chapter.
File size	The file size in K bytes

Function menu (Music Channel screen)

Chapter list	Displays the title, artist, and the playback time of each chapter by the list. When the chapter is selected, the selected chapter is played.*1 "Chapter list" → p.297
Program info	Displays information about programs. "Program information" → p.297
Program image	Displays the image associated with the program.*2
Connect to URL	Accesses the site using the Web To function (p.230) when URL is included in the program.
Add desktop icon	Pastes a desktop icon for opening the Music Channel screen onto the standby screen. "Using Desktop Icons" → p.149

- *1 : You cannot select chapters which have not been completely downloaded.
- *2 : If the registered image is a GIF-formatted animation, the animation is played. You cannot save the program image.

● Program information

Title	If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Creator	If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Rights information	If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Distributor	If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Program image	"Included/Not included" of the program image.
URL	Displays URL information for the Web To function.
Play time	Displays playback time (minutes:seconds) of the program.
Replay restriction	
• If there are count restrictions	Remaining play count and total play count

• If there are period restrictions	"Until date of play period"
• If there are span restrictions	"Playable date ~ Date of play period"
• If there are no play restrictions	"Not restricted"
File restriction	"File restricted"
File size	The file size in K bytes
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Comment	If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.

<Music player>

Using Music Player

Using the music player, you can play Chaku-Uta-Full® and music that you stored on the miniSD memory card.

- You can play music that you want to listen to in a order of your choice by registering music on the playlist. → p.302
- Besides the pre-installed Chaku-Uta-Full®, Chaku-Uta-Full® that you download from the i-mode website and music data that you transferred from music CDs can be played.
Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® from Sites → p.228
Saving SD-Audio Data to the miniSD Memory Card → p.304
- Use "i-motion" (p.355) to play music data downloaded from i-mode sites (voice-only i-motion without video, e.g. a singer's voice).
- Enjoy stereo sound coming out of the built-in stereo speaker or attached stereo earphone (sample).
- When the attached stereo earphone (sample) is connected, sound only comes out of the earphone regardless of the "Earphone" setting.

■ Important

- Stored data such as Chaku-Uta-Full® may be lost through damage or repair on your FOMA terminal. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on the FOMA terminal.

Playing Music

1 menu → "Music"

The "folder list" screen appears. It may be that the "folder list" screen does not appear and the previously-played track will be played (pressing [MENU] will stop playback and the "music list" screen will reappear). Operations during playback → p.301



Function menu → p.381

2 Select a folder

The "music list" screen appears. Guide to music list → p.299



Function menu → p.299

3 Select a music file

The "music player" screen appears to play the program. Operations during playback → p.301

■ Partially downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full®

A message appears asking whether to download the rest of the data. Select "YES" to connect to the site and download the rest of the data.

Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® from Sites → p.228



Function menu → p.301

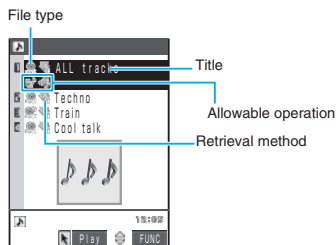
NOTE

- ◆ When the attached stereo earphone (sample) is connected, sound comes out of the earphone even in manner mode. If the attached stereo earphone (sample) is removed in manner mode, playback is paused.
- ◆ When a hands-free device is connected, sound comes only from the hands-free device.
- ◆ Folding the FOMA terminal does not interrupt playback. The image display shows information on music being played. → p.306
- ◆ When you make/receive a voice call, videophone call, Push-to-Talk call, 64K data communication or packet communication, playback is paused.
- ◆ If "Receiving display" is set to "Alarm preferred", receiving a message, MessageR or MessageF pauses playback.
- ◆ If "Alarm setting" is set to "Alarm preferred" and you receive an alarm for "Schedule", "Alarm clock" or "To Do list", playback is paused.

- ◆ A file that cannot be played with music player is skipped during playback.
- ◆ Some songs are restricted to be played. “” appears at the beginning of the title for the music with restrictions on the play count, period or time limit. music restricted on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period.

Guide to music list

Titles of music are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the music type, music retrieval method, and settings that can be specified for the music.



File type icon

Icon	Description
	Music stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) ^{*1,2}
	Music stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) with playback restrictions ^{*1,2,3}
	Music stored on the miniSD memory card and movable to the FOMA terminal (Phone) ^{*1}
	Music stored on the miniSD memory card with playback restrictions and movable to the FOMA terminal (Phone) ^{*1,3}
	Music stored on the miniSD memory card that is not allowed to be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone) These icons also appear on the playlist music list screen of the FOMA terminal (Phone) if the miniSD memory card storing music listed in the playlist is not inserted.
	SD-Audio music
	Partially downloaded music ^{*2}
	Music to which the FOMA card operational restriction applies

- ^{*1} : “” is added to icons for music that are file-restricted or not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal.
- ^{*2} : “” is added to icons for music that are protected.
- ^{*3} : “” turns to “” when the playback count reaches the limit or playback period expires.
- ^{*4} : Can be played only when the same model and the same FOMA card (UIM) are used as music is stored.
- ^{*5} : Can be played only when the same FOMA card (UIM) is used as music is stored.

Retrieval method icon

Icon	Description
	Music stored at the time of purchase
	Music downloaded from a site
	Music copied from the miniSD memory card or a PC

Allowable operation icon

Icon	Description
	Can be set as a ring tone.
	Can be moved to the miniSD memory card.
	Can use the Web To function.

Function menu (music list screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit information	▶ Select an item ▶ Edit information Edits the titles, artist name, album name, genre, the track number, year, and comment.
Create playlist	“Creating a playlist” → p.302
Add playlist	▶ Select a playlist The highlighted music is added to the end of the playlist.
Select ring tone	Sets the highlighted music as a ring tone. → p.128 • Fullsong ring tone Sets the entire song as a ring tone. • Point ring tone ▶ Use  to select the part that you want to set as a ring tone ▶ Set as a ring tone The selected part is set as a ring tone.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects a Chaku-Uta-Full®.
Move	• Move this ▶ Select the destination folder ▶ “YES” Moves the highlighted music to another folder. • Move selected ▶ Select the destination folder ▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Moves the selected music to another folder. • Move all ▶ Select the destination folder ▶ “YES” Moves all music stored in the folder to another folder.
Move to miniSD*	“Moving Chaku-Uta-Full® to the miniSD Memory Card” → p.304
File property	Displays the highlighted music information. “Music information” → p.300
Memory info	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal and on the miniSD memory card.

Continued on next page

Reset info	Restores the music information you modified to the original.
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted music.
• Delete selected	▶Use to select a checkbox (□) (Finish)▶“YES” Deletes the selected music.
• Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all music from the folder.
Search*	Searches music by specified criteria.
Sort*	Sorts music by specified criteria.
Lyric	Displays the lyrics of the highlighted music. If the lyrics cannot be displayed on a single page, use to switch pages.
Jacket image	Displays the jacket image of the highlighted music. If there are two or more jacket images, use to switch images.
Connect to URL	Accesses the site using the Web To function (p.230) when URL is included in the program.
List setting	Selects a music-list format from “Title” or “Title + image”.

* : Cannot be used on the music list screen in SD-Audio folder or Movable contents folder.

NOTE

<Protect ON/OFF>

◆ Up to 40 Chaku-Uta-Full® can be protected. However, the number of Chaku-Uta-Full® storable varies depending on the data size.

<Move to miniSD>

◆ To check whether a Chaku-Uta-Full® can be moved, see “File property”. There are Chaku-Uta-Full® that can be exchanged only between the same models.

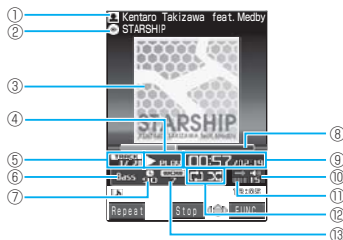
● Music information

File name	The file name
File classification	The media type
File restriction	“File restricted”/“File unrestricted”
Replay restriction	Shows whether replays are restricted/unrestricted.
• If there are count restrictions	Remaining play count and total play count
• If there are period restrictions	“File registration date ~ Date of play period”
• If there are span restrictions	“Playable date ~ Date of play period”
• If there are no play restrictions	“Not restricted”
Fullsong ring tone	Shows whether the Fullsong ring tone is “Available”/“Unavailable”.
Point ring tone	Shows whether the Point ring tone is “Available”/“Unavailable”.

Savable Jacket image	“File restricted”/“File unrestricted” of the jacket image which can be stored in My picture under Data box.
Savable Image	“File restricted”/“File unrestricted” of the image which can be stored in My picture under Data box.
Savable Lyric	“File restricted”/“File unrestricted” of the lyrics information which can be stored in My picture under Data box.
Title, Artist, Album, Year, Genre, Comment and Track number, Composer, Lyricist, Rights holder, Selling agency, Rights information and Label	Shows music information and copyright information.
Connect to URL	URL information for the Web To function.
Audio	Audio information “SD-Audio/ Unplayable/ACC/Enhanced aacPlus/HE-AAC”
Bit rate	Bit rate in kbps
Play time	Playback time (minutes:seconds).
File size	The file size in K bytes
Source	From where the music was acquired (i-mode/Data Exchange)
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/ Month/Day_Hours:Minutes)
Move to miniSD*	“Yes”/“Yes(Same model only)”/ “No” indicates whether the music can be moved to the miniSD memory card.

* : The option appears only for music stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

Guide to the music player screen



- ① Artist
- ② Track name
- ③ Jacket image
- ④ Playback status

▶ **PLAY** : Playing || **PAUSE** : Pausing

▶ **FF** : Skipping forward ◀ **REW** : Skipping backward

- ⑤ Track number being played/Total number of tracks

- ⑥ Sound quality
Sound quality set in "Equalizer set." (p.296)

: OFF

: Bass : Treble : Treble Reducer

: Pop : Jazz : Rock : Techno : Classical Each genre

: Speech

- ⑦ Off timer
Time set in "Off timer" (p.296)

- ⑧ Playback position display
<While playing/pausing>



A grey marker indicates the current playback position.
If you move the marker using during pause and then press , the music can be played from the position.
<When "Position to play" is selected>



When "Position to play" (p.302) is selected from the function menu, the position to playback (displayed by yellow) is changed using .

- ⑨ Time elapsed/Playback time (Minute:Second)

- ⑩ Volume
Volume level from 1 to 20. appears during mute.

- ⑪ Web To function
Accesses to the URL included in the music data.

- ⑫ Playback mode

: Playing at shuffle

: Playing at shuffle OFF

: Playing at repeat OFF

: Playing all repeatedly

: Playing one repeatedly

- ⑬ Sound effects
Sound effects level from OFF or level 1 to 20.

Operations on the music player screen

Control keys	Operation
	Pauses/resumes playback.
(HOME), (MEMO/CHECK))	Adjusts volume.
(or (HOME) for 1 second or longer)	Plays from the beginning of the music. Plays the previous music in the folder or playlist when pressing the key from the beginning of the music within 1 second ¹ . During shuffle playback, the previous music is played regardless of the order in the folder or playlist.
(or (MEMO/CHECK) for 1 second or longer)	Plays the next track in the folder or the playlist ² . During shuffle playback, the next track is played regardless of the order in the folder or playlist.
for 1 second or longer	Skips backward.
for 1 second or longer	Skips forward.

Control keys	Operation
During pausing	If you move the marker of the playback position display (p.300) and then press , the music can be played from the position.
/	Switches the image when two or more jacket image are registered.
	Ends playback.

*1 : Skips to the previous music consecutively when

(HOME) is held down.

*2 : Skips to the next music consecutively when

(MEMO/CHECK) is held down.

NOTE

◆ The volume set on the music player screen does not affect ring volumes set in "Ring volume".

When a flat-plug stereo earphone set (optional) is connected

You can perform the following operations using the switch of a flat-plug stereo earphone set (optional) or a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional):

Operation	Switch operation
Playing/Pausing	Press the switch to select between play/pause.
Playing the next music	Press the switch twice in a row.
Playing the previous music [*]	Press the switch three times in a row. If the playback time of the music being played is more than three seconds, it goes back to the beginning of the music.

* : The previous music cannot be played while playing at shuffle or shuffle repeatedly.

Function menu (music player screen)

- The settings can be changed during playback.

Change music ^{*1}	▶ Select a folder ▶ Select music The selected music is played.
Lyric	Displays the lyrics of the music being played. If the lyrics cannot be displayed on a single page, use to switch pages.
Jacket image	▶ Use to switch the jacket image ▶ Displays the jacket image of the music being played.
Equalizer set.	Selects the sound quality from the following:
• OFF (default)	Disables the equalizer setting.
• Bass	Emphasizes bass.
• Treble	Emphasizes treble.
• Treble Reducer	Reduces sound leaking out of the earphone.

Continued on next page

• Pop	Sets the equalizer for each genre.
• Jazz	
• Rock	
• Techno	
• Classical	
• Speech	Sets the equalizer for speech.
Off timer (default: 90 minutes)	Stops playback when a given time has elapsed since the start of playback.
SRS_WOW (default: Level 10)	Sets sound effects from OFF or level 1 to 20.
Repeat setting	Sets whether to repeat music.
• OFF (default)	Does not repeat the currently played (paused) music.
• Repeat	Repeats all music in the playlist.
• Repeat 1	Repeats the currently played (paused) music.
Shuffle (default: OFF)	Specifies whether to set shuffle playback ON/OFF.
Position to play²	▶ Use ⌂ to select a point where playback will start ▶ ● A part of music can be played from the selected position.
Select ring tone	Sets the currently played music as a ring tone. → p.128
• Fullsong ring tone	Sets the entire song as a ring tone.
• Point ring tone	▶ Use ⌂ to select a part that you want to set as a ring tone ▶ Select any item The selected part is set as a ring tone.
File property	Displays the currently played music information. "Music information" → p.300
Connect to URL	Accesses the site using the Web To function (p.230) when URL is included in the music.

*1 : Only music stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) is available to be selected when changing the music.

*2 : Position specified to play may not be available for some music files.

NOTE

- ◆ You can save the image of a lyrics or jacket image by selecting "Save" from the function menu while a lyrics or jacket image is displayed on the screen. To see information about the image data of a lyrics or jacket, select "Image info" from the function menu.
- ◆ "SRS_WOW" that you set on the music player screen does not apply to "SRS_WOW" for i-motion playback (p.130).
- ◆ "SRS_WOW" for the music that you set as a ring tone follows the "SRS_WOW" of the sound effect. Equalizer setting is not reflected.

Using playlist

You can play music that you want to listen to in a order of your choice by registering music on the playlist of the FOMA terminal.

- The followings are the number of tracks and playlists that can be saved on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

Tracks	Up to 200 tracks
Playlists [*]	Up to 21 lists (including a list of all tracks)

* : Up to 99 tracks can be saved in each playlist (except a list of all tracks).

- All music (Chaku-Uta-Full®) saved on a FOMA terminal, music (Chaku-Uta-Full®) saved on the miniSD memory card and SD-Audio data can be registered on the same playlist.

Creating a playlist

- Folder list screen (p.298) ▶ Select a folder ▶ Highlight music and press**  **(FUNC) ▶ "Create playlist" ▶ Select any item**

Set this	Registers the highlighted music in the playlist.
Set select	▶ Use ⌂ to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) Registers the selected music in the playlist.
Set all	Registers all music stored in the folder in the playlist.

2 Enter a playlist name

The playlist is created, and the "Playlist" screen appears.

■ To play a playlist

▶ ● (Play)

Playing a Playlist

1 Folder list screen (p.298)

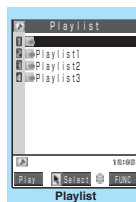
▶ **"Playlist"**

The "Playlist" screen appears.

■ To play a playlist immediately

▶  (Play)

The highlighted playlist is played.



Function menu ▶ p.303

2 Select a playlist

The "playlist music list" screen appears.

■ When "All tracks (phone)" is selected

The playlist containing all the music files (music that can be played) which are saved on the FOMA terminal (Phone) is displayed.



Function menu ▶ p.303

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.371

3 (Play)

Starts playing the playlist in an order that the songs are registered.

NOTE

- ◆ All tracks (phone) does not include music in the pre-installed folder.
- ◆ If you delete all the music saved in the playlist, the playlist itself is also deleted.
- ◆ If playback limit of a music saved in the playlist has been expired, a confirmation message appears asking whether to delete the music when playing it.

Function menu (Playlist screen)

Edit playlist name	▶ Edit a playlist name Edits the highlighted playlist name. You can enter up to 128 in double-byte, 256 in single-byte.
Copy to playlist	Creates the copy of the highlighted playlist in the playlist list.
Delete playlist	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted playlist.
• Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes the selected playlists.
• Delete all	Deletes all playlists.
Search	Searches a track in a playlist by specified criteria.
Playlist Info	Displays playlist name, the number of songs in the playlist, and playback time of the playlist.

Function menu (playlist music list screen)

Create playlist	“Creating a playlist” → p.302
Edit playlist	Edits the highlighted playlist.
• Sort playlist	▶ Use to select order, then press Changes the order of the highlighted music in the playlist.
• Add music	▶ Select a folder ▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Adds multiple music you selected to the end of the playlist.
• Release settings	
• Release this	Cancels the highlighted music from the playlist.
• Release selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Cancels the selected multiple music from the playlist.
• Release all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Cancels all the music in the playlist and deletes the playlist itself.

File property	Displays the highlighted music information “Music information” → p.300
Search	Searches music in the playlist by specified criteria.
Sort	Sorts music in the playlist by specified criteria.
Lyric	Displays the lyrics of the highlighted music. If the lyrics cannot be displayed on a single page, use to switch pages.
Jacket image	Displays the jacket image of the highlighted music. If there are two or more jacket images, use to switch images.
Connect to URL	Accesses the site using the Web To function (p.230) when URL is included in the music.
List setting	Selects a music-list format from “Title” or “Title + image”.

NOTE

- ◆ Even if you cancel a music from the playlist, the original data is not deleted.

Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full®

Chaku-Uta-Full® that you download from i-mode sites are saved in Music in Data box. You can play them with the music player. → p.228

<Move contents>

Moving Chaku-Uta-Full® to the miniSD Memory Card

Moving Chaku-Uta-Full® stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card

You can move movable Chaku-Uta-Full® to the miniSD memory card. Moved Chaku-Uta-Full® are saved to the “Movable contents” folder (p.342) under i-motion.

- 1** Music list screen (p.298) ▶ (FUNC)▶ “Move to miniSD” ▶ Select any item

Move this	▶Select the destination folder▶ Moves the highlighted Chaku-Uta-Full®.
Move selected	▶Select the destination folder ▶▶Use to select a checkbox ()▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Moves multiple Chaku-Uta-Full® you select.
Move all	▶Enter your security code▶Select the destination folder▶▶“YES” Moves all listed movable Chaku-Uta-Full® in the folder (except for immovable ones).

NOTE

- ◆ Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the move process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆ Partially-downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full® or Chaku-Uta-Full® for which playback limit has been expired cannot be moved to the miniSD memory card.
- ◆ To check whether a Chaku-Uta-Full® can be moved, see “Allowable operation icon” (p.299).

Moving Chaku-Uta-Full® stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

You can move Chaku-Uta-Full® stored in the “Movable contents” folder under Music (p.342) to the FOMA terminal.

- Moved Chaku-Uta-Full® are saved to Inbox in Music.

- 1** Folder list screen (p.298) ▶ “Movable contents”▶ Select a folder▶

The “music list” screen (p.298) appears.

- 2** (FUNC)▶ “Move to phone”
▶ Select any item

Move this	Moves the highlighted Chaku-Uta-Full®.

Move selected	▶Use to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Moves multiple Chaku-Uta-Full® you select.
Move all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Moves all listed movable Chaku-Uta-Full® in the folder (except for immovable ones).

NOTE

- ◆ Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the move process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆ Chaku-Uta-Full® for which playback limit has been expired cannot be moved to the FOMA terminal.
- ◆ To check whether a Chaku-Uta-Full® can be moved, see “File type icon” (p.299).

Saving SD-Audio Data to the miniSD Memory Card

Use “SD-Jukebox” stored in the bundled “N902iX HIGH-SPEED CD-ROM” to convert music data acquired from a CD or via music delivery service into SD-Audio data and save it to the miniSD memory card.

- The following are data format, number of playlists and number of tracks that are available on the FOMA terminal:

File format	MPEG2-AAC (LC)/ADTS Stream
Bit rate	16 to 128kbps
Maximum number of music	Up to 999
Playlist count*	Up to 100 (including ALL tracks)

* : Up to 99 music files can be registered in one playlist (except ALL tracks).

- If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store.
- * You can enjoy music stored on the miniSD memory card within personal use. Take great care not to infringe the third party’s intellectual property right such as copyright.

1 Prepare the following

- PC that complies with the operating environment for “SD-Jukebox” (p.305)
- miniSD memory card reader/writer compatible with copyright protection function*
- miniSD memory card

* : This is required to copy data from a PC to the miniSD memory card. The FOMA USB Cable (optional) is also available to use the FOMA terminal as a miniSD reader/writer. → p.379

2 Install the data transfer software “SD-Jukebox” on your PC

Installing → p.305

3 Launch “SD-Jukebox” on the PC and convert music data stored on a CD, etc. to AAC format

For how to use “SD-Jukebox”, see the “SD-Jukebox” help.

If the data are already converted, go on to Step 4.

4 Use “SD-Jukebox” to save SD-Audio data to the miniSD memory card

NOTE

- ◆ You can play the SD-Audio data that is registered on “SD-Jukebox” with the FOMA terminal, and you can also register it on the playlist of the FOMA terminal. However, you cannot edit the playlist of SD-Audio folder with the FOMA terminal.

Data transfer software (SD-Jukebox)

SD-Jukebox can be used to copy music data from a CD to a PC or save copied music data to an SD memory card or miniSD memory card then play them with an SD-Audio-compatible player.

- Use SD-Jukebox to save music data to the miniSD memory card, so that you can play them on your FOMA terminal.
- For more details on the operating environment, installation and uninstallation of SD-Jukebox, see “sd-jukeboxv5.pdf” stored under “SD-Jukebox” - “SD-JukeboxV5” - “External” - “JP” in “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED CD-ROM”. To see “sd-jukeboxv5.pdf” and the SD-Jukebox help (user’s guide), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If this software is not installed on your PC, install the Adobe Reader from the CD-ROM to read the document. For how to use it, see the Adobe Reader help.

● Installing SD-Jukebox

- When installing N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to install the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC’s manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 Start Windows and set “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED CD-ROM”

2 Click “SD-Jukebox のインストール” (Install SD-Jukebox)

Follow the on-screen instructions.

NOTE

- ◆ When installing SD-Jukebox, it is required to enter the serial number described on the CD-ROM sticker. Keep the serial number not to lose it.

Inquiries about this software

National/Panasonic Customer Care Center
Everyday/Open: 9:00 - 20:00

From ordinary phones:  0120-878-365

From mobile phones or PHSS: 06-6907-1187

FAX  0120-878-236

* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

● You can also refer to the web page.

<http://panasonic.jp/support/software/sdjb> (Only in Japanese)

Using Assist Key to Play Music

The “Assist key” is available for operating the music player and Music Channel.

Starting music player*	▶  (ASSIST) (1 second or longer) Starts the music player and play the music.
While playing	▶  (ASSIST) Pauses. ▶  (ASSIST) (1 second or longer) Ends playback and exits the music player or Music Channel.
While pausing	▶  (ASSIST) Resumes playback. ■ To resume playback while another function is running ▶  (ASSIST) (1 second or longer)
On the music list screen*	▶  (ASSIST) Starts playback. ▶  (ASSIST) (1 second or longer) Starts playback with the previously played track.
On the playlist screen*	▶  (ASSIST) (1 second or longer) Starts playback with the previously played track.

* : You cannot handle it with Music Channel.

● Pressing and holding the Assist key for 1 second or longer to start playback

Playback starts with the previously played track. However, if the last playback went through the end of the playlist, the first track is to be played. If the tracks were played at random last time, shuffle playback will go on.

● Image display during playback

You can check the status of playback on the image display with the FOMA terminal folded.



- ① Music player: Track name, artist (telop text)
Music Channel: Artist, chapter title (telop text)
- ② Playback status
▶ : Playing || : Pausing
- ③ Off timer
Time set in "Off timer" (pp.296, 302).
- ④ Track number being played/Total number of tracks
- ⑤ Volume
Volume level from 1 to 20. **MUTE** appears during mute.
- ⑥ Playback mode
 OFF : Playing at repeat OFF
 ON : Playing all repeatedly
 ON : Playing one repeatedly (music player only)
 ON : Playing at shuffle (music player only)
 OFF : Playing at shuffle OFF (music player only)

NOTE

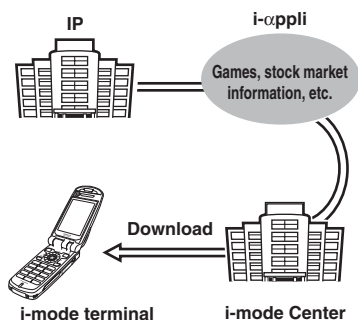
- ◆ In manner mode, even if you press and hold  (ASSIST) for 1 second or longer, the music player cannot be launched except when the attached stereo earphone (sample) is connected.

● i-appli

What is an i-appli?	308
Downloading an i-appli from a Site	309
Running an i-appli.....	310
Launching an i-appli Automatically	317
Launching an i-appli from a Site or Mail	i-appli To function 317
Setting the i-appli Standby Screen	i-appli stand-by display 318
Organizing an i-appli.....	319

What is an i-αppli?

By downloading i-αppli programs from sites, you can make it more useful and enjoyable to use your i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal). For example, you can download a range of games to an i-mode terminal and play them or download an i-αppli that provides stock market information and allows you to automatically check stock prices at set intervals. There is also a mapping i-αppli that allows you to download only the information you need so that scrolling is quick and smooth. There are other i-αppli programs of which you can store data from the i-αppli directly into the phonebook or schedule, or which is linked to Data box when saving or downloading images.



- To download an i-αppli → p.309
- To launch an i-αppli → p.310
- To launch an i-αppli automatically → p.317

NOTE

- ◆ Some software applications use the i-mode terminal mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers.
- ◆ Some software applications use a FOMA terminal to communicate when running, but can also be set to run without communicating.

Using stored data

Some i-αppli programs can browse, store or use data (such as phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedule entries, images and icon information) stored on your i-mode terminal. The stored data can be used for:

- Adding phonebook entries
- Using icon information
- Adding bookmarks
- Adding schedule events
- Retrieving images from Data box
- Saving images into Data box
- Saving i-motion programs
- Browsing i-motion programs
- Changing the alarm clock setting
- Saving the ToruCa

What is an i-αppli DX?

i-αppli DX programs link up with the information on your i-mode terminal (such as mails, the Dialed/Received calls record and phonebook data) to make the i-αppli programs even more enjoyable and easier to use. This includes allowing you to compose mails on your favorite cartoon character screen, having a cartoon character tell you from who a call or message has come, and linking up with mail functions to provide real-time updates on the progress of games or essential information such as share prices.

Using stored data

Some i-αppli DX programs can browse, store and use not only the stored data used by ordinary i-αppli programs (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedule entries, images and icon information), but also data such as mails, dialed calls record, received calls record and ring tones. The stored data can be used for:

- Adding phonebook entries
- Browsing phonebook entries
- Using icon information
- Adding bookmarks
- Adding schedule events
- Using the Mail menu
- Using the Compose message screen
- Browsing the latest Dialed calls record
- Browsing the latest Received calls record
- Browsing the latest unread mail
- Saving melodies
- Changing ring tones (Phone, Videophone, Mail, MessageR, MessageF and Chat mail)
- Retrieving images from Data box
- Saving images into Data box
- Saving Chara-den
- Browsing Chara-den
- Changing screen settings (standby screen, dialing/receiving phone call, receiving videophone call, receiving/sending mail, receiving MessageR/MessageF and menu icon)
- Changing the videophone substitute image settings
- Changing the alarm clock setting
- Newly adding, selecting or acquiring ToruCa
- Saving i-motion programs
- Browsing i-motion programs
- Browsing Inbox/Outbox

NOTE

- ◆ Regardless of the software communication settings, an i-αppli DX may automatically establish a connection to check the validity of the software. The frequency and timing of connections differs depending on the software.

What is mail-connected i-αppli?

Mail-connected i-αppli is a type of i-αppli DX that uses i-mode mails to exchange information and provide essential information such as share prices and real time updates on the progress of games, etc., allowing you to make your FOMA terminal even easier and more fun to use.

i-αppli mails used for mail-connected i-αppli programs may not be displayed correctly.

● What is Osaifu-Keitai i-oppli?

Osaifu-Keitai i-oppli that reads and writes data in an IC card enables you to use useful functions such as downloading electronic money or ticket, etc. and browsing the balance or records in your mobile phone.

- “What is Osaifu-Keitai?” → p.326

NOTE

- ◆ Using Osaifu-Keitai i-oppli sends the information stored in your IC card to an information service provider (IP) of the subscribing service. (Contract with DoCoMo is not forwarded.)

● Other useful features

■ i-oppli standby screen

On the i-oppli standby screen, an i-oppli is set as the standby screen and you can still receive mails or make calls. The standby screen can be more useful; e.g. news or weather information can be displayed, or your preferred character notifies you of an incoming message or alarm. → p.318

- This function is available for software that supports i-oppli standby screens.

■ i-oppli auto start

This feature allows you to automatically launch an i-oppli by specifying a time, date or day of the week. Some i-oppli programs can be launched automatically at the intervals specified in the programs beforehand. → p.317

■ Using the camera

Some i-oppli programs allow you to take pictures using the camera built in an i-mode terminal. → p.180

- This function is available for programs that support the camera function.

■ Infrared data exchange

This feature allows an i-oppli running on a FOMA terminal to communicate with other devices equipped with the Infrared data exchange function. This further expands the use of your FOMA terminal by allowing link-ups with other infrared-capable devices. → p.382

- This function is available for programs that support the Infrared data exchange function.
- Depending on the device to communicate, it may not be possible to exchange some types of data even if the device has an Infrared data exchange function.

■ Infrared remote control

This allows i-oppli programs to control devices such as household appliances that support infrared remote control. → p.387

For example, the pre-installed “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE program guide remote control) enables you to use your terminal as

an AV remote control device that works with a TV time table. → p.314

- This function is available for programs that support the infrared remote control function. The programs must be compatible with the controlled devices.

Downloading an i-oppli from a Site

You can download an i-oppli from an i-mode site and run it on your FOMA terminal.

- A FOMA terminal can hold up to 200 downloaded programs (up to 5 mail-connected i-oppli programs). Depending on the sizes of programs, the actual number of downloadable i-oppli programs varies between 10 and 200.
- When you download a mail-connected i-oppli, folders for the mail-connected i-oppli are automatically created in the Inbox and Outbox folder lists. The folder names are assigned by the downloaded mail-connected i-oppli and cannot be changed. If PIM lock is set for the i-oppli, the folder names are “i-oppli”.
- If there are already 5 folders for mail-connected i-oppli, delete one or more of the existing folders for mail-connected i-oppli to create available space for the new programs.
- You cannot download a mail-connected i-oppli that will use the same Inbox and Outbox folders as those for an i-oppli that has already been stored in your FOMA terminal.
- You cannot download mail-connected i-oppli programs while mail security is set. Remove the mail security before download.
- Mails sent or received using a mail-connected i-oppli are automatically sorted into the folders created when that mail-connected i-oppli was downloaded. You can also manually sort received mails.
- If you delete a mail-connected i-oppli without deleting its folders and then download the i-oppli again, the undeleted folders can be reused. Alternatively, you can delete the undeleted folders and create new folders. If you neither use the undeleted folders nor create new folders, you cannot download the mail-connected i-oppli.

1 Select a program

When the message “Completed” appears after downloading, press . Programs that are immediately launched from sites (p.318) start up without displaying the completion message.

■ To interrupt download while the data are being received

- ▶ During download ▶ 

■ If a software setting screen appears

- ▶ Set the program ▶  (Finish)
Software setting → p.311

2 “YES”

When you launch the i-αppli program, “” appears at the bottom of the screen. If an i-αppli DX launches, “” appears.

■ To prevent the i-αppli from launching ▶ “NO”

NOTE

- ◆ You may not be able to download an i-αppli depending on the site or the size of the i-αppli.
- ◆ Some i-αppli programs may automatically perform communication after downloaded. You can set your terminal not to automatically communicate by using “Network set” in “Software setting”.
- ◆ If you download an i-αppli or i-αppli DX that uses the stored information or mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers, a message notifying that the i-αppli will use the stored information or mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers appears. When this happens, your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the information service provider (IP) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party as a result.
- ◆ When you are downloading i-αppli information or an i-αppli program from an SSL site, “” appears.
→ p.218
- ◆ When you download an i-αppli that uses FOMA terminal's communication functions or that can be set as a standby screen, the Software setting screen appears. After completing settings according to the downloaded i-αppli, press  (Finish). (Press  to cancel the settings.)
- ◆ Depending on the data storage capacity of the IC card, you may not be able to download an Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli even when there is space available in the program storage area. Follow the instructions on the confirmation screen to delete the displayed programs and then try downloading the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli again. Depending on the i-αppli to be downloaded, some programs may not be deleted. Some programs may require you to launch the program to delete the data on the IC card before deleting the program itself.
- ◆ If you download the same program as the one already taken using the different FOMA card (UIM), a message confirming that you will overwrite the program appears. Select “YES” to start download. After the download is completed, the program already downloaded is deleted.
- ◆ “i-αppli mail” refers to mails sent by mail-connected i-αppli programs or those sent to you so that they will be used in mail-connected i-αppli programs. i-αppli mails contain i-αppli data that enable the mails to be automatically saved in the i-αppli mail folder.

Viewing i-αppli information during

downloading <Display software info>

Default setting
Not display

This setting allows you to specify whether to show the program information when downloading a program.

1 “i-αppli settings”▶

“Disp. Software info”

Select “Display” or “Not display”.

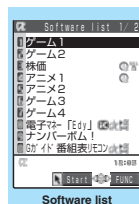
Running an i-αppli

Launching an i-αppli

1 “Software list”

The “Software list” screen appears.

You can also open the “Software list” screen by pressing  for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.



Function menu▶p.311

2 Select an i-αppli to launch

Quitting an i-αppli

1 (1 second or longer)▶ “YES”

Selecting ▶ “YES” also ends the i-αppli.

■ For software developers

When a created i-αppli program does not run correctly, the trace information can be accessed for reference.

Select in order of  (i-αppli) ▶ “i-αppli action info” ▶ “Trace info”. The trace information appears in the order in which actions occurred. You can copy trace information by selecting “Copy info” from the function menu. To delete trace information, select “Delete info” from the function menu.

NOTE

- ◆ You can set an i-αppli to be launched automatically.
→ p.317
- ◆ You can enjoy rich-sound melodies with 3D sound compatible i-αppli programs. → p.130
- ◆ If you receive a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call while a program is starting up, the program operation is paused. The program screen reappears when the call ends.

- ◆ Some i-ϕpli programs allow you to use the Phone To (AV Phone To) or Web To function from the program. However, you cannot use the functions from the i-ϕpli standby screen (p.318) (except when running an i-ϕpli).
 - ◆ i-ϕpli mails used for mail-connected i-ϕpli programs may not be displayed correctly.
 - ◆ Do not remove the battery pack while running a program. Doing so may delete the data or information that has been entered.
 - ◆ Some programs allow you to save the data you will use for the program (i-ϕpli data (miniSD)) in the miniSD memory card.
 - ◆ If you attempt to copy data to the miniSD memory card during use of i-ϕpli, a message may appear indicating that the copy cannot be performed.
 - ◆ Images used in i-ϕpli programs* or data entered by the user may be automatically sent to the server via the Internet.
- * : Images used in i-ϕpli programs mean those shot by the camera activated by a camera-linked i-ϕpli, those retrieved using an i-ϕpli Infrared data exchange function, those that an i-ϕpli downloaded from a site or website or those that an i-ϕpli loaded from Data box.
- ◆ If the memory used to store trace information is full, the oldest entry is overwritten.
 - ◆ Some i-ϕpli programs may not make sounds.
 - ◆ If the camera was activated by an i-ϕpli, the shot images are saved and used as part of the i-ϕpli.
 - ◆ If the camera is activated by an i-ϕpli, settings such as the image size, image quality and frame may be specified by the i-ϕpli.
 - ◆ Some i-ϕpli programs can activate the Bar code reader to scan JAN codes or QR codes. The scanned data are used by the i-ϕpli.
 - ◆ Depending on the program, the information service provider (IP) may access the program stored on your FOMA terminal and directly disable use of the program. When this happens, you can no longer launch, upgrade or set the program as a standby screen. You can only delete the program or view the program information. To use the program again, you have to contact the IP and have them send an instruction to re-enable the program.
 - ◆ Depending on the program, the IP may send data to the program stored on your FOMA terminal.
 - ◆ When an IP sends a disable or re-enable instruction or other data to a program stored on your FOMA terminal in this way, the FOMA terminal starts communication and the “” icon flashes. No communication charges apply when this happens.

Function menu (Software list screen)

Set i-ϕpli To	“Enabling program launching with i-ϕpli To” → p.317
Auto start time	“Setting the launch date/time” → p.317
Software setting	Specifies the software settings.
• Stand-by display	“Setting the i-ϕpli Standby Screen” → p.318
• Network set	Sets whether to allow the network connection to be performed when launching an i-ϕpli. Setting to “Confirm every session” enables you to select online or offline communication every time you launch an i-ϕpli. ▶  (Finish)
• Stand-by net	Sets whether to allow the network connection on the i-ϕpli set for the standby screen. ▶  (Finish)
• Icon info	Specifies whether to permit the use of unread mails or message icon information when launching an i-ϕpli. ▶  (Finish)
• Change mid./img.	Sets whether to allow an i-ϕpli DX to change ring tones for phone calls, mails and messages, to change images such as those on the standby screen or used when mails are sent or received, or to change menu icons when launching the i-ϕpli. When “ON” is set, the ring tone, image or menu icon is automatically changed. When “Check every change” is set, you can specify whether to change those items every time the i-ϕpli tries to change them. ▶  (Finish)
• See P.book/hist.	Sets whether to allow an i-ϕpli DX to look up the phonebook, latest Dialed and Received calls records, the latest unread mail and the ToruCa or ToruCa (detail) when the program is launched. When “ON” is set, the phonebook and records are automatically looked up. ▶  (Finish)
Software info	“Checking i-ϕpli information” → p.312
Upgrade	“Upgrading an i-ϕpli” → p.319
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.149
Memory Info	Shows the i-ϕpli memory status
Delete	“Deleting an i-ϕpli” → p.320
• Delete this	
• Delete selected	
• Delete all	

NOTE

<Software setting (Network set)>

- ◆ If you specify "OFF", note that you may not be able to receive timely information.

<Software setting (Icon info)>

- ◆ If you set this function to "ON" for the program set as the i-appli standby screen, as presence of the unread mails and messages, appearance of the icons for in/out of service area and status of the battery level and Manner mode may be sent to the information service provider (IP) via the Internet in the same way as your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers, there is a possibility that the information may be disclosed to a third party.
- ◆ If this function is set to "OFF", some programs that require icon information may not work.

Adjusting volumes when running i-appli programs

<i-appli vol.>

You can adjust volumes for i-appli programs.

- 1   **"i-appli settings"** 
"i-appli vol."

The "i-appli vol. setting" screen appears.

2 Set volume

NOTE

- ◆ You can set the i-appli volume to "Silent" or "Level 1 to 6" (default: Level 4).
- ◆ You can adjust volume for some programs. However, if "i-appli vol." is set to "Silent", the sound is not played regardless of the volume set for the program.
- ◆ The volume level for i-appli programs while in Manner mode is specified according to the Manner mode settings. When Manner mode is set to Original manner mode, the i-appli volume is specified by "i-appli vol." under the Manner mode setting.

Checking i-appli information

- 1 **Software list screen (p.310)**  **(FUNC)**  **"Software info"**  **Check the i-appli information**



NOTE

- ◆ Program names shown by this function cannot be changed.
- ◆ On the software list screen, program types and settings can be checked by the following icons.

 : i-appli DX → p.308



: Mail-connected i-appli



: "Auto start time" has been set. → p.317



: "i-appli stand-by display" has been set.



: "Auto start time" and "i-appli stand-by display" have been set.



: "i-appli To setting" can be set.



: "i-appli stand-by display" can be set.



: "i-appli To setting" and "i-appli stand-by display" can be set.



: Downloaded from an SSL page



: Osafu-Keitai i-appli → p.326



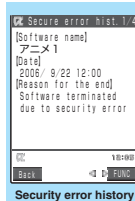
: The data can be saved to the miniSD memory card. → p.320

Checking the security error history

When an i-appli or i-appli DX attempts to run a function that is not permitted, a security error occurs and the details of the error are recorded in the security error history.

- 1   **"i-appli action info"** 
"Security error history"

The "Security error history" screen appears.



Function menu → p.312

Function menu (Security error history screen)

Copy info	Copies the security error details.
Delete info	Deletes the security error information.

Launching another program from an active program

You can launch another program from a currently active program. Downloading a program that launches the specified program enables you to launch that program without having to return to the software list screen.

- Specify the program to launch if it is not specified.
- If the specified program is not stored on a FOMA terminal, you must download the program beforehand.

- 1 **Select an item for selecting a program**  **"YES"**

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.371

NOTE

- ◆ If an item to launch a program includes the URL of the program, a message asking whether to launch the specified program appears. Select "YES" to quit the currently active program and launch the specified one. To return to the active program, select "NO".

Pre-installed programs

The FOMA terminal comes with 8 pre-installed programs ("ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョン" (Dragon Quest: Fushigi no Dungeon), "ナンバーボム!" (Number Bombs!), "カメラでケンサク! ERサーチ" (Camera de kensaku! ER search), "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G-GUIDE program guide remote control), "電子マネー「Edy」" ("Edy" electronic cash), "ケータイクレジット「iD (アイディ)」" (iD credit payment service), "「DCMX」クレジットアプリ" ("DCMX" credit application) and "FOMA通信環境確認アプリ" (FOMA communication environment check application).

- Looking at the display for extended periods of time may cause eye strain.
- If you want to restore a pre-installed i-appli program after it is deleted, download it from "みんなNらんど" in "ケータイ電話メニュー".



Accessing "みんなNらんど" → p.216

If the FOMA card (UIM) you are using was not used for download, the FOMA card operational restriction function will apply. → p.38

- The "Software setting" items for pre-installed programs are set as follows at the time of purchase:

	Stand-by display	Net-work set	Stand-by net	Icon info	Change mid./img.	See P.book /hist
ドラゴンクエスト 不思議のダンジョン (Dragon Quest: Fushigi no Dungeon)	—	ON	—	—	×	×
ナンバーボム! (Number Bombs!)	—	ON	—	—	×	×
カメラでケンサク! ERサーチ (Camera de kensaku! ER search)	—	ON	—	—	×	×
Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program guide remote control)	—	ON	—	—	—	—
電子マネー「Edy」 ("Edy" electronic cash)	—	ON	—	—	—	—
ケータイクレジット「iD (アイディ)」 (iD credit payment service)	—	ON	—	—	—	—

	Stand-by display	Net-work set	Stand-by net	Icon info	Change mid./img.	See P.book /hist
「DCMX」クレジットアプリ ("DCMX" credit application)	—	ON	—	—	—	—
FOMA通信環境確認アプリ ("FOMA communication environment check application")	—	ON	—	ON	—	ON

● Playing ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョン (Dragon Quest: Fushigi no Dungeon)

Here is the latest volume of the "不思議のダンジョン" series that feature popular characters and monsters of Dragon Quest.

Collect various items and make your way through dungeons varying each time you play in the roll playing game.

1 Software list screen (p.310)▶ "ドラクエダンジョン" (Dragon Quest: Fushigi no Dungeon)



■ To exit the game

▶ (終了 (Exit)) ▶ "はい" (Yes)

■ To adjust the volume or message speed

▶ (設定 (Set)) ▶ Change the settings

2 "START"

The game starts.

■ To display how to play in detail

▶ On the game screen▶ (メニュー (Menu))▶ "さくせん" (Strategy)▶ "冒険の心得" (Adventure tips)

■ To save and exit the game

▶ On the game screen▶ (メニュー (Menu))▶ "中断" (Quit)

The next time you select "START" on the title screen, the saved data is reloaded.

■ ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョン (Dragon Quest: Fushigi no Dungeon) Official i-mode site version

Reload the saved data of "ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョン" (Dragon Quest: Fushigi no Dungeon) preinstalled on the FOMA terminal onto the official i-mode site version, and continue to enjoy the results of your play for the preinstalled version. For more details, visit the "ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョン" (Dragon Quest: Fushigi no Dungeon) Official i-mode site or special site. (Information and packet communication charges will apply to download the official i-mode site version.)

● Playing ナンバーボム ! (Number Bombs!)

You shall erase the blocks of the same number to get the scores. The more you erase the blocks, the less the number of “BREAK” comes down. Reaching the score zero completes the game.

① Software list screen (p.310)▶ “ナンバーボム ! (Number Bombs!)”

■ To display how to play in detail

- ▶ On the title screen
- ▶  (ヘルプ)



② Use to select the difficulty level▶

The game starts.

● Using カメラでケンサク ! ERサーチ (Camera de kensaku! ER search)

This program enables you to easily acquire information about shopping, campaigns, etc. by shooting items such as images of magazines, TV commercials, CD sleeves or logos and sending them.

① Software list screen (p.310)▶ “カメラでケンサク ! ERサーチ” (Camera de kensaku! ER search)

■ To display how to use in detail

- ▶  (HELP)



② Select “検索START!” (Start search)

▶ Select a genre▶ “カメラ起動” (Activate camera)

③ Shoot an object▶ “OK”

The characteristics of the shot image are sent, and the search result screen of the related information appears. If there are some candidates, the candidate list screen appears.

* The characteristics stated above refer to the numerical values of the image characteristics.

④ Select an item on the search result screen▶ “YES”

A website appears.

● Using Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program guide remote control)

“Gガイド番組表リモコン” is a useful application equipped with the program guide and AV remote control function, which can be used free of charge.

Get information about analog or digital TV programs easily anytime and anywhere. You can find a program title, contents, time, etc.

If you want to watch a program, access the Internet to reserve recording on a DVD recorder (You need an HD DVD recorder compatible with a remote reservation function. To use the function, make the initial settings of this application). You can search for information by any keywords such as a genre or your favorite TV personality. You can control a TV, video or DVD player remotely (Some models are not compatible).

- Agree to the license agreement and make the initial settings the first time you use “Gガイド番組表リモコン”.
- A packet communication charge will be made for use.
- For more details, see “i-mode User's Manual”.



* The screen is only an image and may look different from the actual one. The displayed TV guide corresponds to the area where you live.

■ Remote reservation function

If you have a DVD recorder compatible with a remote reservation function, you can access the Internet to use this application's program guide and reserve recording remotely. To reserve remotely, make the initial settings of this application.

● Making the initial settings

- ① Make the Internet access settings of the DVD recorder (see the DVD recorder's User Guide).
- ② Launch this application and select “リモート録画予約” (Remote reservation) from the menu. Follow the on-screen instructions.

● Reserving a program

After making the initial settings, select a program then リモート録画予約 (Remote reservation) from the menu. You will be connected via the Internet to the DVD recorder selected with this application, and the program will be reserved.

* If another reservation is made for the same time period, a message appears on the program guide.

- A packet communication charge will be made for use.

● Using “電子マネー「Edy」”

The “電子マネー「Edy」” (“Edy” electronic cash) service is a simple and straightforward prepaid electronic cash service that anyone can use. The “電子マネー「Edy」” (“Edy” electronic cash) service is provided by bitWallet, Inc. To use the service, confirm the terms and conditions of use and go through the initial setup procedure.

“What is Osaifu-Keitai?” → p.326

● Service details

Initial Setup/Service Subscription (free)



Charging (credit)

Edy charging at stores (credit)

Edy charging via i-mode (credit)*

Paying (payment)

Payments at stores

Mobile Edy
(Payment over the Internet)*

Utilities

Balance and transaction

Collection of Edy gifts

Edy to Edy (Exchange Edy money
between the terminals)*

Support

Phone change procedure on Edy*

Troubleshooting procedures on Edy*

* Services that require subscription in advance

For detailed information on the “電子マネー「Edy」” (“Edy” electronic cash) services, the stores where the service can be used, and information on Edy procedures when you change, damage or lose your FOMA terminal, visit the Edy website or i-mode site, or contact the inquiries on p.315.

■ Contact information for Edy service inquiries

bitWallet, Inc.

- For information on Edy, visit the Edy website or i-mode site.

Website: <http://www.edy.jp> (Only in Japanese)



i-mode site: iMenu▶ Menu List▶

くらしの情報 (Information for daily life)

▶ 生活総合 (Life)▶ 電子マネー「Edy」

(“Edy” electronic cash) (Only in Japanese)

- In the event of difficulties with any of the Edy procedures:

Edy emergency number: 0570-081-999 (Navi-dial)

Operating hours: Weekdays 9:30 am to 7:00 pm/

Saturday, Sunday, National

Holiday 10:00 am to 6:00 pm

* Check the phone number carefully before dialing not to make a call to a wrong number.

● Using ケータイクレジット「iD (アイディ)」 (iD credit payment service)

ケータイクレジット「iD (アイディ)」 (iD credit payment service) allows you to pay or use a cashing service only by holding your Osaifu-Keitai over a reader/writer unit, without having to take a credit card from your wallet and leave your signature. This makes your shopping easier and more enjoyable.

- To use the iD service, obtain the iD i-oppli, a card compatible with the iD service, and the Card i-oppli provided by the card issuer.
- To use the iD i-oppli for the first time, agree with “ご利用上の注意 (Notes on using the application)”, make the necessary preparations and download the Card i-oppli.
- The cost for using the iD credit service (e.g. annual fee) varies depending on the card company.
- A packet communication charge is applied for downloading the iD i-oppli or the Card i-oppli released by the card company.
- For more details, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.
- For information on iD, visit the iD website or i-mode site.
Website: <http://id-credit.com> (Only in Japanese)
i-mode site: iMenu▶ メニューリスト (Menu List)▶ ケータイクレジット「iD」 (iD credit payment service) (Only in Japanese)



* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.



● Using 「DCMX」 クレジットアプリ リ (“DCMX” credit application)

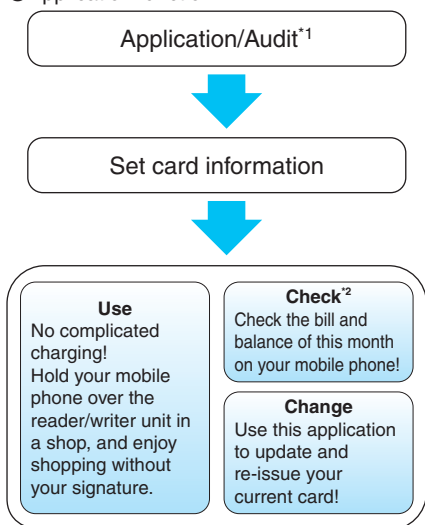
“DCMX” is a credit service that is compatible with “iD” and provided by the NTT DoCoMo group. DCMX is categorized into DCMX mini that will offer a monthly credit line of 10,000 yen, and DCMX and DCMX gold that will offer a cash or revolving credit line and issue a credit card.

Use this application to subscribe to DCMX mini easily and quickly, and use the mobile credit service immediately.



* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

● Application function



*1: A simple audit will be performed online at the time of application. Applications for other than DCMX mini will be connected to the application page on i-mode.

*2: The check function is only available for DCMX mini.

- For details on the service and its application, visit the following:
Website: <http://www.dcmx.jp>
(Only in Japanese)

i-mode site:

iMenu▶メニューリスト
(Menu List)▶DCMX
(ケータイクレジット) (Only in Japanese)

- For more information on this service, contact “Inquiries” described on the back cover of this manual.



■ NOTE

- Agree to “ご利用上の注意” (License Agreement) the first time you launch this application.
- Packet communication charges will apply to use the i-mode communication and this application.
- After you apply for the service or make the settings, the service cannot be launched with this application. To check your usage or change the settings, launch iD then select and launch DCMX simultaneously.

■ Notes on Osaifu-Keitai i-oppli

- NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the information set on the IC card.
- For more details, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.

NOTE

- ◆ Packet communication charges are applied for using i-mode communication such as “初期設定 (Initial setting)” and “主なメニュー (Main menu)” in the i-oppli programs.
- ◆ Even if you changed your FOMA terminal to a new model, the Edy function of the previous phone still can be used. Please be careful when discarding a FOMA terminal capable of using Edy.
- ◆ Note that if you set the i-oppli network setting to “OFF”, i-mode communication is not available and you cannot use the functions on “主なメニュー (Main menu)” in the i-oppli programs as well as “初期設定 (Initial setting)”.
- ◆ If you set the Unsolicited mail settings (Receive/Reject option) to reject to receive Internet mail, register “bitwallet.co.jp” as a domain separately because you need to receive a transaction-start message from the Edy center when using Mobile Edy (Payments over the Internet).
- ◆ NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the information set on a FOMA terminal.

● Using FOMA 通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA communication environment check application)

“FOMA 通信環境確認アプリ” (FOMA communication environment check application) is an application that allows you to check if the FOMA terminal is available in FOMA high-speed area.



* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

- Based on the result that “FOMA 通信環境確認アプリ” (FOMA communication environment check application) checks by communication, the fastest communication speed in the area is displayed.
- Packet communication fee for “FOMA 通信環境確認アプリ” (FOMA communication environment check application) is free.
- Please use FOMA communication environment check application under the terms of “ご利用上の注意” (License Agreement).
- Do not use the Multitask function when you use this application.

- The check result may be different if you check at the same place and same time depending on weather, signal strength, network congestion, and so on.

Launching an i-αppli Automatically

Use this function to launch a program automatically at the specified date and time or any intervals.

Enabling automatic launching

<Auto start set>

Default setting
OFF

- You can set automatic startup times for up to 3 programs.

1 "Auto start set" "ON" or "OFF"

Setting the launch date/time

<Auto start time>

Default setting
All OFF

Use this setting to specify the date and time when a program is automatically launched.

- A program does not start up automatically in the following situations:
 - When a FOMA terminal is turned off
 - When another function is running
 - During a call
 - During communication
 - When an alarm clock, schedule, To Do list or software update alarm is set for the same time as automatic launching

1 (FUNC) "Auto start time" Use to select a checkbox (☐)

- To enable the time interval set for a program

▶ Check the "Time interval set" checkbox



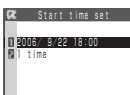
- To set the launch date and time

▶ Check the "Start time set" checkbox

2 (Finish) Set the launch date and time

- To set the launch date and time

▶ Select a date and time
▶ Enter the launch date and time



- To set the automatic launch repetition

▶ Select an item for the "repeat" setting ▶ "Daily" or "Weekly"

If you selected "Weekly", use to select a checkbox (☐) and press (Finish).

3 (Finish)

NOTE

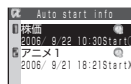
- ◆ If you set the "Time interval set" and "Start time set" for the same program and those automatic launch times are less than 10 minutes apart, the program will launch automatically for the first launch time but not for the second.

Checking whether an i-αppli launched automatically

Use this procedure to check whether an i-αppli automatically started up at the specified time. You can also check programs that failed to start up from the IC card function.

1 "i-αppli action info" "Auto start info"

The screen shows information such as the program name, automatic launch time and whether or not the program was launched. "Start " indicates that the program started up automatically, "Start " indicates that it did not start up automatically and "Start-" indicates that the time for automatic launch has not yet been reached.



NOTE

- ◆ If a program could not be launched automatically, the (Not run soft) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. Select the icon to view the auto start info screen. Select the program to launch it. Desktop icons → p.149
- ◆ Information is also stored when a program could not be launched automatically because you are using i-mode or running another application.
- ◆ "Auto start info" may include the information for the program you did not realize its launch.

<i-αppli To function>

Launching an i-αppli from a Site or Mail

Use this function to launch an i-αppli from functions other than i-αppli, such as an i-mode site or mail.

Enabling program launching with i-αppli To <i-αppli To setting>

Default setting
All activated

Use this setting to specify whether to launch an i-αppli from i-mode sites, mails, the Infrared data exchange function, Bar code reader or IC card function.

- This setting can be specified separately for each i-αppli program.

Continued on next page

1 Software list screen (p.310)▶

 (FUNC)▶ “Set i-αppli To”▶ Use  to select a checkbox () of an item▶  (Finish)

You can select any items from “Site “i-αppli To””, “Mail “i-αppli To””, “Ir “i-αppli To””, “Bar code “i-αppli To”” or “IC card “i-αppli To””.

Launching an i-αppli from a site

When an i-αppli launch is specified on an i-mode site, you can download the i-αppli from the site.

- This function is unavailable with some sites.

1 Sites screen (p.216)▶ Select an item for launching a program▶ “YES”

NOTE

<i-αppli that is launched immediately from a site>

- ◆ Unlike ordinary i-αppli programs, some i-αppli programs are immediately launched from i-mode sites.
 - This type of program is not stored on a FOMA terminal even if you download it from an i-mode site. This program is not listed even on the Software list screen.
 - A message asking whether to start communication may appear while a program is running.
 - After a program quits, a message asking whether to store the program may appear.
 - Some programs cannot be stored in a FOMA terminal.

Launching an i-αppli from a mail

When an i-αppli launch specification is pasted into a received i-mode mail, you can launch the i-αppli program from the i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.268)▶ Select an item for launching a program▶ “YES”

NOTE

- ◆ If multiple data are pasted into a mail, the pasted data themselves may not be displayed.
- ◆ When you replay with a quote or forward an i-mode mail, an i-αppli launch specification is not quoted. You cannot also quote a launch specification when forwarding a mail using the Data Link Software or Infra-red data exchange function.
- ◆ i-αppli programs cannot be launched from i-mode mails in Secret folders.

Launching an i-αppli from the Infrared data exchange function

This setting allows you to launch an i-αppli when receiving the i-αppli launch signal during Infra-red data exchange.

1 ▶ “Receive Ir data”▶ “Receive”▶ Receive the i-αppli launch signal

Launching an i-αppli using the Bar code reader

This setting allows you to launch an i-αppli using the Bar code reader when a scanned bar code includes the i-αppli launch specification.

1 ▶ “Bar code reader”▶ “New”▶ Scan a bar code

2 Select an item for launching a program▶ “YES”

Launching an i-αppli using the IC card function

This setting allows you to launch an i-αppli using the IC card function by holding the FeliCa icon on a FOMA terminal over a reader/writer unit.

- A program does not start up in the following situations:
 - When another function is running
 - During a call
 - When the program to launch is not installed
- When IC card lock is set, you cannot launch an i-αppli with the IC card function. When you launch an i-αppli with other function than IC card while IC card lock is set, you cannot use the IC card function with the i-αppli.

1 Hold the FeliCa icon “” on a FOMA terminal over a reader/writer unit

<i-αppli stand-by display>

Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen

Use this function to set a selected i-αppli program as the standby screen on your FOMA terminal. When the i-αppli standby screen appears, the “” or “” icon appears at the bottom of the screen.

- Only one i-αppli program can be set as the i-αppli standby screen.
- Some programs cannot be set as the standby screen.

1 Software list screen (p.310)▶ (FUNC)▶ “Software setting”▶ “Stand-by display”▶ “ON”▶ (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆ The “” icon appears for the program set as the standby screen.
- ◆ If a program that communicates is set as the i-oppo standby screen, it may not run correctly due to poor signal quality, etc.
- ◆ If you select “OFF” for “Stand-by net” in “Software setting”, you may not be able to receive timely information.
- ◆ When the i-oppo standby screen is set, the image set for “Stand-by display” in “Display setting” (p.137) does not appear.
- ◆ Even if the i-oppo standby screen is set, the screen set in “Stand-by display” in “Display setting” appears when you switch tasks to show the standby screen.
- ◆ If the power is cycled while the i-oppo standby screen is set, a message asking whether to launch the i-oppo standby screen appears.
- ◆ If “Lock all” (p.159) or “PIM lock” (p.166) is set while the i-oppo standby screen appears, the screen quits. To redisplay the i-oppo standby screen, release “Lock all” or “PIM lock”.

Running the i-oppo standby screen

Use this procedure to run the program set as the i-oppo standby screen.

1 On the i-oppo standby screen

The i-oppo starts up and the “” or “” icon at the bottom of the screen changes to a flashing “” or “” icon.



Deactivating the i-oppo standby screen

<Deactivate i-oppo standby screen>

● Deactivating the i-oppo standby screen while running an i-oppo

1 While running an i-oppo

 (1 second or longer) or 

Cancel	Cancels the i-oppo standby screen deactivation.
Ended	Quits the i-oppo standby screen without deactivating it and returns to the i-oppo standby screen.
Terminated	Deactivates the i-oppo standby screen.

● Deactivating the i-oppo standby screen while it appears

1 “i-oppo settings” “End stand-by display”

2 “Terminate” “YES”

■ To not deactivate the i-oppo standby screen
 “End”

NOTE

- ◆ If you deactivate the i-oppo standby screen, the image set for “Stand-by display” in “Display setting” appears on the standby screen.

Checking the i-oppo standby screen exit information

If an error occurred and the i-oppo standby screen was deselected, the name of the program which had the error, the time when the error occurred and the reason are logged so that you can check them.

1 “i-oppo action info” “End stand-by info”

The “End stand-by info” screen appears.



Function menu  p.319

Function menu (End stand-by info screen)

Copy info	Copies the i-oppo standby screen exit information data.
Delete info	Deletes the i-oppo standby screen exit information data.

NOTE

- ◆ No information is logged if the i-oppo standby screen ends normally.

Organizing an i-oppo

Upgrading an i-oppo <Upgrade>

Use this procedure to upgrade a downloaded i-oppo program when the new version is available on a site.

1 Software list screen (p.310)▶ ☐(FUNC)▶“Upgrade”▶“YES”

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot upgrade mail-connected i-oppai programs that change the mail folder names when:
 - Mail security is set
 - Folder security is set
 - Inbox or Outbox folder for the mail-connected i-oppai to be upgraded is being used

Deleting an i-oppai <Delete i-oppai>

Use this procedure to delete programs individually or delete all programs.

1 Software list screen (p.310)▶ ☐(FUNC)▶“Delete”▶Select any item

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted i-oppai program.
Delete selected	▶Use to select a checkbox (☐)▶☐(Finish)▶“YES” Deletes multiple i-oppai programs.
Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all the stored i-oppai programs.

NOTE

- ◆ If you try to delete the program set as the i-oppai standby screen (marked with “”), the one set to launch automatically (marked with “”) or the one set as the i-oppai standby screen with the automatic launch function (marked with “”), the status of the program and a message asking whether to delete the program appear.
- ◆ If you try to delete a mail-connected i-oppai, a message asking whether to delete the corresponding folders for the mail-connected i-oppai appears. Select “NO” to delete only the i-oppai, or “YES” to delete the i-oppai and folders. Even if selecting “YES”, you cannot delete the folders when the folder are being used, security is set for the folders or they contain a protected mail.
- ◆ When a mail-connected i-oppai is deleted, a new i-oppai mail received during the selection of an i-oppai to be deleted may also be deleted.
- ◆ Some Osaifu-Keitai i-oppai programs may require you to launch the program and delete the data on the IC card before deleting the program itself. You cannot delete this type of program even if performing “Delete this”. (Performing “Delete selected” or “Delete all” deletes other programs.) Delete the IC card data before deleting the program.
- ◆ Some Osaifu-Keitai i-oppai programs cannot be deleted.

Displaying the i-oppai data stored in the miniSD memory card <miniSD data>

Use this procedure to show the folder name list of the i-oppai data (miniSD) stored in the miniSD memory card.

1 ▶▶“miniSD saved data”

The “miniSD data list” screen appears.

Function menu (miniSD data list screen)

Display info	Shows the information about the i-oppai data (miniSD) stored in the miniSD memory card.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted i-oppai data file (miniSD).
Delete selected	▶Use to select a checkbox (☐)▶☐(Finish)▶“YES” Deletes multiple i-oppai data files (miniSD).
Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all the i-oppai data files (miniSD) stored in the miniSD memory card.

NOTE

- ◆ Some i-oppai data saved to the miniSD memory card (i-oppai data (miniSD)) may not be used in other FOMA terminals.
- ◆ Use “Software info” (p.312) to check that the i-oppai data (i-oppai data (miniSD)) will be saved to the miniSD memory card.

● Data information

You can check the following:

Maker	Who created the i-oppai If there is no information, “None” appears.
Available Software	Name of the i-oppai that can use the miniSD memory card If there is no information, “None” appears.
Use saved data	Whether there is a reason the i-oppai cannot use the miniSD memory card If at least one reason is indicated under “Reason”, “None” appears. If not, “ON” appears.
Reason	
• Software restriction	There is no i-oppai available*.
• UIM restriction	The FOMA card (UIM) was not used when the i-oppai was run*.
• Model restriction	The i-oppai (miniSD) was run on other than N902iX HIGH-SPEED*.
• Series restriction	The i-oppai (miniSD) was run on other than N902iX HIGH-SPEED or 902i/902iS series*.

* : If there is no reason the i-oppai cannot use the miniSD memory card, the option is grayed out.

● i-channel

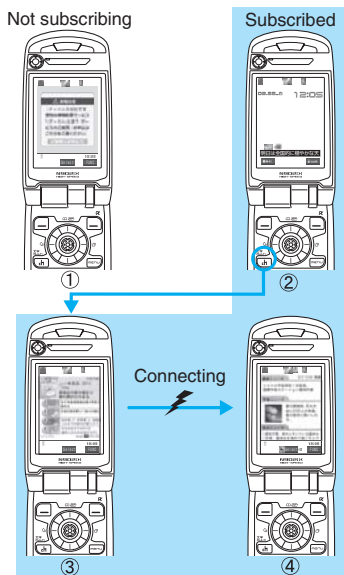
What is i-channel?	322
Accessing a Site from the Channel List	323
Making the i-channel Settings.....	i-Channel setting 324

What is i-channel?

i-channel is a service whereby news, weather and other information is sent as graphical information to i-channel compatible terminals from DoCoMo or IPs (information service providers). Information is periodically received and the latest information appears as telop text on the standby screen. Pressing the i-channel key (Ⓜ) displays the channel list (p.323). Selecting a channel from the list provides you with rich, detailed information.

This service provides only Japanese channels.

- For precautions or details on how to use i-channel, see "i-mode User's Manual".



* The above is only an image. The actual screens will look different.

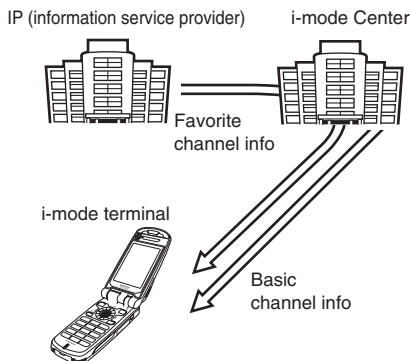
- You have not subscribed to i-channel.
- After you subscribe to i-channel, telop text automatically appears on the standby screen when you receive information or open the channel list.
- Pressing Ⓜ on the standby screen displays the channel list. The list displays information delivered on each channel.
- Selecting a channel allows you to view detailed information on that channel.

Channel types

The channels are categorized into two types: "Basic channel" and "Favorite channel". "Basic channel" is provided by NTT DoCoMo and registered at the time of purchase, so that you can view the channels from when you start subscribing to i-channel. The packet

communication charge for automatically updating the information sent for the "Basic channel" is included in the i-channel service charge. "Favorite channel" is provided by IPs (information service providers) other than NTT DoCoMo. You can select and register any channels of your liking. The packet communication charge for automatically updating the information sent for the "Favorite channel" is not included in the i-channel service charge.

Only the "Basic channel" information can appear as telop text on the standby screen.



* i-channel is a pay service you need to subscribe to (To subscribe to the i-channel, you need to subscribe to i-mode beforehand).

- How to operate → p.323
- Compatible models: This service is supported by i-channel-compatible terminals. For more information, see "i-mode User's Manual".

NOTE

- An information charge may be made for viewing some "Favorite channel".
- For some "Favorite channel", you may need to apply to the IP (information service provider) that offers these channels in order to view them.
- A packet communication charge is made for viewing detailed information on "Basic channel" and on "Favorite channel" from the channel list.

Trial service

If you have subscribed to i-mode and use an i-channel-compatible terminal but have never subscribed to i-channel, you can try the "Basic channel" free of charge for a given time. A packet communication charge will be made for viewing detailed information from the channel list.

- For cautions and details on how to use the trial service, see "i-mode User's Manual".

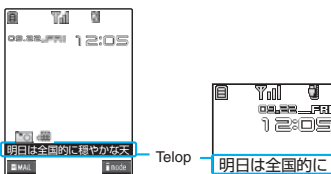
NOTE

- ◆ As a rule, the trial service will automatically start after a given time when the FOMA card (UIM) is inserted to start using the i-channel-compatible terminal. If it does not start automatically, press **[ch]** to start it.
- ◆ You can use the trial service only once per subscriber line.
- ◆ The trial service will end automatically after a given time. To quit the service before the expiration, see "i-mode User's Manual".

● Telop text on the standby screen/image display

If you subscribe to i-channel, delivered information will automatically appear as telop text on the standby screen or image display.

-  flashes while i-channel information is being delivered.
- You can set the telop display mode in "i-Channel setting". → p.324



NOTE

- ◆ Telop text appears even if i-motion or i-appli is set as the standby screen background.
- ◆ Telop text does not appear in Public mode (Driving mode), in Power saver mode, or if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted.
- ◆ The standby screen can display telop text even in Self mode.

Accessing a Site from the Channel List

A channel list is available for accessing the i-channel information site.

The channel screen can display up to 15 channels including official ones and general ones.

1 On the standby screen

The "channel list" screen appears.

Selecting "i-Channel" from the i-mode menu also opens the i-channel list screen.



Function menu → p.323

2 Select a channel item

NOTE

- ◆ If you have not subscribed to i-channel, launching the i-channel displays an announcement that you have not subscribed to i-channel. Selecting "ご説明&お申込" (Help & Applications) on the screen introduces you to i-channel and prompts you to subscribe to i-channel. Depending on the communication status, a message may appear indicating that you have not subscribed to i-channel, and the previous screen may reappear.
- ◆ In some cases, you may receive information when displaying the channel list.
- ◆ Receiving information does not sound a ring tone or vibrate the FOMA terminal. The incoming call lamp does not light or flash.
- ◆ You can change the i-channel host, though it usually does not need changing. → p.231
- ◆ A message may appear indicating that channel information cannot be delivered if:
 - A call or message is incoming
 - The FOMA terminal was initialized
 - The FOMA card (UIM) was exchanged
 - The host was changed

Function menu (channel list screen)

Add desktop icon	Pastes a desktop icon for opening the channel list screen onto the standby screen. "Using Desktop Icons" → p.149
Retry	Shows the current channel list screen from the top.
Sound effect	Sets whether to sound a tone (ON/OFF) on the channel list screen.

NOTE

- ◆ "Sound effect" set for the channel list screen affects "Sound effect" under "i-mode settings" (p.231).

Making the i-channel Settings

Default settings

Telop display setting: ON (Image display OFF)
Telop speed setting: Normal

Set whether to display telop text on the standby screen or on the image display. Also set the scrolling speed.

- Setting the Telop display setting to “Receiving” displays telop text twice when the latest information is delivered.
- Selecting “ON” for the image display displays telop text as follows:
 - Setting the Telop display setting to “ON” displays telop text twice on the image display each time the latest information is delivered or the FOMA terminal is folded.
 - Setting the Telop display setting to “Receiving” displays telop text twice when the latest information is delivered.
 - The Power saver mode is not set while telop text appears on the image display.

1 “i-mode settings”

“i-Channel setting” ▶ Select any item

Telop display setting	Sets whether to display channel information as telop text on the standby screen (ON/Receiving/OFF). If you select “ON” or “Receiving”, additionally set whether to display on the image display when the FOMA terminal is folded (ON/OFF).
Telop speed setting	Sets the telop scrolling speed (Normal/High/Low).

NOTE

- ◆ The i-Channel setting cannot be changed in Public mode (Driving mode) or if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted.

<Telop display setting>

- ◆ If you unsubscribe from i-mode before unsubscribing from i-channel, or after you unsubscribe from i-channel, the Telop display setting remains unchanged but telop text will not automatically appear.

● Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

What is Osaifu-Keitai?	326
Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-appli	326
What is ToruCa?	ToruCa 327
Acquiring ToruCa	Acquire ToruCa 328
Viewing ToruCa.....	ToruCa viewer 328
Making the ToruCa Settings.....	ToruCa settings 330
Locking the IC Card Functions	IC card lock 330

What is Osaifu-Keitai?

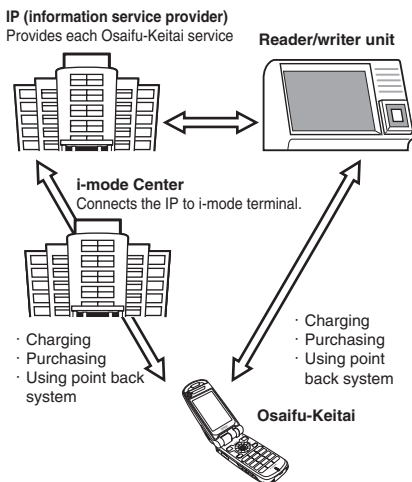
"Osaifu-Keitai" refers to a useful IC card function of an i-mode terminal (i-mode FeliCa) or to an i-mode terminal equipped with an IC card.

FeliCa is a type of contactless IC card technology that allows you to read/write data simply by holding the card over a reader/writer unit*.

Simply hold the Osaifu-Keitai over the reader/writer unit in a shop to use your phone as electronic cash to make payments, as an airline ticket or point card. The FOMA terminal makes your life more convenient.

Osaifu-Keitai is more useful than the existing FeliCa-compatible contactless IC cards in that you can even transmit electronic cash into the IC card of your Osaifu-Keitai or check the account balance or transaction history.

*: A unit that reads data from and writes data to IC cards.



* To use the IC card functions, download Osaifu-Keitai i-appli supporting the IC card function.

- The ways to subscribe to or use the Osaifu-Keitai services depend on your IP (information service provider). Check with them directly. For cautions on using the services, see "i-mode User's Manual".
- Take notes of the names or contact numbers of the Osaifu-Keitai services. Osaifu-Keitai malfunction, repair, model change, etc., may erase or alter data stored on the IC card. (In case of repair, you will be asked to erase the data by yourself.) Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on the IC card. The way to erase the data stored on the IC card and the warranty in the case of loss or alteration of the data

depends on the Osaifu-Keitai services. Check with your IP (information service provider) beforehand.

- In case of a model change or exchange due to a malfunction, data stored on the IC card cannot be copied to your new phone. The measures to be taken depend on the Osaifu-Keitai services. Check with your IP (information service provider) beforehand.
- Take great care not to lose your Osaifu-Keitai. If you have lost your Osaifu-Keitai, check with your IP (information service provider) for information on the Osaifu-Keitai services you have used. IC card functions can be restricted by Omakase Lock or IC card lock. → pp.159, 330

Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-appli

Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-appli to read/write IC card data

Launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-appli from the software list screen. Osaifu-Keitai i-appli allows you to read/write data on the IC card and use useful functions, e.g. charging electronic cash or transportation tickets, or viewing the account balance or transaction history on your mobile phone.

- Take care not to let others know your security codes and passwords for services.
- Data exchange between the software and the IC card is interrupted in the following cases. When this happens, data that has been exchanged is discarded. Operations to be performed after you finish talking depend on the services you have used:
 - There is an incoming call while an i-appli is launched
 - The battery runs out

1 menu → "Software list"

The "Software list" screen appears.

2 Select the Osaifu-Keitai i-appli

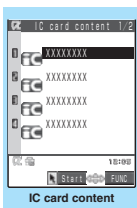
The Osaifu-Keitai i-appli is launched.

● Viewing Osaifu-Keitai i-ϕpli

You can view the Osaifu-Keitai i-ϕpli.

1 "IC card content"

The "IC card content" screen appears.



■ To launch an application

▶ Select an application to launch

Function menu (IC card content screen)

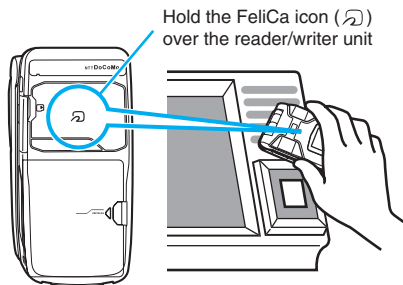
See the "Software list" function menu as the options are the same. → p.311

Using the Osaifu-Keitai

Holding the FeliCa icon "ㇿ" on the FOMA terminal over the reader/writer unit allows you to use the FOMA terminal as electronic cash or as a train ticket. To use this function, there is no need to launch an application.

- While you are talking on the phone, you cannot launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-ϕpli but can use the Osaifu-Keitai by holding the FeliCa icon over the reader/writer unit.

1 Hold the FeliCa icon "ㇿ" over the reader/writer unit to use your desired service



Hold the FeliCa icon (ㇿ) over the reader/writer unit

NOTE

- ◆ Attach the battery pack when using the Osaifu-Keitai. Even when the power is turned off or the battery is low, you still can use the IC card functions by holding the FeliCa icon over the reader/writer unit (cannot launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-ϕpli). Not using the battery pack for a long time or failing to charge the battery when the battery alarm sounds may make the IC card functions unavailable for use when needed, so be sure to charge the battery pack.
- ◆ Do not subject the FOMA terminal to strong shocks when holding the FeliCa icon over the reader/writer unit. If the reader/writer unit does not recognize the FeliCa icon, get the FOMA terminal closer to the unit and move it a little in parallel to the surface of the unit.
- ◆ While the IC card lock is set, you may be unable to download, upgrade or uninstall the Osaifu-Keitai i-ϕpli.
- ◆ Holding the FeliCa icon over a reader/writer unit may launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-ϕpli.

<ToruCa>

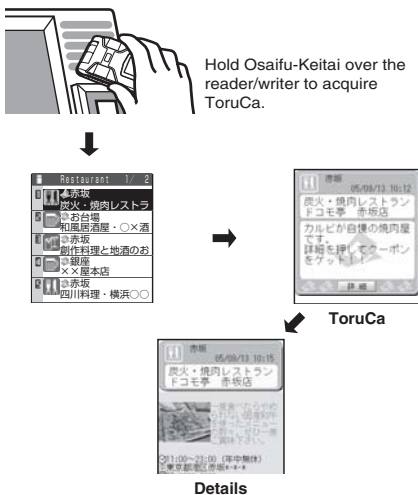
What is ToruCa?

ToruCa is an electronic card that can be acquired via Osaifu-Keitai, which can be used as an ad, restaurant card, coupon, etc.

ToruCa can be acquired via a reader/writer unit or downloaded from a site, and can be easily exchanged via mail, infrared data exchange or external memory.

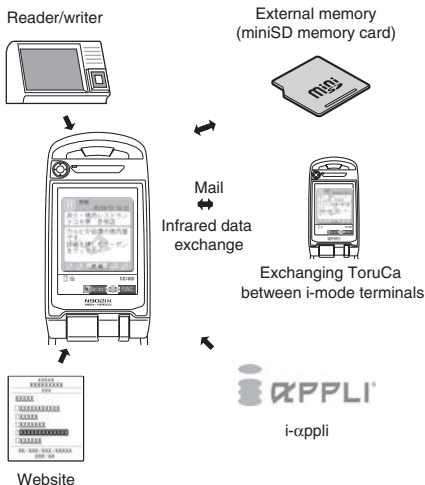
- The compatible models are 902i, 902iS series, and F702iD. For more details, see "i-mode User's Manual".

ToruCa usage flow



Select ToruCa from the list. Pressing the "詳細" (Detail) button displays the detailed information.

How ToruCa is acquired



NOTE

- ◆ A separate packet communication charge will be made for downloading ToruCa and ToruCa details from a site.

<Acquire ToruCa>

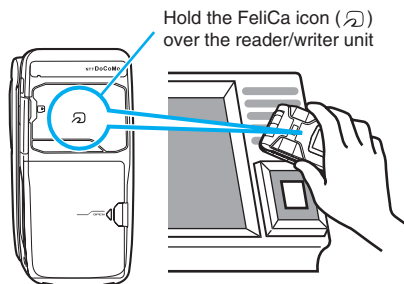
Acquiring ToruCa

- Acquired ToruCa is saved to “ToruCa” under “LifeKit”.

Acquiring data via a reader/writer unit

- 1 Hold the FeliCa icon “” over the reader/writer unit

The ToruCa acquisition tone sounds, and the incoming call lamp flashes for about 10 seconds. The “New ToruCa” desktop icon appears on the screen.



NOTE

- ◆ The acquisition screen does not appear when another function is running.
- ◆ ToruCa acquired via a reader/writer unit is saved to the “ToruCa” folder.
- ◆ Up to 100 ToruCa can be stored. The maximum size of ToruCa that can be stored is 1K bytes each. The maximum size of ToruCa detail that can be stored is 100K bytes each.
- ◆ You cannot change the ToruCa acquisition tone.
- ◆ The volume of the ToruCa acquisition tone is the same as that specified in “Phone” under “Ring volume”. If “Step” is set, the tone sounds at volume “Level 4”.
- ◆ The ToruCa acquisition tone does not sound in Manner mode.
- ◆ ToruCa can be acquired via a reader/writer unit while Lock all or PIM lock is set.
- ◆ You cannot acquire ToruCa via a reader/writer unit while IC card lock or Omakase Lock is set.
- ◆ Setting Lock all does not affect the IC card lock settings. However, you cannot set or release “IC card lock”.

<ToruCa viewer>

Viewing ToruCa

- 1 “ToruCa”

The ToruCa folder list screen appears.

- 2 Select a folder ▶ Select ToruCa

The ToruCa display screen appears.



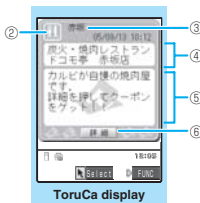
Function menu▶p.329

Guide to ToruCa list screen/ ToruCa display screen

ToruCa appears as follows:



Function menu▶p.329



Function menu▶p.330

- ① The folder titles appear.
- ② The ToruCa category icons appear.
- ③ The places, etc. (Index) appear.
- ④ The ToruCa titles appear.
- ⑤ The ToruCa contents appear. You can use the Phone To, Mail To or Web To function.
- ⑥ More details appear.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. →p.371

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot use the Mail To function if there are already 20 draft mail messages.
- ◆ The Phone To, Mail To or Web To function may be unavailable for some ToruCa.
- ◆ The “詳細” (Detail) button may not appear for some ToruCa.

Function menu (ToruCa folder list screen)

Add folder	▶ Enter a folder name You can add up to 20 folders. A folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters on the FOMA terminal. As for the miniSD memory card, a folder name can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	▶ Enter a folder name A folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters on the FOMA terminal. As for the miniSD memory card, a folder name can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.
Search all*	▶ “Index” or “Title” ▶ Enter text to search for ▶
Filter all*	Displays ToruCa meeting the specified criteria (“Unread”, “Read”, “Category”). If you select “Category”, use to select a category icon.
Display all*	Cancels displaying “Search all” and “Filter all”.
Delete folder	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES”
No. of ToruCa	Displays the number of ToruCa stored on the FOMA terminal.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all ToruCa stored on the FOMA terminal.

* : The option does not appear if the ToruCa is stored on the miniSD memory card.

NOTE

<Add folder>

- ◆ A newly created folder will appear above the “miniSD” folder.

<Edit folder name>

- ◆ You cannot change the names of “ToruCa” and “miniSD”.

<Delete folder>

- ◆ You cannot delete “ToruCa” or “miniSD”.

Function menu (ToruCa list screen)

Move	
• Move this	▶ Select a folder ▶ “YES” Moves the highlighted ToruCa to another folder.
• Move selected	▶ Select a folder ▶ Use to select a checkbox (□) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Moves ToruCa you select to another folder.
• Move all	▶ Select a folder ▶ “YES” Moves all displayed ToruCa to another folder.
Copy	
• Copy this	▶ Select a folder Copies the highlighted ToruCa.
• Copy selected	▶ Select a folder ▶ Use to select a checkbox (□) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Copies ToruCa you select.
• Copy all	▶ Select a folder Copies all displayed ToruCa.
Search*¹	▶ “Index” or “Title” ▶ Enter text to search for ▶
Disp all in folder*^{1,2}	Cancels displaying “Search”, “Filter” and “Sort”.
Sort*¹	Sorts ToruCa by specified criteria.
Filter*¹	Displays ToruCa meeting the specified criteria (“Unread”, “Read”, “Category”). If you select “Category”, use to select a category icon.
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the selected ToruCa attached. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → p.247
Send Ir data*¹	“Transferring One Data at a Time” → p.385
Copy to miniSD*³	
• Copy this	▶ Select a folder Copies the highlighted ToruCa to the miniSD memory card.
• Copy selected	▶ Select a folder ▶ Use to select a checkbox (□) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Copies ToruCa you select to the miniSD memory card.
• Copy all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select a folder ▶ “YES” Copies all displayed ToruCa to the miniSD memory card.
No. of ToruCa	Displays the number of ToruCa stored on the FOMA terminal.
ToruCa info	Displays the ToruCa information.

Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted ToruCa.
• Delete selected	▶Use to select a checkbox ▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Deletes ToruCa you select.
• Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all displayed ToruCa.

- *1 : The option does not appear if the ToruCa is stored on the miniSD memory card.
 *2 : “Display all” appears instead when “Search all”, “Filter all” or “Display all” works on the ToruCa folder list screen.
 *3 : “Copy to phone” appears instead if the ToruCa is stored on the miniSD memory card. When “Copy to phone” appears, a folder is not to be selected.

Function menu (ToruCa display screen)

Move	▶Select a folder Moves the displayed ToruCa to another folder.
Copy	▶Select a folder Copies the displayed ToruCa.
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the displayed ToruCa attached. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → p.247
Send Ir data ^{*1}	“Transferring One Data at a Time” → p.385
Copy to miniSD ^{*2}	▶Select a folder Copies the displayed ToruCa to the miniSD memory card.
Update ^{*1*3}	Updates the displayed ToruCa detail.
Save image ^{*1*3}	Saves the displayed ToruCa detail. Select “Normal image” or “Background image”.
Add to phone-book ^{*1}	Adds a phone number or mail address contained in the displayed ToruCa to the phonebook. → p.111
Delete	Deletes the displayed ToruCa.

- *1 : The option does not appear if the ToruCa is stored on the miniSD memory card.
 *2 : “Copy to phone” appears instead if the ToruCa is stored on the miniSD memory card. When “Copy to phone” appears, a folder is not to be selected.
 *3 : The option can be selected when the ToruCa (detail) appear.

NOTE

- ◆ You may be unable to perform attachments to a message, send data via infrared data exchange, or copy to miniSD depending on the data size of ToruCa downloaded from a site or acquired via i-appli, etc.

<Copy to miniSD>

- ◆ The ToruCa (detail) is copied as ToruCa without detailed information. To reacquire the detailed information, recopy the ToruCa copied to the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal. However, the detail data may not be acquired depending on the content of the copied ToruCa.

<Compose message>

- ◆ The ToruCa (detail) is transferred as ToruCa without detailed information. → p.256
 The detail data can be acquired on the recipient side. However, the detail data may not be acquired depending on the content of the received ToruCa.

<Send Ir data>

- ◆ The ToruCa (detail) is transferred as ToruCa without detailed information. The detail data can be acquired on the recipient side. However, the detail data may not be acquired depending on the content of the received ToruCa.

<ToruCa settings>

Making the ToruCa Settings

- 1 ▶▶“ToruCa settings”▶Select any item

Receive from R/W (default: Accept)	Sets to acquire ToruCa (Accept) or not to acquire ToruCa (Reject) when you hold the FeliCa icon over a reader/writer unit.
Scroll (default: 1 line)	Selects “1 line”, “3 lines” or “5 lines” for the number of scrolling lines on the ToruCa display screen.

<IC card lock>

Locking the IC Card Functions

Default setting
OFF

Lock the IC card functions in order to prevent other people from using the functions without your consent.

- Turning off the power does not unlock the IC card functions.

Setting/releasing IC card lock

- If SimpleLock is set to “ON”, you can easily set/release the IC card lock on the standby screen. → p.331

- 1 ▶▶“Lock/Security”▶“IC card lock”▶Enter your security code

IC card lock is set and “ Lock” appears on the screen.

■ To release IC card lock

- ▶Repeat Step 1

IC card lock is released and “ Lock” disappears from the screen.



NOTE

- ◆ IC card lock cannot be set/released while you are talking on the phone or another function is running.
- ◆ Removing the battery pack sets the IC card lock automatically. In this case, attaching the battery pack releases the IC card lock automatically.
- ◆ Even if the battery runs out and the power is then turned off, the current IC card lock remains unreleased.

Setting/releasing IC card lock easily <SimpleLock>

Default setting
OFF

- Set/release IC card lock easily on the standby screen.

- 1   ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “SimpleLock” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “ON”
 - To invalidate the lock
▶ “OFF”

● Using SimpleLock to set IC card lock

- 1 On the standby screen  (1 second or longer)
 - To release IC card lock
▶ On the standby screen  (1 second or longer) ▶ Enter your security code

● Full Browser

Displaying Website Designed for PC	Full Browser	334
Setting Full Browser.....	Full Browser settings	338

i-mode is not available to use home URL, bookmark and other data registered in full browser.
Furthermore, the settings performed in full browser are invalid for i-mode.

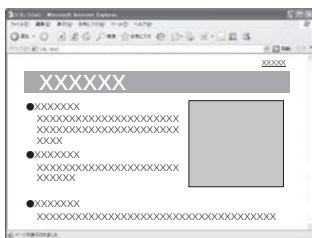
Displaying Website Designed for PC

You can enjoy viewing websites designed for PC with the full browser function. Some websites incompatible with i-mode can be displayed correctly. However, such websites may not be displayed or be displayed incorrectly depending on the site.

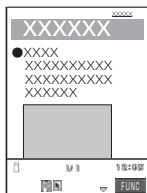
- The packet communication fee for using full browser is charged separately from “Pake-Houdai”.
- You can view website composed of frames^{*1}. You can also select a frame to display it. → p.337
- You can view TLS/SSL^{*2}-compliant websites in full browser.

*1 : The “frame” used in this chapter refers to each of separated sections that constitute a website page and differs from that used for framed photography.

*2 : TLS and SSL are authentication/encryption technology to protect your privacy in data transmissions. Data sent to or received from a TLS/SSL page is encrypted to prevent hackers from eavesdropping data, site spoofing or altering, thus making credit card transactions and the sending of personal information (e.g. address) safer.

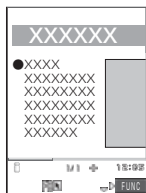


Website for PC



Normal mode → p.335

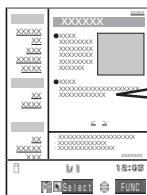
Shown in the width of your FOMA terminal display



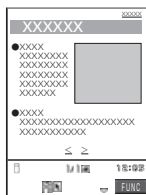
Full scale mode → p.336

Shown in similar size to the display of 800 dots wide × 600 dots high on a PC

Switching between
Normal mode and Full
scale mode → p.335



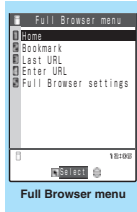
All frames → p.337



Selected frame → p.337

1 "Internet (Full Browser)"

The "Full Browser menu" screen appears.



2 Select any item

Home	Shows the website with the URL registered as home URL. If no home URL is registered, the screen for registering the home URL appears.
Bookmark^{*1}	Shows the website registered as bookmark.
Last URL	Shows the website you visited last.
Enter URL^{*2}	Enters a URL to display the website.
Full Browser settings	Performs or shows the full browser settings. → p.338

*1 : For information on how to use bookmarks, see the pages describing the i-mode bookmark operation. → p.222

*2 : For information on how to enter URLs, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode. → p.221

■ When the confirmation message asking whether to use full browser appears

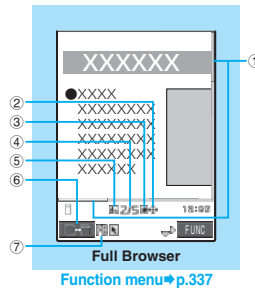
The default setting of "Access setting" (setting whether to use full browser) is "No". When "No" is set for "Access setting", the confirmation message asking whether to use full browser appears. Read the given notes carefully and perform the setting.

When you select "Yes" on the confirmation message, "Yes" is set for "Access setting" (p.338) and the setting will be retained.

NOTE

- ◆ It may take time to open some websites.
- ◆ You cannot save a page displayed in full browser as a screen memo.
- ◆ Websites displayed in full browser cannot be viewed in i-mode.
- ◆ Full browser does not support Flash movie and PDF.
- ◆ The Phone To function is unavailable in full browser.
- ◆ Be sure to insert the FOMA card (UIM) before setting "Access setting".
- ◆ You cannot view the home URL site in full browser even if pressing  (HOME) on the standby screen.
- ◆ When "Access setting" is set to "Yes" and the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced, the "Access setting" changes to "No".

Full Browser screen



Function menu → p.337

- ① Scroll bar
Indicates the current location in the displayed page. → p.336
- ②  Full scale mode
Appears when the Full scale mode is used. → p.335
- ③  Selected frame display icon
Indicates that the selected frame (p.337) appears.
- ④ Z/5 Number of activated multi windows
Indicates the order and number of activated windows. → p.336
- ⑤   "Flash" flashes when another frame is in communication while the selected frame is shown (p.337). "Flash" flashes when another frame is in communication while multiple windows are active (p.336).
- ⑥  Change window icon
Pressing  () switches pages when multiple websites are open.
- ⑦   Appears during connection to the Internet in full browser mode.

● Changing display mode

You can switch the display mode between Normal and Full scale on the Full Browser screen.

- The default mode can be set in "Full Browser settings" (p.338).
- You can switch the current display mode between Normal and Full scale by using the function menu.
- The display mode is retained when full browser is exit. The same display mode is applied the next time full browser is activated.

■ Normal mode

Websites are displayed in the width of a FOMA terminal display. Only vertical scrolling is required for viewing websites (horizontal scrolling is not needed).

■ Full scale mode

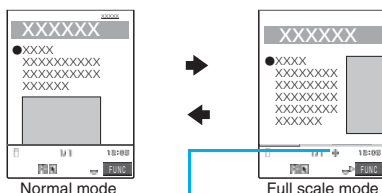
Websites are displayed in the similar size to the display of 800 dots wide × 600 dots high on a PC. You can view websites by scrolling vertically and horizontally.

1 Full Browser screen (p.335)▶

(FUNC)▶ “Change disp. mode”

The display mode is switched from Normal to Full scale, or vice versa.

When the display mode is switched, the top of the current page is shown in the Normal mode and the upper left area is shown in the Full scale mode.



Full scale mode
Indicates that you can scroll in 4 directions of up, down, left or right.

● Scrolling

When the whole page is not displayed on the Full Browser screen, you can view the remaining part by scrolling the screen.

■ To scroll using

Press to scroll down, and to scroll up on the Full Browser screen (in Normal mode and Full scale mode).

Press to scroll right, and to left on the Full Browser screen (only in Full scale mode). The screen is scrolled continuously in the direction you press.

■ To scroll using (HOME) or (MEMO/CHECK)

Press (MEMO/CHECK) to scroll down one screen, or (HOME) to scroll up one screen on the Full Browser screen. Furthermore, pressing (MEMO/CHECK) for 1 second or longer enables you to jump to the bottom of the page and (HOME) for 1 second or longer to jump to the top of the page.

■ To scroll using the Neuropointer

Slide to move the cursor to the direction you want to scroll. When the cursor reaches the edge of screen, the cursor changes to (depending on the scroll direction). In Normal mode, you can scroll a screen in 2 directions of up and down.

In Full scale mode, you can scroll a screen in 4 directions of up and down, or right and left.

■ To switch to scroll mode

Select “Scroll mode” from the Full Browser function menu (p.337) to switch to scroll mode. In scroll mode, the screen is scrolled in the direction where is slid. When the cursor continues to be moved, the screen is scrolled continuously.

In Normal mode, the screen can be scrolled in up and down directions.

In Full scale mode, the screen can be scrolled in all directions (8 directions).

Scroll mode can also be set/released by pressing on the full browser screen.

● Returning to the previous page/going to the next page

Press to return to the page previously shown before the current page. To go back to the original page, press (only in Normal mode).

Use the function menu to return to the previous page or go to the next page in Full scale mode.
→ p.338

● Using multi window

You can open up to five websites simultaneously in full browser.

- Switch the multi-opened websites one by one.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot arrange the multi-opened websites side-by-side.

1 Full Browser screen (p.335)▶

(FUNC)▶ “Open new window”

▶ Select any item

Bookmark ^{*1}	Shows the website registered as bookmark.
Enter URL ^{*2}	Enters a URL to display the website.
Display home	Shows the website registered as home URL.
Link	Opens the link selected (highlighted) in a website.

*1 : For information on how to use bookmarks, see the pages describing the i-mode bookmark operation.
→ p.222

*2 : For information on how to enter URLs, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode. → p.221

The website specified opens with a new window.

■ To display other pages

Press to change pages to display.

■ To close a page

▶ Display the page you want to close

▶ (FUNC)▶ “Close window”▶ “YES”

NOTE

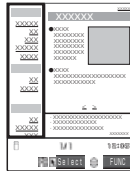
- ◆ You can change websites to display from the function menu.
- ▶ Full Browser screen (p.335) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Change window” ▶ Select the title of the page you want to display
- ◆ Some websites contain a link set to open the websites using new windows. When you select such link, the website will open with a new window.

● Displaying a page composed of frames

You can view websites composed of frames that are designed for PC.

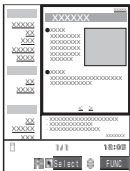
- You can select a frame to display it.

1 Full Browser screen (p.335) ▶ Display a page composed of frames

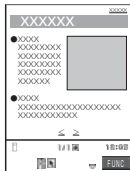


2 Use to select a frame ▶

The selected frame appears.
Neuropointer is also available to select frames.



All frames



Selected frame

■ To return to the all-frames screen

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “All frames”

Pressing  also returns to the all-frames screen.

NOTE

- ◆ For a website including several frames, all the frames may not be displayed (resulting in frames without characters or images).

● Uploading images

Upload JPEG or GIF images stored in your FOMA terminal to websites.

- Procedure for uploading images depends on websites. Follow the procedure described on the website you visit.

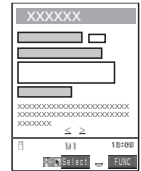
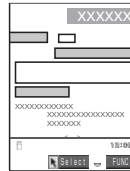
NOTE

- ◆ You cannot upload multiple images that exceed 80K bytes in total or data in which the selected image and other data exceed 100K bytes in total.
- ◆ Some websites may not support uploading function.
- ◆ You cannot upload images that are not allowed to be output to a device other than the FOMA terminal.

● Switching from i-mode to full browser

Switch to full browser to display websites incompatible with i-mode.

1 Website screen displayed in i-mode ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Switch to FB” ▶ “YES”



Switch to full browser to correctly display websites incompatible with i-mode (e.g. websites designed for PC). Some websites may not be displayed or be displayed incorrectly.

NOTE

- ◆ Websites displayed in full browser cannot be viewed in i-mode.
- ◆ If the display mode is changed to full browser during character entry, the entered characters are cleared.
- ◆ The packet communication fee for using full browser is charged separately from “Pake-Houdai”.

Function menu (Full Browser screen)

Add bookmark^{*1}	Adds the site to the bookmark list.
Bookmark^{*1}	Opens the Bookmark folder list screen.
Save image	▶ Use  to select an image, then press  “YES” ▶ Select a folder Saves the image in the displayed page. When selecting an image in Full scale mode, press  to go down, or  to go up.
Enter URL^{*2}	Enters a URL to display the website.
Scroll mode	Switches to scroll mode. “To switch to scroll mode” → p.336

Open new window	Opens a website with a new window. “Using multi window” → p.336
Close window	Closes the displayed window.
Change window	Switches windows when multiple websites are open.
All frames	Returns to all frames screen.
Change disp. mode	Switches the Full Browser screen display mode between Normal and Full scale. → p.335
Compose message	Pastes the URL of the displayed page to compose an i-mode message. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → p.247
Reload	Refreshes the displayed page.
Retry	Plays an animation in the displayed page from the beginning.
Home	
• Set as home URL	Registers the URL of the displayed page as the home page. One URL can be stored.
• Display home	Displays the home page.
History back	Takes one page back from the page currently displayed.
History forward	Returns to the screen that had been displayed before performing “History back”.
Site info	
• Title	Displays the title of the displayed page.
• URL	Displays the URL of the displayed page.
• Certificate	Displays the TLS/SSL certificate details when the displayed page supports TLS/SSL.
Set image disp.	Sets whether to display images. When “OFF” is set, “  ” appears instead of images.
Change CHR code	Changes the character code to redisplay a page displayed incorrectly.
Cookie	
• Cookie settings	“Setting Cookie” → p.339
• Delete Cookies	“Deleting Cookie” → p.339
Referer setting	“Setting Referer” → p.339

*1 : For information on how to use bookmarks, see the pages describing the i-mode bookmark operation.
→ p.222

*2 : For information on how to enter URLs, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode. → p.221

NOTE

<Scroll mode>

◆ Pressing  on a site screen also switches to/cancels Scroll mode.

<Full Browser settings>

Setting Full Browser

1 Full Browser menu screen (p.335)

▶ “Full Browser settings” ▶ Select any item

Access setting	Sets whether to use full browser. → p.335
Home URL	Sets the home page.
Scroll	Sets scroll speed and whether to display linked pages.
• Speed	Selects the speed for scrolling pages from “High speed” and “Low speed”.
• During scroll in focus	Select “ON” or “OFF” to set whether to display the pages (linked pages) selected when scrolling a website.
Font size	Selects any of “Standard”, “Small” and “Large” for the size of characters displayed on the Full Browser screen.
Set image disp.	Sets whether to display images. When “OFF” is set, “  ” appears instead of images.
Cookie settings	“Setting Cookie” → p.339
Delete Cookies	“Deleting Cookie” → p.339
Referer setting	“Setting Referer” → p.339
Display Mode setting	“Changing display mode” → p.335
Script setting	▶ “Valid” or “Invalid” Sets whether to validate JavaScript* when a website is displayed. Some websites may be displayed incorrectly unless “Script setting” is set to “Valid”.
Window Open Guard	▶ “Valid” or “Invalid” Sets whether to automatically open a new window by using JavaScript*. Setting to “Valid” does not open a window automatically.
Check settings	Enables confirmation of “Full Browser settings” contents.
Reset last URL	Clears the stored last URL. No “last URL” remains after this operation is performed.
Reset	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Returns the full browser settings to default.

* : JavaScript is a programming language that can be included on web pages to make them more interactive.

Cookie

Default setting
Valid

Using Cookie* enables you to effectively access the websites that you have seen once.

- You can set or delete Cookie from the Full Browser settings or function menu on the Full Browser screen.

* : Cookie is the mechanism for temporarily saving the date you accessed the website, number of accesses and your other information. The information is sent from server, saved temporarily in your FOMA terminal and used for contents service. If Cookie is sent, the information such as date you accessed the website and number of accesses is also sent to the site. Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Cookie. However, some websites and contents services require you to validate the Cookie setting for their correct display and use.

● Setting Cookie

- 1 Full Browser menu screen (p.335)▶
▶“Full Browser settings”▶“Cookie settings”▶Select any item

Valid	Always validates Cookie. No confirmation is made when Cookie is sent or received.
Invalid	Always invalidates Cookie.
Notify (sending)	Enables you to choose whether to send Cookie every time you connect to a page. No confirmation is made when Cookie is received and the information is saved in your FOMA terminal.
Notify (receiving)	Enables you to choose whether to receive Cookie every time you connect to a page. No confirmation is made when Cookie is sent.
Notify (send/recv.)	Enables you to choose whether to send or receive Cookie every time you connect to a page.

NOTE

- ◆Expired Cookies are deleted in the ascending order of no use when the number and size of Cookies exceed the maximum limit.
- ◆All Cookies stored in your FOMA terminal are deleted when “Reset” is performed.
- ◆When “Notify” is set, some websites may continuously display message screens asking whether to send and receive (update) Cookie.

● Deleting Cookie

- 1 Full Browser menu screen (p.335)▶
▶“Full Browser settings”▶“Delete Cookies”▶Enter your security code
▶“YES”

All Cookies stored in your FOMA terminal are deleted. (You cannot delete them separately.)

Referer

Default setting
Send

You can set whether to send Referer*.

* : Referer is a source of link information. Sending Referer transfers information such as the page from which you access the site. Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Referer. However, you may not access the linked pages in some websites unless Referer is sent.

● Setting Referer

- 1 Full Browser menu screen (p.335)▶
▶“Full Browser settings”▶“Referer setting”▶Select any item

Send	Sends Referer.
Unsend	Does not send Referer.
Notify	Confirms whether to send Referer.

NOTE

- ◆When “Notify” is set, the message asking whether to send Referer appears continuously depending on the website.

● Display/Edit/Organization

■ Mastering still images

Data Box		342
Displaying Still Images.....	My picture	344
Editing Images	Edit image	353

■ Mastering movies

Playing Movies/i-motion	i-motion	355
Editing Movies	Edit movie	361
Moving Movies/i-motion to the miniSD Memory Card	Move contents	364

■ Mastering Chara-den

What is Chara-den?	Chara-den	364

■ Mastering melodies

Playing Melodies.....	Melody	368

■ Mastering memory cards

miniSD Memory Card		371
Copying Data Stored on the FOMA Terminal to the miniSD Memory Card		375
Previewing Data Stored on the miniSD Memory Card ...	SD-PIM	376
Copying Data Stored on the miniSD Memory Card to the FOMA Terminal.....		378
Managing the miniSD Memory Card		379
Using the FOMA Terminal as miniSD Reader/Writer.....		379

■ Mastering various data

Working with Folders and Files.....		381
Preventing Phonebook Image Forwarding.....	Forwarding image	382

■ Transferring data via infrared data exchange/cable connection

Transferring Data via Infrared Data Exchange/ Cable Connection	Infrared data exchange/OBEX	382
Transferring One Data at a Time		385
Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time		386
Using the Infrared Remote Control Function		387

■ Mastering PDF viewer

Viewing PDF Data	My document	388

■ Printing a still image

Printing Stored Images	PictBridge print	393

Data Box

The following items and folders are prepared for Data box, and still images or movies shot with the built-in camera or data downloaded from messages or websites are categorized into the folders.

- The following are the maximum numbers of files that can be stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone):
My picture: 720 including images you shoot
i-motion: 100 including movies you shoot
Melody: 400
Chara-den: 10 including characters stored at the time of purchase
My document: 400 PDF documents
Music: 201 including Chaku-Uta-Full® stored at the time of purchase
Up to 100 data, up to 1,200K bytes can be stored in Secret under My picture, and up to 10 data, up to 5M bytes in Secret under i-motion.
- Up to 20 folders can be added to My picture, i-motion, Melody, My document and Music respectively.
- Data stored in My picture, i-motion, Melody, My document, and Music can be moved to another folder in the same item.

My picture

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox Camera	JPEG, GIF, SWF* ¹	All images can be saved here. Images copied from the miniSD memory card or transferred via infrared data exchange are saved to the Inbox. Still images shot using Chara-den are saved to the Camera folder.
Decomail-picture		Deco-mail images preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Images can be saved here as well as to Inbox and Camera folders.
Pre-installed		Preinstalled images and animations for the standby screen or wake-up are stored.
Secret* ²		Stores images that you want to prevent others from viewing.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)		Images can be saved here as well as to Inbox and Camera folders.
Original animation	—	Animations created in Continuous mode or original animations are stored.

Folder	File format	Content
miniSD Picture	JPEG, GIF	Still images you shot, JPEG images/GIF images copied from the FOMA terminal, JPEG images/GIF images and animations saved from a PC to the miniSD memory card are stored.
miniSD Image Box	JPEG, GIF	GIF animations copied from the FOMA terminal, JPEG images/GIF images and animations saved from a PC to the miniSD memory card are stored. → p.373
Frame	IFM	Frames preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Frames downloaded or acquired via ToruCa will be saved.
Stamp	IFM	Marker stamps preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Marker stamps downloaded or acquired from ToruCa will be saved.
Face stamp	FSD	Face stamps preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Downloaded face stamps will be saved.

Music

Folder	File format	Content
Playlist	—	The playlist that you created on the FOMA terminal is saved.
Inbox	3GP	Music data can be saved here.
Pre-installed		Music data preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored.
SD-Audio	SA1	Music data transferred from a PC to the miniSD memory card are stored.
Movable contents	SB2	Music data moved from the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card (stored on the miniSD memory card) will be stored in this folder.
(User created folders 1 to 20)	3GP	Music can be saved here as well as to Inbox folder.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.371

i-motion

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox	MP4	All movies or i-motion can be saved here.
Camera		Movies or i-motion copied/moved from the miniSD memory card or transferred via infrared data exchange are saved to the Inbox.
Pre-installed		Movies shot using Chara-den are saved to the Camera folder.
Secret* ²		i-motion preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)		Stores movies or i-motion you want to prevent others from viewing.
miniSD SD Video* ³	MP4, ASF* ⁴	Movies you shot, movies or i-motion copied from the FOMA terminal, or movies saved from a PC to the miniSD memory card are stored.
miniSD Multimedia* ⁵		
Movable contents	MP4	Movie or i-motion moved from the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card (stored on the miniSD memory card) will be stored in this folder.
Playlist* ⁶	—	—

Melody

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox	SMF, MFi	All melodies can be saved here.
Pre-installed	MFi	Melodies copied from the miniSD memory card transferred via infrared data exchange are saved to Inbox.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)	SMF, MFi	Melodies or sound effects preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored.
Voice announce	—	Melodies can be saved here as well as to Inbox.
miniSD	SMF, MFi	Messages recorded using Voice announce are stored.
miniSD	SMF, MFi	Melodies copied from the FOMA terminal or saved from a PC to the miniSD memory card are stored.
Playlist* ⁶	—	—

Chara-den

Folder	File format	Content
—	AFD	Chara-den characters preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Downloaded Chara-den characters will be saved.

My document

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox	PDF	PDF documents preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)		All PDF documents can be saved here. PDF documents copied from the miniSD memory card transferred via infrared data exchange are saved to Inbox.
miniSD	PDF	PDF documents can be saved here as well as to Inbox.
		PDF documents copied from the FOMA terminal or saved from a PC to the miniSD memory card are stored.

*1 : SWF is a file format for Flash movies.

*2 : The options appear only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. The folder cannot contain images/i-motion stored at the time of purchase.

*3 : Movies or i-motion with video will be saved.

*4 : ASF format is play-only.

*5 : Voice-only movies or i-motion without video will be saved.

*6 : Playlist is a folder used for playlist playback. The folder cannot contain data and cannot be deleted.

■ Important

- It is recommended to copy data stored in the Data box to the miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using the miniSD memory card or by using the Data Link Software (p.475) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional). (Images, movies or melodies that are not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal cannot be stored on the miniSD memory card or transferred to a PC.)
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility for data loss. Save the data to the miniSD memory card, or use the Data Link Software to save the data to your PC just in case.

Displaying Still Images

Still images shot with the built-in camera, downloaded from websites or stored on the miniSD memory card appear in My picture under the Data box.

- An image cannot be displayed if the width or height exceeds 2,304 dots, if the size exceeds 2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high or if the file size exceeds 1,200K bytes. Also, a progressive JPEG image larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or whose width or height exceeds 640 dots cannot be displayed.

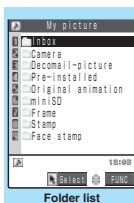
Progressive JPEG image → p.225

1 “My picture”

The “folder list” screen appears.

The “Secret” folder appears in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode.

Content in My picture → p.342



Function menu → p.381

2 Select a folder

The “image list (Picture list)” screen appears.

Image list screen → p.345



Function menu → p.346

3 Select an image

The “My picture” screen appears.

Use  to view the previous or next image.

If the image is larger than 240 dots wide × 270 dots high, use  to switch between actual size and large size.

Use the Neuropointer to scroll the image.



Function menu → p.348

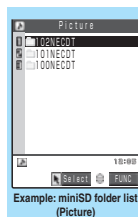
NOTE

- ◆ If an image is displayed in the actual size, you cannot use  to view the previous or next image, or use the function menu.
- ◆ Original animation, GIF-formatted animation or Flash movie cannot be displayed in the actual size.
- ◆ It may take some time to display images if a lot of data are stored on the FOMA terminal or on the miniSD memory card.
- ◆ Flash movies are played at the volume set in “Phone” under the “Ring volume” settings. If “Step” is set, Flash movies are played at volume “Level 2”.

Displaying images stored on the miniSD memory card

1 Folder list screen (p.344) “miniSD” “Picture” or “Image Box”

The “miniSD folder list” screen appears.



Example: miniSD folder list (Picture)
Function menu → p.381

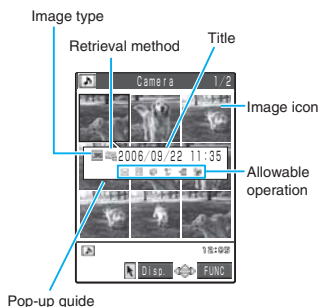
2 Select a folder Select an image

Guide to the Picture list and Title list

Picture list

Nine images* stored on the FOMA terminal appear on the screen at a time, and the title of the selected image appears in a popup guide. Popup icons show the image type, the image retrieval method, and the settings that can be specified for the image.

* : Four images appear simultaneously as for the images stored on the miniSD memory card (Picture).



Title list

Titles of nine images are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the image type, the image retrieval method, and the settings that can be specified for the image.

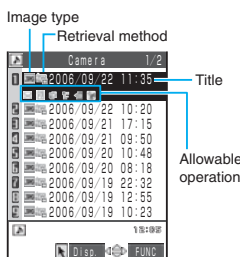


Image type icon

Icon	Description
	JPEG-formatted image (Can be attached to a normal message/ Can be attached to a large message/Can be compressed then attached to a large message (if it becomes 500K bytes or smaller after compressed))* ¹
	GIF-formatted image (Can be attached to a normal message/ Cannot be attached to a message (10,001 to 100K bytes)/Cannot be attached to a message (larger than 640 dots wide x 480 dots high, larger than 100K bytes))* ¹
	GIF (IFM) frame, marker stamp* ¹
	FSD facestamp
	SWF Flash movie

Icon	Description
	MP4 movie/i-motion* ¹
(Note in blue)	MP4 i-motion with sound effects* ¹
(Note in orange)	ASF i-motion
	MP4 i-motion with playback restrictions* ²
	MP4 i-motion with sound effects and playback restrictions* ²
*3/*4 (Note in green)	i-motion that can be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone)* ⁵
*3/*4 (Note in blue)	Sound-effected i-motion that can be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone)* ⁵
	i-motion that is not allowed to be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone)
	Partly-downloaded i-motion
	AFD Chara-den characters
	Image to which the FOMA card operational restriction applies

*1 : " " is added to icons for data that are file-restricted or not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal. The data cannot be transferred via mail or infrared data exchange, except if it was shot with the FOMA terminal and file restrictions are set.

*2 : " " turns to " " when the playback count reaches the limit or playback period expires.

*3 : i-motion can be moved only if the FOMA card (UIM) being used was also used to save the i-motion.

*4 : i-motion can be moved only if the FOMA model and FOMA card (UIM) being used were also used to save the i-motion.

*5 : " " appears for i-motion with playback count and playback period restrictions. " " turns to " " when the playback count reaches the limit or playback period expires.

Retrieval method icon

Icon	Description
No icon	Data stored at the time of purchase
	Data downloaded from a site, messages or ToruCa, or acquired from i-appli
	Data shot with the camera
	Data copied from the miniSD memory card or a PC, acquired via infrared data exchange or Bar code reader
	Chara-den shots
	Frame/Marker stamp/Facestamp
	Data clipped from PDF document

Allowable operation icon

The icon does not appear if the data is stored on the miniSD memory card (Image Box).

Icon	Description
	Movies/i-motion of QVGA (320 dots wide × 240 dots high). Appears only in folders under i-motion.
	Can be attached to an i-mode message (10,000 bytes or smaller/ 500 to 10,001K bytes/larger than 500K bytes) If the data size exceeds 500K bytes, you need to reduce the size to be attached to a message. "Reducing the image size to be attached to a message"→p.349 "Clipping a movie to be attached to a message"→p.363
	Can be inserted into a Deco-mail message
	Can be set to the screen
	Can be set as a ring tone
	Can be transferred via infrared data exchange
	Can be copied to the miniSD memory card
	Can be edited
	i-motion that can be moved to the miniSD memory card
	Larger than 5M bytes. Appears only in the miniSD folder.

*1 : i-motion can be moved only if the FOMA card (UIM) being used was also used to save the i-motion.

*2 : i-motion can be moved only if the FOMA model and FOMA card (UIM) being used were also used to save the i-motion.

■ Title and file name

- Still images or movies shot with the built-in camera or recorded with Chara-den are automatically titled and named.

Title: yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm

(Year/Month/Day Time)

File name: yyyymmddhhmmxxx

_____ Date and time
(xxx is replaced with a 3-digit number for still image.)

* Still image: the time when the data is saved; Movie: the time when the shooting is finished. If the "Auto save set" is set to "OFF", the time when the movie is saved appears.

- Original titles are assigned to downloaded i-motion and Chara-den characters.
- The file names and titles are the same for downloaded images.
- The title appears on the Image list screen of the FOMA terminal.
- The file name appears when the data is transferred to a PC.
- The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files.
- If a file name you attempted to create contains an inappropriate character, the file is automatically renamed to "imagexxx" or "moviexxx".

● Setting the image list display mode <Viewer settings>

- Original animations and miniSD memory cards (Image Box) are always listed by title.

1 "Display" ▶ "Viewer settings" ▶ Select any item

Picture (default)	Changes to the picture list.
Title	Changes to the title list.

Function menu (image list screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit image	"Editing Images"→p.353
Edit title	▶ Edit a title Edits the title of the highlighted image. The title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters. As for miniSD memory card (Picture), the title can contain up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters.
Display image	Displays the selected image (displays the My picture screen).
Set as display	★ appears for items to which the image is set. ■ To set to screens such as standby, dialing or receiving ▶ Select an item ■ To set to videophone-related screens (except V.phone dialing and V.phone calling) ▶ Select an item ▶ Check the image ▶ ▶ "YES"
Image info	"Image information"→p.349
Compose message	
• Attach image	"Composing a message with an image attached"→p.349
• Insert image	"Composing a Deco-mail message"→p.350
Send Ir data	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.385
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
Copy to miniSD	"Copying images stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card"→p.352
Add image to PB	Saves the selected image to the phonebook.→p.111
Size for mail	"Reducing the image size to be attached to a message"→p.349
Positioning	"Setting the position when setting an image"→p.350
Clipping area	"Setting the area when setting an image"→p.350

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.371

Edit file name	▶Edit a file name Edits the file name of the highlighted image. The file name can contain up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols (" ", "_"). Symbols other than " " or " _ " cannot be used.
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the highlighted image.
• File unrestricted	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• File restricted	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Move	
• Move this	▶Select the destination folder▶ "YES" Moves the highlighted image to another folder.
• Move selected	"Selecting multiple data"→p.382
• Move all	▶Select the destination folder▶ "YES" Moves all images stored in the folder to another folder.
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted image.
• Delete selected	"Selecting multiple data"→p.382
• Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶"YES" Deletes all images from the folder.
Memory info	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal and on the miniSD memory card. The amount of Secret is not included in the amount on the FOMA terminal.
Sort	Sorts images by specified criteria.
Title name, Picture	Switches between Picture and Title name.
Composite image	"Making a composite image out of 4 images"→p.351
PictBridge print	Prints JPEG images using the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to connect the FOMA terminal to your printer.→p.393
Keep in secret ^{*1}	"Hiding Various Data"→p.163
Facestamp demo ^{*2}	Checks the facestamp follow. The image is displayed normally (not mirror). If a stamp can follow facial movements, "G" appears. If not, "G" appears.
Copy to phone ^{*3}	"Copying images stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal"→p.352
DPOF setting ^{*3}	"Setting how to print images stored on the miniSD memory card"→p.395

Copy ^{*3}	Copies an image to another folder on the miniSD memory card. Create a destination folder beforehand.→p.381
• Copy this	▶ Select the destination folder Copies the highlighted image to another folder.
• Copy selected	"Selecting multiple data"→p.382
• Copy all	▶ Select the destination folder Copies all images to another folder.

*1 : The option appears in "Secret mode" or in "Secret data only mode". If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears.→p.163

*2 : The option appears only when the folder is Face stamp.

*3 : The options appear only for images stored on the miniSD memory card.

NOTE

<Edit title>

◆ You may be unable to edit a title if there is little space available on the miniSD memory card.

◆ You cannot edit the titles of images reinstalled at the time of purchase.

<Set as display>

◆ Images stored in the Inbox, Camera or User-created folders can be set to the following screens:

- Stand-by display
- Dialing
- V.phone dialing
- Mail sending
- Checking
- Holding
- Record message
- VP voice memo
- Wake-up display
- Calling
- V.phone calling
- Mail receiving
- On hold
- Substitute image
- Preparing VP msg

◆ Images stored in the Pre-installed folder can be set to the Stand-by display or Wake-up display.

◆ You cannot set an image to the screens if:

- It is larger than 640 dots wide × 640 dots high
- The file size exceeds 100K bytes

◆ Some images may not appear in the actual sizes, depending on the sizes or where they are set.

◆ Some images cannot be set to screens.

<Add image to PB>

◆ You can add an image whose size is 100K bytes or smaller and not larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.

◆ You cannot add images other than JPEG or GIF.

<Edit file name>

◆ You cannot edit the file name of the image if it is:

- An image stored at the time of purchase
- A still image of Chara-den character with "File restricted"
- Not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal

◆ You cannot use single-byte spaces for file names.

<File restriction>

◆ You cannot restrict an image if it is:

- Neither JPEG nor GIF
- A still image of Chara-den character with "File restricted"

<Delete>

- ◆ You cannot delete images stored at the time of purchase.
- ◆ If you attempt to delete an image that has been set to a screen or original animation or set as a user icon for Schedule, a message appears asking whether to delete the image. If you select "YES" to delete the item, the corresponding feature (screen, etc.) changes as follows:
 - The screens restore to default.
 - Original animation is released.
 - The Schedule alarm screen turns to the one to which "🕒" was set.
 - Even if the original image is deleted, the same one attached to a message is not deleted. However, if the image is large, the one attached to a message is also deleted.

<Memory info>

- ◆ The displayed size is only an approximation. The amount in the Secret folder appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode.

<Sort>

- ◆ "By source" sorts images in the following order:
 - ① Images stored at the time of purchase
 - ② Images downloaded or acquired via i-appli or ToruCa
 - ③ Images shot with the camera
 - ④ Images copied from the miniSD memory card or acquired via infrared data exchange
 - ⑤ Chara-den shots
 - ⑥ Images clipped out of PDF documents

Function menu (My picture screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit image	"Editing Images"→p.353
Set as display	▶ Select an item Sets the selected image to the standby screen, etc.
Image info	"Image information"→p.349
Compose message	
• Attach image	"Composing a message with an image attached"→p.349
• Insert image	"Composing a Deco-mail message"→p.350
Send Ir data	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.385
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode of an image smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).
• Normal (default)	Displays an image in the actual size.
• Fit in display	Enlarges an image to the display size.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.149
Copy to miniSD	▶ Select the destination folder Copies the displayed image.
Add image to PB	Saves the displayed image to the phonebook.→p.111

Positioning	"Setting the position when setting an image"→p.350
Clipping area	"Setting the area when setting an image"→p.350
Delete this	Deletes the displayed image.
Retry	Replays the displayed animation from the beginning.
PictBridge print	Prints JPEG images using the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to connect the FOMA terminal to your printer.→p.393
Facestamp demo^{*1}	Checks the facestamp follow. The image is displayed normally (not mirror). If a stamp can follow facial movements, "👤" appears. If not, "👤" appears.
Copy to phone^{*2}	Copies the displayed image.
DPOF setting^{*2}	"Setting how to print images stored on the miniSD memory card"→p.395

^{*1} : The option appears only when the folder is Face stamp.

^{*2} : The option appears only for images stored on the miniSD memory card.

NOTE

<Set as display>

- ◆ An image can be set to the following screen:

- Stand-by display
- Dialing
- V.phone dialing
- Mail sending
- Checking
- Holding
- Record message
- VP voice memo
- Wake-up display
- Calling
- V.phone calling
- Mail receiving
- On hold
- Substitute image
- Preparing VP msg

- ◆ You cannot set an image to the screens if:

- It is larger than 640 dots wide × 640 dots high
- The file size exceeds 100K bytes

- ◆ Some images may not appear in the actual sizes, depending on the sizes or where they are set.

- ◆ Some images cannot be set to screens.

<Add image to PB>

- ◆ You can add an image whose size is 100K bytes or smaller and not larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.

- ◆ You cannot add images other than JPEG or GIF.

<Delete this>

- ◆ If you attempt to delete an image that has been set to a screen or original animation or set as a user icon for Schedule, a message appears asking whether to delete the image. If you select "YES" to delete the item, the corresponding feature (screen, etc.) changes as follows:

- The screens restore to default.
- Original animation is released.

- The Schedule alarm screen turns to the one to which "🕒" was set.

- ◆ Even if the original image is deleted, the same one attached to a message is not deleted. However, if the image is large, the one attached to a message is also deleted.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.371

● Image information

You can check the following:

File name	The file name
File classification	The file format The format of Flash movies does not appear.
File size	The file size in K bytes
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
File restriction	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted"
Transfer for Repair^{*1}	Whether stored data can be backed up at DoCoMo's repair center when your FOMA terminal is repaired (Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable even if the data cannot be transferred or if any loss or damage occurs to the data). "Permitted" appears for downloaded images/melodies/PDF documents that are allowed to be moved.
Display size	The file display size (wide × high in dots)
Source	From where the file was acquired
Move to miniSD^{*1}	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the document can be copied to the miniSD memory card.
Move to phone^{*2}	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the document can be copied to the FOMA terminal (Phone).
Set as display^{*1}	Where the image is set When no image is set, "No set" appears.
DPOF setting^{*3}	
• Prints	The specified number of prints When it is not set, "No set" appears. When 100 or higher is specified, "* * *" appears.
• Date	Whether or not the date is specified

*1 : The option appears only for images stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

*2 : The option appears only for images stored on the miniSD memory card.

*3 : The option appears only if the image is stored on the miniSD memory card (Picture).

● Composing a message with an image attached

- If an image cannot be attached, the image size or file size is reduced so that the image can be attached.

1 Image list screen (p.344) (FUNC) ▶ "Compose message" ▶ "Attach image"

- If the JPEG image is larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, or if the file size exceeds 500K bytes

▶ Select any item ▶ Check the resized image

Attach mail	Attaches an image without changing the size.*
QVGA scale down	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio and attaches the resized image.*
QVGA trim away	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio, then clips and attaches the center.*

* : If the file size exceeds 500K bytes, it is reduced to 500K bytes or smaller.

2 Compose an i-mode message

Composing and sending an i-mode message
→ p.247

NOTE

- ◆ Whether "Attach image" appears depends on the image size/file size.
- ◆ "QVGA trim away" cannot change where to be clipped. The center is to be clipped.
- ◆ JPEG image from 10,000 bytes to 500K bytes is called Large image. A large image sent to the FOMA terminal is resized at the i-shot Center so that it can be received by i-mode terminals.
- ◆ You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
 - There are already 20 draft messages stored
 - Flash movie is to be attached
 - The image is GIF whose size exceeds 10,000 bytes
 - The image is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal

● Reducing the image size to be attached to a message

- Resize an image so that it can be attached to an i-mode message if the JPEG image is larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, or if the file size exceeds 500K bytes. You cannot operate this function if the image is not the above.

1 Image list screen (p.344) (FUNC) ▶ "Size for mail" ▶ Select any item

Attach mail	Attaches an image without changing the size.*
QVGA scale down	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio and attaches the resized image.*
QVGA trim away	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio, then clips and attaches the center.*

* : If the file size exceeds 500K bytes, it is reduced to 500K bytes or smaller.

2 Check the edited image ▶ "YES"

NOTE

- ◆ The resized image is newly saved to the folder where the original is stored.
- ◆ “QVGA trim away” cannot change where to be clipped. The center is to be clipped.
- ◆ The following show the title and file name of the saved image:
 - Title: yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm
 - File name: yyyyymmddhhmmXXX (XXX: 3-digit number)

● Composing a Deco-mail message

- If an image cannot be inserted, the image size or file size is reduced so that the image can be inserted.

1 Image list screen (p.344) ► (FUNC) ► “Compose message” ► “Insert image”

- If the JPEG image is larger than 128 dots wide × 96 dots high or 96 dots wide × 128 dots high, or if the file size exceeds the limit when inserted to a Deco-mail message

► Select any item ► Check the resized image

Insert mail	Inserts an image without changing the size.*
SubQCIF scale down	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio and inserts the resized image.*
SubQCIF trim away	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio, then clips and inserts the center.*

* : If the file size exceeds the limit when inserted to a Deco-mail message, it is also reduced.

2 Compose a Deco-mail message

Composing and sending a Deco-mail message
→ p.251

NOTE

- ◆ Whether “Insert image” appears depends on the image size/file size.
- ◆ “SubQCIF trim away” cannot change where to be clipped. The center is to be clipped.
- ◆ You cannot compose a Deco-mail message when:
 - There are already 20 draft messages stored
 - The image is GIF whose size exceeds 9,000 bytes

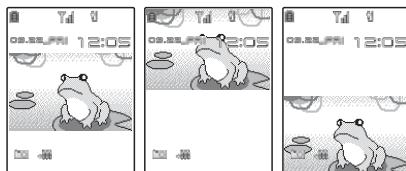
● Setting the position when setting an image

Position an image when it is smaller than the image display area.

1 Image list screen (p.344) ► (FUNC) ► “Positioning”

Select “Center”, “Upper” or “Lower”.

<Example: Standby screen>



Displayed in the center Displayed at the top Displayed at the bottom

NOTE

- ◆ The position is effective for the following screens. However, the specified display position may not function for some image sizes.

- Stand-by display
- Dialing
- V.phone dialing
- Mail sending
- Checking
- Wake-up display
- Calling
- V.phone calling
- Mail receiving

● Setting the area when setting an image

Set the area where an image appears when it is larger than the image display area.

1 Image list screen (p.344) ► (FUNC) ► “Clipping area”

Select “Center”, “Upper” or “Lower”.

<Example: Calling>



Center part displayed Upper part displayed Lower part displayed

NOTE

- ◆ The clipping area is effective for the following screens. However, the specified clipping area may not function for some image sizes.

- Stand-by display
- Dialing
- V.phone dialing
- Mail sending
- Checking
- Wake-up display
- Calling
- V.phone calling
- Mail receiving

● Making a composite image out of 4 images

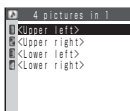
- An image cannot be set if the size exceeds 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.

1 Image list screen (p.344) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Composite image”

2 Select a position ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image ▶ Repeat to select four images in total

■ To cancel a specified image

- ▶ Select an image to cancel ▶ Select “Release this” on the folder selection screen



3 (Finish) ▶ (Play)

- To retry creating a composite image ▶ (Cancel)

NOTE

- ◆ The created composite image is saved to the folder used to create the image.
- ◆ Four images are synthesized without changing the aspect ratio. The original images are not resized.
- ◆ Pressing (Play) on the selection screen allows you to check the selected image, which cannot appear in the actual size.

Creating animations

<Original animation>

Use stored images to create an animated cartoon consisting of up to 20 frames.

- You can create up to 20 animations.

1 (MENU) ▶ (DATA MENU) ▶ “My picture” ▶ “Original animation”

The “Original animation list” screen appears.



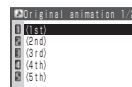
Function menu ▶ p.351

2 “<New>”

3 Select a frame ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image ▶ Repeat to select images

■ To cancel a specified image

- ▶ Select a frame to cancel
- ▶ Select “Release this” on the folder selection screen



4 (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆ Pressing (Play) on the selection screen allows you to check the selected image.
- ◆ Only frames with an image specified are played in order.
- ◆ You can specify a JPEG image whose size is 640 dots wide × 640 dots high or smaller as original animation.

Function menu (Original animation list screen)

Edit title	▶ Edit a title Edits the title of the highlighted original animation. The title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.
Org. animation	Newly creates an original animation when “<New>” is highlighted. The created original animation is edited if it is highlighted.
Display image	Plays the highlighted original animation (Displays the original animation playback screen).
Set as display	▶ Select an item Sets the highlighted original animation to the standby screen, etc.
Image info	Checks the settings of the original animation set as display. Whether no animation is set, “Not set” appears.
Release animation	Releases the highlighted original animation.

NOTE

<Set as display>

- ◆ An image can be set to the following screen:
 - Stand-by display
 - Dialing
 - V.phone dialing
 - Mail sending
 - Checking
 - Wake-up display
 - Calling
 - V.phone calling
 - Mail receiving

Playing an original animation

1 Original animation list screen (p.351) ▶ Select an original animation

The “original animation playback” screen appears.
If there are two or more original animations, use  to play the previous or next animation.



Original animation playback

Function menu ▶ p.352

Function menu (original animation playback screen)

Set as display	▶ Select an item Sets an animation being played to the standby screen, etc.
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode of an image smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).
• Normal (default)	Displays an animation in the actual size.
• Fit in display	Enlarges an animation to the display size.
Retry	Plays an animation from the beginning.

NOTE

<Set as display>

◆ An animation can be set to the following screen:

- Stand-by display
- Wake-up display
- Dialing
- Calling
- V.phone dialing
- V.phone calling
- Mail sending
- Mail receiving
- Checking

Copying images stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card

Copy images stored in the Inbox, Camera, Decomail-picture and user-created folders under My picture to the miniSD memory card.

- Icons on the image list screen show which images can be copied.

<Example: Image list screen for Inbox, Camera, User-created folders>

1 Image list screen (p.344) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Copy to miniSD” ▶ Select any item

Copy this	▶ Select the destination folder Copies the selected image.
Copy selected	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ Select images ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES” Copies images you select.
Copy all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select the destination folder ▶ “YES” Copies all images.

NOTE

◆ Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the copy process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.

◆ The following shows the file name after copied:

- File name: NEC_mmmm (mmm = 0001 to 9999)

◆ You cannot copy an image to the miniSD memory card if:

- It is stored at the time of purchase
- It is neither JPEG nor GIF
- It is a still image of Chara-den character with “File restricted”
- It is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal
- There is little space available on the miniSD memory card
- The miniSD memory card is not supported
- An error occurs on the miniSD memory card
- The file size exceeds 1,200K bytes after copied
- The miniSD memory card is being inserted

◆ Copying an image to the miniSD memory card may increase the file size.

Copying images stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Copy images stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.

- Copied images are saved to the Inbox folder under My picture.

<Example: Image list screen for the miniSD folder (Picture)>

1 Image list screen (p.344) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Copy to phone” ▶ Select any item

Copy this	Copies the selected image.
Copy selected	▶ Select images ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES” Copies images you select.
Copy all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Copies all images.

NOTE

- ◆ Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the copy process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆ You cannot copy Flash movies.
- ◆ You cannot copy an image whose file size exceeds 1,200K bytes.
- ◆ An image cannot be copied if the width or height exceeds 2,304 dots or if the size exceeds 2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high. Also, a progressive JPEG image larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or whose width or height exceeds 640 dots cannot be copied.
Progressive JPEG image → p.225
- ◆ The name of the copied file is that of the one stored on the miniSD memory card.

<Edit image>

Editing Images

Edit still images you shot or images copied to the phone.

- The following are the editing methods and image sizes:

Method	Size of editable file
Frame • Frames an image. → p.354	Up to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high ^{*1} Up to 288 dots wide × 352 dots high ^{*1}
Retouch • Applies special effects such as sepia tone to an image. → p.353	Up to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high Up to 288 dots wide × 352 dots high
Marker stamp • Pastes a marker stamp such as heart into an image. → p.354	2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high ^{*2} 1,728 dots wide × 2,304 dots high ^{*2}
Character stamp • Pastes a stamp of entered text into an image. → p.355	2,048 dots wide × 1,536 dots high ^{*2} 1,536 dots wide × 2,048 dots high ^{*2}
Trim away • Clips an image to the desired size. → p.355	1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high ^{*2} 1,212 dots wide × 1,616 dots high ^{*2}
Brightness • Adjusts the image brightness. → p.353	1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high ^{*2} 960 dots wide × 1,280 dots high ^{*2}
Rotate • Rotates an image clockwise or counterclockwise by 90 or 180 degrees. → p.354	Up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high ^{*3} Up to 480 dots wide × 640 dots high ^{*3}
Change size • Resizes an image. → p.354	
Correct backlight • Makes the dark part clear, which is caused by the backlight. → p.354	Up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high Up to 480 dots wide × 640 dots high
Refresh skin tone • Corrects the skin parts. → p.354	

- *1 : You cannot frame an image if the size is not 352 × 288, 288 × 352, 240 × 320, 320 × 240, 240 × 345, 345 × 240, 176 × 144, 144 × 176, 128 × 96 or 96 × 128 (dots wide × dots high).
 *2 : An image will be editable after reduced to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.
 *3 : Some editing methods may not function due to the image size.

- Editable images → p.345
- When “Edit image” is selected from the image checking function menu, only “Frame”, “Retouch”, “Correct backlight” and “Refresh skin tone” are available.

1 My picture screen (p.344)▶

(FUNC)▶ “Edit image”

The Edit image function menu (p.353) appears.

2 Select an editing method

3 Check the edited image▶

The “Edit image” screen appears. To edit further, press

 (FUNC) to select a method.



Function menu▶ p.353

4 ▶ “YES” or “NO”

Selecting “YES” overwrites the original image.
 Selecting “NO” saves a new image to the folder where the original is stored.

NOTE

- ◆ Editing an image repeatedly may impair the image quality or increase the file size.
- ◆ Some images may hardly reflect the editing effects.

Function menu (Edit image screen)

Frame	“Adding frames” → p.354
Retouch	Applies effects to an image.
• Sharp	Sharpens the outline of an image.
• Blur	Softens the outline of an image.
• Sepia	Makes a sepia-tone image.
• Emboss	Impresses an image in relief.
• Negative	Makes a negative image.
• Horizontal flip	Reverses the left and right of an image (mirroring).
Marker stamp	“Pasting marker stamps” → p.354
Character stamp	“Pasting character stamps” → p.355
Trim away	“Trimming” → p.355
Brightness	▶ Use  to adjust the brightness Selects the brightness among 5 levels from “-2 to ±0 to +2”.

Rotate ^{*1}	Rotates an image. Select "90° to right", "90° to left" or "180°".
Change size	Resizes an image to the selected size, keeping the aspect ratio. Select "VGA(640 × 480)", "CIF(352 × 288)", "QVGA(320 × 240)", "QCIF(176 × 144)", "SubQCIF(128 × 96)", "Stand-by(240 × 320)", "Screen(240 × 345)", "VGA Vert.(480 × 640)", "CIF Vert.(288 × 352)", "QCIF Vert.(144 × 176)" or "SubQCIF Vert.(96 × 128)". ^{*2}
Correct backlight	Makes the dark part clear, which is caused by the backlight.
Refresh skin tone	Corrects the skin parts.
Compose message	"Composing a message with an image attached"→p.349
Save	Saves the edited image.

*1 : Rotating may change the aspect ratio.

*2 : Dots wide × dots high enclosed in brackets show the image size.

● Adding frames

- You can use downloaded frames in addition to frames stored at the time of purchase (p.459).

1 My picture screen (p.344)▶ [FUNC]▶"Edit image"▶"Frame"

▶Select a frame

The image appears in the selected frame.
Use [↺] to try another frame.

■ To rotate a frame 180°

▶[↺] (Rotate)

■ To cancel the selected frame

▶[FUNC]▶"Cancel"

NOTE

- ◆ The orientation of a downloaded frame is portrait or landscape. An image can be framed only if the size of the frame is the same as that of the image.
- ◆ If the size of an image that was clipped or resized is the same as that of the frame, the image can be framed. The quality of the resized and framed image may deteriorate.

● Pasting marker stamps

- You can use downloaded marker stamps in addition to marker stamps stored at the time of purchase.
- You can rotate or resize marker stamps.

1 My picture screen (p.344)▶ [FUNC]▶"Edit image"▶"Marker stamp"▶Select a marker stamp

■ To edit a marker stamp

▶[FUNC]▶Select any item

90° to right	Rotates 90° clockwise.
90° to left	Rotates 90° counterclockwise.
180°	Rotates 180°.
Scale up	Doubles the size.
Scale down	Halves the size.

2 Position the marker stamp▶[○]

Use [○] or Neupointer to position the marker stamp.

■ To use another marker stamp

▶[Add]▶Repeat
Steps 1 to 2



NOTE

- ◆ You can use downloaded stamps of 240 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller. Larger stamps are regarded as GIF images.
- ◆ You can repeatedly resize a marker stamp.
- ◆ A marker stamp cannot be larger than an image to edit. You cannot reduce the size of a marker stamp to less than 1 dot.

● Pasting character stamps

Default setting	Character color: Black Font: Gothic style Font size: Standard size

- A character stamp can contain up to 3-15 double-byte or 6-30 single-byte characters. The number of characters that can be entered depends on the image size and font size.
- You can change the color, font and size of a character stamp.

1 My picture screen (p.344)▶

☐ (FUNC)▶“Edit image”▶“Character stamp”▶Enter text

■ To edit a character stamp

▶☐ (FUNC)▶Select any item

Character input	▶Enter text Reenters text.
Character color	▶Use to select a color Sets the color of a character stamp. To use another color palette, press ☐ (Change).
Font	Selects “Gothic style” or “Pop style” as the font setting.
Font size	Selects “Enlargement size”, “Standard size” or “Reduction size” as the character size.

2 Position the character stamp▶●

Use or Neuropointer to position the character stamp.



NOTE

- ◆ The font thickness is specified in the “Font” setting.

● Trimming

1 My picture screen (p.344)▶

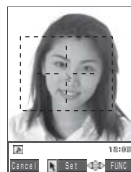
☐ (FUNC)▶“Edit image”▶“Trim away”

Select “CIF(352 × 288)”, “QVGA(320 × 240)”, “QCIF(176 × 144)”, “SubQCIF(128 × 96)”, “Stand-by(240 × 320)”, “Screen(240 × 345)”, “CIF Vert.(288 × 352)”, “QCIF Vert.(144 × 176)”, “Sub-QCIF Vert.(96 × 128)”, “Background(240 × 270)”, “Menu icon(64 × 63)” or “Chat(80 × 80)”.

* : Dots wide × dots high enclosed in brackets show the image size.

2 Determine where to clip▶●

Use or Neuropointer to position the clipping frame.



<i-motion>

Playing Movies/i-motion

Movies that you have shot or that are stored on the miniSD memory card and i-motion downloaded from an i-mode site or Internet website can be played in i-motion under Data box. Movies of QVGA (320 × 240) or smaller can be rotated and played on the landscape screen.

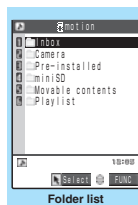
- To download i-motion to the FOMA terminal → p.238
- After you perform “Set repeat play” to start playing a movie or i-motion, the sound can continue to be played with the FOMA terminal folded. → p.359

1 ▶▶“i-motion”

The “folder list” screen appears.

The “Secret” folder appears in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode.

Content in the i-motion folder → p.342

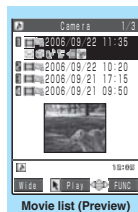


Function menu▶p.381

2 Select a folder

The “movie list” screen (Preview) appears.

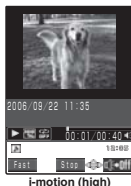
Movie list screen → p.356



Function menu▶p.386

3 Select a movie

Press to play on the portrait screen, or (Wide) to play on the landscape screen. The “i-motion” screen appears to play the movie. Operation during playback → p.358



i-motion (high)

■ If the message “Play continue? YES/NO” appears

- Selecting “YES” plays the movie from the point where it was stopped last time.
- Selecting “NO” plays the movie from the beginning.

■ Partly-downloaded i-motion

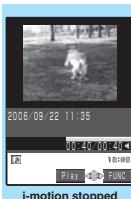
The confirmation message asking whether to download the rest of data appears. i-motion cannot be played if the remaining data is not downloaded.

- Selecting “YES” starts downloading the rest of the part.
“Downloading remains of i-motion that was downloaded partly” → p.239
- Selecting “NO” returns to the movie list screen.



i-motion (wide)

When playback ends, the “i-motion stopped” screen appears.



i-motion stopped

Function menu → p.359

NOTE

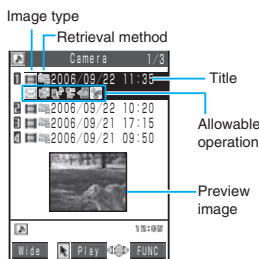
- ◆ Video or sound in a movie or i-motion may be interrupted if you receive a message, MessageR or MessageF during playback.
- ◆ A movie may not be properly played if it was not shot with FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED.
- ◆ The following movie or i-motion can be played from the point where it was stopped last time. It may not be played from the exact point.
 - When you receive a call during playback
 - When playback is stopped by pressing or

Guide to Preview and Title list

- Icons for image types, retrieval methods and available settings → p.345
- Title and file name → p.346

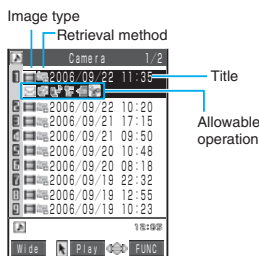
■ Preview

The screen shows four movies listed by title and the preview image of the selected movie appears below the titles. Popup icons show the image type, image retrieval method, and settings that can be specified for the movie. A preview image does not appear for voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer's voice).



■ Title list

Titles of nine movies are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the movie type, movie retrieval method, and settings that can be specified for the movie.



Function menu (movie list screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit i-motion	“Editing Movies” → p.361
Edit title	▶ Edit a title Edits the title of the highlighted movie. ■ Inbox, Camera, User-created folders The title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters. ■ miniSD memory card, Movable contents folder The title can contain up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters.

Select ring tone	Sets the highlighted movie as a ring tone. → p.128
Stand-by display	Sets the highlighted movie to the standby screen. → p.139
i-motion info	"i-motion information" → p.358
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the highlighted movie attached. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.247
Send Ir data	"Transferring One Data at a Time" → p.385
Copy to miniSD	"Copying movies stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card" → p.361
Move to miniSD	"Moving Movies/i-motion to the miniSD Memory Card" → p.364
Move	
• Move this	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ "YES" Moves the highlighted movie to another folder.
• Move selected	"Selecting multiple data" → p.382
• Move all	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ "YES" Moves all movies stored in the folder to another folder.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.149
Edit file name	▶ Edit a file name Edits the file name of the highlighted movie. The file name can contain up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols (" ", "_"). Symbols other than " " or "_" cannot be used.
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the highlighted movie.
• File unrestricted	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• File restricted	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted movie.
• Delete selected	"Selecting multiple data" → p.382
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all movies from the folder.
Memory info	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal and on the miniSD memory card. The amount of Secret is not included in the amount on the FOMA terminal.
Sort	Sorts movies by specified criteria.

List setting	Specifies how to list movies.
• Title ^{*1}	Changes to the title list.
• Title+image ^{*1} (default)	Changes to the preview display.
• Name ^{*2} ^{*3}	Changes to the title list (or file name list).
• Name+image ^{*2} ^{*3} (default)	Changes to the preview display.
• Title, File name ^{*3}	Switches between File name and Title.
Keep in secret ^{*4}	"Hiding Various Data" → p.163
Copy to phone ^{*3}	"Copying movies stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal" → p.361
Move to phone ^{*5}	"Moving i-motion stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal" → p.364
Copy ^{*3}	Copies a movie to another folder on the miniSD memory card. Create a destination folder beforehand. → p.381
• Copy this	▶ Select the destination folder Copies the highlighted movie to another folder.
• Copy selected	"Selecting multiple data" → p.382
• Copy all	▶ Select the destination folder Copies all movies to another folder.

*1 : The option appears only for movies stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

*2 : The name is either file name or title.

*3 : The option appears only for movies or i-motion stored on the miniSD memory card.

*4 : The option appears in "Secret mode" or in "Secret data only mode". If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears. → p.163

*5 : The option appears when the movie or i-motion is stored in the Movable contents folder.

NOTE

<Select ring tone>

◆ Only entirely-downloaded movie or i-motion can be set as a ring tone only if its Ring tone setting is "Available". Refer to the "i-motion info" to check whether it is "Available" or "Unavailable".

◆ If a movie of QVGA (320 × 240) is set as a ring tone, an i-motion image does not appear on the screen.

◆ A voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer's voice) can be set as a ring tone for Push-to-Talk.

<Stand-by display>

◆ If a movie or i-motion that was set for the standby screen is deleted, the standby screen is restored to the one set at the time of purchase.

◆ You cannot set a movie or i-motion to the standby screen when:

- The movie or i-motion is voice-only or text-only
- There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- The movie is QVGA (320 × 240)
- The partly-downloaded i-motion

◆ Some movies may not be properly played on the standby screen.

◆ You cannot use the Web To, Mail To or Phone To/AV Phone To functions from an i-motion set to the standby screen.

<Compose message>

- ◆ You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
 - There are already 20 draft messages stored
 - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
 - It is a movie of Chara-den character with "File restricted"
 - The i-motion is not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal
- ◆ If a movie of QVGA (320 × 240) is to be attached, a message appears asking whether to reduce the size so that it can be attached. If you select to reduce the size, it is reduced to QCIF (176 × 144).

<Sort>

- ◆ "By source" sorts movies in the following order. Movies or i-motion with the same source icon are sorted in the order in which they were shown before you selected "By source".
 - ① i-motion downloaded or acquired via i-oppli
 - ② Movies shot with the built-in camera
 - ③ Movies copied from the miniSD memory card or acquired via infrared data exchange
 - ④ Chara-den movies

● i-motion information

You can check the following:

File name	The file name
Format	The file format
Default title	The original title
Creator	Who created the file If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Copyright	Copyright information on the file If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
File size	The file size in K bytes
Display size	The file display size (wide × high in dots)
Source	From where the file was acquired
Description	The file description If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
File restriction	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted"
Replay restriction	• If there are count restrictions Remaining play count and total play count • If there are period restrictions Date of play period • If there are span restrictions "Playable date ~ Date of play span" • If there are no play restrictions "Not restricted"
Video	"Included"/"Not included"/"Unplayable" for video

Audio	Audio information "AMR"/"AAC"/"Not included"/"Playable"/"Unplayable(MP4)"/"Unplayable(ASF)"/"Enhanced aacPlus"/"HE-AAC"
Text	"Included"/"Not included"/"Unplayable" for text
Moved to miniSD^{*1}	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the i-motion can be moved/copied to the miniSD memory card. ^{*2} "Yes (Same model only)" indicates that the i-motion can be exchanged only between the same models.
Moved to phone^{*3}	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the i-motion can be moved/copied to the FOMA terminal (Phone). "Yes(Same model only)" indicates that the i-motion can be exchanged only between the same models.
Ring tone	Whether a ring tone is "Available" or "Unavailable" The setting appears when a ring tone is set.
Receive display	Whether a receive display is "Available" or "Unavailable" The setting appears when a receive display is set.

*1 : The option appears when the movie or i-motion is stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

*2 : If the i-motion is launched from a running i-oppli, the indicated information is only intended as an approximate guide.

*3 : The option appears when the movie or i-motion is stored on the miniSD memory card.

Operation during i-motion playback

You can perform the following operations during i-motion playback:



Control keys	Operation
⏸	Pauses/resumes playback
⏮, ⏭	Adjusts volume
⏮	Plays the previous or next movie or i-motion ^{*1}
⏭	Winds forward
⏮	Mutes (disabled when there is no audio)
⏮ for 1 second or longer	Skips backward ^{*2}
⏭ for 1 second or longer	Skips forward ^{*2}

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.371

Control keys	Operation
to pause playback, then 	Advances frame (moves forward one frame each time it is pressed)
to pause playback, then "Slow" from the function menu	Plays slow
	Ends

*1 : You cannot operate these if you play it from the data acquisition screen (p.238).

*2 : The operations may be unavailable for some i-motion.

NOTE

- ◆ The volume for i-motion is set to "Level 10" at the time of purchase. The volume can be selected between "Level 0" and "Level 20", and the setting is retained next time an i-motion is played.
- ◆ The volume set for i-motion does not affect ring volumes set in "Ring volume".
- ◆ Seek (skip backward/forward) can be operated while a movie is played (including slow playback and fast forward) or while a movie is paused.
- ◆ Sound is muted during seeking (skip backward/forward).
- ◆ Seek (skip backward/forward) is unavailable when:
 - A streaming-type i-motion is played
 - The i-motion can be played during downloading
 - There are no seek points in the i-motion
 - The interval between seek points is too long
 - A seek point exists only at the beginning of the i-motion
 - The i-motion is a voice-only ASF file with no seek data
- ◆ Tickers cannot be played during seeking (skip backward/forward) or during frame advance.

● Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions

- You can use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To function (p.229) if:
 - An underlined phone number, mail address or URL appears on the screen after playback is ended or stopped
 - A phone number, mail address or URL appears on the running telop text then you select "Select link" from the function menu
- If you can use the Phone To/AV Phone To or Mail To function, the data can also be saved to the phonebook. When playback ends, select "Add to phonebook" from the function menu.
- Adding information to phonebook
 "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → p.111
 "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" → p.112



Phone To function



Mail To function



Web To function

Function menu (i-motion stopped (pause) screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the displayed image or selected folder, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Normal play	When playback is paused, the i-motion is replayed from the paused point.
Slow	Plays slow. To return to normal playback, press (Play) or select "Normal play" from the function menu while it is paused.
Fast	Plays fast. To return to normal playback, press (Play) or select "Normal play" from the function menu while it is paused.
Stop	Exits i-motion and returns to the movie list screen.
Position to play	Select a point where playback will start Starts playback from the specified point.
Select link	You can use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To function (p.229) if a phone number, mail address or URL appears on the running telop text.
Edit i-motion	"Editing Movies" → p.361
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the current i-motion attached. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.247
Select ring tone	Sets the current i-motion as a ring tone. → p.128
Stand-by display	Sets an i-motion being played to the standby screen. → p.139
Set repeat play (default: OFF)	Specifies whether to play an i-motion continuously in file order in the folder (to play repeatedly on the FOMA terminal). After starting to play a movie or i-motion, the sound can continue to be played with the FOMA terminal folded. Select "ON" (play repeatedly) or "OFF".
i-motion info	"i-motion information" → p.358
Send Ir data	"Transferring One Data at a Time" → p.385
Copy to miniSD	Select the destination folder Copies the displayed movie.
Copy to phone*	Copies the displayed movie.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.149
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for i-motion. • Normal (default) Displays an i-motion in the actual size. • Fit in display Enlarges an i-motion to the display size. • Wide Play Displays an i-motion on the landscape screen.

*: The option appears when the movie or i-motion is stored on the miniSD memory card.

NOTE

<Slow>

- ◆ An i-motion is muted during slow playback.
- ◆ You cannot play slow a streaming-type i-motion or i-motion that is being downloaded and played.

<Fast>

- ◆ An i-motion is muted during fast playback.
- ◆ You cannot play fast a streaming-type i-motion or i-motion that is being downloaded and played.

<Position to play>

- ◆ You may be unable to select a playback point for some movies or i-motion.

<Select ring tone>

- ◆ Only entirely-downloaded movie or i-motion can be set as a ring tone only if its Ring tone setting is "Available". Refer to the "i-motion info" to check whether it is "Available" or "Unavailable".
- ◆ A voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer's voice) can be set as a ring tone for Push-to-Talk.

<Compose message>

- ◆ You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
 - There are already 20 draft messages stored
 - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
 - It is a movie of Chara-den character with "File restricted"
 - The i-motion is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal
- ◆ If a movie of QVGA (320 × 240) is to be attached, a message appears asking whether to reduce the size so that it can be attached. If you select to reduce the size, it is reduced to QCIF (176 × 144).

<Stand-by display>

- ◆ Deleting a movie or i-motion that was set to the standby screen restores the standby screen to the screen set at the time of purchase.
- ◆ You cannot set a movie or i-motion to the standby screen when:
 - The movie or i-motion is voice-only or text-only
 - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
 - The movie is QVGA (320 × 240)
 - The partly-downloaded i-motion
- ◆ Some movies may not be properly played on the standby screen.
- ◆ You cannot use the Web To, Mail To or Phone To/AV Phone To function from an i-motion set to the standby screen.

<Set repeat play>

- ◆ The Set repeat play settings are retained after playing i-motion.
- ◆ If Set repeat play is set to "ON", data that cannot be played are automatically skipped. Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To and Web To functions are unavailable from i-motion.
- ◆ If you attempt to play i-motion whose playback is restricted, a message may appear indicating the restriction, and the repeat play may be stopped.

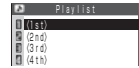
● **Playing movies in your preferred order <Playlist playback>**

Select and register up to 10 i-motion or movies, and play them consecutively.

- 1 Folder list screen (p.355)▶ Highlight "Playlist" and press  (FUNC)▶ "Edit playlist"▶ Select No. for the movie▶ Select a folder▶ Select a movie▶ Repeat to add**

■ **To release an added movie**

- ▶ Select a movie to release▶ Select "Release this" on the folder selection screen▶ "YES"



- 2  (Finish)**

The i-motion folder list screen appears. Selecting the Playlist folder starts playlist playback, and the registered movies are played repeatedly.

NOTE

- ◆ Partly-downloaded i-motion cannot be registered on program playback.
- ◆ Deleting a movie or i-motion that has been added to a playlist removes the file from the playlist.

Function menu (Playlist folder)

- 1 Highlight "Playlist" on the i-motion "folder list" screen (p.355) and press  (FUNC)▶ Select any item**

Add folder	▶ Enter a title Adds a folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	You cannot rename the Playlist folder.
Delete folder	You cannot delete the Playlist folder.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code▶ "YES" Deletes all movies/i-motion from the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders. i-motion stored in the Secret, Movable contents or miniSD folder are not deleted.
Edit playlist	Creates a playlist or edits the existing playlist. "Playing movies in your preferred order" → p.360
Release playlist	Releases a playlist.

Copying movies stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card

Copy movies stored in the Inbox folder, Camera folder or user-created folders under i-motion to the miniSD memory card.

<Example: Movie list screen for Inbox, Camera, User-created folders>

- 1 **Movie list screen (p.355)**
 (FUNC) ▶ “Copy to miniSD” ▶
Select any item

Copy starts.

It may take long to copy a large amount of data.
Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the copy process.

Copy this	▶Select the destination folder Copies the highlighted movie.
Copy selected	▶Select the destination folder▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES” Copies movies you select.
Copy all	▶Enter your security code▶ Select the destination folder▶ “YES” Copies all movies.

NOTE

- ◆ Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the copy process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆ The following shows the file name after copied:
 - File name: MOLxxx (xxx = 001 to FFF: hexadecimal)
- ◆ You cannot copy a movie when:
 - It is a Chara-den character with “File restricted”
 - It is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal
 - There is little space available on the miniSD memory card
 - The miniSD memory card is not supported
 - An error occurs on the miniSD memory card
 - The miniSD memory card is being inserted
 - Partly-downloaded i-motion

Copying movies stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Copy movies stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.

- Copied movies are saved to the Inbox folder under i-motion.

<Example: Movie list screen for the miniSD folder>

- 1 **Movie list screen (p.355)**
 (FUNC) ▶ “Copy to phone” ▶
Select any item

Copy starts.

It may take long to copy a large amount of data.
Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the copy process.

Copy this	Copies the highlighted movie.
Copy selected	▶Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES” Copies movies you select.
Copy all	▶Enter your security code▶ “YES” Copies all movies.

NOTE

- ◆ Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the copy process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆ You cannot copy a movie when:
 - It is not MP4
 - It is MP4 but unplayable
 - * You may be unable to copy some movies even when none of the above applies.
- ◆ Movies larger than 5M bytes are truncated to the first 5M bytes and then copied. However, a movie of QVGA (320 × 240) whose file size exceeds 5M bytes cannot be truncated, which means that it cannot be copied.

<Edit movie>

Editing Movies

- You cannot use the Multitask function while editing a movie.
- Editable movies → p.345

<Example: Movie list screen for Inbox, Camera, User-created folders>

- 1 **Movie list screen (p.355)**
 (FUNC) ▶ “Edit i-motion”

The “edit movie” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.362

- 2  (FUNC) ▶ Select an editing method
→ p.362

NOTE

- ◆ Editing a movie may impair the movie quality or increase/decrease the file size.

- ◆ While checking an edited movie, if you receive a call or fold the FOMA terminal or if the battery runs out, information currently fixed is saved. However, the information is not saved if the memory for movies is full.
- ◆ The file size displayed during movie editing is only intended as an approximate guide.

Function menu (edit movie screen)

Trim i-motion	"Clipping a part of a movie" → p.362
Trim for image	▶▶▶ Press ● when you want to clip a frame▶ (Set)▶ "YES"▶ Select a folder Clips the selected frame as a still image.
Rerecord sound	Erases the sound so that new sound can be recorded. "Rerecording sound" → p.362
Edit ticker	"Subtitling movies" → p.362
Trim for mail	"Clipping a movie to be attached to a message" → p.363
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the edited movie attached. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.247
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the edited movie.
• File unrestricted	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• File restricted	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.

NOTE

<Compose message>

- ◆ You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
 - The file size of the edited movie exceeds 500K bytes
 - There are already 20 draft messages stored
 - The movie is QVGA (320 × 240)

● Clipping a part of a movie

- 1 Edit movie screen (p.361)▶ (FUNC)▶ "Trim i-motion"▶ (Start)**

Clipping starts.

- **To start clipping from your desired frame**
 - ▶▶▶ Press ● when you want to start clipping▶ (Start)

- 2 Press ● when you want to finish clipping▶ (End)**

The clipped section of the movie is played. Playback stops automatically when it ends.

- **To check the clipped section again**
 - ▶ (Play)

- 3 ●▶●▶ "YES"**

NOTE

- ◆ The approximate size of the clipped file appears during movie clipping.
- ◆ Clipping i-motion may lengthen playback duration.
- ◆ A movie of QVGA (320 × 240) cannot be clipped.

● Rerecording sound

Add new sound to a movie.

- 1 Edit movie screen (p.361)▶ (FUNC)▶ "Rerecord sound"▶ (Start)**

Recording starts.

- **To start recording from your desired point**
 - ▶▶▶ Play a movie until you want to start recording▶ (Start)

- 2 Press (End) to finish recording**

Movie playback continues. Press (Start) and (End) to record again.

- 3 Press ● to finish rerecording**

- **To check the rerecorded movie**
 - ▶ (Play)

- 4 ●▶●▶ "YES"**

NOTE

- ◆ Rerecording sound onto a movie with subtitles deletes the subtitles.
- ◆ You may be unable to rerecord a movie if it was not shot with the built-in camera.

● Subtitling movies

Default setting	Character color: Black, Background color: White, Font size: Normal, Word alignment: Left, Blink/Underline/Scroll: OFF

Add new subtitles (text displayed during playback) to a movie or edit the existing subtitles.

- You can edit up to 5 subtitles per movie. Each subtitle can contain up to 20 double-byte characters.

- 1 Edit movie screen (p.361)▶ (FUNC)▶ "Edit ticker"▶ "New"**

- 2 (Start)▶ Enter subtitles**

- **To show subtitles from your desired point**
 - ▶▶▶ Press ● when you want to show subtitles▶ (Start)

- 3 Set subtitle effects**

Select "Finish setting" when you finish setting.

Font color	▶ Use ⌂ to select a color Sets the text color. To use another color palette, press (Change).
Background color	▶ Use ⌂ to select a color Sets the background color. To use another color palette, press (Change).

Font size	Selects "Normal" or "Large" as the font size.
Word alignment	Sets the text position. Select "Left", "Center" or "Right". This setting may be unavailable depending on the Scroll setting.
Blink	Specifies whether to flash subtitles.
Underline	Specifies whether to underline subtitles.
Scroll	Sets the scrolling mode.
• OFF	Cancels scrolling.
• Scroll in	▶Select "Right to left", "Left to right", "Bottom to top" or "Top to bottom" as the scrolling direction
• Scroll out	
• Scroll in&out	
Finish setting	Exits the subtitle effects settings.

4 ▶Press when you want to finish subtitles▶ (End)

Repeat Steps 2 to 4 to add another subtitle.

■ If the subtitle list appears

▶ (Finish)

Go on to Step 6.

5 Press (FUNC) when you finish editing▶"Finish editing"

■ To check the subtitled movie

▶ (Play)

■ To edit subtitles

▶ (Edit)

Editing registered subtitles→p.363

6 ▶▶"YES"

NOTE

- ◆ If you edit subtitles, the edited data cannot be specified as a ring tone.
- ◆ The scrolling speed is set automatically to match the time from the start point to the end point.
- ◆ Subtitle effects unsupported by FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED may be deleted or altered.
- ◆ You may be unable to edit subtitles if the movie was not shot with the built-in camera.

● Editing registered subtitles

- If you attempt to edit subtitles already added to a movie, a message appears warning you that the subtitle data may be deleted.

1 Edit movie screen (p.361)▶ (FUNC)▶"Edit ticker"▶"YES"▶"Edit"

The subtitle list screen appears.

■ To check subtitle details

▶Select a subtitle▶Check the details▶

Ticker list	
	Ticker1
	(Not stored)
	(Not stored)
	(Not stored)
	(Not stored)

2 (FUNC)▶Select any item

Change text	Edits subtitle text.
Change effect	Changes subtitle effects such as the font color, background color and scroll.
Change start po.	Resets the subtitle start point.
Change end point	Resets the subtitle end point.
Add ticker	▶"<Available>"▶Add a subtitle
Delete ticker	Deletes the highlighted subtitle.

3 Press (Finish) when you finish editing

4 ▶▶"YES"

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot edit a subtitle when no subtitles have been added.

● Clipping a movie to be attached to a message

- A movie whose size is larger than 290K bytes, which is shot with the built-in camera, can be clipped using this function.

1 Edit movie screen (p.361)▶ (FUNC)▶"Trim for mail"▶Select any item

Mail(L)	Clips a movie larger than 490K bytes to 490K bytes or smaller.
Mail(S)	Clips a movie larger than 290K bytes to 290K bytes or smaller.

2 ▶Press when you want to start clipping▶ (Start)

Clipping starts.

Playback stops automatically when the size becomes the maximum that can be attached to a message.

■ To check the clipped movie

▶ (Play)

3 ▶▶"YES"

NOTE

- ◆ A movie with subtitles inserted cannot be clipped with the subtitles remaining.
- ◆ The approximate size of the clipped file appears during movie clipping.
- ◆ "Trim for mail" is unavailable for a movie of QVGA (320 × 240).

<Move contents>

Moving Movies/i-motion to the miniSD Memory Card

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the move process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction. In addition, data being moved may be deleted.

Moving i-motion stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card

Move movable i-motion with copyrights to the miniSD memory card. Moved i-motion are saved to the "Movable contents" folder (p.343) under i-motion.

- Movie list screen (p.355) ▶**
 **(FUNC) ▶ "Move to miniSD" ▶ Select any item**

Move this	▶ Select the destination folder ▶  Moves the highlighted i-motion.
Move selected	▶ Select the destination folder ▶  ▶ Use  to select a checkbox  ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Moves i-motion you select.
Move all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select the destination folder ▶  ▶ "YES" Moves all listed movable i-motion in the folder (except for immovable i-motion).

NOTE

- Partly-downloaded i-motion or i-motion whose playback limit is expired cannot be moved to the miniSD memory card.
- To check whether an i-motion can be moved, see "Allowable operation icon" (p.345).
- If you press  (Quit) during a move to the miniSD memory card, the operation may not be canceled depending on the timing.

Moving i-motion stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Move i-motion stored in the "Movable contents" folder under i-motion (p.343) to the FOMA terminal.

- Moved i-motion are saved to the Inbox folder under i-motion.

- Folder list screen (p.355) ▶ "Movable contents" ▶ Select a folder** 
- The "movie list" screen (p.355) appears.

-  **(FUNC) ▶ "Move to phone" ▶ Select any item**

Move this	Moves the highlighted i-motion.
Move selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Moves multiple i-motion you select.
Move all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Moves all listed movable i-motion in the folder (except for immovable i-motion).

NOTE

- i-motion whose playback limit is expired cannot be moved to the FOMA terminal.
- To check whether an i-motion can be moved, see "Image type icon" (p.345).

<Chara-den>

What is Chara-den?

Chara-den is a function that allows you to send a cartoon character, instead of your image, to the other party's FOMA terminal during a videophone call.

You can check actions available during a videophone call, or use a still image or movie as a character.

Displaying Chara-den characters

Default setting

Set image disp.: Fit in display
 Substitute image: **ブンブン (Dimo)**

- Downloading Chara-den characters → p.228
- The following are Chara-den characters preinstalled at the time of purchase:



ブンブン (Dimo)

© BVIG



ビーンズ (Beans)



サンデー (Sunday)

-   **"Chara-den"**

The "Chara-den list" screen appears.
 Guide to the Chara-den list
 → p.365



Chara-den list
 Function menu ▶ p.365

2 Select a Chara-den character

The “Chara-den player” screen appears.
Controlling a Chara-den character → p.365

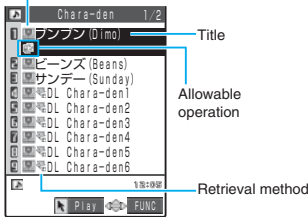


Function menu → p.366

Guide to the Chara-den list

- Icons for image types, retrieval methods and available settings → p.345
- Title and file name → p.346

Image type (Chara-den)



Titles of nine Chara-den characters are listed on the screen. Pop-up icons show the image (Chara-den) type, Chara-den retrieval method, and settings that can be specified for the Chara-den.

Using Chara-den characters

You can control a Chara-den character by selecting from preinstalled actions.

1 Chara-den player screen (p.365) →

Control a Chara-den character

■ To check the action list



Actions shown in the list depend on the character type. No. such as “1” or “#1” appearing on the right of the action indicates that pressing that key during Chara-den playback will perform the corresponding action.

Action List 1/2	
笑う	1
パンダ	2
泣き	3
怒る	4
驚く	5
悩む	6
首を傾げる	7
寝る	8
倒れる	9
YES	#1

■ To check the action details

▶ Highlight an action ▶ (Detail) ▶ Check the details ▶ (Exit)

■ To change the action mode

▶ (Parts) or (Whole)

The mode is Parts action when (Parts) appears and Whole action when (Whole) appears.



The whole body of a Chara-den character moves to express feelings.



The parts (head, hands, feet, etc.) of a Chara-den character move.

■ To use keys to select actions during Chara-den playback

Press the following keys to perform character actions:

“Whole”:

1-digit number on the right side of the action name (1 to 9) or (1) to (9)

“Parts”:

2-digit number on the right side of the action name (11 to 99)

<Example: “怒る” (Angry) in Whole action mode>

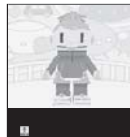
* A Chara-den character is displayed normally (not mirror).

▶ (Whole) ▶



<Example: “顔アップ” (Face close up) in Parts action mode>

▶ (Parts) ▶



■ To have a character’s mouth synchronize your voice

Some Chara-den characters can move the mouth synchronizing your voice as if they were talking.

If you use the function menu or press one of the keys to make the character perform an action while speaking into the phone, the character performs the selected action rather than moving its mouth.



Function menu (Chara-den list screen)

Chara-den call	▶ Enter a phone number ▶ (Phone) or (Phone) Makes a videophone call with the highlighted Chara-den character set as an alternative image. Use (Phone) to search a phone number from Received calls, Redial or Search phonebook.
Substitute image	Sets the highlighted Chara-den character as an alternative image for videophone calls.
Rec.Chara-den	“Saving Chara-den character as image or movie” → p.366
Edit title	▶ Edit a title Edits the title of the highlighted Chara-den character. The title can contain up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters.

Chara-den info	"Chara-den information" → p.366
Memory info	Displays the amounts of Chara-den data stored and available space.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.149
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted Chara-den character.
• Delete selected	"Selecting multiple data" → p.382
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all Chara-den characters.
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for Chara-den characters.
• Normal	Displays a character in the actual size.
• Fit in display (default)	Enlarges a character to the display size.
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.

NOTE**<Memory info>**

- ◆ The displayed size is only an approximation.

<Delete>

- ◆ If you attempt to delete a Chara-den character that has been set as an alternative image for videophone calls, a message appears asking whether to delete the character. If "YES" is selected to delete the character, the preinstalled Chara-den "ブンブン(Dimo)" is set as an alternative image. If you have already deleted "ブンブン(Dimo)", a preinstalled still image is transmitted as an alternative image.

- ◆ If you attempt to delete a Chara-den character stored in the phonebook, a message appears asking whether to delete the character. If "YES" is selected to delete the character, the one stored in the phonebook is also deleted.

Function menu (Chara-den player screen)

Chara-den call	▶ Enter a phone number ▶  or  Makes a videophone call with the displayed Chara-den character set as an alternative image. Use  to search a phone number from Received calls, Redial or Search phonebook.
Substitute image	Sets the displayed Chara-den character as an alternative image for videophone calls.
Rec.Chara-den	"Saving Chara-den character as image or movie" → p.366
Switch Chara-den	▶ Select a character Switches a Chara-den character to display.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.149
Action List	Displays the action list.
Change Action	Changes the action mode. → p.365
Chara-den info	Displays information about the displayed Chara-den character.

Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for Chara-den characters.
• Normal	Displays a character in the actual size.
• Fit in display (default)	Enlarges a character to the display size.

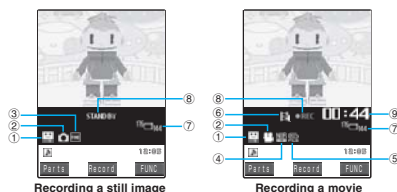
● Chara-den information

You can check the following:

Default title	The original title
File name	The file name
File restriction	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted" An unrestricted Chara-den character becomes restricted after it is downloaded.
Rec.File Restriction	"File restricted"/"Not restricted"
Display size	The file display size (wide × high in dots)
File size	The file size in K bytes
Source	From where the file was acquired A blank appears here for a Chara-den character preinstalled at the time of purchase.
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Moved to miniSD	Always "No"
Substitute image	Where the alternative image is set When no image is set, "No setting" appears.

NOTE

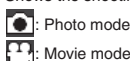
- ◆ "Rec.File Restriction" indicates whether or not the restrictions apply when an image or movie shot using Chara-den is edited, copied to the miniSD memory card or attached to a message.

Saving Chara-den character as image or movie <Rec.Chara-den>**■ Guide to the Rec.Chara-den screen**

- ① Shows the currently selected action mode.



- ② Shows the shooting mode.



- ③ Shows the "Storage setting" (image).





: Super Fine

- ④ Shows the "Storage setting" (movie).



: Normal



: Prefer img qual



: Prefer time



: Prefer motion spd

- ⑤ Shows the "File size setting".



: Restricted(Short)



: Restricted(Long)



: Local playback

- ⑥ Shows the "Movie type set".



: Video + voice



: Video

- ⑦ Shows the size selected in "Select size".



: QCIF(176 × 144)



: Small(117 × 96)

- ⑧ Shows the shooting status.



: Stand-by



: Shooting

- ⑨ Shows the remaining shooting time in the "min:sec" format (not shown until shooting starts).

● Shooting still images

1 Chara-den player screen (p.365)▶



(FUNC)▶ "Rec.Chara-den"

The "Rec.Chara-den" (image) screen appears.



Record Chara-den (image)
Function menu▶p.365

2 Perform an action▶

Performing an action→p.365

■ To perform a Parts action

▶ (Parts)

■ To compose an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted

▶ (MAIL)▶ Select "Attach image" or "Insert image"

■ To retake the shot

▶ (CL)

3

The still image is saved to the Camera folder under My picture.

NOTE

- ◆ No shooting tone is sounded when:
 - "Phone" under Ring volume is set to "Silent"
 - The ring volume is set to "Silent" e.g. in manner mode

Function menu (Rec.Chara-den screen)

Switch Chara-den	▶ Select a Chara-den character Changes a Chara-den character to shoot.
Substitute image	Sets the displayed Chara-den character as an alternative image for videophone calls.
Action List	Displays the action list.
Change Action	Changes the action mode. → p.365
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for Chara-den characters.
• Normal • Fit in display (default)	Displays a character in the actual size. Enlarges a character to the display size.
Movie mode^{*1}	Switches between Photo mode and Movie mode.
Select size^{*2}	Sets the size of character to shoot.
• QCIF (176 × 144) (default) • Small (117 × 96)	Shoots a character in 176 dots wide × 144 dots high (QCIF). Shoots a character in 117 dots wide × 96 dots high.
Movie type set^{*3}	Sets the movie shooting mode.
• Video + voice (default) • Video	Shoots a movie including sound. Shoots a movie without any sound.
Storage setting^{*3}	Sets the image quality and duration for movie shooting.
• Normal (default) • Prefer img qual • Prefer time • Prefer motion spd	Shoots a movie with the typical quality and duration. Shoots a movie with quality higher. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal. Shoots a long movie. The quality is not as high as for Normal. Shoots a movie with smoother motion.
Storage setting^{*2}	Sets the file size for storing an image of QCIF (176 × 144) or Small (117 × 96). File size → p.189
File size setting^{*3}	Sets the file size for shooting a movie.
• Restricted (Short) (default) • Restricted (Long) • Local playback	You can shoot up to 290K bytes. Select this option to shoot a typical movie and attach it to an i-mode message. You can shoot up to 490K bytes. Select this option to shoot a large-sized movie and attach it to an i-mode message. You can shoot up to 800K bytes.

^{*1} : When you are using Movie mode, "Photo mode" appears here. Photo mode is selected at the time of purchase.

^{*2} : The option cannot be set in Movie mode.

^{*3} : The option cannot be set in Photo mode.

NOTE

<Switch Chara-den>

- ◆ Changing the Chara-den character sets the action mode to Whole.

● Shooting movies

1 Rec.Chara-den (image) screen (p.367)▶ (FUNC)▶ “Movie mode”

The “Rec.Chara-den” (movie) screen appears.



Function menu▶p.367

2 Perform an action▶

Performing an action→p.365

■ To perform a Parts action

▶ (Parts)

■ To compose an i-mode message with a movie attached

▶ (MAIL)

■ To check the movie

▶ (FUNC)▶ “Check w/ playing”

■ To retake the shot

▶ (RE-)

3

The movie is saved to the Camera folder under i-motion.

NOTE

- ◆ Only QCIF(176×144) can be selected for the image size, which cannot be changed.
- ◆ No shooting tone is sounded when:
 - “Phone” under Ring volume is set to “Silent”
 - The ring volume is set to “Silent” e.g. in manner mode
- ◆ When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, a sound is recorded according to the “Select microphone” settings.
- ◆ Performing an action during shooting may record keypad sounds.

<Melody>

MENU 16

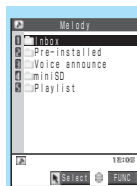
Playing Melodies

Preinstalled melodies, sound effects or melodies downloaded from sites can be played in the Melody folder under Data box.

Melodies stored on the miniSD memory card cannot be played. To play them, copy them to the phone beforehand.

1 “Melody”

The “folder list” screen appears.



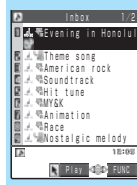
Folder list

Function menu▶p.361

2 Select a folder

The “melody list” screen appears.

Melody list screen→p.368



Melody list

Function menu▶p.369

3 Select a melody

The “melody” screen appears to play the melody.

Operation during playback→p.369



Melody

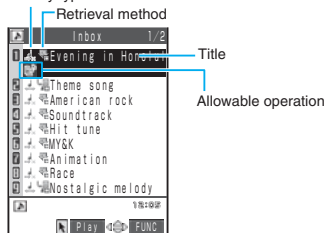
Function menu▶p.370

NOTE

- ◆ Melodies are played at the volume set in “Phone” under the “Ring volume” settings. They are played at “Level 2” when “Silent” or “Step” is set.
- ◆ You can enjoy rich-sound melody with 3D sound compatible melody.→p.130

Guide to the melody list

Melody type



Titles of nine melodies are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the melody type, melody retrieval method, and settings that can be specified for the melody.

■ Melody type icon

	MF1/SMF ¹ *2

*1 : “ ” is added to icons for melodies that are file-restricted or not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal.

*2 : A melody may be restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will be played when it is set as a ring tone, etc. The entire melody can be played in "Melody" under Data box. You can also change the file names and titles of those melodies.

■ Retrieval method icon

No icon	Stored at the time of purchase
	Downloaded from site
	Copied from the miniSD memory card or a PC, acquired via infrared data exchange or Bar code reader

■ Allowable operation icon

	Can be attached to an i-mode message (10,000 bytes or smaller)
	Can be set as a ring tone
	Can be transferred via infrared data exchange
	Can be copied to the miniSD memory card

■ Title and file name

Original titles are assigned to downloaded melodies.

The title appears on the melody list screen of the FOMA terminal.

The file name appears when the data is transferred to a PC.

If a file name you attempt to create contains an inappropriate character, the file is automatically renamed to "melodyxxx" (xxx: 3-digit number).

The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files.

Operation during melody playback

You can perform the following operations during melody playback:

Control keys	Operation
	Plays the previous or next melody
	Adjusts volume**2
	Stops playback
	Ends

*1 : After you adjust the volume, if you press  or wait for about 2 seconds, the screen turns to the melody screen.

*2 : Adjusting the volume during playback is only a temporary change. When playback ends, the volume is restored to the level specified in "Ring volume".

Function menu (melody list screen)

The melody list function menu varies depending on the folder containing the melody.

- Melody list function menu for Inbox, miniSD or user-created folders → p.369
- Melody list function menu for Pre-installed or Voice announcement → p.370

■ Melody list function menu for Inbox, user-created or miniSD folders

Edit title	▶ Edit a title Edits the title of the highlighted melody. The title can contain up to 25 double-byte or 50 single-byte characters.
Edit file name**1	▶ Edit a file name Edits the file name of the highlighted melody. The file name can contain up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols ("-", "_"). Symbols other than "-" or "_" cannot be used.
Play melody**1	Plays the highlighted melody (Displays the melody screen).
Ring tone**1	Sets the highlighted melody as a ring tone. → p.128
File restriction**1	Sets file restrictions on the highlighted melody. • File unrestricted Allows the melody to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it. • File restricted Does not allow the melody to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Add desktop icon**1	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.149
Compose message**1	Composes an i-mode message with the highlighted melody attached. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.247
Send Ir data**1	"Transferring One Data at a Time" → p.385
Copy to miniSD**1	• Copy this ▶ Select the destination folder Copies the highlighted melody. • Copy selected "Selecting multiple data" → p.382 • Copy all ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select the destination folder ▶ "YES" Copies all melodies.
Copy to phone**2	Copies a melody stored on the miniSD memory card to the Inbox folder on the FOMA terminal. • Copy this Copies the highlighted melody. • Copy selected "Selecting multiple data" → p.382 • Copy all ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Copies all melodies.
Melody info	"Melody information" → p.370
Memory info	Displays the amounts of melody data stored and available space.

Copy^{*2}	Copies a melody to another folder on the miniSD memory card. Create a destination folder beforehand. → p.381
• Copy this	▶ Select the destination folder Copies the highlighted melody.
• Copy selected	"Selecting multiple data" → p.382
• Copy all	▶ Select the destination folder Copies all melodies.
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted melody.
• Delete selected	"Selecting multiple data" → p.382
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Delete all melodies in the folder.
Sort^{*1}	Sorts melodies by specified criteria.
Move	
• Move this	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ "YES" Moves the highlighted melody to another folder.
• Move selected	"Selecting multiple data" → p.382
• Move all	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ "YES" Moves all melodies stored in the folder to another folder.

*1 : This option appears only for melodies stored in Inbox or user-created folders.

*2 : This option appears only for melodies stored in the miniSD memory card.

NOTE

<Edit file name>

- ◆ You cannot edit the name of a file-restricted melody but can edit the one transferred via infrared data exchange or OBEX.

<Compose message>

- ◆ A MFI-formatted melody cannot be attached regardless of the acquisition method or the File restriction setting.
- ◆ You cannot attach a melody whose file size exceeds 10,000 bytes.

<Melody info>

- ◆ You may be unable to attach a melody to a message even if the file is unrestricted.

<Memory info>

- ◆ The displayed size is only an approximation.

<Delete>

- ◆ If you attempt to delete a melody that has been set as a ring tone or alarm tone, a message appears asking whether to delete the melody. If "YES" is selected to delete the melody, the corresponding ring tone or alarm tone is restored to default.

<Sort>

- ◆ If you exit a sorted melody list, sort is released.

- ◆ "By source" sorts melodies in the following order. Melodies with the same source icon are sorted in the order in which they were shown before you selected "By source".

① Melody downloaded or acquired via i-appli

② Melody acquired via infrared data exchange

■ Melody list function menu for Pre-installed or Voice announcement

Play melody	Plays the selected melody.
Ring tone	Sets the selected melody as a ring tone. → p.128

Function menu (melody screen)

Ring tone	Sets the currently played melody as a ring tone. → p.128
Set repeat play^{*1}	Plays melodies continuously in the folder.
Add desktop icon^{*2}	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.149
Compose message^{*2}	Composes an i-mode message with the currently played melody attached. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.247
Copy to miniSD^{*2}	▶ Select the destination folder Copies a melody to the miniSD memory card.
Melody info^{*2}	"Melody information" → p.370

*1 : The option does not appear for the Voice announcement folder.

*2 : The option does not appear for the Pre-installed or Voice announcement folder.

● Melody information

You can check the following:

Default title	The original title
File name	The file name
File size	The file size in K bytes
File restriction	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted"
File classification	Melody file type "MFI" or "SMF"
Transfer for Repair^{*1}	Whether or not the file can be moved when an error occurs → p.349
Source	From where the file was acquired
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Moved to miniSD^{*1}	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the document can be copied to the miniSD memory card.
Moved to phone^{*2}	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the document can be copied to the FOMA terminal (Phone).
Vibrator linkage	"ON"/"OFF" of Vibrator linkage
Illumination linkage	"ON"/"OFF" of Illumination linkage

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.371

Ring tone^{*1}	Where the ring tone is set When no melody is set, "No set" appears.

*1 : The option appears only for melodies stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

*2 : The option appears only for melodies stored on the miniSD memory card.

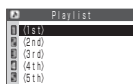
● Playing melodies in your preferred order <Playlist playback>

Select and register up to 10 melodies, and play them consecutively.

- 1 Folder list screen (p.368)▶ Highlight "Playlist" and press (FUNC)▶ "Edit playlist"▶ Select No. for the melody▶ Select a folder▶ Select a melody▶ Repeat to add**

■ To release an added melody

▶ Select a melody to release▶ Select "Release this" on the folder selection screen



2 (Finish)

The melody folder list screen appears. Selecting the Playlist folder starts playlist playback, and the registered melodies are played repeatedly.

NOTE

- ◆ The playlist is released once you change the title and file name of one of the registered melodies or delete data.

Function menu (Playlist folder)

- 1 Highlight "Playlist" on the melody "folder list" screen and press (FUNC)▶ Select any item**

Add folder	▶ Enter a folder name Adds a folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	You cannot rename the Playlist folder.
Delete folder	You cannot delete the Playlist folder.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code▶ "YES" Deletes all melody files stored in the Inbox, user-created, Voice announcement and Playlist folders.
Edit playlist	Creates a playlist or edits the existing playlist. "Playing melodies in your preferred order" → p.371
Release playlist	Releases a playlist.

miniSD Memory Card

The miniSD memory card can be used as an external memory on the FOMA terminal. In addition, you can insert the miniSD memory card into the miniSD memory card adapter and use it on a PC, etc. that supports an SD memory card.

The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store. N902IX HIGH-SPEED supports up to 2G-byte miniSD memory cards (commercially available) (As of August, 2006).

- You can copy data such as phonebook entries, messages, bookmarks and still images or movies shot with the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card, or copy data stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal. Still images and movies stored on the miniSD memory card can be viewed on the FOMA terminal.
- Downloaded movies/i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® that are stored on the FOMA terminal can be copied to the miniSD memory card if the data provider allows you to copy.
- When you operate or copy data on the miniSD memory card, the incoming call lamp flashes green (the lamp may not flash depending on the function).
- Visit the following site for the latest miniSD memory card:
NEC ワイワイもばいる (WaiWai Mobile):<http://www.n-keitai.com/>



Notes

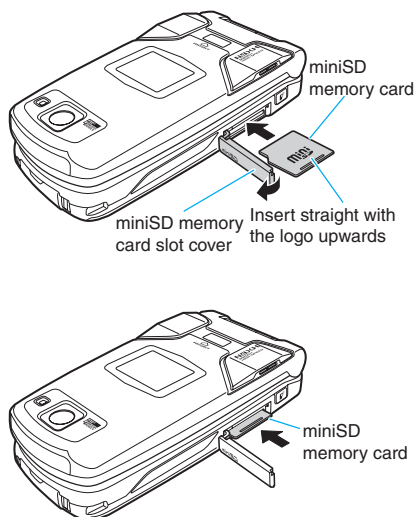
- * Format the miniSD memory card on the FOMA terminal. A miniSD memory card formatted on other mobile phones or on a PC may be unusable on the FOMA terminal. → p.379

- Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before inserting or removing the miniSD memory card.
- Do not put a label or sticker on the miniSD memory card.

Inserting/removing the miniSD memory card

● Inserting

Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before inserting the miniSD memory card.



1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cover

2 Insert the miniSD memory card into the miniSD memory card slot and push it in until it locks into place

Insert the miniSD memory card straight and slowly with the printed side upwards. Fully inserting locks the card into place.

3 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover

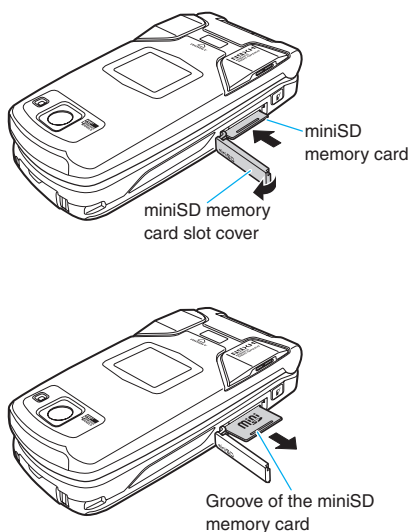
After you insert the miniSD memory card then turn on the FOMA terminal, "SD" appears on the screen.

NOTE

- ◆ If an error occurs on the miniSD memory card or if it is incorrectly formatted, "SD" appears on the screen.

● Removing

Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before removing the miniSD memory card.



1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cover

2 Gently push the miniSD memory card inwards

When you push the miniSD memory card in then release it, the card pops out slightly. Note that the card may fly out of the slot.

3 Slowly pull the miniSD memory card out of the slot

Grip the groove in the edge of the miniSD memory card and slowly pull the card out.

4 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover

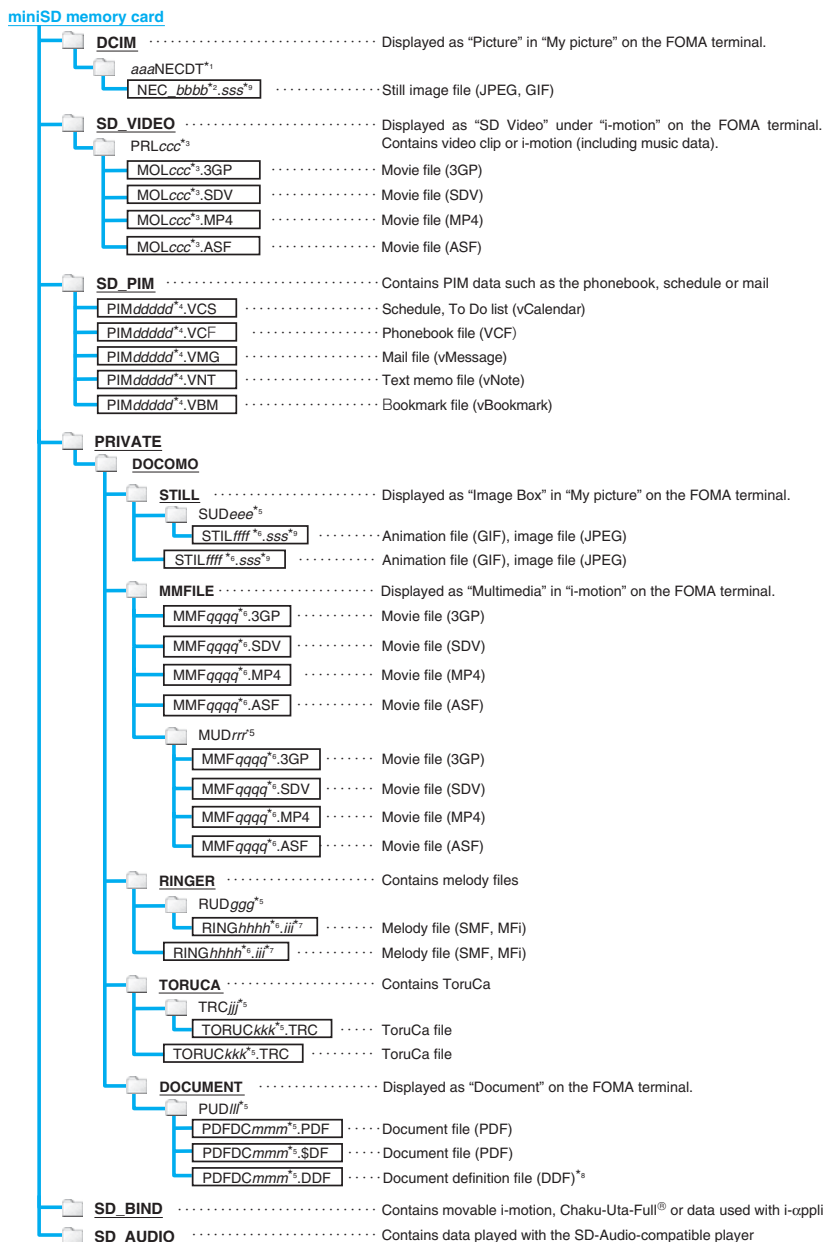
NOTE

- ◆ Do not insert or remove the miniSD memory card while the FOMA terminal is turned on. Doing so may damage the miniSD memory card or destroy data on the card.
- ◆ The miniSD memory card could spring out of the FOMA terminal during insertion or removal.
- ◆ After removing the miniSD memory card from the FOMA terminal, keep the card in the protective case that came with the product. Storing the miniSD memory card in another case may cause the miniSD memory card to become unusable.
- ◆ Check that the miniSD memory card is facing in the right direction, and hold it straight as you insert it into the FOMA terminal (Inserting the miniSD memory card at an angle may damage the card).
- ◆ It may take long to select or display data stored on the miniSD memory card.

Folder tree on the miniSD memory card

If data are copied from the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card, the folders shown below will be created and the data will be saved to the corresponding folder. Under the folders, files and subfolders are automatically named as shown below.

- When copying data from a PC or another device to the miniSD memory card, create and name the folders and files as shown below:



- *1: "aaa" is a 3-digit number between 100 and 999. "NECDT" can be changed to any alphanumeric characters.
- *2: "bbbb" is a 4-digit number between 0001 and 9999. "NEC..." can be changed to any alphanumeric characters.
- *3: "ccc" is a hexadecimal number between 001 and FFF, using 0 to 9 and A to F.
- *4: "ddddd" is a 5-digit number between 00001 and 65535.
- *5: "eee", "ggg", "jjj", "kkk", "lll", "mmm" or "rrr" is a 3-digit number between 001 and 999.
- *6: "ffff", "hhhh" or "qqqq" is a 4-digit number between 0001 and 9999.
- *7: "iij" is a file extension, MLD or MID.
- *8: The folder appears only if it is viewed on a PC, etc.
- *9: "sss" is a file extension, JPG or GIF.

NOTE

- ◆ The SD_PIM folder does not appear until you copy PIM data such as the phonebook.
- ◆ If two or more data are copied to the SD_PIM folder, "yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm" (year/month/day hour:minute) is automatically added to the title names.
- ◆ On some PCs, folder names and file names may appear in lower case.
- ◆ A file edited on a PC then saved to the miniSD memory card may not be displayed or played correctly on FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED if you name the file using different characters from the folder/file names shown on p.373.
- ◆ If the miniSD memory card is formatted and SDVIDEO.DAT or DCIM.DAT is deleted, the settings of the destination folder are canceled. To reset the settings, launch "Select to save" (pp.188, 195). Turning off the FOMA terminal or inserting/removing the miniSD memory card does not cancel the settings.
- ◆ Do not use a PC to delete or move folders stored on the miniSD memory card. Doing so may prevent FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED from reading the miniSD memory card.
- ◆ FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED cannot recognize data that are stored on the miniSD memory card but are unsupported by FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED.
- ◆ The FOMA terminal may be unable to display or play a data that was copied from another device to the miniSD memory card. Also, another device may be unable to display or play a data that was copied from the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card.
- ◆ Before purchasing the miniSD memory card reader/writer or PC card adapter, ask the manufacturer of the miniSD memory card if it is available on your FOMA terminal.
- ◆ A miniSD memory card formatted on a device other than FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED may not function correctly.

● Number of files storable on the miniSD memory card

The number of files storable on the miniSD memory card varies depending on the memory capacity of the miniSD memory card. The following table shows the maximum number of folders that can be created and the maximum number of files that can be saved to each folder. If a folder is added to change the copy destination, more files can be stored on the miniSD memory card. Note that the maximum number of files storable may vary depending on the file sizes.

Folder	Max. number of folders	Max. number of files storable in each folder
DCIM	900	9,999
SD_VIDEO	4,095	4,095
SD_PIM	1	65,535
STILL	999	9,999
MMFILE	999	9,999
DOCUMENT	999	999
RINGER	999	9,999
TORUCA	999	999

Use the "Categories function menu" (p.376) to check the memory capacity and available capacity of the miniSD memory card. The displayed memory capacity will be lower than the one described on the miniSD memory card.

- If there is insufficient space left on the miniSD memory card and you attempt to copy phonebook entries, own number, schedule entries, To Do list entries, text memo, messages or bookmarks, a message appears indicating that the data cannot be copied due to lack of space. In cases of images, movies and i-motion, "Copy to miniSD" and "Move to miniSD" on the function menu are grayed out. In this case, insert another miniSD memory card or delete any unnecessary data from the card, then retry to copy the data.
- Music data cannot be copied from the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card (SD_AUDIO folder).
- When the number of files in the folder to which a file is to be copied has already reached the limit then you attempt to copy:
 - Data to other than the SD-PIM folder, a new folder is automatically created and the file will be saved to the folder except if a still image shot with the built-in camera is directly saved to the miniSD memory card.
 - Data to the SD_PIM folder, a message appears indicating that the folder is full of data, and the file cannot be copied to the miniSD memory card.
- When the miniSD memory card is full, you cannot add another folder for images, movies or i-motion, or edit titles. Delete any unnecessary data and retry.

Data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card

The following table shows data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card:

Data type	Details
Still image	JPEG and GIF data stored in Inbox, Camera, Decomail-picture, miniSD and user-created folders
Movie	MP4 data stored in Inbox, Camera, miniSD and user-created folders
Phonebook	Name, Reading, Phone number, Mail address, Memo, Address, Birthday, Image, Memory number ^{*1} , Secret store ^{*2} , Group number ^{*3} , Group name ^{*3} , PushTalk phone number ^{*3} , PushTalk group number ^{*3} , PushTalk group name ^{*3}
Schedule	Date(from), Date(to), Summary, Contents, Secret store ^{*2} , Category ^{*4} , Alarm, Repeat
To Do list	Contents, Category ^{*5} , Completion date, Period, Change status, Priority, Alarm
Text memo	Make date, Last modify date, Category, Contents
Received message^{*6}, Sent message^{*6}, Draft message, SMS	Unread/read, Message type, Saved in, Sender, Receiver, Title, Receive/send date, Message, Attach
Bookmark^{*6 *7}	URL, Title
PDF data	PDF documents stored in Inbox, miniSD and user-created folders
Melody	MF/i/SMF melodies stored in Inbox, miniSD and user-created folders
ToruCa	ToruCa stored in ToruCa, miniSD and user-created folders

*1 : Data cannot be copied by "Copy & add this".

*2 : Secret store shows if it is stored as a secret data.

*3 : Data can be copied by "Copy all".

*4 : Category is the icon information setting that was set in Schedule.

*5 : Category is set in To Do list.

*6 : Folder names remain unchanged after you copy all of received messages, sent messages and bookmarks to the miniSD memory card.

*7 : An i-mode bookmark copied from the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal is saved to the "Bookmark" folder under "i-mode menu". A full browser bookmark is saved to the "Bookmark" folder under "Internet(Full Browser)".

NOTE

- ◆ If a schedule with a user icon set is copied, the "Category" information is not transferred.
- ◆ A data cannot be copied if it is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal. However, a "File restricted" data on the FOMA terminal can be copied.

Copying Data Stored on the FOMA Terminal to the miniSD Memory Card

Copy one or more data stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card.

"Copy this", "Copy selected" and "Copy all" are the methods to copy data stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store. → p.371
- To copy a still image or movie, see pp.352 and 361.

■ To copy one data stored on the FOMA terminal

Select "Copy to miniSD" then "Copy this" from the function menu on the list screen of the data you want to copy. Alternatively, select "Copy to miniSD" from the function menu on the detail screen of the data.

■ To copy two or more data stored on the FOMA terminal

Select "Copy to miniSD" then "Copy selected" from the function menu on the list screen of the data you want to copy.

■ To copy all data stored in a folder on the FOMA terminal (received messages, sent messages, bookmarks)

Select "Copy to miniSD" then "Copy all" from the function menu on the list screen of the data you want to copy.

■ To copy all data stored on the FOMA terminal

Select "Copy from phone" from the function menu on the category list screen. → p.376
You can also copy all data in the following methods:

- Phonebook, schedule, To Do list, Draft mail, Text memo
Select "Copy to miniSD" then "Copy all" from the function menu on the list or detail screen of the data you want to copy.
- Received mail, Sent mail, Bookmark
Select "Copy all to miniSD" from the function menu on the folder list screen.

NOTE

- ◆ If you copy a message that includes the i-appli launch settings, the settings are deleted from the message.
- ◆ If you copy a secret data (phonebook, schedule), the secret is released.
- ◆ If all data are copied to the miniSD memory card, secret data (phonebook, schedule) are also copied, except data stored in the Secret folder.
- ◆ If all phonebook data are copied, the "Own number" data and all PushTalk phonebook data are also copied.

- ◆ If one phonebook data is copied, PushTalk phonebook data are not copied.
- ◆ “Copy all” cannot be selected from the phonebook detail screen or message detail screen.
- ◆ Copying messages may delete some types of files attached.
- ◆ While copying SD-PIM data such as the phonebook, the FOMA terminal is effectively out of range. You cannot make/receive a call, use i-mode or use data communication.
- ◆ If you copy one entry in “Own number” but do not “Display all data”, the name, reading, own number and the first stored mail address are saved as phonebook. If you “Display all data” to copy one data, all the stored data are saved as phonebook.
- ◆ Receiving a call, message or alarm notification cancels copying still images or movies to the miniSD memory card.
- ◆ You may be unable to copy depending on the data size of ToruCa downloaded from a site or acquired via i-appli.
- ◆ When the specified destination folder is full, a new folder is automatically created and data are saved to the new folder.
- ◆ When you attempt to copy data stored in Data box to the miniSD memory card while i-appli is writing data to the miniSD memory card, a message appears indicating that the data cannot be copied.

<SD-PIM>

Previewing Data Stored on the miniSD Memory Card

Display and check data stored on the miniSD memory card.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store. → p.371
- While running SD-PIM or displaying the data details, you cannot launch another function.
- Previewing images and playing movies → pp.344, 355

1 “SD-PIM”

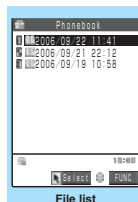
The “Categories” screen appears.



Function menu▶p.376

2 Select any item

The “file list” screen appears.



Function menu▶p.377

3 Select a file

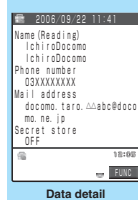
The “data list” screen appears.



Function menu▶p.377

4 Select a data item

The “data detail” screen appears.



Function menu▶p.377

NOTE

- ◆ A Deco-mail message appears without decoration.
- ◆ “ ” appears for a bookmark added on the i-mode browser screen, and “ ” for the one added on the full browser screen.

Function menu (Categories screen)

miniSD info	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the miniSD memory card. → p.379
Copy from phone*	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Copies all data stored in the highlighted item to the miniSD memory card.
miniSD format	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Formats the miniSD memory card.
Check miniSD	Checks the miniSD memory card. Checking the miniSD memory card may fix problems.

* : If “Schedule” is selected, you can select “Schedule”, “To Do list” or “All”. If “Bookmark” is selected, you can select “i-mode brw.”, “Full brw.” or “All”.

NOTE

<Check miniSD>

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card during Check miniSD. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- You cannot check unformatted or incompatible miniSD memory cards.
- The incoming call lamp flashes green during Check miniSD.
- If you press (Quit) or or receive a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call, the Check miniSD is stopped and "" appears.
- If the Check miniSD is interrupted, some data may remain to be recovered. Check miniSD again.
- It may take long to check the miniSD memory card depending on the amount of data.
- Some data may not be recovered depending on the miniSD memory card.
- If Check miniSD is performed, the titles of data stored on the miniSD memory card are renamed to the file names.
Title and file name → p.346

Function menu (file list screen)

- Copy & overwrite (Copy & OW this/Copy & OW select/Copy & OW all) overwrites data stored on the FOMA terminal with data stored on the miniSD memory card.
Make sure that the data to be overwritten are not important to you.

Edit title	▶ Edit a title Edits the title of the highlighted file. The title can contain up to 15 double-byte or 31 single-byte characters.
Copy & add	Copies data to the FOMA terminal.
• Copy & add this	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Copies all data in the highlighted file.
• Copy & add select	▶ Use to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Copies all data in the selected files.
• Copy & add all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Copies all data in all files.
Copy & overwrite^{*1}	Overwrites data on the FOMA terminal.
• Copy & OW this	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" ▶ "YES"^{*3} Overwrites all data in the highlighted file.
• Copy & OW select	▶ Use to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" ▶ "YES"^{*3} Overwrites all data in the selected files.
• Copy & OW all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" ▶ "YES"^{*3} Overwrites all data in all files.
Copy from phone^{*2}	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Copies all data stored in the selected item from the FOMA terminal.

Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted file.
• Delete selected	"Selecting multiple data" → p.382
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all files stored in the selected item.
miniSD info	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the miniSD memory card.

- *1 : In case of Schedule, To Do list data are also to be overwritten (If only either data are stored, only the stored data are to be overwritten).
- *2 : If "Schedule" is selected, you can select "Schedule", "To Do list" or "All". If "Bookmark" is selected, you can select "i-mode brw.", "Full brw." or "All".
- *3 : In the case of phonebook, the confirmation display appears asking whether to set the first data as own data, if there is only one file to be copied.

NOTE

<Delete this> <Delete selected> <Delete all>

- If a file to delete is read-only, a message appears asking whether to delete the file.

Function menu (data list/detail screen)

- Copy & OW all overwrites data stored on the FOMA terminal with data stored on the miniSD memory card.
Make sure that the data to be overwritten are not important to you.

Copy & add this	Copies the highlighted or displayed data to the FOMA terminal.
Copy & add all^{*1}	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Copies all data stored in a file to the FOMA terminal.
Copy & OW all^{*1}	■ Phonebook ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" ▶ "YES" ▶ "YES" or "NO" ■ Schedule^{*2}, Inbox, Outbox, Draft, Text memo, Bookmark ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" ▶ "YES" Copies and overwrites all data stored in a file to the FOMA terminal.
miniSD info	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the miniSD memory card.

- *1 : Only the data list screen appears.
- *2 : To Do list data are also to be overwritten (If only either data are stored, only the stored data are to be overwritten).

Copying Data Stored on the miniSD Memory Card to the FOMA Terminal

Copy, add or overwrite data stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store. → p.371

● Copying to the FOMA terminal

■ To add all data stored in a file

"Copy & add" - "Copy & add this" from the "file list function menu" → p.377

"Copy & add all" from the "data list function menu" → p.377

■ To add all data stored in the selected files

"Copy & add" - "Copy & add select" from the "file list function menu" → p.377

■ To add all data stored in all files

"Copy & add" - "Copy & add all" from the "file list function menu" → p.377

■ To add one selected data

"Copy & add this" from the "data list/detail function menu" → p.377

● Overwriting to the FOMA terminal

■ To overwrite all data stored in a file

"Copy & overwrite" - "Copy & OW this" from the "file list function menu" → p.377

"Copy & OW all" from the "data list function menu" → p.377

■ To overwrite all data stored in the selected files

"Copy & overwrite" - "Copy & OW select" from the "file list function menu" → p.377

■ To overwrite all data stored in all files

"Copy & overwrite" - "Copy & OW all" from the "file list function menu" → p.377

NOTE

- ◆ When copying a large image that is attached to a received or sent message, it is saved to the Data box and linked to the corresponding message. If there is no space available in the Data box to store data, the attached file is deleted when the message is saved.
- ◆ When copying a movie that is attached to a received or sent message, it is saved to the Data box and linked to the corresponding message. If there is no space available in the Data box to store data, the attached file is deleted when the message is saved.
- ◆ You cannot copy data in the phonebook while "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is set.
- ◆ It may take long to read or write data on the miniSD memory card if there are many files stored.
- ◆ If the memory of the FOMA terminal becomes full of data during the copy process, the copy is interrupted. Already copied data are saved.

- ◆ While copying SD-PIM data such as the phonebook, the FOMA terminal is effectively out of range. You cannot make/receive a call, use i-mode or use data communication.

- ◆ If you receive a call, message or alarm notification during the still image copy process, the copy continues. If you receive a call, message or alarm notification during the movie copy process, the copy is interrupted.

<To use the file list function menu to copy>

- ◆ If Copy & add (Copy & add this/Copy & add select/Copy & add all) or Copy & overwrite (Copy & OW this/Copy & OW select/Copy & OW all) is selected for phonebook data, PushTalk phonebook are also copied. However, the group list is not registered when "Copy & add" is selected.

- ◆ If Copy & add (Copy & add this/Copy & add select/Copy & add all) is selected but group names on the miniSD memory card and on the FOMA terminal are different, the data is saved to Group 00 in the phonebook.

- ◆ "Copy & add" (Copy & add this/Copy & add select/Copy & add all) cannot copy:

- A schedule data with the same date/time and repeat settings as those of the existing one
- A bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one

<To use the data list/detail function menu to copy>

- ◆ If Copy & add all or Copy & OW all is selected for phonebook data, PushTalk phonebook are also copied. However, the group list is not registered when "Copy & add all" is selected.

- ◆ If Copy & add all is selected but group names on the miniSD memory card and on the FOMA terminal are different, the data is saved to Group 00 in the phonebook.

- ◆ "Copy & add this" and "Copy & add all" cannot copy:

- A schedule data with the same date/time and repeat settings as those of the existing one
- A bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one

- ◆ If one phonebook data is copied, PushTalk phonebook data are not copied.

- ◆ When the Outbox is full, copying one sent message overwrites the oldest unprotected message.

- ◆ When the Inbox is full, copying one received message overwrites the oldest unprotected read message.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.371

Managing the miniSD Memory Card

Format the miniSD memory card or check how data are used.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store. → p.371

Formatting the miniSD memory card

* Format the miniSD memory card on the FOMA terminal. A miniSD memory card formatted on other mobile phones or on a PC may be unusable on the FOMA terminal.

Format the miniSD memory card so that it can be used on the FOMA terminal.

- Formatting the miniSD memory card deletes all data stored on the card. Before formatting the card, make sure that the stored data are not important to you.

1 Categories screen (p.376)▶

 (FUNC)▶ “miniSD format”▶ Enter your security code▶ “YES”

NOTE

- ◆ Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the format process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆ Data saved to the miniSD memory card are not guaranteed if the format was interrupted.
- ◆ The incoming call lamp flashes green during the format process.
- ◆ If you press  (Quit) or  or receive a voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call, the format is stopped and “” appears. Format the card again.

Checking how the miniSD memory card is used

Check the amounts of available space and data stored on the miniSD memory card.

Number of files storable on the miniSD memory card → p.374

1 Categories screen (p.376)▶

 (FUNC)▶ “miniSD info”

Using the FOMA Terminal as miniSD Reader/Writer

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the miniSD memory card inserted, and you can read/write data stored on the miniSD memory card.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store. → p.371
- To use the FOMA terminal as miniSD reader/writer, you need the following:

Item	Description
Cable	FOMA USB Cable (optional)
PC	PC with USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1 based) supporting FOMA USB Cable (optional)
Operating System	Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese edition)

1 USB mode setting screen (p.380)▶ “miniSD mode”

If “miniSD mode” is set, “” appears.

2 Connect the FOMA terminal and a PC via the FOMA USB Cable

“” will appear when miniSD mode is set and the FOMA USB Cable is connected.

The miniSD memory card appears in the My Computer window on a PC as storage memory (external storage device).

To remove the FOMA USB Cable, follow the Windows safe removal procedure.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot change the USB mode setting or access the miniSD memory card from the FOMA terminal while data is being transferred between a PC and the miniSD memory card. You cannot access the miniSD memory card from a PC while data is being transferred between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card.

Important

- Ensure that the FOMA terminal and a PC are properly connected. An improper connection may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss.
- Attempting to transfer data with the FOMA terminal's battery low or empty may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss. Make sure that the FOMA terminal's battery is fully charged. Also check the PC's power.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable while the incoming call lamp is flashing to indicate that data is being exchanged between a PC and the FOMA terminal. Doing so may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss.

Setting USB Mode

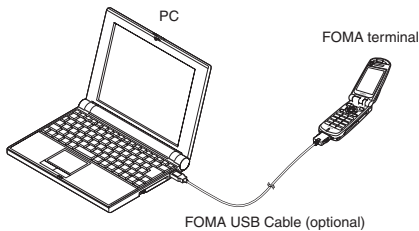
<USB mode setting>

Default setting
Communication mode

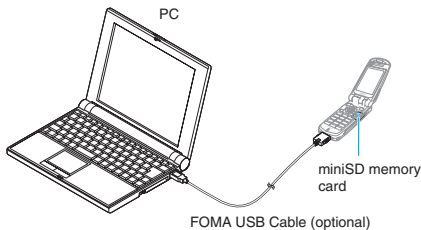
Set USB mode to use various functions by connecting the FOMA terminal to your PC or printer.

- USB mode is categorized into "Communication mode", "miniSD mode" and "Print mode".

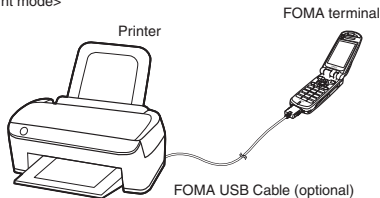
<Communication mode>



<miniSD mode>



<Print mode>



2 Select any item

Communication mode	Uses the external connector for packet communication, 64K data communication and data exchange via cable connection. • "📶": The FOMA USB Cable is not connected/The FOMA USB Cable is connected but data are not ready to be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and a PC • "📶": The FOMA USB Cable (optional) is connected and data are ready to be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and a PC
miniSD mode	Uses the external connector as a miniSD memory card reader/writer. • "📶": The FOMA USB Cable is not connected • "📶": The FOMA USB Cable is connected (You cannot transfer data between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card, display data in memory or format the miniSD memory card)
Print mode	Uses the external connector for PictBridge print. • "📶": The FOMA USB Cable is not connected/The FOMA USB Cable is connected but data are not ready to be printed • "📶": The FOMA USB Cable is connected and data are ready to be printed

NOTE

- ◆ Communication mode is set when you remove/insert the battery pack.

1 "External connection" → "USB mode setting"

The "USB mode setting" screen appears.



Working with Folders and Files

Add folders on the folder/miniSD folder list screens of My picture, i-motion, Melody, My document and Music to organize the files.

Creating, editing and deleting folders

Function menu (folder list screen)

- Function menu appearing when highlighting a folder under i-motion or Melody → pp.360, 371

Add folder	▶Enter a folder name Adds a folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	▶Edit a folder name Edits the name of the added folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Delete folder	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” You can delete a folder containing data.
Delete all*	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all data you have stored. However, data stored in the Secret folder are not deleted.

* : “Delete all image” appears for My picture, and “Delete all” for i-motion and Melody.

NOTE

<Edit folder name>

- You can rename only user-created folders.

<Delete folder> <Delete all image> <Delete all>

- You can delete only user-created folders.
- If you attempt to use “Delete folder”, “Delete all image” and “Delete all” to delete an image or movie that has been set to a screen, an original animation or a user icon for Schedule, or if you attempt to use “Delete folder” or “Delete all” to delete a melody or Chaku-Uta-Full® that has been set as a ring tone or alarm or set to a play-list or random melody, a message appears asking whether to delete the item. If you select “YES” to delete the item, the corresponding feature (screen, etc.) changes as follows:
 - The screens, ring tones or alarms restore to default.
 - Original animation or playlist is released.
 - The Schedule alarm notification screen is replaced with the one to which “” was specified.

- Even if the original image is deleted by “Delete folder” or “Delete all image”, the same one attached to a message is not deleted. However, if the image is large, the one attached to a message is also deleted.
- If the original movie is deleted by “Delete folder” or “Delete all”, the same one attached to a message is also deleted.

Function menu (miniSD folder list screen)

For ToruCa, see “ToruCa folder list function menu” (p.329).

- The following function menu also appears on the Movable contents folder list screen (p.343) under i-motion.

Edit folder name*1	▶Edit a title Edits a folder title. The title can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.*2
Create folder*1	▶Edit a title Creates a folder. The folder name can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.*2
Delete folder	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes the highlighted folder.
DPOF Print*1 *3	“Printing Stored Images” → p.393

*1 : The option does not appear for “Image Box”.

*2 : The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for “Melody”.

*3 : The option does not appear for “i-motion”, “Melody” or “My document”.

NOTE

<Create folder>

- You cannot create a folder in the “Image Box” on the FOMA terminal but on your PC.
- The Movable contents folder can contain up to 65,535 folders, each of which can contain up to 65,535 files.

<Delete folder>

- A message appears asking whether to delete a folder if the folder:
 - Is read-only on a PC, etc.
 - Contains a file

Selecting multiple data

Delete multiple images or movies at the same time, or move them to another folder within the item.

1 Image list (Picture list) function menu, etc.

■ To delete

▶“Delete”▶“Delete selected”

■ To move

▶“Move”▶“Move selected”▶Select the destination folder

■ To copy

▶“Copy to miniSD” (“Copy to phone”/“Copy”)▶“Copy selected”▶Select the destination folder (When “Copy to phone” appears, a folder is not to be selected)
The multi-selection screen appears.

2 Use to select an image

▶ (Finish) ▶“YES”

If it is the Title list, use  to select a checkbox () , and press .



Function menu▶p.382

Function menu (multi-selection screen)

Select all	Selects all images and movies.
Release all	Deselects all the selected images and movies.
Title name, Picture	Switches between Picture and Title name.

* : The option appears only when the folder is “My picture”.

When there is insufficient memory or when there are too many items stored

When you attempt to save still images or movies or download an image, melody, i-motion, Charaden character or Chaku-Uta-Full® from a site, if there is insufficient memory capacity or if the space available for storing data is already full, a message appears asking whether to delete some unnecessary data to save new data.

1 Select “YES” on the message

■ To cancel saving the data

▶“NO”

2 Select a folder▶Select data to delete

Selecting multiple data→pp.34, 382

3 (Finish) ▶“YES”

 (Finish) does not appear until enough memory is allocated to save the data.

NOTE

◆When you attempt to delete an image or movie that has been set to a screen or a melody or Chaku-Uta-Full® that has been set as a ring tone, a message appears asking whether to delete the file. If “YES” is selected to delete the file, the corresponding screen or ring tone is restored to default.

<Forwarding image>

Preventing Phonebook Image Forwarding

Default setting
ON

Prevent still images stored in the phonebook from being sent when copying phonebook data to the miniSD memory card or transferring phonebook data via infrared data exchange or data exchange (OBEX).

1 ▶▶“Forwarding image”▶“OFF”

■ To transfer

▶“ON”

<Infrared data exchange/OBEX>

Transferring Data via Infrared Data Exchange/Cable Connection

The infrared data exchange or cable connection allows the FOMA terminal to exchange data such as phonebook entries and received messages with another FOMA terminal or a PC.

- The infrared data exchange with another FOMA terminal or a PC supporting the feature allows you to transfer one data at a time or multiple data at the same time. “” appears during infrared data exchange.
- Connect the FOMA terminal and a PC via FOMA USB Cable (optional), and you can receive one data at a time from the PC via OBEX (protocol for data communication), or exchange multiple data at the same time between the FOMA terminal and the PC. “” appears while a cable is connected.

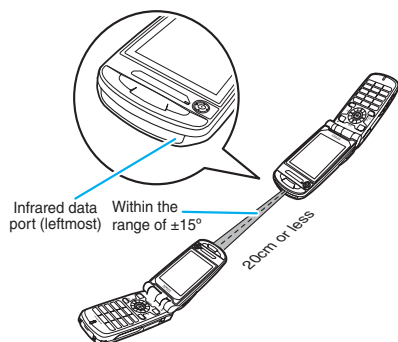
- You can transfer the following:

- Received mail
- Sent mail
- Draft mail
- i-mode bookmark
- Full browser bookmark
- Phonebook
- PDF data*¹
- ToruCa*¹
- Own number data
- To Do list
- Text memo
- Schedule
- Image*¹
- Movie (i-motion)*¹
- Melody*¹
- Own dictionary*²

*1 : You cannot send all data via infrared data exchange.

*2 : You cannot send data via infrared data exchange.

Transferring data via infrared data exchange



- Set the receiving FOMA terminal to standby, and keep 20cm or less between the FOMA terminals.
- Place the FOMA terminals on a stable surface, such as a table, so that the infrared data ports are aligned on the same level and facing each other.
- Do not move the FOMA terminals during data exchange.
- Do not place anything between the FOMA terminals or cover the infrared data ports.
- If data exchange is finished unsuccessfully, adjust the positions then retry the exchange.
- The FOMA terminals may not communicate successfully if they are placed under direct sunlight, directly under a fluorescent light, or close to other infrared equipment.

Transferring data via cable connection

- To transfer data, you need the software such as "FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED Data Link Software".
"Data Link Software" → p.475

- Before transferring data, set "USB mode setting" to "Communication mode". → p.380

Important

- Ensure that the FOMA terminal and a PC are properly connected. An improper connection may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss. Install the N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file (driver). → p.437
- Attempting to transfer data with the FOMA terminal's battery low or empty may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss. Make sure that the FOMA terminal's battery is fully charged. Also check the PC's power.
- All data on the FOMA terminal may be deleted if an error occurs while transferring all from a PC to the FOMA terminal. Before transferring all, check the cable connection, the FOMA terminal's battery level and the PC's power.

Note on transferring data

Before data transfer

- You cannot transfer data while another function is running. Exit all other functions before transferring. You cannot run another function while transferring data.
- You cannot transfer data while making/receiving a voice call/videophone call/Push-to-Talk call or using i-mode, packet communication or 64K data communication. → p.473
- You cannot transfer data while Lock all, Self mode or Omakase Lock is set.
- You cannot receive data stored in the phonebook while "Restrict dialing" is set. However, you can send data with "Restrict dialing" and data in "Own number".
- Whether you can transfer data may depend on the status of the other party's FOMA terminal. If you transfer with the terminal whose model is different from yours, it may not reflect the settings of received messages or bookmark folder tree, or may not receive a Deco-mail message correctly.
- The data transfer function via infrared data exchange or cable connection conforms to the IrMC1.1 standard. You may be unable to exchange data with the terminal or a PC that does not conform to IrMC1.1. Some data may not be transferred correctly even if the terminal or application of the other party conforms to IrMC1.1.
- When transferring a still image, melody, movie/i-motion, PDF document, PushTalk phonebook or ToruCa via cable connection, which does not comply with IrMC, you need the transferring software compatible with FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED.
- You may be unable to transfer data via infrared data exchange if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is connected.

During data transfer

- The FOMA terminal is out of range, which means that you cannot make/receive a voice call/video-phone call/Push-to-Talk call or use i-mode, i-mode mail, packet communication or 64K data communication. However, the FOMA terminal may receive an incoming call or message immediately after starting data transfer. In this case, the transfer will be canceled. After the transfer is finished, the out of range status may continue for a while.
- Infrared data exchange will be canceled and a message appears asking whether to continue the communication when:
 - The receiving device does not receive data within 30 seconds or so
 - The sending device cannot find the receiving device

Select "YES" to retry the communication. Select "NO" to cancel the communication.

If you do not select "YES" or "NO" within 30 seconds or so, the infrared data exchange will be automatically finished.
- It may take long to transfer a large amount of data. The receiving device may be unable to receive a large amount of data. It may take long to transfer the phonebook because stored images are also transferred. To shorten the sending time, you can set "Forwarding image" to "OFF", so that images stored in the phonebook are not transferred.

Data to be transferred

- Data received by the FOMA terminal are saved as follows:

Data	Destination/Order	
Still image/ image	The first in the Inbox folder.	
Movie/ i-motion		
Melody		
PDF data		
ToruCa	The first in the ToruCa folder.	
Phone- book ^{*1}	The lowest memory number available between "010" and "699". If none of the numbers above is available, it is saved under the lowest memory number available between "000" and "009".	
Own number data	The lowest memory number available between "010" and "699".	
Schedule	In date order of received schedules.	
To Do list	The first in the To Do list.	
Received mail	(Receive one)	The Inbox folder in date order of received messages.
	(Receive all)	User-created folders or Trash box folder according to the folder tree on the sender.

Sent mail	(Receive one)	The Outbox folder in date order of sent messages.
	(Receive all)	User-created folders according to the folder tree on the sender.
Draft mail	The Draft folder in date order of draft messages.	
Text memo	The first <Not recorded>.	
i-mode bookmark	(Receive one)	The first in the Bookmark folder under i-mode menu.
	(Receive all)	The Bookmark folder under i-mode menu in the same order as on the sender. ^{*2}
Full browser bookmark	(Receive one)	The first in the Bookmark folder under Internet (Full Browser).
	(Receive all)	The Bookmark folder under Internet (Full Browser) in the same order as on the sender. ^{*2}
Own dictio- nary	(Receive one)	The first in the owner dictionary.
	(Receive all)	The same order as on the sender.

^{*1} : The order in the PushTalk phonebook cannot be transferred via infrared data exchange or cable connection. The entries are registered in received order, which means that the memory number order will apply.

^{*2} : The entries may not be registered in the same order, depending on the sender's model.

- Receiving all still images deletes all the images stored in the phonebook.
- Receiving all the entries of the phonebook saves still images stored in the phonebook you received to the Inbox folder under "My picture". However if the amount of data exceeds the storage limit of "My picture", the exceeding images are deleted to create a phonebook, and a message appears indicating that some images could not be saved.
- Titles of still images, movies, i-motion or PDF documents can contain up to 9 double-byte characters or 18 single-byte characters. Titles of melodies can contain up to 50 single-byte characters. If the length of a title exceeds the maximum, the exceeding part will be truncated.
- The FOMA terminal may not properly receive some symbols or pictographs entered in a message or phonebook.
- You cannot send or receive:
 - UIM phonebook, SMS
 - Data stored in the Secret folder
 - Frame data (can be received only), Flash movie
 - Melody, still image, movie, i-motion, PDF document with FOMA card operational restriction

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.371

- You cannot receive:
 - Image other than JPEG or GIF
 - Movie other than MP4 or 3GP
 - Melody, still image, movie, i-motion, PDF document whose size is beyond the capacity of the FOMA terminal
- You cannot save if:
 - You receive a bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one
 - You receive a schedule data with the same date/time and repeat settings as those of the existing one
 - You receive a schedule or To Do list data while the clock is not set
 - The number of data stored has already reached the limit or there is no memory available and you receive the same type of data
- Note the following when you transfer phonebook data:
 - The data to be transferred are name, reading, phone number, mail address, ZIP code, address, memo, birthday, still image and icon info setting. When more than one phone numbers and addresses are stored on the phonebook, all the phone numbers and mail addresses are transferred.
 - The Secret code cannot be transferred.
 - If a phonebook entry stored as a secret data is transferred via infrared data exchange, the Secret is released before the transfer.
 - When all phonebook entries are transferred, they are sent in the memory number order.
 - The "Own number" data is sent when all phonebook entries are transferred. The personal data of "Own number" stored on the receiving device are overwritten (excluding the phone number).
 - Some pictographs or symbols in a phonebook entry may not appear correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them.
 - When one data is transferred at a time, only UIM phonebook entries are transferred. When all data are transferred, PushTalk phonebook entries are also transferred.
- Note the following when you transfer messages:
 - A large image acquisition information or i-ϕpli launch information is deleted when you send a message. A file-restricted data is also deleted. Some still images are deleted depending on the format. However, even a file-restricted data can be sent if it is a sent message or draft message received via cable connection or copied from the miniSD memory card.
 - If there is no enough space in the Inbox folder, messages in the Trash box folder are deleted and the received one is saved to the Inbox. If the size of the received message is larger than the available space, the message overwrites the oldest unprotected message that has been already read.
 - If there is no space available in the Outbox folder, receiving one sent message overwrites the oldest unprotected sent message in the Outbox folder.
 - Receiving all messages deletes all existing messages and user-created folders before reception.

- You cannot transfer the Inbox folder or Outbox folder for a mail-connected i-ϕpli. All messages in the folder are saved to the Inbox or Outbox folder.
- Some pictographs or symbols in a message may not appear correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them.
- If there is no space available in the Data box to store data, the attached file is deleted when the message is saved.
- You cannot transfer data inserted into an i-mode message.
- The "Color coding" setting set on the Inbox screen or Outbox screen cannot be transferred.
- Note the following when you transfer ToruCa data:
 - The ToruCa (detail) is transferred as ToruCa without detailed information. The detail data can be acquired on the recipient side. However, the detail data may not be acquired depending on the content of the received ToruCa.
 - You may be unable to transfer depending on the data size of ToruCa downloaded from a site or acquired via i-ϕpli.

Transferring One Data at a Time

Exchange one data at a time between your FOMA terminal and a PC/another FOMA terminal.

- You cannot send a data at a time from the FOMA terminal to a PC via cable connection.
- The progress bar indicates the amount of data that has been sent. Transferring a PDF document may pop up the bar twice even if the data is properly transferred.

Sending one data at a time via infrared data exchange <Send Ir data>

Select "Send Ir data" from the function menu on the list screen or detail screen of the data you want to send.

<Example: Send one phonebook data>

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.115)▶

 (FUNC)▶ "Send Ir data"

2 Direct the infrared data port toward the other party▶ "YES"

Make sure that the other party is set to standby. Data transfer starts.

A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.

■ **To cancel the transfer**

▶ "NO"

■ **To exit during transfer**

▶  (Quit)

Receiving one data at a time via infrared data exchange <Receive Ir data> MENU79

1 "Receive Ir data"

The "Receive Ir data" screen appears.

2 "Receive" ▶ Direct the infrared data port toward the other party ▶ Receive data from the other FOMA terminal



Data transfer starts.

The progress bar may not appear depending on the other party.

3 "YES"

A message appears indicating that the received data are completely stored.

The received data will be discarded if the receiving FOMA terminal is not operated at all for 30 seconds or so after the data are received.

■ To cancel saving received data

▶ "NO"

NOTE

- ◆ Even if you select "Receive", you may receive all Ir data if the other party sends all. In this case, the FOMA terminal performs the Receive all operation.
- ◆ Selecting "Add desktop icon" from the Receive Ir data function menu allows you to launch the Receive Ir data function from the desktop icon.

Receiving one data at a time via cable connection <Write one>

- The method to transfer data varies depending on the transferring software. For more details, follow the instructions to the software.

1 Use the transferring software on a PC to send one from the PC

2 Send data from a PC

A large amount of data may slow down the progress indicator showing the communication speed.

3 "YES"

A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed. The received data will be discarded if you do not operate your FOMA terminal at all for 30 seconds or so after you receive the data.

■ To cancel saving received data

▶ "NO"

Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time

Exchange all data between your FOMA terminal and a PC/another FOMA terminal.

- Transferring all data overwrites the data stored on the FOMA terminal. The stored data, including protected messages or secret data such as phonebook and schedule, are deleted. However, frames, Flash movies or secret data stored in the Secret folder are not deleted. Make sure that the data to be overwritten are not important to you.
- Transferring all requires the session number to authenticate the sender and recipient. "Session number" → p.386
- The progress bar indicates the number of data that has been sent. A large amount of data may slow down the progress indicator, or it may seem different between the parties even if the data are being transferred successfully.
- Transferring all may change the order of data on the recipient side.

Session number

- Transferring all requires the session number to authenticate the sender and recipient. Before sending or receiving all, the sender and recipient should agree on a 4-digit number as the session number then both enter the same number.

Sending all data via infrared data exchange <Send all Ir data>

Select "Send all Ir data" from the function menu on the list screen or detail screen of the data you want to send.

<Example: Send all phonebook data>

1 Phonebook list screen (p.115) ▶

 (FUNC) ▶ "Send all Ir data"

2 Enter your security code ▶ Enter the session number

"Session number" → p.386

3 Direct the infrared data port toward the other party ▶ "YES"

Make sure that the other party is set to standby.

Data transfer starts.

A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.

■ To cancel the transfer

▶ "NO"

■ To exit during transfer

▶  (Quit)

Receiving all data via infrared data exchange <Receive all Ir data>

- 1 **Receive Ir data screen (p.386)▶**
“Receive all”
- 2 **Enter your security code▶Enter the session number**
“Session number”→p.386
- 3 **Direct the infrared data port toward the other party▶“YES”**
 - To cancel the transfer
▶“NO”
- 4 **Press “YES” on the Overwrite confirmation screen**
 - To cancel the transfer
▶“NO”
- 5 **Receive all data from the other FOMA terminal**
Data transfer starts.
 - To exit during transfer
▶  (Quit)

NOTE

- ◆ Selecting “Add desktop icon” from the Receive Ir data function menu allows you to launch the Receive Ir data function from the desktop icon.

Transferring all data via cable connection <Write all/Read all>

- The method to transfer data varies depending on the transferring software. For more details, follow the instructions to the software.

<Example: Send all data from the FOMA terminal to a PC>

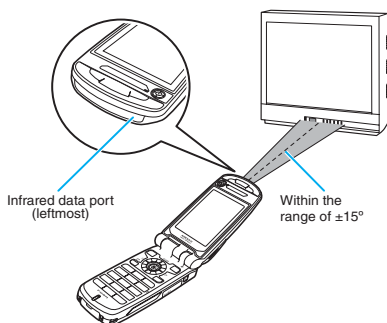
- 1 **Use the transferring software on a PC to send all data from the FOMA terminal**
It is also required to enter the session number on the PC.
Enter a 4-digit number as the session number.
- 2 **Enter your security code on the FOMA terminal▶Enter the session number on the FOMA terminal**
Data are transferred. A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.
“Session number”→p.386

Using the Infrared Remote Control Function

- Download the software appropriate for the product you want to control. Even the correct software may not support the product, which cannot be controlled by the FOMA terminal.
- “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE program guide remote control) is preinstalled at default.
→p.314
- You cannot use the infrared remote control in Self mode.

Using remote control

- Direct the infrared data port of the FOMA terminal at the remote control sensor on TV, etc. The remote control is effective within 4 meters away from the product. This may vary depending on the ambient light level.



<My document>

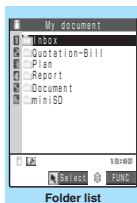
Viewing PDF Data

Use PDF Viewer to view PDF documents that have been downloaded from sites and saved. You can also view documents stored on the miniSD memory card.

- Downloading from sites → p.226

1 "My document"

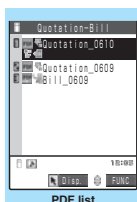
The "folder list" screen appears.



Function menu → p.381

2 Select a folder

The "PDF list" screen appears.



Function menu → p.391

3 Select a PDF document

The "PDF data" screen appears.

■ If the password entry screen appears

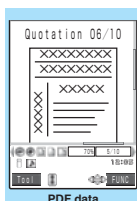
Enter the password set to the document.

■ If a message appears indicating that data may be downloaded

You are attempting to open a document, a part of which has been downloaded by page. The remaining pages can be downloaded later on. → p.227

■ If a message appears asking whether to download all remaining data

You are attempting to open a document, only a part of which has been downloaded for some reason e.g. because the download was interrupted. The remaining pages must be downloaded. → p.227



Function menu → p.392

NOTE

- ◆ It may take long to display a document.
- ◆ A document may not be properly displayed if it contains formats unsupported by PDF viewer or complicated designs.

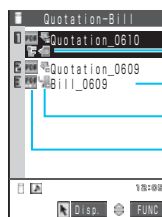
- ◆ While viewing a document, a part of which has been downloaded by page, if you attempt to view a page that has not been downloaded yet, download starts. You can download the remaining pages all together. → p.227

- ◆ To transfer a document from a PC to the miniSD memory card, use the specified folder tree/name and file name. → p.373

A document cannot be displayed on the FOMA terminal if the folder tree/name or file name is different from the specified one.

- ◆ You cannot attach a PDF document to an i-mode message.
- ◆ The FOMA terminal cannot receive a message sent from a PC with a PDF document attached.

Guide to the PDF list



■ PDF type icon

Icon	Description
 (Pale blue)	All the pages have been downloaded.
 (Pale blue)*1	The file size of a document with a blue icon ( , ) displayed exceeds 2M bytes, which cannot be stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
 (Pale blue)*1	Only a part has been downloaded by page. The remaining pages can be downloaded later on.*2 → p.227
 (Pale blue)*3/  (Pale blue)*1	Only a part has been downloaded for some reason e.g. because the download was interrupted. To view the document, download all the remaining pages*2 (some documents may not be viewable even if the download is finished successfully). → p.227

*1 : An icon including "|||||X" indicates that the document is file-restricted, which cannot be transferred via infrared data exchange or cable connection, or copied to the miniSD memory card.

*2 : If all the remaining pages are downloaded and saved, the pale blue icon "", "" or "" will change to "" or "".

*3 : A document cannot be transferred via infrared data exchange or cable connection.

Retrieval method icon

Icon	Description
No icon	Preinstalled
	Downloaded from a site, etc.
	Acquired from the miniSD memory card, a PC, etc.

Allowable operation icon

The icons do not appear if the document is stored on the miniSD memory card.

Icon	Description
	Can be transferred via infrared data exchange
	Can be copied to the miniSD memory card

NOTE

- ◆ A document stored on the miniSD memory card, which appears with a blue icon “” or “”, cannot be viewed on the FOMA terminal.

Operations on the PDF screen

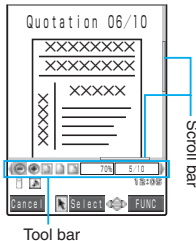
Use the scroll bar and tool bar to view a document.

Scroll bar

The scroll bar appears on the screen to indicate the location of the displayed page in the document.

Tool bar

Use icons on the tool bar to view a document. You can zoom in/out or rotate the pages.



To use icons on the tool bar

▶ (Tool)

To cancel using the icons, press (Cancel). Use to select an icon.

As for the tool bar itself, you can:

- Use to change the display.
- Use Neuropointer to select an icon.

Icons on the tool bar

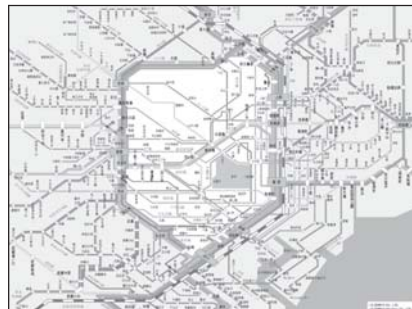
	Indicates the zoom factor. Specify a zoom percentage to display pages in the specified percentage. ▶▶▶▶ Enter a 4-digit number For example, enter “0070” to specify 70%.
	Indicates the current page number. Specify a page number to go to the page. ▶▶▶▶ Enter a 4-digit number For example, enter “0005” to jump to p.5.

	Zooms out.
	Zooms in.
	Displays the entire page.
	Displays a page at 100%.
	Adjusts the page width to the display.
	Displays the first page.
	Displays the previous page.
	Displays the next page.
	Displays the last page.
	Searches for text in the document.
	Rotates a page 90° clockwise.
	Rotates a page 90° counterclockwise.
	Copies text. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” → p.450 Copied text can be pasted into text memo, etc.
	Clips a part of the document as an image. → p.391
	Shows a description of an operation assigned to a key.
	Displays a single page on the screen.
	Displays the document in double-page spread.
	Displays the Bookmark list screen.

PDF documents stored at the time of purchase

The route map PDF documents by ZENRIN are already stored on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

- The Inbox folder under My document contains 札幌路線図 (Sapporo route map), 仙台路線図 (Sendai route map), 東京都心路線図 (Tokyo metropolitan route map), 中部路線図 (Chubu route map), 関西路線図 (Kansai route map) and 博多路線図 (Hakata route map).



東京都心路線図
(Tokyo metropolitan route map)

NOTE

- ◆ To restore route map PDF documents after deleting them, download them from “みんなNらんど” in “ケータイ電話メーカー”.

Accessing “みんなNらんど”→p.216

If the FOMA card (UIM) you are using was not used for download, the FOMA card operational restriction function will apply.→p.38

● NEC Mobile PDF

NEC Mobile PDF automatically converts uploaded Microsoft® Word or Microsoft® Excel documents to PDF data, and notifies the specified FOMA terminal of the URL for viewing the PDF (N901iS, N902i, N902iS, N902iX HIGH-SPEED supported as of August 2006).

- “NEC Mobile PDF”→p.476

Functions available on the PDF screen

You can zoom in/out and rotate a page and change page display modes. You can also set i-mode bookmarks and marks, or clip and save a page.

- The tool bar is useful to change display modes of the PDF screen.
- The keys are also available to change page display modes.→p.391
- Some bookmarks are already placed in a document. You can also use “i-mode bookmark” as if you put a sticky note to immediately jump to the page or location you want to view.

● Scrolling

■ Use to scroll

Use  on the PDF screen to scroll in the direction you select.

■ Use to scroll

Press  to scroll up and  to scroll down.

■ Use the Neupointer to scroll



Press the Neupointer in the direction you want to scroll on the PDF screen. You can scroll in eight directions. The cursor is fixed in the center of the document, and the eight scroll directions appear.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot use the Neupointer to operate the scroll bar.

● Showing/hiding tool bar and scroll bar

Press  to show/hide the tool bar and scroll bar.

● Changing page display modes

1 PDF data screen (p.388)▶ (Tool)

▶ Select an icon

Use  to select an icon.

2 Perform any operation

To finish operating the tool bar, press  (Cancel). Icons on the tool bar→p.389

The PDF data screen reappears.

● Searching for text

1 PDF data screen (p.388)▶ (Tool)



▶ Enter text to search for

You can enter up to 8 double-byte characters or 16 single-byte characters. However, some special characters may not be searched for.

2 Select the checkbox (☐) of the condition▶ (Search)

When the text is found, a page containing the text appears.

Press  to search from the current position to the beginning of the page under the same condition.

Press  to search from the current position to the end of the page under the same condition.



● Using a bookmark to view a document

■ To use a “bookmark” placed in a document

- If bookmarks are placed in a document, follow the steps below to jump to the location (page) where a bookmark is placed.

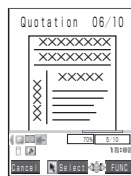
1 PDF data screen (p.388)▶ (Tool)▶



▶ Select a bookmark for the location (page) you want to view

Selecting a bookmark displays the location (page) where the bookmark is placed.

If there are no bookmarks in the document, a message appears notifying that no bookmark was found.



Press  with  bookmark highlighted, and other bookmarks appear under the bookmark.

■ To use “i-mode bookmark”

- i-mode bookmark allows you to place a bookmark anywhere you like so that you can immediately jump to any page or location (up to 10 bookmarks available for one document).
- To jump to the location (page) where you placed a bookmark, follow the steps below:

1 PDF data screen (p.388) (FUNC) ▶ “i-mode bookmark” ▶ Select a bookmark for the location (page) you want to view

The location (page) appears in the same display mode (zoom, etc.) as the one when you placed the bookmark.

■ To add an i-mode bookmark

▶  (Add) ▶ “YES” ▶ Enter a title of the i-mode bookmark

The current display mode (page, zoom, etc.) is saved as an i-mode bookmark.

■ To edit a title of the i-mode bookmark

▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Edit title” ▶ Edit a title

■ To delete an i-mode bookmark

▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Delete” ▶ “YES”

■ To delete all i-mode bookmarks placed in a document

▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Delete all” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES”

● Clipping a page

You can clip a part of the document to save as a JPEG image.

1 Display a page to clip (Tool) ▶ ▶ ▶ “YES” ▶ Select the destination folder

The clipped page is saved.

NOTE

- ◆ An image clipped out of a PDF document that is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal cannot be output from the FOMA terminal, e.g. attached to a message or copied to the miniSD memory card.
- ◆ You may be unable to clip an image if it is prohibited to copy the document.

● Using keys to change page display modes

The functions assigned to the keys are listed below:

Key	Description
	Zooms out.
	Displays the entire page.
	Zooms in.
	Displays the previous page.
	—
	Displays the next page.
	Searches for text in the document.
	Shows/hides the tool bar and scroll bar. → p.390
	—
	Shows a description of an operation assigned to a key.
	Searches next. → p.390
	Searches previous. → p.390

Function menu (PDF list screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit title	Edits a document title.
Display document	
• From the last	Displays a page that was displayed last time.
• First page	Displays the first page of a document.
• i-mode bookmark	Displays a page where the selected bookmark is placed.
Document info	“Document information” → p.393
DL remaining data	Downloads all remaining pages of a document, only a part of which has been downloaded. → p.227
Add desktop icon ¹	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.149
Send to data ¹	Transfers documents between the FOMA terminals. → p.385
Copy to miniSD ¹	
• Copy this	▶ Select the destination folder Copies the selected document to the miniSD memory card.
• Copy selected	“Selecting multiple data” → p.382
• Copy all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select the destination folder ▶ “YES” Copies all documents to the miniSD memory card.

Move	
• Move this	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ “YES” Moves the selected document to another folder.
• Move selected	“Selecting multiple data” → p.382
• Move all	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ “YES” Moves all documents to another folder.
Memory info	Displays the sizes of used and free spaces in memory.
Sort ^{*1}	Sorts documents by specified criteria.
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the selected document.
• Delete selected	“Selecting multiple data” → p.382
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all documents in the folder.
Copy to phone ^{*2}	Copies a PDF document stored on the miniSD memory card to the Inbox folder on the FOMA terminal.
• Copy this	Copies the selected document to the Inbox folder.
• Copy selected	“Selecting multiple data” → p.382
• Copy all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Copies all documents to the Inbox folder.
Copy ^{*2}	Copies a PDF document to another folder on the miniSD memory card. Create a destination folder beforehand. → p.381
• Copy this	▶ Select the destination folder Copies the selected document to another folder.
• Copy selected	“Selecting multiple data” → p.382
• Copy all	▶ Select the destination folder Copies all documents to another folder.

*1 : The option does not appear for the PDF list screen of the miniSD memory card.

*2 : The option does not appear for the PDF list screen of the FOMA terminal.

NOTE

<Copy to miniSD>

◆ A document cannot be copied if only a part has been downloaded by page (“”) or if it is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal.

<Sort>

◆ “By source” sorts documents in the following order:

- ① Downloaded from a site
- ② Acquired via infrared data exchange or from the miniSD memory card

<Copy to phone>

◆ A document cannot be copied if the file size exceeds 2M bytes.

Function menu (PDF data screen)

Zoom out	Zooms out a page.
Zoom in	Zooms in a page.
View types	
• Zoom to	Specifies a zoom factor to display a page.
• Fit page	Adjusts the page size to the display.
• Actual size	Displays a page at 100% (in the actual size).
• Fit width	Adjusts the page width to the display.
Go to	
• First page	Displays the first page.
• Previous page	Displays the previous page.
• Next page	Displays the next page.
• Last page	Displays the last page.
• Specified page	▶ Enter a page number you want to view Displays the specified page.
Search	
• Search	▶ Enter text ▶  (Search) Searches for text. → p.390
• Previous result	Searches previous. → p.390
• Next result	Searches next. → p.390
Page layout	
• Single page	Displays a single page on the screen.
• Continuous-Facing	Displays the document in double-page spread.
Display link	Selects a URL, phone number or mail address to access, make a call or compose an i-mode message. The scroll and tool bars do not appear when you display the link destination in the document. Press  to display the PDF data screen.
Hide tool/scr.bars ^{*1}	Shows/hides the tool bar and scroll bar. → p.390
Rotate view	
• Clockwise	Rotates a page 90° clockwise.
• Counter-clockwise	Rotates a page 90° counterclockwise.
Bookmark	Jumps to the location (page) where a bookmark is placed if bookmarks are placed in the document. → p.390
Copy	Copies text. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” → p.450 Copied text can be pasted into text memo, etc.
i-mode bookmark	Sets (Adds/Deletes) “i-mode bookmark”. Jumps to the location (page) where “i-mode bookmark” is placed. → p.391

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.371

Mark	Puts (up to 10) marks on your desired positions.
• Add	Adds a mark.
• Change	Edits a mark.
• Delete	Deletes a mark.
• Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶ “YES” Deletes all marks.
Capture screen	Clips an image out of a document. → p.391
Add desktop icon^{2 3}	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.149
DL remaining data²	Downloads all remaining pages of a document, only a part of which has been downloaded. → p.227
Save	Saves a downloaded document.
Help	Shows a description of an operation assigned to a key.
Document property	Displays the document properties.
End	Closes the PDF data screen.
Document info	“Document information” → p.393
Delete this³	Deletes the displayed document.

*1 : If the tool bar and scroll bar are currently hidden, “Show tool/scr.bars” appears. The tool bar and scroll bar are set to be shown at the time of purchase.

*2 : The option does not appear if the document is stored on the miniSD memory card.

*3 : The option does not appear while browsing a document on a site.

NOTE

◆ “i-mode bookmark” or “Mark” set on the FOMA terminal is unavailable on a PC.

Document information

You can check the following:

File name	The file name
File classification	The file format
File restriction	“File restricted”/“File unrestricted”
Transfer for Repair¹	Whether or not the file can be moved when an error occurs → p.349
File size	The file size in K bytes
Source	From where the file was acquired
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Move to miniSD¹	“Yes”/“No” indicates whether the document can be copied to the miniSD memory card.
Move to phone²	“Yes”/“No” indicates whether the document can be copied to the FOMA terminal (Phone).

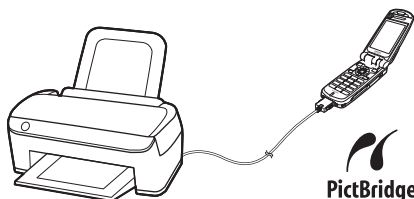
*1 : The option appears only for PDF documents stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

*2 : The option appears only for PDF documents stored on the miniSD memory card.

<PictBridge print>

Printing Stored Images

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PictBridge-compatible printer via the FOMA USB Cable (optional), and you can directly print JPEG images without using a PC.



“Mobile Printing Ready” (PictBridge, miniSD)

*This Mobile Printing Ready product is designed to provide easy printing from mobile phones.

This product follows Mobile Imaging and Printing Consortium (MIPC) guidelines version 1.0 for PictBridge, Memory Cards.

- Only JPEG images can be printed (Images shot with the built-in camera are JPEG-formatted).
- Some printers cannot properly print images if they were not shot with the built-in camera.
- Check that your printer supports the PictBridge print before connecting the printer and the terminal.
- You can set how to print images stored on the miniSD memory card. → p.395
- You cannot print images that are not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal.
- Charge the battery fully for PictBridge print. You may be unable to print if the battery is low.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable while communicating with the printer. “” appears during communication.
- The print mode (layout, sheets, etc.) specified on the FOMA terminal may be unavailable on some printers.

1 USB mode setting screen (p.380)▶ “Print mode”

If “Print mode” is set, “” appears.

Set “Print mode” before connecting the FOMA USB Cable, or you may be unable to print.

2 Connect the FOMA terminal and a printer via the FOMA USB Cable

Turn on the printer before connecting.

3 Image list screen (p.344) or Title list screen (p.345)▶Select an image to print, and press (FUNC)▶“Pict-Bridge print”

DPOF Print is available from the “image list screen” or “title list screen” on the miniSD memory card.

It is not required to highlight an image if you print multiple images or print DPOF.

■ To print from the “My picture” screen

One image is printed if you select from the “My picture” (p.344) function menu. Go on to Step 5.

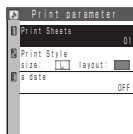
▶ (FUNC)▶“PictBridge print”

4 Select the print type

Selecting “DPOF Print” prints an image by following the print settings specified in “DPOF setting” (p.395) and the paper size and layout specified for the printer (Step 5 and subsequent steps are not required).

Print this	Prints the selected image.
Print Choice	▶Use  to select images▶  (Finish) If it is the title list, use  to select a checkbox () and press  (Finish). Prints images you select.
DPOF Print	Prints images stored on the miniSD memory card by following the “DPOF setting”.→p.395

5 Set the print settings



■ Print settings

Set the following:

Print Sheets*	▶Enter the number of sheets (01 to 99)
Print Style	• Paper size Sets the paper size. • L size • A4 • 2L size • Card • 8"×10" • Default • Postcard • Layout Sets the print layout. • 1-up(borderless) Prints one image on one sheet without a frame. • 1-up Prints one image on one sheet with a frame. • 2-up Prints two images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same two images are printed.

Print Style	• 4-up	Prints four images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same four images are printed.
	• 8-up	Prints eight images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same eight images are printed.
	• 16-up	Prints 16 images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same 16 images are printed.
	• Default	Prints in default layout.
a date	Sets whether to stamp the date.	

* : “Print Sheets” can be set only when “Print this” is selected in Step 4.

6 (Finish)

The image is printed.

● When an error occurs on the printer

- If the “Error” message appears, an error may have occurred on the printer.
- Remove the FOMA USB Cable from the printer then fix the error.
- After the error is fixed, make sure that “” appears at the top of the FOMA terminal display, then connect the FOMA USB Cable to the printer.

NOTE

- ◆ For information on how to recover from the error, see the printer users guide.
- ◆ Up to 100 copies can be selected at a time in Print Choice.
- ◆ Selectable paper size and layout for Print this or Print Choice vary depending on the printer. DPOF Print prints an image using the paper size and layout set on the printer.
- ◆ When you select to add the date, the shooting date and time are stamped if there is the information. If the image does not contain the date/time information, the “Saved at” information shown on the Image info screen will be stamped. However, even if you select to add the date, it may not be stamped in some layout settings.
- ◆ An image cannot be printed if the width or height exceeds 2,304 dots, if the size exceeds 2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high or if the file size exceeds 1,200K bytes. Also, a progressive JPEG image larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or whose width or height exceeds 640 dots cannot be printed.
Progressive JPEG image→p.225
- ◆ The Multitask function is unavailable for PictBridge print.
- ◆ While printing, the FOMA terminal is effectively out of range. You cannot make/receive a call or use i-mode.

Setting how to print images stored on the miniSD memory card <DPOF setting>

Set Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) for printing images stored on the miniSD memory card.

- DPOF is a format for setting the print mode for images shot with a digital camera.
- Save still images shot with the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card, and specify still images to print, the number of sheets, etc. The images can be printed on a DPOF-compatible printer or in a print service shop.
- Printing DPOF-set still images on a PictBridge-compatible printer → p.393

- 1 Folder list screen (p.344) ▶**
“miniSD” ▶ “Picture” ▶ Select a folder ▶ Highlight an image ▶
 **(FUNC) ▶ “DPOF setting” ▶ Select any item**

DPOF set One	Sets the print settings for the selected image.
DPOF set Choice	▶ Select an image Sets the print settings for images you select.

- 2 “Print” ▶ Specify “Print Sheets” (2-digit number from 01 to 99) and “a date” (whether to stamp the date) ▶**
 **(Finish)**

- **To cancel print settings for the displayed image**
 ▶ “Print OFF”
- **To cancel print settings for all stored images**
 ▶ “All print OFF”

NOTE

- ◆ You can set the DPOF setting for up to 999 images. However, the specified copies may not be printed on some printers.
- ◆ DPOF cannot be set if the width or height exceeds 2,304 dots, if the size exceeds 2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high or if the file size exceeds 1,200K bytes.
- ◆ You may be unable to set the DPOF setting if there is little space available on the miniSD memory card.
- ◆ You cannot set DPOF for images stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
- ◆ The specified number of sheets can be checked in “Image info”.

● Other Useful Functions

Multi Access.....	Multi access	398
Multitask.....	Multitask	399
Using the Assist Key to Read Out Messages or Alarms		
.....	Assist key	400
Setting Alarm Mode	Alarm setting	401
Using a FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock	Alarm clock	403
Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries		
.....	Schedule	404
Adding To Do List Items.....	To Do list	408
Storing your Name and Image.....	Own number	410
Recording your Voice or the Other Party's Voice		
.....	Voice memo (in-call)/Voice memo	411
Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones		
.....	Voice announce	412
Checking Call Times and Charges	Call data	413
Setting the Upper Limit of Charge to Show the Alarm		
.....	Notice designate calls	414
Using a FOMA Terminal as a Calculator	Calculator	415
Composing Text Memos	Text memo	415
Using Dictionaries.....	Dictionary	416
Using an Earphone/Microphone with Switch		
.....	Earphone/microphone with switch	418
Selecting a Callee for Calls Made with an Earphone		
Connected	Auto dial setting	419
Automatically Receiving Calls with an Earphone Attached		
.....	Automatic answer	419
Selecting a Microphone to be Activated When Using an		
Earphone/Microphone	Select microphone	420
Selecting Your Provider	NW search mode	420
Resetting Function Settings.....	Reset settings	420
Resetting FOMA Terminal Functions to Default.....	Initialize	421

<Multi access>

Multi Access

Multi access is a function that enables you to make voice calls, use packet communication and SMS at the same time. This allows you to receive mails during a voice call or make a voice call while using the i-mode services.

"Multi Access Combination Patterns" → p.472

Communication lines that can be used concurrently

By using the multi access function, a FOMA terminal can concurrently use the three communication lines listed below.

Communication type	Line to use
Voice call	1 line
i-mode, i-oppli or i-mode mail	1 line for any of the communications
Packet communication via PC	
SMS	1 line

NOTE

- ◆ Communication charges apply for each of the lines used during multi access communication.
- ◆ Multi access is not available during a videophone call. However, only SMS can be received simultaneously.
- ◆ Multi access is not available during a Push-to-Talk call or 64K data communication. However, only SMS can be sent and received simultaneously.

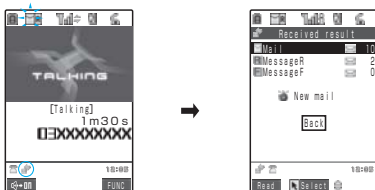
When you receive a call or mail during communication

● Receiving i-mode mails during a voice call

When you receive an i-mode mail during a voice call, the in-call screen remains shown. You can then read the i-mode mail without interrupting your call.

- 1 (MULTI) ▶ Use (MULTI) or to select "Transmission" and press

The reception results screen for the i-mode mail appears.
Switching tasks → p.400



2 Checking the i-mode mail

Reading i-mode mail messages → p.264

- 3 (MULTI) ▶ Use (MULTI) or to select "Talking" and press

The voice in-call screen reappears.

NOTE

- ◆ If you receive an i-mode mail or MessageR/MessageF during a voice call, the "Mail", "MessageR" or "MessageF" icon flashes and then lights up without a ring tone to notify you of the received message.
- ◆ If no operations are performed on the reception results screen, the in-call screen reappears.

● Receiving a voice call during i-mode or packet communication

If you receive a voice call while you are using i-mode, receiving or sending an i-mode mail or using packet communication with a FOMA terminal and PC connected, the voice call reception screen appears and you can answer the call without ending i-mode or packet communication.

- 1

The voice in-call screen appears and you can answer the call.

■ To return to the i-mode screen without answering a voice call

- ▶ (MULTI) ▶ Use (MULTI) or to select the i-mode group task icon () and press

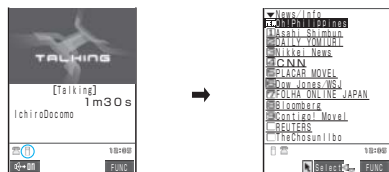
The caller hears ringing without a message.

- 2 To end the call, press

The call ends and the i-mode screen reappears.

■ To return to the i-mode screen without ending a voice call

- ▶ (MULTI) ▶ Use (MULTI) or to select the i-mode group task icon () and press



Using two types of communication simultaneously

Another type of communication is available without interrupting the current communication.

- To switch screens during multi access, select the desired function on the task icon display area.
→ p.400

● Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

During a voice call, press  and select the i-mode menu in the main menu to connect to i-mode. → p.215

● Sending an i-mode mail during a voice call

During a voice call, press  and select the Mail menu in the main menu to compose and send an i-mode mail.

1 During a voice call Select the Mail menu

Using menus → p.32



2 Compose an i-mode mail Send it

Composing and sending i-mode mail → p.247

3 (MULTI) Use (MULTI) or to select “Talking” and press

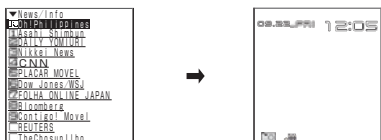
The voice in-call screen reappears.

● Making a voice call during i-mode

While connecting to i-mode or receiving/sending a mail, you can make a voice call without ending i-mode.

1 During i-mode (1 second or longer)

The standby screen appears.



2 Make a voice call

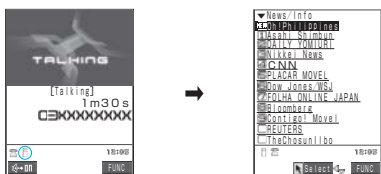
Making voice calls → p.50

3 To end the call, press

The call ends and the i-mode screen reappears.

■ To return to the i-mode screen without ending a voice call

 (MULTI)  Use  (MULTI) or  to select the i-mode group task icon () and press 



NOTE

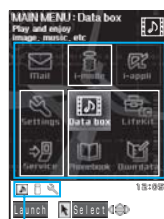
- ◆ If you attempt to make a videophone call during i-mode, the “Disconnecting” message appears and then a FOMA terminal dials the videophone call. When the videophone call ends, the i-mode screen reappears.
- ◆ When you attempt to make a Push-to-Talk call during i-mode, a message asking whether to disconnect i-mode appears. Select “YES” to disconnect i-mode and make the call. When the Push-to-Talk call ends, the i-mode screen reappears.

<Multitask>

Multitask

Multitask enables you to use multiple functions at the same time. Up to 3 functions can be performed at once, one from each of the Main menu groups shown below.

“Multitask Combination Patterns” → p.473



The running groups are enclosed by frames.

Task icon display area:

The running tasks are expressed by icons.

Group	Main menu item (task)
Mail	Mail
i-mode	i-mode
i-appli	i-appli
Settings	Settings and Service
Tools	Data box, LifeKit, Phonebook and Own data

- ◆ The voice call charge continues to increase while you are concurrently using another function during a voice call.

Activating tasks (functions)

1 While a task (1 second or longer)

The standby screen appears. It may not appear depending on the active task.

2 Select a task from a group of which tasks are not currently running

■ To activate a task from the main menu

 Select a task → p.32

■ To activate a task using the menu number

 Enter the menu number of the task you want to activate → p.454

■ To activate a task from the Mail menu

 (MAIL) → p.246

Continued on next page

■ To activate a task from the i-mode menu

▶ (i-mode) → p.215

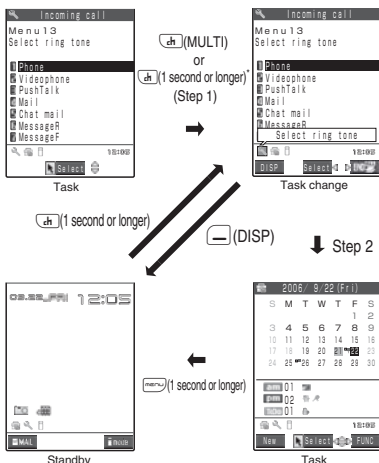
NOTE

- ◆ When you try to activate another task from the group in which you are currently editing data, the message “XXX Cancel editing and switch?” (XXX is a task name or group name such as Mail or i-mode) appears. Select “YES” to end the editing and switch tasks. Select “NO” to return to the previous screen. If having no edited data, you can directly activate the selected task.
- ◆ In the following cases, one task is added to compose a mail while viewing another mail. If three tasks are already running and you try to perform one of the operations below, a message notifying that the task cannot run appears. End a task not belonging to the Mail group and then perform the operation. “Ending tasks” → p.400
 - Accessing the Mail menu to compose a mail
 - Accessing the Mail menu to compose SMS
 - Using a template to create a Deco-mail
 - Using Reply/Reply with quote/Forward for a received mail
 - Editing a sent mail
 - Editing a draft mail

Switching tasks

When you are running multiple tasks, you can switch them to change an active task.

- 1 While activating multiple tasks ▶ (MULTI) or (1 second or longer) *
The task change screen appears.
- 2 Use (MULTI) or to select a task icon you want to switch ▶



* : To switch tasks on the phonebook list screen (tabs) or the member list or group member list in the PushTalk phonebook, press (MULTI) for 1 second or longer to show the task change screen. On the standby screen, you can also switch tasks by selecting a task icon on the task icon display area with the Neupointer.

Ending tasks

■ To end a task

- Open the task screen you want to end ▶
- On the task change screen, select a task icon you want to end and press “YES”

■ To end all tasks

- On the task change screen ▶ (END ALL) ▶ “YES”

<Assist key>

Using the Assist Key to Read Out Messages or Alarms

When receiving a message or alarm, press (ASSIST), so that the FOMA terminal reads out the contents.

- The assist key is also available to operate the Music Channel and music player. → p.305

NOTE

- ◆ Voice reading out text may be heard by those around you. Move to an area where voice will not disturb other people before starting reading out.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal reads out mails at the volume level set in “Phone” under “Ring volume”. When “Silent” or “Step” is set, mails are read out at the “Level 2” volume.

Reading out mail messages

- Set “Read out received mail” under “Read out setting” to “ON” beforehand. You can select a voice under “Select voice”. → p.279
- Messages are read out only when “Select language” is set to “日本語” (Japanese).

Reading out a message when the FOMA terminal is folded

When “” appears on the image display, the message can be read out with the FOMA terminal folded.

- To have the folded FOMA terminal read out the data, set “External keys guard” to “OFF” beforehand. → p.170

1 Press (ASSIST) with the FOMA terminal folded ▶ Press (ASSIST) again within 10 seconds

The FOMA terminal reads out the mail or chat mail message.

■ If “Info notice setting” is set to “OFF”

Readout starts when (ASSIST) is pressed with the FOMA terminal folded.

Reading out a message when the FOMA terminal is opened

Messages can be read out when:

- You receive a mail/chat mail message with the FOMA terminal opened and the reception screen appears
- You perform “Check new messages” and the checking result screen appears
- The received mail detail screen appears

<Example: Running Check new messages>

1 Press (ASSIST) while the checking result screen appears

A FOMA terminal reads out the latest mail/chat mail messages.

■ When multiple new mails or chat mails are received

A FOMA terminal reads out mails in reverse chronological order of reception date. Pressing  (ASSIST) or  during reading out enables the terminal to read out the next mail. After completing the reading out, the terminal automatically starts reading out the next mail.

NOTE

- ◆ When you press  (ASSIST) or  during reading out, a FOMA terminal emits the bleep sound before reading out the next mail. If the terminal has no more mail to read out, it emits the “pipip” tone and ends the reading out.
- ◆ After the reception or checking results screen ends and the other screen such as the standby screen appears, message cannot be read out even if  (ASSIST) is pressed.
- ◆ Opening or folding the FOMA terminal does not interrupt the readout operation.
- ◆ MessageR/MessageF cannot be read out.
- ◆ A new mail/chat mail message is not read out:
 - When a mail-connected i-appli mail message or SMS report is received
 - During a call or communication (except packet communication)
 - In manner mode if no equipment such as the attached stereo earphone (sample) is connected
 - While the Music Channel is running
 - While the music player is running
- ◆ If the sender's name and e-mail address are stored in the phonebook, the message is read out after the voice notification “○○さんからのメール” (This is from XXX).

Reading out the alarm message during the alarm

When the FOMA terminal is folded and you receive an alarm notification, pressing  (ASSIST) during the alarm notification stops the alarm and reads out the alarm message.

1 Press (ASSIST) during the alarm

Readout starts.

The following table shows the contents to be read out:

Alarm type	Contents
Alarm clock	Current time
Schedule	Up to 20 characters of the schedule summary or contents → p.406
To Do list	Up to 20 characters of the event contents → p.409

NOTE

- ◆ If you press  (ASSIST) during readout, the readout stops.
- ◆ Scheduled events stored as secret data are not read out (except in “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”).
- ◆ The voice reading out an alarm message cannot be changed.
- ◆ An alarm message is not read out when the FOMA terminal is opened.

<Alarm setting>

Setting Alarm Mode

Default setting
Alarm preferred

You can select either “Operation preferred” or “Alarm preferred” as the alarm setting for “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list”.

1 **“Clock” ▶ “Alarm setting” ▶ “Operation preferred” or “Alarm preferred”**

■ When Operation preferred is selected

The alarm sounds only when a screen is standby.

■ When Alarm preferred is selected

The alarm sounds even when you are operating or talking on a FOMA terminal.

Alarm actions

When you set an alarm for the “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” function, the icon showing that the alarm has been set appears on the standby screen. When the specified time is reached, the alarm for the respective function is given.

● When you set an alarm

When you set an alarm for “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list”, an icon appears on the standby screen.

**■ For alarms set for today (excluding times that have already passed)**

“” appears.

■ For alarms set for tomorrow or later

“” appears.

NOTE

- ◆ If a schedule event or To Do list item is stored with “OFF” selected, neither “” nor “” appears.

● When the specified time is reached

An alarm is given as follows for each function.



Alarm clock*1



Schedule*1



To Do list*1

Status	Function	
	Alarm clock	Schedule, To Do list
Standby screen shown*2	If "Snooze OFF" is selected, the alarm tone sounds repeatedly for the specified time (01 to 10 minutes). If "Snooze ON" is selected, the alarm tone sounds repeatedly for one minute, and then repeats the operation up to 5 times at about 5 minute intervals. An animation or i-motion appears on the display and Image display.	The alarm tone sounds repeatedly for about 5 minutes, and an animation or i-motion appears on the display and Image display.
FOMA terminal turned off	If "Auto power ON" is selected for the "Auto power ON" setting, a FOMA terminal automatically turns on and an alarm is given. If the setting is set to "Auto power OFF", the terminal does not turn on and no alarm is given. The "Missed alarm" desktop icon does not appear on the screen even after the terminal turns on.	No alarm is given when the specified time is reached. The setting remains effective.
A voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call in progress*3	The clock alarm tone (pip-pipipi...) sounds 3 times through the FOMA terminal's earpiece. An animation appears on the display.	
Receiving or dialing a voice, videophone or Push-to-Talk call*3	Whether the alarm is given depends on the condition. When an alarm is given, the alarm tone sounds and an animation appears on the display and Image display.	
i-mode or sending/receiving a mail*3	An alarm is given the same way as for "Standby screen displayed".	
Infrared data exchange, SD-PIM operation or data exchange in OBEX in progress	No alarm is given when the specified time is reached. When data communication ends, the "Missed alarm" desktop icon appears on the standby screen. → p.403	

Status	Function	
	Alarm clock	Schedule, To Do list
Attached stereo earphone (sample) connected*2	■ When "Earphone" is set to "Earphone +Speaker" The alarm sounds both through the earphone and speaker. An animation or i-motion appears on the display and Image display. ■ When "Earphone" is set to "Earp. (Speaker in 20s)" The alarm sounds through the earphone and then sounds both through the earphone and speaker in approx. 20 seconds. An animation or i-motion appears on the display and Image display. ■ When "Earphone" is set to "Earphone(only)" The alarm sounds through the earphone. An animation or i-motion appears on the display and Image display.	
PIN1 code entry set is set to "ON" and the PIN1 code entry screen which is shown after a FOMA terminal is turned on appears.*3	An alarm is given the same way as for "Standby screen displayed". When the alarm screen is closed, the PIN1 code entry screen reappears.	An alarm is given after the correct PIN1 code is entered.
Lock all/ Omakase Lock/ PIM lock set	Regardless of the Alarm setting setting, no alarm is given when the specified time is reached. If a FOMA terminal is turned off, it is not automatically turned on even when the specified time is reached and the "Missed alarm" desktop icon does not appear after unlocking. When PIM lock is set, the "Missed alarm" desktop icon appears on the standby screen. However, when Lock all/ Omakase Lock is set, this icon appears after unlocking (p.403).	Regardless of the "Alarm setting" setting, no alarm is given when the specified time is reached. When PIM lock is set, the "Missed alarm" desktop icon appears on the standby screen. However, when Lock all/ Omakase Lock is set, this icon appears after unlocking (p.403).

*1 : The animation shown for the "Schedule" or "To Do list" alarm varies depending on the selected icon or category. If an i-motion is set as the alarm tone for "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "To Do list", the image appears during the alarm.

*2 : i-motion does not appear on the Image display.

*3 : This operation is performed when "Alarm preferred" is set. When "Operation preferred" is set, the "Missed alarm" desktop icon appears on the standby screen. → p.403

NOTE

- ◆ The alarm volume for "Schedule" and "To Do list" follows the "Phone" setting under "Ring volume".
- ◆ The volume of the clock alarm tone sounded during a call is the same as that specified in "Volume".
- ◆ Even if "Snooze ON" is set, the snooze function is not activated for the alarm of Alarm clock during a call.
- ◆ Unless "Phone" under "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", both vibration and the alarm tone are given as an alarm.
- ◆ Even if an i-motion is set in "Alarm tone", the i-motion is not played when it cannot be activated (e.g. during a call). Instead, the clock alarm tone, specified icon and animation corresponding to the category are used for an alarm.

<Alarm priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows when the "Alarm clock", "Schedule" and "To Do list" alarms are set to sound at the same time:
 - ① Alarm clock
 - ② To Do list
 - ③ Schedule

● To stop an alarm tone

■ Alarm clock

When "Snooze OFF" is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, animation or i-motion. If you press any key again, the release tone ("pipip") sounds and the display is cleared.

When "Snooze ON" is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, animation or i-motion and the alarm message "Snooze..." appears. After the "Snooze..." message appears for about 5 minutes, the alarm is given again. If you press  while the "Snooze..." message appears, the release tone ("pipip") sounds and the snooze setting is released.

■ Schedule and To Do list

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, animation or i-motion and the alarm message remains shown. Pressing any key again clears the alarm message. However, pressing any external key with a FOMA terminal folded does not close the alarm screen.

■ If a call arrives during an alarm

The alarm stops and a FOMA terminal receives the call. The "Alarm clock" snooze setting is also canceled.

NOTE

- ◆ Snooze is canceled when:
 - A voice call, videophone call or Push-to-Talk call is received
 - "Alarm preferred" is selected in "Alarm setting" and then the alarm for Alarm clock, Schedule or To Do list is given
- ◆ If "Keypad sound" is set to "OFF", the release tone does not sound.

Checking details of an alarm that could not be given

If a FOMA terminal was unable to give an alarm, the  (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. You can check the details of the missed alarm (Missed alarm info) from the desktop icon.

1 On the standby screen

The missed alarm information for "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "To Do list" appears.



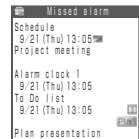
2 Check the details



The standby screen reappears and the  (Missed alarm) desktop icon disappears.

NOTE

- ◆ If "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "To Do list" alarms are set to sound at the same time but a FOMA terminal was unable to give the alarms, the respective missed alarm information appears.
- ◆ To clear the desktop icon , press  for 1 second or longer on the standby screen. Once you clear this desktop icon, you can no longer check the missed alarm information.



<Alarm clock>

MENU44

Using a FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock

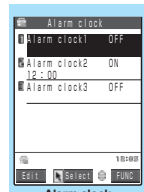
Default setting
All OFF

- You can store up to 3 alarm settings.

Setting the alarm clock

1 "Alarm clock"

The "Alarm clock" screen appears. If you have set the alarm clock before, the previously specified settings appear.



Function menu  p.404

2 Select an item to set (Edit)

3 Set the respective parameters



Time setting

 Enter a time

Enters a time when the alarm will sound.

	Repeat	Sets the alarm repetition.
	• 1 time	Sounds the alarm only once.
	• Daily ()	Sounds the alarm every day.
	• Select day ()	▶ Use  to select a checkbox () ▶  (Finish) Sounds the alarm every week on the specified day (Sun to Sat).
	Alarm tone	Selects an alarm tone. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. A "Clock Alarm Tone" can be selected from the "Pre-installed" folder in "Melody". "Changing the Ring Tone" → p.128
	• Melody	▶ Select a folder Selects a ring tone or melody.
	• i-motion	▶ Select a folder Selects an i-motion.
	• Music	▶ Select a folder Selects Chaku-Uta-Full®. If Chaku-Uta-Full® has part settings that a provider offers for a ring tone, you can select a part that you want to set as a ring tone. "Changing the Ring Tone" → p.128
	• Voice announce	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" for an alarm tone. "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → p.412
	• Random melody	▶ Select a folder Automatically selects a ring tone from the selected folder to set it as an alarm tone.
	• OFF	Does not sound an alarm.
		Volume
	Snooze setting	Specifies whether to set the snooze (repeating) alarm.
	• ON	Sounds the alarm tone repeatedly for 1 minute and then repeats the operation up to 5 times at about 5-minute intervals.
	• OFF	▶ Enter the ring time (01-10 minutes) Sounds the alarm tone continuously for the specified ring time. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, press  .
	Auto power ON	Specifies whether to automatically turn on a FOMA terminal when the alarm time is reached.

4 (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆ When "Auto power ON" is set to "ON" and a melody or i-motion, Chaku-Uta-Full® downloaded from a site is set as the alarm tone, the "Clock Alarm Tone" sounds because of the FOMA card operational restriction function.
- ◆ Before entering an area such as aircraft or hospital where there is electronic equipment that uses extremely precise control systems or very low signal level and it is prohibited to use a mobile phone, set the "Auto power ON" setting to "OFF" and then turn a FOMA terminal off.

Function menu (Alarm clock screen)

Edit	Edits the alarm clock settings.
Display detail	Changes the display from a list to details.
Finish(Set this)	Enables the highlighted alarm clock setting.
Release this	Disables the highlighted alarm clock setting.
Release all	Disables all the alarm clock settings.

<Schedule>

MENU45

Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries

Setting schedule events sounds the alarm tone at the specified dates and times and shows the alarm messages and animations to notify you of the events. You can also set holidays and anniversaries. Stored schedule and holiday events can be quickly checked on the FOMA terminal's calendar. You can switch the calendar display mode between 1-month and 1-week to view the number or details of scheduled or To Do list events for a given day. You can organize your schedule in a variety of ways, e.g. storing regularly scheduled events such as weekly meetings on a given day every week, setting alarm tones and animations that match the scheduled events, or storing multiple schedule events for the same day.

- You can view or store events from January 1, 2004 to December 31, 2037.
- You can store up to 100 schedule events, holidays and anniversaries, respectively. The national public holidays stored on a FOMA terminal at the time of purchase are not included in those holidays.
- You can store two or more schedule events for the same day, while you can only set one holiday and one anniversary per day.
- Schedule alarms → p.401

1 menu → "Schedule"

The "Schedule" screen appears.



Function menu → p.405

Function menu (Schedule screen)

New	"Adding schedule events" → p.406 "Adding holidays and anniversaries" → p.405
Weekly display, Monthly display	"Changing the schedule display mode" → p.405
Icon display	▶ Select an icon Shows scheduled events for each icon. Repeated scheduled events ( or ) appear as a single item.
User icon settg.	"Setting your preferred image as a user icon" → p.407
Switch To Do list	Switches to the To Do list screen (p.408).
No. of schedules	Shows the numbers of stored schedule events, holidays and anniversaries. In "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode", entries stored as secret events also appear.
Send all Ir data	Sends all the schedule entries via Infrared data exchange. "Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time" → p.386
Delete	
• Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple schedule entries.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item ▶ "YES" Selects an item to delete. You can select "Schedule", "Holiday", "Anniversary" or "All" (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).
• Delete past*	Deletes all the schedule entries set to come before the selected day. You can select "Schedule", "Holiday", "Anniversary" or "All" (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).
Reset holiday	Resets the national public holidays to default.

* : Past means the period prior to the day on which the cursor is positioned on the Schedule screen.

NOTE

- ◆ Selecting "Holiday" or "All" in "Delete all" resets holidays to the default settings.
- ◆ Selecting "Delete past" or "Delete selected" does not delete the default public holidays stored at the time of purchase.

● Changing the schedule display mode

The schedule display mode provides two types: "Monthly display" and "Weekly display". Use  to select a date. You can check the number and icons of scheduled and To Do list events stored for the selected date.



Indicates icons and the numbers of schedule and To Do list events stored in the morning and afternoon of the highlighted date.



Indicates the date, day of the week, icon and event details.

Blue date: Saturday

Red date: Sunday, public holiday or holiday

Pink date: Anniversary

□ : Today

□ : There is an event scheduled for the morning.

■ : There is an event scheduled for the afternoon.

T : There is a To Do list item.

The public holidays are based on "国民の祝日に関する法律(昭和23年法律第178号)およびその法改正(平成17年法律第43号までのもの)" (National Holidays Law (1948 No. 178) and amendments (2005 up to No.43)). The Spring and Fall Equinox dates for this year are gazetted on the previous February 1st so that they may differ from ones pre-stored in a FOMA terminal. (As of August, 2006)

Adding holidays and anniversaries

<Example: Storing a holiday>

1 menu →  "Schedule" →  (New) → "Holiday"

- To store an anniversary
▶ "Anniversary"

2 Set the respective parameters

 Date setting	▶ Enter the date Enters the date of the holiday or anniversary you want to add.
 Repeat	Sets the repetition of holiday or anniversary.
• 1 time	Sets the holiday or anniversary only for that year.
• Annually ()	Sets the holiday or anniversary for every year.
 Contents	▶ Enter a message Enters the details of the holiday or anniversary. A message can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

3 (Finish)

NOTE

◆ If there is already a holiday or anniversary stored for the specified date, a message asking whether to overwrite the existing entry appears.

Adding schedule events

Adding an event such as a trip or appointment to your schedule notifies you of the event using an alarm tone or animation when the specified date and time arrives.

- To add a schedule event, enter the “Contents”. You cannot add events without their “Contents”.

1 Schedule screen (p.405) ▶ (New) ▶ “Schedule”

2 Set the respective parameters

 Date(from)*	▶ Enter “Start Year”, “Start Date” and “Start Time” Enters the starting date and time for the schedule event.
 Date(to)*	▶ Enter “End Year”, “End Date” and “End Time” Enters the finishing date and time for the schedule event.
 Repeat	Sets the repetition of the schedule event.
• 1 time	Sets the event only for the specified date and time.
• Daily ()	Sets the event to repeat every day.
• Select day ()	▶ Use  to select a checkbox () ▶  (Finish) Sets the event to repeat every week on the specified day (Sun to Sat).
 Alarm	Specifies the alarm settings used when the starting date and time is reached.

• ON	An alarm is given at the starting date and time.
• ON/Set time	▶ Enter a prior alarm time (01-99 minutes) Sets how many minutes before the starting date and time the alarm is given. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, press  .
• OFF	No alarm is given when the starting time is reached.
 Alarm tone	Selects an alarm tone. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option. A “Clock Alarm Tone” can be selected from the “Pre-installed” folder in “Melody”. “Changing the Ring Tone” → p.128
• Melody	▶ Select a folder Selects a ring tone or melody.
• i-motion	▶ Select a folder Selects an i-motion.
• Music	▶ Select a folder Selects Chaku-Uta-Full®. If Chaku-Uta-Full® has part settings that a provider offers for a ring tone, you can select a part that you want to set as a ring tone. “Changing the Ring Tone” → p.128
• Voice announce	Selects “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2” for an alarm tone. “Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones” → p.412
• OFF	Does not sound an alarm.
 Summary	▶ Enter a message Enters the summary of the schedule event. A summary can contain up to 20 double-byte or 40 single-byte characters. The entered summary appears on the screen during the alarm.
 Contents	▶ Enter a message ▶ Select an icon Enters the scheduled event details. Contents can contain up to 256 double-byte or 512 single-byte characters. If no summary is entered, the contents appear on the screen during the alarm. If both summary and contents are entered, the summary appears first and the contents next.

* : Selecting this option shows the “Date setting” screen on which you can set both (from) and (to) of Date setting.

3 (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆ If "ON/Set time" is selected, an alarm is given only at the specified date and time before the scheduled event (01-99 minutes before the event). The alarm is not given at the date and time originally specified for the scheduled event.
- ◆ If you attempt to set an alarm for the same date and time as those for an already stored event during schedule registration, the message asking whether to overwrite the existing entry appears.
- ◆ Schedule events can be stored to give the alarms at the same date and time only when the Repeat setting for one is "Daily" or "Select day" and the Repeat setting for another is "1 time" (no repeats). In this case, the event with the "1 time" setting has priority.
- ◆ If the day of the week set as the starting time and the one set in the Repeat setting are different, the one set in the Repeat setting has priority and the schedule event is set to come on the first specified day of the week after the starting time.
- ◆ If you store a schedule event during a voice call or Push-to-Talk call, the alarm does not sound although it normally sounds when the alarm tone is selected.

Important

- It is recommended to back up the details of stored schedule events by taking notes or saving onto the miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using the Data Link Software (p.475) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- The trouble, repair, etc. of a FOMA terminal may erase the details of the schedule events. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of the schedule event details just in case.

Setting your preferred image as a user icon

This procedure enables you to set an image or animation stored in "My picture" as a user icon. The specified user icons are shown as " " to " " on the icon selection screen. If a user icon is set, the selected image or animation appears when an alarm is given. Also, "★" appears on the Image display.

- You can set up to 5 user icons.

1 Schedule screen (p.405)▶

[FUNC]▶"User icon settg."▶

"<Not recorded>"

■ To change a user icon already set

▶Choose an item you want to change



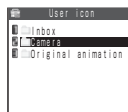
■ To cancel all the user icon settings

▶"Release all"▶"YES"

This operation is only available when user icons have already been set.

2 Select a folder including images

Images can also be selected from user-created folders. Selecting images→p.344



■ To cancel an icon set for schedule events

▶"Release this"▶"YES"

■ To cancel an icon not set for any schedule events

▶"Release this"

3 Select an image to set

The selected image is zoomed in. The screen returns to the user icon list after a while.

■ To preview

▶Select an image to preview▶[Play]

NOTE

- ◆ If you attempt to change or cancel a user icon that is being used for scheduled events, a message asking whether to cancel the icon appears. If you change or cancel a user icon or delete it from My picture, the alarm screen for the scheduled event where the icon was used changes to the one that appears when " " is set.

Checking schedule details

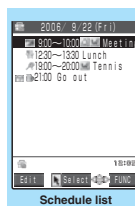
Open the detail screen to check the details of a scheduled event.

1 Schedule screen (p.405)▶ Select the date for which the scheduled event to check is stored

The "Schedule list" screen appears.

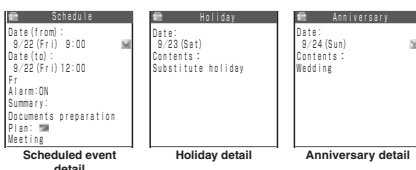
The following icons appear on the list screen:

- ⌚: Specified schedule icon indicating that a schedule event is stored
- 📅: A holiday is stored.
- 🎉: An anniversary is stored.
- 🔔: An alarm is set.
- 🔄: Repeated daily
- 📅: Repeated weekly
- 📅: Repeated annually



Function menu▶p.408

2 Select an item to check in detail



Function menu (Schedule list screen)

New	"Adding schedule events" → p.406 "Adding holidays and anniversaries" → p.405
Edit	Edits a schedule entry.
Copy	Copies Schedule, Holiday or Anniversary entry to store it in other dates. If an entry to be copied contains the repeat setting, it is canceled when the entry is copied.
Icon display	▶ Select an icon Shows scheduled events for each icon. Repeated scheduled events ( or ) appear as a single item.
User icon settg.	"Setting your preferred image as a user icon" → p.407
Switch To Do list	Switches to the To Do list screen (p.408).
Release secret	Restore schedule mode to normal from Secret mode or Secret data only mode. "Changing secret data back to normal" → p.163
Compose message	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.247
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.149
Send Ir data	"Transferring One Data at a Time" → p.385
Send all Ir data	Sends all the schedule entries via Infrared data exchange. "Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time" → p.386
Copy to miniSD	
• Copy this	Copies the selected schedule entry.
• Copy selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Copies multiple schedule entries.
• Copy all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Copies all schedule entries.
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the selected schedule entry.
• Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple schedule entries.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item ▶ "YES" Selects an item to delete. You can select "Schedule", "Holiday", "Anniversary" or "All" (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).

• Delete past	Deletes all the schedule entries set to come before the selected day. You can select "Schedule", "Holiday", "Anniversary" or "All" (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).

NOTE

- ◆ Selecting "Holiday" or "All" in "Delete all" resets holidays to the default settings.
- ◆ Selecting "Delete past" or "Delete selected" does not delete the default public holidays stored at the time of purchase.
- ◆ If you attempt to use "Delete this" or "Delete selected" to delete scheduled events for which repetition (daily or weekly) is set, a message asking whether to delete the repeat settings appears. Selecting "YES" deletes all the repeat settings of the scheduled events.
- ◆ When you perform Delete past, all the repeated scheduled events (daily or weekly) prior to the selected date are deleted, while the others from the selected day are left undeleted.
- ◆ If scheduled events are shown by icon and you select "Delete selected" from the function menu, the Delete selected screen for the list of dates selected on the previous screen appears. You cannot select Delete selected when scheduled events are shown by icon.

<To Do list>

MENU95

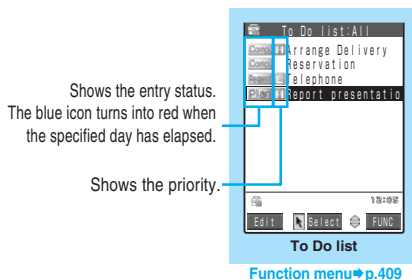
Adding To Do List Items

You can manage your schedule by adding items to the To Do list. Alarms can also be set for items.

- You can store up to 100 items in the To Do list.
- To Do list alarms → p.401

Checking items

- 1   ▶ **"To Do list"**
The "To Do list" screen appears.

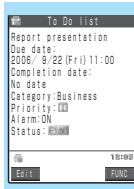


2 Select an item to check

■ To edit an item

▶ (Edit)

"Adding and editing items"
→ p.409



To Do list detail
Function menu → p.409

Function menu (To Do list screen/To Do list detail screen)

New	"Adding and editing items" → p.409
Edit	
Switch Schedule	Switches to the Schedule screen (p.405).
Change status	Selects a status from "Plan", "Acceptance", "Request", "Provisional plan", "Confirmation", "Denial", "Completion" and "Substitution". If selecting "Completion", enter the completion date.
Category display*	Selects a category from "All", "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" and "Meeting", and shows items by category.
Sort/Filter*	Sorts items according to the specified criterion or shows items with specific status.
Add desktop icon*	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.149
Send Ir data	"Transferring One Data at a Time" → p.385
Send all Ir data*	Sends all items via Infrared data exchange. "Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time" → p.386
Copy to miniSD	
• Copy this	Copies the selected To Do list item.
• Copy selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Copies multiple To Do list items.
• Copy all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Copies all the To Do list items.
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the selected item.
• Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple items.
• Delete completed	Deletes a finished item.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all items.

* : Only available on the To Do list screen.

Adding and editing items

- Always enter "Contents". You cannot add To Do list items without "Contents".

1 ▶ ▶ "To Do list" ▶ (New)

- To add a new item when other items have been stored

▶ (FUNC) ▶ "New"

- To edit an already stored item

▶ Select an item to edit ▶ (Edit)

2 Set the respective parameters

Contents	▶ Enter the details of an item Enters the details of an item. Contents can contain up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters.
Due date	Sets the due date for an item.
• Enter date	▶ Enter the date and time Enters the date and time.
• Choose date	▶ Select a date from the calendar ▶ Enter a time Selects a date from the calendar.
• No date	Does not set a due date.
Priority	Sets priority for an item.
• H	Sets high () priority.
• L	Sets low () priority.
• None	Does not set priority.
Category	Selects a category of an item from "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" and "Meeting".
Alarm	Specifies the alarm settings used when the due date is reached.
• ON	An alarm is given on the due date.
• ON/Set time	▶ Enter a prior alarm time (01-99 minutes) Sets how many minutes before the due date the alarm is given. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, press .
• OFF	No alarm is given when the due date is reached.
Alarm tone	Selects an alarm tone. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. A "Clock Alarm Tone" can be selected from the "Pre-installed" folder in "Melody". "Changing the Ring Tone" → p.128
• Melody	▶ Select a folder Selects a ring tone or melody.

• i-motion	▶ Select a folder Selects an i-motion.
• Music	▶ Select a folder Selects Chaku-Uta-Full®. If Chaku-Uta-Full® has part settings that a provider offers for a ring tone, you can select a part that you want to set as a ring tone. "Changing the Ring Tone" → p.128
• Voice announce	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" for an alarm tone. "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → p.412
• OFF	Does not sound an alarm.
 Completion date*	Sets the completion date for an item.
• Enter date	▶ Enter the date Enters the date.
• Choose date	▶ Select a date from the calendar Selects a date from the calendar.
• No date	Does not set a completion date.

* : Shown only when you edit an existing item for which "Status" is "Completion".

3 (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆ If "ON/Set time" is selected, an alarm is given only at the specified time before the To Do list item (01-99 minutes before the item). The alarm is not given at the date and time originally specified for the To Do list item.
- ◆ If you store an item during a voice call or Push-to-Talk call, the alarm does not sound although it normally sounds when the alarm tone is selected.

■ Important

- It is recommended to back up the details of stored To Do list items by taking notes or saving onto the miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using the Data Link Software (p.475) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- You may lose your data through the damage or repair of your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of the To Do list items just in case.

<Own number>

MENU 0

Storing your Name and Image

Default setting

Own number only

You can store your personal information including your name, home phone number and e-mail address. Storing personal information allows you to identify your FOMA terminal or to quote the stored data on the Text entry (edit) screen.

- You cannot change or delete your Own number.
- Items other than Own number are stored on a FOMA terminal. Even if a different FOMA card (UIM) is inserted, the items stored on your FOMA terminal appear except for Own number.

Showing personal data

This function only shows your name, Own number and the first e-mail address listed.

1 ▶ "Own number"

The "Own number" screen appears.

If you have stored your personal data such as your home phone number or address, you can view all the data by selecting "Display all data" from the function menu and entering your security code.



Function menu ▶ p.410

Function menu (Own number screen)

Edit	Edits your personal data. "Storing personal data" → p.411
Display all data	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Use  to check the details
Copy name	Copies the name stored in the personal data. The copied name can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → p.450
Copy phone number¹	Copies the phone number currently shown. The copied phone number can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → p.450
Send Ir data	"Transferring One Data at a Time" → p.385
Copy to miniSD	"Data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card" → p.375
Big font, Standard font	Changes the font size for the name displayed.
Delete phone No.²	Deletes the phone number currently shown.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.371

Reset	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Resets (deletes) the personal data other than your Own number and restores the default settings set at the time of purchase. When you have selected “Display all data” to show the personal data, you do not need to enter your security code.

- *1 : Depending upon what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.
- If you have selected a mail address, “Copy mail add.” appears.
 - If you have selected an address, “Copy address” appears.
 - If you have selected a birthday, “Copy birthday” appears.
 - If you have selected a memo, “Copy memorandums” appears.
- *2 : Depending upon what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.
- If you have selected a mail address, “Delete mail add.” appears.
 - If you have selected an address, “Delete address” appears.
 - If you have selected a birthday, “Delete birthday” appears.
 - If you have selected a memo, “Delete memorandums” appears.
 - If you have selected an image, “Delete image” appears.

Storing personal data

- 1   **“Own number”** ▶
 **(Edit)** ▶ **Enter your security code**

2 Set the respective parameters

 Name	▶ Enter your name Enters your name. The name can contain up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters, consisting of kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.
 Reading	▶ Enter the reading Enters the reading of your name. Entering your name sets the reading automatically. Change it if necessary. A reading can contain up to 32 single-byte characters, consisting of katakana, alphabets, numbers and symbols.
 Phone number	▶ Enter a phone number ▶ Select an icon Adds a phone number other than your Own number and selects an icon. A phone number can be up to 26 digits. Storing a new phone number shows “ <Not stored>” on the personal data edit screen. Select this option to store an additional phone number.

 Mail address	▶ Enter an e-mail address ▶ Select an icon Enters an e-mail address and selects an icon. An e-mail address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Storing a new e-mail address shows “ <Not stored>” on the personal data edit screen. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address.
 Address	▶ Enter a ZIP code ▶ Enter a street address Enters a ZIP code and street address. A ZIP code can consist of up to 7 single-byte numbers. A street address can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters, consisting of kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.
 Birthday	▶ Enter a birthday Enters a birthday (year, month and day). Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.
 Memorandums	▶ Enter a memo Enters a memo (short note). A memo can contain up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, and pictographs.
 Image	Sets an image to be shown for your personal data. • Photo mode Activates the camera to shoot an image. The shot image can be set for your personal data. • Select image ▶ Select a folder Selects an image. • Release this Cancels the image set for your personal data.

3 (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆ Changing your mail address or setting the secret code does not automatically change the mail address stored here until you change it manually.

<Voice memo (in-call)/Voice memo>

Recording your Voice or the Other Party's Voice

Voice memo provides two types. “Voice memo (in-call)” enables you to record the other party's voice during a voice call or videophone call. “Voice memo” enables you to record your own voice while the screen is standby.

- You can record either one Voice memo (in call) or one Voice memo, which overwrites the existing memo.

- You can record a memo for approximately 20 seconds.
- Playing and erasing recorded voice memos → p.77

Recording the other party's voice during a call

1 During a call ▶ (MEMO/CHECK) (1 second or longer)

A FOMA terminal beeps and recording begins. The terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the terminal gives a short double-beep and the "Recording" screen changes back to the in-call screen.



■ To stop recording

▶ , or (MEMO/CHECK) (1 second or longer)

Pressing ends the call as well as recording.

Pressing does not stop recording during a videophone call.

NOTE

- ◆ If you receive a call, use another function or a FOMA terminal gives you "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "To Do list" alarm, recording stops.
- ◆ You cannot record voice while a videophone call is on hold or you are using a function menu option.
- ◆ While you are holding a voice call, you can activate "Voice memo (in-call)" to record voice by following the steps below:
▶ (LifeKit) ▶ "Voice memo (in-call)"

Recording your voice in standby mode

MENU43

1 (LifeKit) ▶ "Voice memo" ▶ "YES" ▶

Record a voice memo

When a FOMA terminal beeps, begin speaking into the mouthpiece. The terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the terminal gives a short double-beep and the "Recording" screen changes back to the "LifeKit" list screen.

■ To stop recording

▶ , or

Pressing returns to the standby screen and saves the recorded voice.

Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of voice memos.
- The trouble, repair, etc. of the FOMA terminal may erase the contents of voice memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

<Voice announce>

MENU91

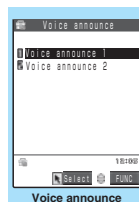
Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones

This function enables you to record your voice and set it as an original ring tone or answer message.

- You can make two voice recordings: "Voice announce 1" and "Voice announce 2".
- You can record voice for approximately 15 seconds.
- Voice recorded here can be set to the following functions:
 - Ring tone
 - Ring tone for Call setting w/o ID
 - Ring tone for Multi Number
 - On hold tone
 - Holding tone
 - Answer message for Record message
 - Alarm tone for Alarm clock
 - Alarm tone for Schedule
 - Alarm tone for To Do list
 - Alarm tone for Notice designate calls

Recording voice

- 1 (LifeKit) ▶ "Voice announce" ▶ Select an item for which you want to record voice ▶ "YES"



Voice announce

Function menu ▶ p.413

2 Record voice

Speak into the mouthpiece. The terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 15 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the terminal gives a short double-beep and the "Recording" screen changes back to the in-call screen.

■ To stop recording

▶ , or

Pressing returns to the standby screen and saves the recorded voice.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot record new voice for an option that has already recorded voice. Erase recorded voice to record new voice.
- ◆ If you receive a voice/videophone or Push-to-Talk call, use another function or a FOMA terminal gives you "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "To Do list" alarm, recording stops.

Playing recorded voice

- 1   ▶ "Voice announce" ▶ Select an item to play

To stop playback

▶  or  or 

Function menu (Voice announce screen)

Record	Records voice.
Play	Plays recorded voice.
Erase	Erases recorded voice.

<Call data>

MENU61

Checking Call Times and Charges

You can check the previous or total call time/charge for voice/videophone calls, etc.

- If you switch between voice call and videophone call, the total call time of voice call and videophone call appears in the last call duration area, and the charges of voice call and videophone call appear separately in the last call cost area. The shown charge may differ from the actual charge.
- The call time is a total of dialed and received call times, and indicated respectively for voice calls and digital communication (videophone calls and 64K data communication).
- Charges are only indicated for dialed calls. If you call a toll free number or directory assistance (104), "¥0" or "¥**:" appears.
- Charge data are accumulated on a FOMA card (UIM). If you insert another FOMA card (UIM), the charge data (starting from December 2004) accumulated on the inserted FOMA card (UIM) are indicated on the Total calls cost line.
 - * FOMA terminals released before the 901i series stores charge data on their FOMA cards (UIM) but cannot show the data.
- You can reset call times and charges shown on a FOMA terminal.
- Call times and Total calls cost shown on a FOMA terminal may differ from the actual figures. Consumption tax is not included in charges.

1 ▶ "Call time/Charge" ▶ "Call data"

You can check the following:

Last call duration	Shows the approximate duration of the last call. The duration is shown no matter whether you made or received the call.
Last call cost	Shows the approximate charge for the last call. "Talk" shows the charge for voice calls and "Digital" for videophone calls and 64K data communication.
Total calls duration	Shows the total duration of all the calls made since the last reset (when the total was reset to "0"). "Talk" shows the total duration of voice calls and "Digital" does the total duration of videophone calls and 64K data communication.
Total calls cost	Shows the approximate total charges for all the calls made since the last reset. The approximate total charges are for the total of voice calls and digital communication (videophone calls and 64K data communication).
Total duration reset	Shows the time and date of the last call reset.
Total cost reset	Shows the time and date of the last charge reset.

NOTE

- ◆ If the last and accumulated voice or digital call time exceeds "199 hours, 59 minutes, 59 seconds", the call time count returns to 0 second.
- ◆ Call time and charge are not counted during Push-to-Talk calls, i-mode or packet communication or Chakumoji calls. To check i-mode communication charges, see the "i-mode User's Manual" you received at the time of contract.
- ◆ The time when your FOMA terminal is ringing or that when the other party's terminal is ringing is not counted.
- ◆ Turning off a FOMA terminal resets the duration and charge shown for the last call to "0" and "¥**:" respectively.
- ◆ The total duration or charge information will remain if a FOMA terminal is turned off.

Resetting the total call time and

total call charges <Reset total> MENU60

- 1   ▶ "Call time/Charge" ▶ "Reset total" ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item

Reset total duration	Resets the accumulated duration.
Reset total cost	▶ "YES" ▶ Enter the PIN2 code Resets the accumulated charge.

Resetting charges automatically

<Auto reset total cost>

Default setting
OFF

You can set the accumulated charge shown in "Call data" to automatically return to zero at 0:00 AM on the 1st day every month.

1   ▶ "Call time/Charge" ▶

"Auto reset total cost" ▶ Enter your security code

2 "Auto reset" ▶ Select any item

ON	▶ Enter the PIN2 code Sets Auto reset. PIN2 code → p.157
OFF	Does not set Auto reset.

NOTE

- ◆ The charge is automatically reset even during packet communication.
- ◆ If it becomes time to reset charge automatically during a call, Auto reset is performed after the call ends.
- ◆ If it becomes time to reset charge automatically while a FOMA terminal is turned off, turn on the terminal again and enter the PIN2 code to reset the charge.
- ◆ Setting Auto reset total cost to "ON" and changing the month in "Set time" reset the total call charges automatically.
- ◆ When Auto reset total cost is set to "ON", the PIN2 code entry screen appears when a FOMA terminal is turned on.
- ◆ Auto reset total cost is set to "OFF" if:
 - You turn on a FOMA terminal without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted.
 - You press  on the PIN2 code entry screen.
 - The PIN2 code is locked. → p.157
 - The FOMA card (UIM) is failed.

<Notice designate calls>

Setting the Upper Limit of Charge to Show the Alarm

Default setting

Cost limit: Not set
Notify cost limit: OFF

The standby screen or alarm notifies you when the accumulated charge indicated in "Call data" exceeds the specified cost limit.

- The alarm is given only once when the accumulated charge exceeds the limit set in advance.
- Exceeding the limit does not prevent you from making calls.

1   ▶ "Call time/Charge" ▶

"Notice designate calls" ▶ Enter your security code

2 Set the respective parameters

Cost limit setting	Sets the cost limit between ¥10 and ¥100,000 by ¥10.
Notify setting	
• Notify cost limit	Specifies whether to give an alarm when the cost limit is exceeded. Setting "OFF" does not given an alarm. Setting "ON" gives an alarm following the settings of "Alarm tone" and "Volume".
• Alarm tone	Selects an alarm tone. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. "Clock Alarm Tone" can be selected from the "Pre-installed" folder. "Changing the Ring Tone" → p.128
• Inbox	Selects a melody downloaded from an i-mode site or website as a ring tone.
• Pre-installed	Selects an alarm tone from the pre-installed ring tones and melodies.
• Voice announce	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" for an alarm tone. "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → p.412
• OFF	Does not sound an alarm.
• Volume	Use  to set the alarm tone volume. "Adjusting the Ring Volume" → p.69

3  (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆ The alarm volume applied while in original manner mode is the same as that specified in "Phone vol." under "Original".
- ◆ The charges for Push-to-Talk calls, i-mode and packet communication and Chaku-moji transmission are not supported by this function. To check i-mode communication charges, see the "i-mode User's Manual" you received at the time of contract.

Alarm actions

When the accumulated charge exceeds the cost limit after a call, you are notified as follows:

■ When Notify cost limit is set to "ON" and Alarm tone is set to other than "OFF"

When the accumulated charge exceeds the preset cost limit, the alarm starts sounding in three seconds after you finished talking and lasts about five minutes, which opens the screen notifying that the accumulated charge has exceeded the limit. To stop the alarm tone, press any key. After the alarm, pressing  or  shows the "Notice designate calls" desktop icon on the standby screen.



■ When Notify cost limit is set to "ON" and Alarm tone is set to "OFF"

When the accumulated charge exceeds the preset cost limit, the  (Notice designate calls) desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

● Checking the details of “” (Notice designate calls)

Selecting the “” (Notice designate calls) desktop icon on the standby screen shows the details of Notice designate calls.

1 On the standby screen▶▶“”▶ Enter your security code

The alarm information on “Notice designate calls” is shown.



2 Check the details▶

The standby screen reappears and the “” (Notice designate calls) desktop icon disappears.

NOTE

- ◆ The “” (Notice designate calls) desktop icon disappears if the cost limit is changed to the one exceeding the current total calls cost in “Cost limit setting”.
- ◆ If you set the cost limit for the first time to a value lower than the total calls cost and make or receive a call, the alarm of Notice designate calls sounds when you end the call.
- ◆ You can choose the alarm mode between “Operation preferred” or “Alarm preferred” in “Alarm setting”.

<Calculator>

MENU85

Using a FOMA Terminal as a Calculator

A FOMA terminal performs four basic arithmetic operations (+ (addition), − (subtraction), × (multiplication), ÷ (division)).

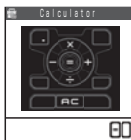
- Up to 10-digit number and up to nine decimal places can be shown.
- A result number consisting of more than 10 figures appears with “.E”.

1 ▶▶“Calculator”▶Calculate

The entered numbers and calculation result appear.

■ To calculate “23 + 57”

  +   = 



■ To use negative numbers in calculation

To calculate using negative numbers, simply insert “−” before the first digit.

   +   = 

NOTE

◆  ( or ) is available as follows:

- Pressing +, −, ×, ÷ or = shows . Pressing  allows you to recalculate from scratch.
- When  appears during a number or decimal point entry, pressing  allows you to clear a number or decimal point entered wrongly.

<Text memo>

MENU42

Composing Text Memos

The text memo function is available for composing and saving short messages, etc. Composed text memos can be pasted into your schedule or mail.

- You can store up to 10 text memos.
- A text memo can contain up to 256 double-byte or 512 single-byte characters.

Storing a text memo

1 ▶▶“Text memo”

The “Text memo” screen appears.



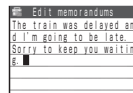
Function menu▶p.416

2 Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit)

■ To edit a stored text memo

▶ Select an item to edit▶ (Edit)

3 Compose a memo



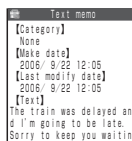
NOTE

- ◆ Highlighting “<Not recorded>” on the “Text memo” screen and pressing  also enables you to compose a text memo.

- It is recommended to back up the text memos by taking notes or saving onto the miniSD memory card. You can also save data to your PC by using the Data Link Software (p.475) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- The trouble, repair, etc. of the FOMA terminal may erase the contents of text memos. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of text memos just in case.

Checking the details of text memos

- 1   **“Text memo”** ▶ Select an item to check in detail ▶ Check the details



Function menu (Text memo screen)

Edit	Edits a text memo.
Compose message	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.247
Edit schedule	"Adding schedule events" → p.406
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.149
Send 1r data	"Transferring One Data at a Time" → p.385
Send all 1r data	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time" → p.386
Copy to miniSD	
• Copy this	Copies the selected text memo.
• Copy selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox () ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Copies multiple text memos.
• Copy all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Copies all text memos.
Text memo info	Shows the category or when it was created.
Category	Categorizes a text memo into "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" or "Meeting".
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the selected text memo.
• Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox () ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple text memos.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all text memos.

<Dictionary>

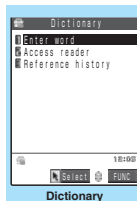
Using Dictionaries

- Using dictionaries from other functions → p.417

Activating a dictionary

- 1   **“Dictionary”**

The “Dictionary” screen appears.



Function menu ➔ p.417

- 2 Select any item**

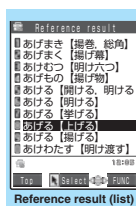
Enter word	▶ Enter a word A word can contain up to 32 double-byte or 64 single-byte characters.
Access reader	▶ “Dic. (Japanese)” or “Dic. (English)” ▶ Scan text Enters a word from the access reader. “Scanning Text” → p.203
Reference history	Searches a word from the list of previously retrieved words. “Using reference history” → p.417

- ### 3 Select the dictionary type

The “Reference result (list)” screen appears.

If there is no word candidate, a cursor is placed on the closest word from the entered character.

- To open the previous or next list
▶ Reference result (list) screen ▶

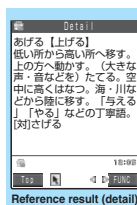


Function menu ➔ p.417

- 4** Select a word from the reference result list

The “Reference result (detail)” screen appears.

- To view the previous or next word
 - ▶ Reference result (detail) screen ▶ 



Function menu ➔ p.417

Function menu (Dictionary screen)

Add desktop icon "Using Desktop Icons" → p.149

Using reference history

1 Dictionary screen (p.416) ▶ "Reference history"

The "Reference history" screen appears.

2 Select a word



Function menu ▶ p.417

Function menu (Reference history screen)

Delete this	Deletes the selected reference history item.
Delete all	Deletes all the reference history items.

Function menu (Reference result (list) screen)

Copy	Copies characters or words. For Japanese-English and Japanese dictionaries, characters in brackets () retrieved as search result are copied. For English-Japanese dictionary, words in search result are copied. The copied word can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → p.450
Refer dic.	Searches the retrieved word in another dictionary.

Function menu (Reference result (detail) screen)

Copy	Copies the texts selected on the Reference result (detail) screen. The copied texts can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → p.450
Re-reference	"Searching from the Reference result (detail) screen" → p.417
Refer dic.	Searches the retrieved word in another dictionary.
Refer edit*	Edits texts referring to the searched word. "Changing the Active Window" → p.452

* : Shown only when Refer edit is available.

Searching from the Reference result (detail) screen

- 1 Reference result (detail) screen (p.416) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Re-reference"
- 2 ▶ Press on the first character of the string to search for
- 3 ▶ Move the cursor to the end of the string to search for, then press
- 4 Select the dictionary type
- 5 Select a word from the reference result list

Using dictionaries from other functions

Select "Refer dictionary" or "Refer dic." from each function menu on:

- The text edit screen
- The sent mail/received mail detail screen or message entry screen for composing a new message
- A webpage or screen memo

■ When activating a dictionary from the text edit screen

You can select "Enter word", "Select area" or "Reference history".

Selecting "Select area" allows you to select the word(s) you want to look up from the text edit screen.

■ When activating a dictionary from the sent mail/received mail detail screen or message entry screen for composing a new message

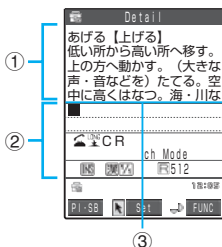
You can select "Enter word", "Select area" or "Reference history".

Selecting "Select area" allows you to select the word(s) you want to look up from the sent mail/received mail message or a mail being composed.

■ When activating a dictionary from a webpage or screen memo

You can select "Enter word", "Site refer(enter)" or "Reference history". Selecting "Site refer(enter)" allows you to enter the word you want to look up referring to a webpage or screen memo.

● Guide to the dictionary reference screen



Selecting "Refer edit" or "Site refer(enter)" splits the screen into the upper and lower.

Selecting "Change window" from the function menu switches the active window between ① and ②. Moving the Neuropointer onto a window to activate also enables you to switch the active window.

■ When you select Refer edit from the Reference result (detail) screen

- ① shows the dictionary detail screen.
- ② shows the text edit screen.
- ③ draws a border line.

To exit the dictionary, select "Quit dic." from the function menu or switch to the window ① and press (End).

■ When you select Site refer(enter) from a webpage or screen memo

- ① shows the webpage or screen memo.
- ② shows the word entry screen.
- ③ draws a border line.

Enter a word and then press . The dictionary selection screen appears with the word entered.

<Earphone/microphone with switch>

Using an Earphone/Microphone with Switch

You can make or receive calls using the switch of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional).

- To connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch to a FOMA terminal, open the earphone/microphone terminal cover and insert the earphone/microphone with switch into the socket. → p.26
- The call connection tone or end call tone always sounds when the switch is pressed regardless of the "Keypad sound" setting.
- Note that connecting a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch while a ring tone sounds may accept a voice call or Push-to-Talk call.
- Do not wrap the cord of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch around a FOMA terminal. Doing so may lower the signal strength. Furthermore, bringing the code of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch close to a FOMA terminal may generate noise.
- To use the microphone on a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch, set "Select microphone" to "External microphone". → p.420

- Switches of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch are also available to operate the Music Channel or music player. → pp.297, 301

● Using the switch to make calls

- You can make calls by pressing the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone.

1 Press the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer when a screen is standby

A FOMA terminal makes a call to the phone number set in "Auto dial setting" (p.419).

Pressing the switch for 1 second or longer with a FOMA terminal folded also makes a voice call to the phone number set in "Auto dial setting".

■ To make calls from the phonebook list screen

- ▶ Phonebook list screen (p.115) ▶ Select a phonebook entry ▶ Press the switch for 1 second or longer

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and makes a call to the first phone number listed in the phonebook entry.

You can also make calls from the "Redial/Dialed calls (list)" screen or "Received calls (list)" screen.

■ To make calls from the phonebook detail screen

- ▶ Phonebook detail screen (p.115) ▶ Select a phone number ▶ Press the switch for 1 second or longer

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and makes a call to the selected phone number.

You can also make calls from the "Redial/Dialed calls (details)" screen (p.58) or "Received calls (details)" screen (p.67).

Pressing the switch for 1 second or longer on the phone number entry screen also allows you to make calls.

2 Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer when finishing talking

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

● Using the switch to accept calls

1 When a call arrives, press the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone

Pressing the switch with a FOMA terminal folded also enables you to answer calls.

■ To receive voice calls

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers a voice call.

■ To receive videophone calls

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers a call with the substitute image when the terminal is folded, or with the camera image when the terminal is opened. Selecting "Substitute image" from the function menu switches the camera image to the substitute image.

■ To answer Push-to-Talk calls

A FOMA terminal emits the confirmation tone and answers a Push-to-Talk call.

2 Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer when finishing talking

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

NOTE

- ◆ You can set "Earphone" to make a FOMA terminal emit sound such as a ring tone through the earphone and speaker when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected.
- ◆ A ring tone does not sound if "Phone", "Videophone" or "PushTalk" under "Ring volume" is set to "Silent" or while in manner mode. However, the beeps sound when "Manner mode set" is set to "Original" in which "Phone vol." is not "Silent".
- ◆ If you subscribe to "Call Waiting", you can answer a call that comes in during another call by pressing the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone. You can also switch call mode by pressing the switch for 1 second or longer. However, pressing the switch does not end a call.
- ◆ Do not repeatedly press and release the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone. Doing so may cause a FOMA terminal to automatically answer a call.

<Auto dial setting>

Selecting a Callee for Calls Made with an Earphone Connected

Default setting
OFF

Selecting the other party to call allows you to make voice calls simply by pressing the switch for 1 second or longer when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected to the earphone/microphone terminal.

- You can specify a phone number stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.
- Even when a FOMA terminal is folded, you can make voice calls by pressing the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or longer.
- To use the microphone on a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch, set "Select microphone" to "External microphone". → p.420

1 menu settings "Dialing" "Auto dial setting" "ON"

- To not dial automatically
▶ "OFF"

2 Phonebook detail screen (p.115) Show a phone number to set

Searching the phonebook (Selecting the search method) → p.116

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot set a phonebook entry containing no phone number, UIM phonebook entry or PushTalk phonebook entry.
- ◆ Deleting the phonebook entry set here disallows you to dial using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch even if you set this function to "ON".

<Automatic answer>

MENU94

Automatically Receiving Calls with an Earphone Attached

Default setting

Automatic answer: OFF
Ring time (seconds): 6 sec.

You can set a FOMA terminal to automatically accept incoming voice calls, videophone calls or Push-to-Talk calls without having to press the switch when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the earphone/microphone terminal.

- You cannot automatically accept calls during a voice call, videophone call, Push-to-Talk call or 64K data communication.
- You can automatically accept calls with a FOMA terminal folded.
- To use the microphone on a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch, set "Select microphone" to "External microphone". → p.420

1 menu settings "External connection" "Automatic answer" Select any item

ON	▶ Enter the ring time (001-120 seconds) Enables the Automatic answer function. A FOMA terminal automatically answers a call after ringing for the specified ring time. Enter the time as a 3-digit number. To set the time currently shown, press  .
OFF	Disables the Automatic answer function.

NOTE

- ◆ When a FOMA terminal automatically answers a videophone call, the caller sees the substitute image. Selecting "My side" from the function menu during a videophone call enables you to switch the substitute image to the camera image.
- ◆ The ring time for Automatic answer needs to be different from the one for "Record message" or "Remote monitoring".
- ◆ To give priority to this function when "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" is set at the same time, set a ring time shorter than the one set for Voice Mail or Call Forwarding.
- ◆ If the mute time set in "Ring time(sec.)" is longer than the ring time set for Automatic answer, a FOMA terminal automatically answers calls without ringing. To have the FOMA terminal ring before automatically answering calls, set a longer ring time for Automatic answer than the mute time.
- ◆ The shorter of the ring times set in "Ring time setting" and "Automatic answer" is applied for Automatic answer performed when a Push-to-Talk call arrives.
- ◆ Connecting an earphone/microphone with switch while a FOMA terminal is ringing does not answer a call automatically. Removing it while a terminal is ringing answers a call automatically.

<Select microphone>

Selecting a Microphone to be Activated When Using an Earphone/Microphone

Default setting

Internal microphone

You can select which microphone you want to use when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the earphone/microphone terminal on a FOMA terminal.

1   "External connection"

▶ "Select microphone" ▶ Select any item

Internal microphone	Enables the microphone on a FOMA terminal when an earphone/microphone with switch is connected. Be sure to select this option when connecting an earphone without a microphone.
External microphone	Enables the microphone on the earphone when an earphone/microphone with switch is connected. This should be selected when an earphone/microphone is used.

NOTE

◆ When "Select microphone" is set to "Internal microphone", the microphone sensitivity is realized at the same level as the one in the hands-free operation setting to ON. You need not put the mouthpiece to your mouth when talking on a FOMA terminal with the earphone/microphone connected.

<NW search mode>

Selecting Your Provider

Default setting
DoCoMo

* If you are using DoCoMo, there is no need to change this setting.

You can specify your FOMA service provider.

- As of August 2006, no service providers other than DoCoMo can be selected.

1   "Network setting"

"NW search mode" ▶ "Manual" ▶ Select a service provider

<Reset settings>

MENU23

Resetting Function Settings

This function allows you to reset function settings to default set at the time of purchase.

Do not mistake "Initialize" for "Reset settings". Selecting "Initialize" will delete all data you have stored. → p.421

- If a FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC, "USB mode setting" is not reset to default.

- To reset the i-mode functions to default, perform "Reset" in "i-mode settings". → p.231
- To reset the mail functions to default, perform "Reset" in "Mail settings". → p.283
- To reset the full browser functions to default, run "Reset" in "Full Browser settings". → p.338

1   "Other settings"

"Reset settings" ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES"

- To cancel the reset
▶ "NO"

● Functions that will be reset

For more information on the functions to be reset, see "Menu Function List" (p.454). In addition to the functions listed in "Menu Function List", the following functions will be reset:

Function	Default setting
My picture	
Image list function menu	
• Sort	Chronological ↑
My picture function menu	
• Set image disp.	Normal
i-motion	
i-motion	
• Volume	Level 10
Movie list function menu	
• List setting	Title + image (FOMA terminal (Phone)), Name + image (miniSD)
• Sort	Chronological ↑
i-motion stopped (pause) function menu	
• Set repeat play	OFF
• Set image disp.	Normal
Melody	
Melody function menu	
• Set repeat play	OFF
Chara-den	
Chara-den list/Chara-den player/Rec.Chara-den function menu	
• Substitute image	ブンブン (Dimo)
• Set image disp.	Fit in display
Chara-den list/Chara-den player function menu	
• Rec.Chara-den	Photo mode
Rec.Chara-den function menu	
• Select size	QCIF (176 × 144)
• Movie type set	Video + voice
• Storage setting	Normal
• Storage setting	Fine
• File size setting	Restricted (Short)

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.371

Function	Default setting
My document	
PDF list function menu	
• Sort	Chronological ↑
Music	
Music player	
• Volume	Level 10
Track list function menu	
• List setting	Title + image
Music player function menu	
• Equalizer set.	OFF
• Off timer	90 minutes
• SRS_WOW	Level 10
• Repeat setting	OFF
• Shuffle	OFF
Music Channel	
Music Channel	
• Volume	Level 10
Music Channel function menu	
• Equalizer set.	OFF
• Off timer	90 minutes
• SRS_WOW	Level 10
• Repeat setting	OFF
Camera	
Movie mode	
• Select size	QCIF (176 × 144)
• File size setting	Restricted(Short)
• Storage setting	Normal
• Image quality	Photo mode: Portrait White balance: Auto Image tuning: Auto
• Shutter sound	Sound 1
• Select to save	Phone (Camera folder)
Photo mode	
• Select size	CIF (352 × 288)
• Storage setting	Fine
• Image quality	Photo mode: Auto White balance: Auto Image tuning: Auto
• Shutter sound	Sound 1
• Select to save	Phone (Camera folder)
Movie mode/Photo mode	
• Camera	Rear camera
• Auto timer	OFF (Seconds: 10 sec.)
• Auto save set	OFF
• File restriction	File unrestricted
• Display size	Actual size
• Shake correction	Auto
Setting Continuous mode → p.191	

Function	Default setting
Schedule function menu	
• Display	Monthly display
• User icon settg.	Not stored
Phonebook function menu	
• Discern connect	All OFF
• Restrictions	All OFF
• Big font, Standard font	Standard font
PushTalk phonebook function menu	
PushTalk setting	
• Auto answer setting	OFF
• Ring time setting	30 seconds
• Setting when folded	Speaker talk
• Caller ID setting	OFF
• Set i-mode arrival act	PushTalk preferred
• PushTalk arrival act	Call Rejection
Own number function menu	
• Big font, Standard font	Standard font
Videophone in-call function menu	
• V.phone settings	Brightness: 0
• Display light	All time ON
Last one function*	
• Main menu	Data box
• Search phonebook	Search reading
Volume	Level 4
Manner mode	Release
Public mode (Driving mode)	Release

* : "Last one function" allows the last selected function to be selected next time you perform the same operation.

<Initialize>

Resetting FOMA Terminal Functions to Default

Performing this function deletes stored data and returns the function settings to default set at the time of purchase.

Performing "Initialize" deletes all of your important data including phonebook, mail, downloaded images or melodies, i-appli, PDF data, still images and movies shot with the built-in camera (even protected data).

- If you have deleted the pre-installed Chara-den characters or PDF data, initializing a FOMA terminal restores them.
- Performing Initialize does not delete data that have already been stored at the time of purchase.

- For more information on the default settings to restore, see “Reset settings” (p.420).
- Performing “Initialize” returns the functions and data that are listed below and that can be reset by the “Reset settings” function to default set at the time of purchase:

• Mail data	• Mail settings
• Mail folders	• Screen memo
• Template	• Last URL
• Color palette history	• Go to location
• Chat member for chat mail	• Message
• i-mode settings	• Access reader
• Home	• Bar code reader
• Full Browser settings	• Dictionary
• Channel list	• Additional service
• Software list	• Multi Number (Number Setting)
• i-appli Auto start set	• Phonebook
• i-appli action info ^{*1}	• PushTalk phonebook
• Call data	• Group setting
• Set time (date/time)	• Received calls
• Pause dial	• Redial/Dialed calls
• Security code	• Received address
• Clear learned under Character input set	• Sent address
• To Do list	• Mail member
• Schedule	• Chat group
• Text memo	• Own dictionary
• Play/Erase msg.	• Download dictionary
• Play/Erase VP msg.	• Set program for Music Channel
• Voice memo	• Information about program/ music playback interruption
• Voice announce	• Data added by user ^{*2}
• Bookmark	

*1 : The launch information on an i-appli that had been preinstalled at the time of purchase is not restored to default (except if it is upgraded or it is deleted once and then downloaded).

*2 : Saved data, downloaded data, i-appli programs, still images or movies shot with the built-in camera, Music Channel program, etc.

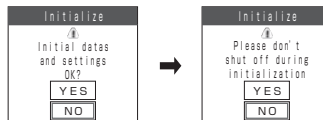
- The group names, folder names, etc. that you have edited revert to their default names.
- Secret data and data stored in Secret folder are also deleted.
- Ensure that the battery is fully charged before initializing a FOMA terminal. It may not be possible to initialize a FOMA terminal if the battery is low.
- Do not turn a FOMA terminal off while it is being initialized.
- You cannot use any other functions while a FOMA terminal is being initialized. Also, you cannot receive voice calls, videophone calls, Push-to-Talk calls or mails.

- ◆ Performing “Initialize” restores a FOMA terminal to default.

It is recommended to back up your data stored on your FOMA terminal by taking notes or using the Data Link Software (p.475) or miniSD memory card (p.371).

1   “Other settings” ▶ “Initialize” ▶ Enter your security code

2 “YES” ▶ “YES”



Initialization begins.

Initialization may take several minutes.

When initialization ends, a FOMA terminal is automatically restarted.

■ If initialization is failed

- ▶ Press “OK” after turning a FOMA terminal on

Initialization is performed again.

NOTE

- ◆ Performing initialization deletes i-appli programs if they:

- had been preinstalled at the time of purchase and were upgraded
- had been preinstalled at the time of purchase and were deleted once and then downloaded
- were downloaded after purchase

You can download the i-appli programs that had been pre-installed at the time of purchase from the “みんなNらんど” page in the “ケータイ電話メーカー” site. A packet communication charge is applied for download. → p.216

- ◆ After the FOMA terminal functions are reset, i-channel telop text does not appear. When information is automatically updated or you receive the latest information by pressing , the telop text appears automatically.

- ◆ Osafu-Keitai i-appli and data on the IC card are not deleted.

- ◆ You cannot initialize a FOMA terminal while another function is running.

- ◆ Data saved, stored or set on the FOMA card (UIM) or miniSD memory card are not deleted.

- ◆ Data communication settings specified by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC are not deleted.

- ◆ If there are large amounts of data to be deleted, initialization may take some time.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → p.371

● Network Services

Available Network Services	424
Voice Mail Service	424
Call Waiting Service.....	425
Call Forwarding Service.....	427
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	428
Caller ID Request Service	428
Dual Network Service	428
English Guidance.....	429
Service Numbers	429
Handling Calls Received While Talking on Another Call.....	430
Setting up Remote Control	Remote Control 431
Multi Number	431
Adding and Using Services	Additional service 432

This chapter explains the overview of the network services using the menus on the FOMA terminal.
For more details, see "Network Services User Guide".

Available Network Services

Your FOMA terminal provides you with access to a range of useful DoCoMo network services. The table below outlines the available services.

Service	Subscription	Monthly charge	Refer to
Voice Mail	Required	Charged	p.424
Call Waiting	Required	Charged	p.425
Call Forwarding	Required	Free	p.427
Nuisance Call Blocking	Required	Free	p.428
Caller ID Notification	Not required	Free	p.47
Caller ID Request	Not required	Free	p.428
Public mode (Driving mode)	Not required	Free	p.71
Public mode (Power off)	Not required	Free	p.73
Dual Network	Required	Charged	p.428
English Guidance	Not required	Free	p.429
Multi Number	Required	Charged	p.431
SMS (Short Message Service)	Not required	Free	p.288

- This chapter explains the overview of the network services using the menus on the FOMA terminal. For more details, see "Network Services User Guide".
- When the  icon appears, you cannot use the service that is available when you are connected to the Network service center.
- When DoCoMo makes a new network service available, you can add the new service to the menu (Additional service). → p.432

Voice Mail Service

Subscription
Required

Voice Mail service announces to a caller who calls when  appears or the FOMA terminal is turned off, and keeps a message for you.

* As of August 2006, a videophone message cannot be kept using the Voice Mail service.

- Messages can be recorded up to three minutes each. Up to 20 calls and 20 videophone calls can be recorded. They are stored for up to 72 hours.

Basic flow of Voice Mail service

Voice Mail service activated



Your FOMA terminal receives a voice/
videophone call



You cannot answer the call and it is
connected to the Voice Mail service center



The caller records a message

If the caller is in a hurry and wishes to leave a message without listening to the Voice Mail answering message, he or she can interrupt the answering message and switch to message recording mode immediately by pressing .



The Voice Mail service center notifies you that
you have a recorded message



You listen to the recorded message

NOTE

- ◆ If you receive a call while the Voice Mail service is activated, the ring tone specified in "Select ring tone" sounds. You can answer the call while the FOMA terminal is ringing. If you do not answer the call within the specified period of time, it is transferred to the Voice Mail service center. Calls are logged in the Received calls record as "Missed calls" and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- ◆ Voice mail cannot be connected via videophone by "32K" communication speed.
- ◆ When connecting to the Voice Mail via Chara-den, you cannot perform DTMF operation. Switch to the DTMF transmission mode using the function menu.
→ p.83

Using the Voice Mail service

- 1   "Voice Mail" ▶ Select any item

Play messages	▶ "YES" The FOMA terminal calls the Voice Mail service center. Then play your recorded messages by following the audio instructions.
Activate	▶ "YES" ▶ "YES" ▶ Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds) If you set the ring time to 0 (zero) seconds, received calls are not logged in the "Received calls" record.

Deactivate	▶ "YES" Deactivates the Voice Mail service.
Set ring time	▶ Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds) Changes the ring time only.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings. • Function menu (Check setting screen) displayed when you select "Check setting" → p.425
Setting	▶ "YES" Follows the voice instructions to change the settings. The FOMA terminal calls the Voice Mail service center. Hereafter, follow the voice instructions.
Check messages	Checks for voice messages. Afterwards, you receive a message that checking is completed.
Message notification	▶ "YES" Sounds the exclusive notification tone when the Voice Mail service center receives another voice message. The volume is fixed to "Level 2".
Erase icon	▶ "YES" Deletes the icon  (Voice Mail).
Activate notice call	When you receive a call while the FOMA terminal is out of service area or is turned off, this service sends you an SMS (p.289) notifying you of the information about the call (the date and time, caller ID) once you turn the FOMA terminal back on or move back into the service area.
• All Calls	▶ "YES" Notifies you of all calls.
• Calls with Caller ID	▶ "YES" Notifies you of only calls with caller ID.
Deactivate notice call	▶ "YES" Deactivates call notification.
Notice call status	Displays the current call notification settings.

* : The option is available only for voice call messages.

NOTE

<Play messages> <Setting>

◆ If you press keys () to , , ) following the voice instructions, a call may not end even if  is pressed. In this case, press .

◆ To change the settings for the videophone on the Voice Mail, make a voice call to "1412".

<Activate>

◆ To give priority to the Voice Mail service over "Record message", set the ring time of the Voice Mail service shorter than that of "Record message".

◆ If the mute time set under "Ring time(sec.)" (p.175) is longer than the ring time of the Voice Mail service, the ring time does not sound and the Voice Mail service launches. To make the ring time sound before the Voice Mail service launches, set the ring time of the Voice Mail service longer than the mute time.

<Check messages>

◆ If you have recorded messages stored at the Voice Mail service center, the  (Voice Mail icon) and  ("Voice Mail" desktop icon) appear on the standby screen. However, if the videophone messages are stored, an SMS will notify, not the icon.

◆ The number in the Voice Mail icon changes according to the number of stored messages (, , ) ...  (10 messages or more)).

The number of messages shown indicates the number of newly stored messages and does not include saved messages.

◆ The number of messages that arrive at the Voice Mail service center after you check for messages may not be included in the number shown in the Voice Mail icon.

<Erase icon>

◆ Clearing the icon does not delete the corresponding recorded messages. The Voice Mail icon appears again when you check for messages.

<Activate notice call>

◆ Call logs are notified even with "Reject all" set for SMS.

Function menu (Check setting screen)

Activate	Activates the Voice Mail service.
Deactivate	Deactivates the Voice Mail service.
Set ring time	Changes the ring time.

Call Waiting Service

Subscription
Required

The Call Waiting enables you to answer a voice call newly received while you are talking on another voice call. You can also use this service to put your current voice call on hold while you make a voice call to someone else.

● To use Call Waiting, select "Answer" in "In-call arrival act" (p.430) beforehand. If other item is set, you will not be able to answer a voice call received during another voice call even with Call Waiting activated.

● If the Call Waiting is activated and "In-call arrival act" is set to "Answer", you can answer another incoming call when receiving a videophone call during voice call or when receiving a voice call or videophone call during videophone call. However, you need to end the current voice call or videophone call (you cannot hold the current call).
→ p.430

Using the Call Waiting service

- 1   "Call Waiting" ▶ Select any item

Activate	▶ "YES" Activates the Call Waiting service.
Deactivate	▶ "YES" Deactivates the Call Waiting service.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings.

NOTE

<Activate>

- ◆ If you receive a voice call while another voice call is on hold, the hold is released and you return to the first call. If you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps), pressing  or  automatically puts the first call on hold and connects to the second caller.

Putting the current voice call on hold to answer a newly received voice call

- 1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press  or 

Your initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal answers the new voice call.



- 2 Switch back to the first call

■ To end the call with the second caller

▶   or 

This ends the call with the second caller and returns you to the first call.

■ To put the second call on hold

▶ 

This puts the second call on hold and returns you to the first call.

You can switch between the 2 calls by pressing .

You can also switch the calls by selecting "Change held call" from the function menu.

■ To end a voice call on hold

▶  (FUNC) ▶ "End held call"

NOTE

- ◆ If you receive another voice call while the "Multi calling" is shown, a message appears notifying that you can answer the new call by ending either the voice call you are on or held voice call. To end the held voice call and answer an incoming call, press , select "End held call" from the function menu and then press  or . To end the voice call you are on and answer an incoming call, press , press  and then press  or .

Ending the current voice call to answer a newly received voice call

- 1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press 

The first call ends and the ring tone sounds.

- 2  or 

The FOMA terminal answers the new voice call.

Putting the current voice call on hold to make a new voice call to someone else

You can put your current voice call on hold and make a new voice call to someone else.

- 1 Dial another phone number during a call ▶ 

The initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal switches to the new call. You can also make a call by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook → p.115



- 2 Switch back to the first call

■ To end the new call

▶   or 

This ends the new call and returns you to the first call.

■ To put the new call on hold

▶ 

This puts the new call on hold and returns you to the first call.

You can switch between the 2 calls by pressing .

You can also switch the calls by selecting "Change held call" from the function menu.

■ To end a voice call on hold

▶  (FUNC) ▶ "End held call"

NOTE

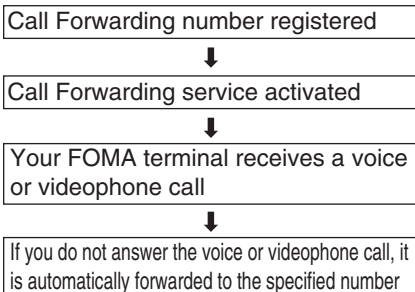
- ◆ If you receive another voice call while the "Multi calling" is shown, a message appears notifying that you can answer the new call by ending either the voice call you are on or held voice call. To end the held voice call and answer an incoming call, press , select "End held call" from the function menu and then press  or . To end the voice call you are on and answer an incoming call, press , press  and then press  or .

Call Forwarding Service

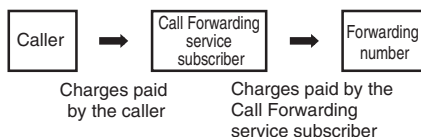
Subscription
Required

If you receive a voice or videophone call when the  icon appears on the FOMA terminal or the FOMA terminal is turned off, the Call Forwarding service forwards the call to a previously registered forwarding number such as your home or office phone.

Basic flow of Call Forwarding service



Call Forwarding service call charges



NOTE

- ♦ Calls are logged in the Received calls record as "Missed calls" and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

Using the Call Forwarding service

- 1   **"Call Forwarding"** ▶ **Select any item**

Activate	Register a forwarding number and set the ring time, and then select "Activate".
• Register fwd number	▶ Enter a forwarding number Use  to enter the number from the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.116 Once you set the number, a star "★" appears next to "Register fwd number".

• Set ring time	▶ Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds) Once you set the number, a star "★" appears next to "Set ring time". If you set to the ring time to 0 (zero) second, received calls are not logged in the "Received calls" record.
• Activate	▶ "YES" Activates the Call Forwarding service.
Deactivate	▶ "YES" Deactivates the Call Forwarding service.
Change forwarding No	Changes the forwarding number only. Enter the new forwarding number, select "Change forwarding No" if the Call Forwarding service is already activated, or select "Change No.+Activate" if the service is deactivated.
Fwd number busy*	▶ "YES" When the forwarding number is busy, a received voice call can be transferred to the Voice Mail service center.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings.

* : It is required to subscribe to the "Voice Mail service".

NOTE

- ♦ If you have already set a forwarding number, you can omit the steps for "Register fwd number" and "Set ring time".
- ♦ To give priority to the Call Forwarding service over "Record message", set the ring time of the Call Forwarding service shorter than that of "Record message".
- ♦ To give priority to the Call Forwarding service over "Remote monitoring", set the ring time of the Call Forwarding service shorter than that of "Remote monitoring".
- ♦ If the mute time set under "Ring time(sec.)" is longer than the ring time of the Call Forwarding service, the ring time does not sound and the Call Forwarding service launches. To make the ring time sound before the Call Forwarding service launches, set the ring time of the Call Forwarding service longer than the mute time.

Setting or canceling the Call Forwarding guidance message

1 On the standby screen



Follow the voice instructions.

For more details, see "Network Services User Guide".

Nuisance Call Blocking Service Subscription Required

The Nuisance Call Blocking service enables you to register specific phone numbers, such as those which make nuisance calls or unwanted sales calls, so that you do not receive any further calls from those numbers. Once you have registered a number, calls from that number are automatically rejected by the network and the call rejection message is sent to the caller.

- When you receive a Push-to-Talk call from a caller registered in the Nuisance Call Blocking service, the call rejection message is not sent to the caller, and the call is disconnected.
- Calls barred by the Nuisance Call Blocking service are not logged in the "Received calls" record and no "Missed calls" desktop icon appears.

Using the Nuisance Call Blocking service

- 1   "Nuisance Call BIK" ▶ Select any item

Register Caller	▶ "YES" ▶ "OK" Adds the last caller to your list of barred callers.
Register number	▶ Enter or quote a phone number ▶ "YES" ▶ "OK" Directly enters the number or quote it from the phonebook, Redial or Received calls record. • Enter a part of the number then use , and you can enter the number by searching the phonebook. • Use  to enter the number from the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.116 • Press  to search the Received calls record,  to search the Redial calls record to enter the number.
Delete last entry	▶ "YES" ▶ "OK" Deletes the barred number that was registered last time. Repeating this procedure does not delete any of the preceding barred numbers.
Delete all entries	▶ "YES" ▶ "OK" Deletes all the barred numbers in the list.
The number of entries	Checks the number of barred callers.

NOTE

<Register number>

- ◆ You cannot register a phone number searched from the Received calls or Redial record of Push-to-Talk call as a barred caller.

Caller ID Request Service Subscription Not required

When you receive a voice call from a caller who does not provide his or her phone number (caller ID), the Caller ID Request service sends the caller an audio message for voice calls and a movie announcement requesting caller ID for videophone calls, and then automatically ends the call (As for Push-to-Talk, the announcement is not sent to the caller, and the call is disconnected). This service provides an effective way to prevent problems with calls from unknown callers and enables you to use the FOMA terminal safer.

- Calls rejected by the Caller ID Request service are not logged in the "Received calls" record and no "Missed calls" desktop icon appears.

Using the Caller ID Request service

- 1   "Caller ID Request" ▶ Select any item

Activate	▶ "YES" ▶ "OK" Activates the Caller ID Request service.
Deactivate	▶ "YES" ▶ "OK" Deactivates the Caller ID Request service.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings.

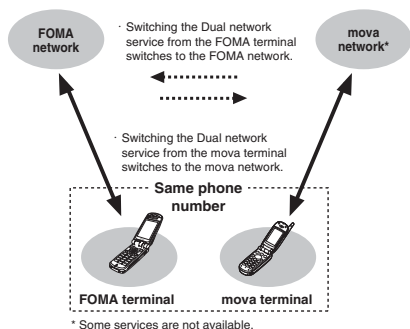
Dual Network Service Subscription Required

You can also use a mova terminal with the same phone number subscribed to FOMA. FOMA and mova can be used depending on its service area.

- For accessing from a mova terminal and other details, see "Network Services User Guide".

Overview of the Dual Network service

- Switching for the Dual Network service can be performed either from a FOMA terminal or mova terminal when it is unable to access the respective services.



- You cannot access the networks from both a FOMA terminal and mova terminal at the same time.

Using the Dual Network service

- 1 **“Dual Network”** ▶ Select any item

Dual Network switching	▶ “YES” ▶ Enter your network security code Switches from mova terminal to FOMA terminal.
Check setting	Checks whether the FOMA terminal can access the services.

NOTE

<Dual Network switching>

- ◆ End communication in the terminal that can access the services before switching networks.

English Guidance

Subscription
Not required

This function enables you to set English as the language used in guidance messages such as the out of area warnings and service information that are given when network services such as “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service are set. This function can also set English as the language used in a guidance message such as the one for “Caller ID Request” that is sent to people who call you.

For the guidance message given during a call between DoCoMo mobile phones, the caller's setting for outgoing calls takes priority over the receiver's setting for incoming calls.

The table below lists the available language settings.

Item	Setting	Guidance language
Outgoing (including guidance messages for network service settings)	Japanese	Japanese
	English	English
Incoming (guidance messages played for callers)	Japanese	Japanese
	Japanese+English	Plays in Japanese first and then in English.
	English+Japanese	Plays in English first and then in Japanese.

Using the English Guidance

- 1 **“English Guidance”** ▶ Select any item

Guidance setting	Sets the guidance language.
• Outgoing +Incoming	Sets the language used for outgoing and incoming calls.
• Outgoing call	Sets the language used for outgoing calls.
• Incoming call	Sets the language used for incoming calls.
Check setting	Displays the current guidance settings.

Service Numbers

This function provides a quick and simple way to contact the DoCoMo general help desk and service counter for information on faults, etc.

- 1 **“Service Numbers”** ▶ Select any item

ドコモ故障問合せ	Calls the DoCoMo technical inquiries.
ドコモ総合案内・受付	Calls the DoCoMo general inquiries.

NOTE

- ◆ The contact numbers for the DoCoMo general information desk and service desk may not be displayed depending on the FOMA card (UIM) you are using. If they are not displayed, it is recommended to store the contact numbers described on the back cover of this manual on the phonebook.

Handling Calls Received While Talking on Another Call

You can specify how voice calls, videophone calls and 64K data communication calls that arrive while on another call are handled.

- If you have not subscribed to "Call Waiting", "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service, you cannot answer an incoming call that arrives while on another call.

Specifying how handling calls received while on another call <In-call arrival act>

Default setting
Answer

- 1   "In-call arrival act" ▶ Select any item

Voice Mail*	Transfers a voice call and a videophone call received while on another call to the Voice Mail service center regardless of the "Call Waiting" and "Voice Mail" service settings.
Call Forwarding	Transfers a voice or videophone call received while on another call to the forwarding number regardless of the "Call Waiting" and "Call Forwarding" service settings.
Call Rejection	Rejects a voice call, videophone call and 64K data communication call received while on another call.
Answer	If you activate "Call Waiting" and receive a voice call while on another voice call, the "Call Waiting" is available. If you are on a voice call with Call Waiting deactivated, or on a videophone call or 64K data communication call, you can handle an incoming call in one of the following ways: • Ending the voice, videophone or 64K data communication call in progress and answering the new voice, videophone or 64K data communication call • Manually handling a voice, videophone or 64K data communication call received while on another call using the function menu. → p.431 • If "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service is activated, calls are handled according to those service settings.

* : As of August 2006, a videophone message cannot be kept using the Voice Mail service.

Activating the handling setting for calls received while on another call <Set in-call arrival>

- 1   "Set in-call arrival" ▶ Select any item

Activate	Activates the "Set in-call arrival" setting.
Deactivate	Deactivates the "Set in-call arrival" setting.
Check setting	Shows the current setting.

Ending a call or 64K data communication in progress to answer a new call

• When a call in progress and incoming call are the same type

<Example: Ending a voice call in progress to answer a new voice call>

- 1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press 

This ends the call in progress and the FOMA terminal starts ringing.

■ For videophone or 64K data communication call

A message appears notifying you that you can answer the new call by ending the call in progress.



- 2  or 

This accepts the incoming voice call.

■ For 64K data communication call

▶ Take the call on a PC

• When a call in progress and incoming call are different types

If you receive a videophone or 64K data communication call while on a voice call, if you receive a voice or 64K data communication call while on a videophone call, or if you receive a voice or videophone call during 64K data communication, use the procedure below to end the call or 64K data communication in progress so that you can answer the incoming call.

<Example: Ending a videophone call in progress to answer an incoming voice call>

- 1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call and a message* appears, press 

When you receive a 64K data communication call, a message appears instead of the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps).

* : A message appears notifying you that you can answer the new call by ending the call in progress.

- 2  (MULTI) ▶ Select “ Connecting V-phone” by  (MULTI) or , then press  ▶ 
- 3  or 

Manually rejecting calls or transferring calls to Call Forwarding or Voice Mail service

<Example: When “Set in-call arrival” is set to “Activate” and “In-call arrival act” set to “Answer”>

- 1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press  (FUNC)

■ When you receive a call other than voice call while on a voice call

▶   (FUNC)

- 2 Select how to handle the received call

■ To reject an incoming call

▶ “Call Rejection”

■ To forward an incoming call to the forwarding number

▶ “Call Forwarding”

■ To transfer an incoming call to the Voice Mail service center

▶ “Voice Mail”

With any of the above procedures, you can return to your initial call.

<Remote Control>

Setting up Remote Control

This function enables you to use the “Voice Mail” and “Call Forwarding” services from a touch-tone general subscriber phone, payphone or DoCoMo mobile phone.

- For how to operate a network service from a payphone, etc., see “Network Services User Guide”.

- 1  ▶  ▶ “Remote Control”
- ▶ Select any item

Activate	▶ “YES” Activates the remote control.
Deactivate	▶ “YES” Deactivates the remote control.
Check setting	Displays the current remote control settings.

Multi Number

Subscription
Required

Registering up to 2 additional numbers (Additional Number 1 and 2) besides your contracted phone number (Basic Number) enables you to use them depending on the situation.

Additional Numbers are notified when you subscribed to Multi Number.

- For details on Multi Number, see “Network Services User Guide”.
- Selecting a number in Set Multi Number enables you to use the specified phone number for all calls you will make.
- You can also switch phone number each time making a call. → p.432
- You can receive voice calls, videophone calls or 64K data communication calls that are made to Additional Number 1 or 2. You can also set a ring tone for each number. → p.432

NOTE

◆ Selecting “Multi Number” from the function menu to make a call will display the item selected when making a call (“Basic Number” or register name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) on the Redial (detail) screen or Dialed calls record (detail) screen even if you have not subscribed to “Multi Number”.

If you make a call without using the function menu, only the dialing phone number is displayed in the Redial/Dialed calls.

◆ When you search a phone number from the Redial/Dialed calls record to make a call, the call is made from the number (Basic Number, Additional Number 1 or 2) displayed in the record. If only the dialing phone number is displayed in the record, the call is made from the number set in “Set Multi Number” (p.431).

◆ When you make a call using Received calls record, the call is made from the number logged in the record regardless of the “Set Multi Number” (p.431) setting.

◆ When a call is received by Additional Number 1 or 2, the registered name of the number is displayed on the receiving screen or on the received calls detail screen.

◆ In Public mode (Driving mode), if an incoming call is dialed to Additional Number 1 or 2, the operation performed is the same as that of Basic Number. → p.71

Using the Multi Number

- 1  ▶  ▶ “Multi Number” ▶ Select any item

Set Multi Number	Sets a phone number to be used for making a call normally.
• Basic Number	▶ “YES” Sets your contracted number (Basic Number) to be used for making a call.
• Additional Number1*	▶ “YES” Sets the additional number to be used for making a call.
• Additional Number2*	

Continued on next page

Check setting	Checks the "Set Multi Number" setting.
Number Setting	▶Highlight an item to register (or change) an additional number and press (Edit)▶Enter a name ▶Enter an additional number Registers the additional number you were notified when you applied for Multi Number to the FOMA terminal. A name can contain up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters. An additional number can contain up to 26 digits. Function menu (Multi Number setting screen) displayed when you select "Number Setting" → p.432
Select ring tone	Sets the ring tones for Additional Number 1 and 2. "Changing the Ring Tone" → p.128

* : The respective registered names are displayed if they are set.

NOTE

- ◆ If you insert a different FOMA card (UIM) , the Multi Number settings (names, numbers, ring tones, etc.) registered to the FOMA terminal may be erased. In this case, register again.

<Number Setting>

- ◆ The name is displayed when you specify the Multi Number settings and select a phone number used for a call.

<Select ring tone>

- ◆ When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned. → p.130

Function menu (Multi Number setting screen)

Edit	Sets an additional number.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted additional number.
Delete all	Deletes all the registered additional numbers.

Switching phone number each time making a call

When making a call, you can select a phone number to be used for the call.

- 1 Phone number entry screen (p.50)**
▶  **(FUNC)▶"Multi Number"▶Select any item**

Basic Number	Sets your contracted number (Basic Number) to be used for making a call.
Additional Number1*	Sets the additional number to be used for making a call.
Additional Number2*	

Cancel number	Cancels the setting to restore the "Set Multi Number" setting.

* : The respective registered names are displayed if they are set.

NOTE

- ◆ You can also switch phone number using the procedures above from the function menu of Phonebook detail, Redial/Dialed/Received calls details screen.
- ◆ When you make a call by selecting the "Multi Number" from the function menu, Basic Number suffixed with "X590#" , Additional Number 1 suffixed with "X591#" or Additional Number 2 suffixed with "X592#" is displayed as the dialed number on the dialing screen.
- ◆ When the detail screen of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls shows the Multi Number register name ("Basic Number" or register name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) and you would like to make a call using the different number from the displayed Multi Number register name, select any item to be called from "Multi Number" on the function menu.

<Additional service>

Adding and Using Services

When DoCoMo provides new and additional network services, this function allows you to add the new services on your FOMA terminal.

When a new network service is provided, you will be notified of the "number" or "service code" that you need in order to use the new service. You should store the number or code on your FOMA terminal along with the service name.

- You can add up to 10 new network services.
- Enter a service code in the "Enter USSD number" field on the screen for adding new services.

Adding additional service and response message

- 1**   **"Additional service"▶Select any item**

Additional service	▶Highlight “<Not stored>” and press  (FUNC)▶“Add new service”▶Enter a service name Adds a new service. A service name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters. Function menu (Additional service screen) displayed when you select “Additional service” → p.433
• Enter number	▶Enter a number▶“YES” Uses the number to connect. The number can contain up to 20 digits.
• Enter USSD number	▶Enter a code▶“YES” Uses the service code to connect. The code can contain up to 40 digits.
Additional guidance	▶Highlight “<Not stored>” and press  (FUNC)▶“Add new guidance”▶Enter a command▶Enter a response message▶“YES” Stores response messages for commands posted from the network when using the service code (USSD) to access an added service. A command can contain up to 20 digits. A message can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters. Function menu (Additional guidance screen) displayed when you select “Additional guidance” → p.433

NOTE**<Additional service>**

- ◆ To add a service, enter the “number” or “service code” provided by DoCoMo. The “number” is the number used to connect to the service center, while the “service code” (USSD) is the code used for notifying the service center.

Function menu (Additional service screen/Additional guidance screen)

Add new service, Add new guidance	Adds a setting.
Edit	Changes the setting.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted service or message.
Delete all	Deletes all services or messages.

Using the newly added service

- 1 ▶▶“Additional service”▶“Additional service”
- 2 Select a service▶

● Data Communication

Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal.....	436
Before Using	437
Checking the Procedure	437
AT Commands	438

For details on data communication, see “Manual for Data Communication” (PDF) in the bundled CD-ROM.

To view the “Manual for Data Communication” (PDF), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If this software is not installed on your PC, install the Adobe Reader from the CD-ROM to read the document. For how to use it, see the Adobe Reader help.

Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal

Packet communication and 64K data communication

Data communication that can be used between the FOMA terminal and a PC is classified in 2 categories: packet communication and 64K data communication.

● Packet communication

Data is received at 3.6Mbps max and sent at 384kbps max*. Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received, regardless of the time it takes or the distance. The communication charge can become very expensive when large files are sent and received. It is possible to access a corporate LAN connected to a FOMA network and exchange data.

* : Out of FOMA high-speed area, data is sent or received at 384kbps max.

● 64K data communication

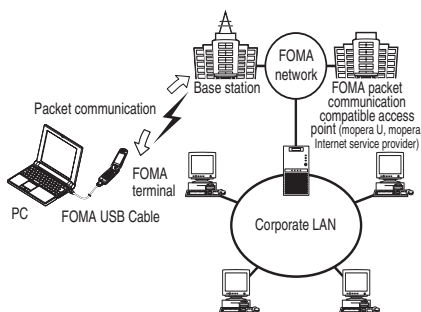
Data can be sent and received at the stable speed of 64kbps. You are charged for how long the line is maintained regardless of the amount of data.

■ For packet communication

Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

Use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U”.

- You can also use DoCoMo internet connection service, “mopera”, but the maximum transmission speeds are 384kbps when you use the “mopera” access point.

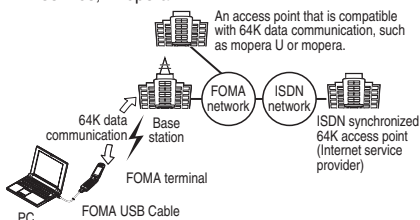


■ For 64K data communication

64K data communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

Use an access point that supports FOMA 64K data communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U”.

- You can also use DoCoMo internet connection service, “mopera”.



Notice before using

Internet service provider fees

In addition to FOMA service charges, you may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the service provider in addition to service fees of FOMA service. Contact your Internet service provider for details.

DoCoMo Internet service “mopera U” or “mopera” is available. “mopera U” is a pay service to which you need to subscribe. “mopera” is a free service to which you do not need to subscribe.

Setting an access point (e.g. Internet service provider)

Packet communication and 64K data communication use different access points. If you are using packet communication, use an applicable access point for it; if 64K data communication, use an access point for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronous 64K.

- You cannot use DoPa access points.
- You cannot use access points for PHS 64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authorization when accessing network

Some access points may require your user authorization (ID and password) when connecting. Use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. ID and password will be provided by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Contact the provider or administrator for details.

Access authorization when using the browser

When using FirstPass compliant websites on your browser, you may need FirstPass (user certification) for access authorization. In this case, install the FirstPass PC software included on the CD-ROM that came with this product and make the settings. For more information, refer to the “FirstPassManual” (PDF file) contained in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder on the CD-ROM. (The “FirstPassManual” is provided in Japanese only.) To view the “FirstPassManual” (PDF), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required.

If this software is not installed on your PC, install the Adobe Reader from the CD-ROM to read the document. For how to use it, see the Adobe Reader help.

● Data communication glossary

Administrator privilege

If you do not have this privilege on Windows 2000 or Windows XP, access is limited and you are unable to install/uninstall drivers or applications.

APN (Access Point Name)

A string to identify the Internet service provider, a corporate LAN, etc. on packet communication. For example, the mopera U APN is "mopera.net".

cid (Context Identifier)

A registration number used to register a packet communication APN to the FOMA terminal. It is similar to a memory number in a phonebook. Up to 10 numbers from 1 to 10 can be registered.

DNS (Domain Name System)

A system that translates a domain name such as "nttdocomo.co.jp" into an IP address (a complicated string of numbers), so that a computer can easily manage it.

HSDPA (High Speed Downlink Packet Access)

The standard that increased the data rate of the third generation (3G) mobile telecommunication systems "W-CDMA".

OBEX (Object Exchange)

An international standard protocol of data communication developed by IrDA. Use OBEX-enabled devices or applications to transfer data between various devices such as mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras and printers.

QoS (Quality of Service)

Service quality about network communication speed. Set the QoS settings on the FOMA terminal to connect at any speed or only at the highest speed.

W-TCP

TCP parameter used to make the most of the TCP/IP transmission capability during packet communication on the FOMA network. This setting is required to make the most of the FOMA terminal's communication capability.

Before Using

Operating environment

The following table shows the operating environment to use data communication:

PC	• PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive • USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1) • Display resolution of 800 dots wide x 600 dots high, High Color (65,536 colors) recommended
Operating System ^{*2}	• Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese edition)
Memory	• Windows 2000: 64M bytes or higher^{*1} • Windows XP: 128M bytes or higher^{*1}

Hard disk space	• 5M bytes or higher ^{*1}

- ^{*1} : The required memory and hard disk space may vary depending on the system configuration.
^{*2} : Operations to be performed are not guaranteed after Operating System is upgraded.

NOTE

- ◆ To transmit data with the FOMA terminal connected to the DoCoMo PDA "musea" or "sigmarion II", update "musea" or "sigmarion II". For information on how to update it and other details, visit the DoCoMo website.
- ◆ The FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup.
- ◆ The FOMA terminal is not compatible with FAX communication.

Required devices

- In addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC, the following hardware and software are required:
- FOMA USB Cable (optional)
 - "FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED CD-ROM"

NOTE

- ◆ Purchase the dedicated "FOMA USB Cable". A USB cable for a PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.

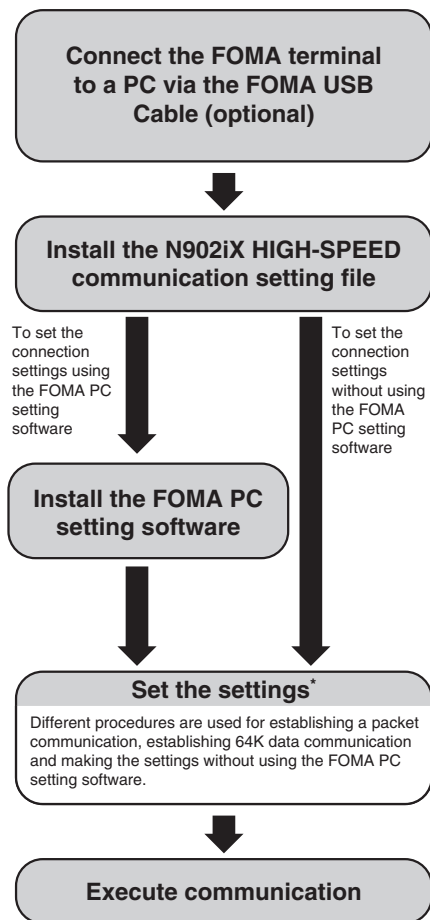
Checking the Procedure

In data communication, the connection is made through a dial-up connection with Internet service providers or LANs that support FOMA data communication.

- Bundled "FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED CD-ROM"
- The CD-ROM contains the N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file (drivers), FOMA PC setting software and FirstPass PC software.
 - The N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file is the software (driver) required for connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to carry out packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer (OBEX). Installing the N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file embeds each driver into Windows. Use the FOMA PC setting software to easily set up packet communication and 64K data communication and establish a dial-up connection.

Flow chart for completing the data communication setup

This section describes the preparation to use packet communication and 64K data communication.



* : To use the Internet with the FOMA terminal and a PC connected, "mopera U" (subscription required) is useful, which supports broadband connection, etc. Consider the plan in which you are only charged for a month when you use the service. "mopera" (no subscription required) allows you to access the Internet immediately.

AT Commands

AT commands are used to control the modem, etc. The FOMA terminal is compatible with AT commands. In addition, the FOMA terminal uses some extended commands and its own AT commands.

To use AT commands to set up the FOMA terminal's functions on a PC, see "Manual for Data Communication" (PDF) in the bundled CD-ROM.

● Entering Text

Entering Text.....		440
Editing and Storing Common Phrases.....	Common phrases	449
Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text.....		450
Kuten Code.....		450
Storing Frequently Used Words.....	Own dictionary	451
Resetting the Learning Record.....	Clear learned	451
Selecting a Dictionary to Use	Download dictionary	452
Changing the Active Window.....		452

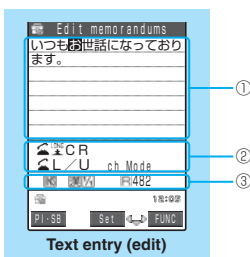
Entering Text

Use dial keys to enter text on the FOMA terminal. The text entry function is used to create a phonebook entry, compose a message, etc.

- The text entry method is divided into "Mode 1(5-touch)", "Mode 2(2-touch)" and "Mode 3(T9 input)".

Text entry (edit) screen

The text entry (edit) screen consists of the following areas: ① text entry, ② operation guidance and ③ information display. The text entry area shows text being entered, the cursor and the end mark. The operation guidance area shows operations that can be currently performed, such as conversion, search and highlight. The information display area shows information such as text entry mode, input mode and remaining character count.



Function menu→p.448

① Text entry area

- : Cursor. Text is entered at this location.
- ◀ : End mark. Text can be entered up to this mark. The location of the end mark varies depending on the function being used.

② Operation guidance area

- ▲▼ CHG: Indicates that Ⓢ can be used for conversion. →p.444
- ▲▼ All/ ▲▼ Search: Indicates that Ⓢ can be used to search on the Search phonebook screen. →p.116
- ☒ Fix mode/ ☒ Fix END: Indicates that Fix mode can be used in "Mode 3 (T9 input)". →p.443
- ▶▶▶▶ Area: Appears when you copy (or cut) text. →p.450

- LONG CR: Indicates that you can insert a line-feed symbol "↓" by holding down Ⓢ for 1 second or longer. →p.446

- L/U: Indicates that Ⓢ can be used to switch between upper case and lower case. →p.445

- AA→aa: Indicates that "Mode 3 (T9 input)" can be switched to lowercase mode by pressing Ⓢ. →p.442

- aa→Aa: Indicates that "Mode 3 (T9 input)" can be switched to "Shift mode" by pressing Ⓢ. →p.442

- Aa→AA: Indicates that "Mode 3 (T9 input)" can be switched to "CapsLock mode" by pressing Ⓢ. →p.442

HOME Back: Indicates that you can return to the previous character assigned to the same key by pressing Ⓢ (HOME) when the text entry method is "Mode 1(5-touch)".

ch Mode: Indicates that the Input mode can be switched by pressing Ⓢ. →p.441

③ Information display area

- 2 / 9: Indicates that the text entry method is "Mode 2(2-touch)" (p.442) or "Mode 3(T9 input)" (p.442). No icon appears in "Mode 1(5-touch)".

Fix: Indicates that "Fix mode" is selected in "Mode 3 (T9 input)". →p.443

INS / OVR: "INS" indicates Insert mode and "OVR" Overwrite mode. →p.445

☐ / ☐ / ☐ / ☐: Indicates the current input mode when the text entry method is "Mode 1(5-touch)" or "Mode 3(T9 input)".

☐: Appears in "Kuten code input mode". →p.450

1/2 / 1/1: "1/2" appears when entering single-byte and "1/1" appears when entering double-byte. →p.441, 442

Sm: Appears when entering lower case in "Mode 1 (5-touch)" or "Mode 2 (2-touch)". →p.445

Shift / Caps: Indicates that "Shift mode" or "CapsLock mode" is selected in "Mode 3 (T9 input)". →p.442

R: Indicates the remaining number of characters that can be entered in bytes. A single-byte character is counted as 1 byte and a double-byte character is counted as 2 bytes. In other words, a double-byte character is equal to two single-byte characters.

Tr: Indicates the number of characters that have been entered when you are composing an SMS or adding entries to the UIM phonebook. No distinction is made between double-byte and single-byte characters.

NOTE

- ◆When you compose an i-mode message, pressing the keypads displays the Text entry (edit) screen and allows you to use functions such as kuten code input and word prediction.
- ◆In addition to the keys, Access reader and Bar code reader are available to enter text.

■ The numbers of characters remaining and entered

Characters shown on the text entry (edit) screen are counted according to the rules listed below. On the text entry (edit) screen, the end mark “◀” appears as an approximate guide indicating that you can enter characters up to the location in the current function.

- A single-byte character is counted as 1 byte and a double-byte character is counted as 2 bytes.

- A double-byte character is equal to two single-byte characters.

Double-byte: A B C D E

5 characters (counted as 10 bytes)

Single-byte: A B C D E F G H I J

10 characters (counted as 10 bytes)

■ Character combinations

Take care with character combinations when entering text.

<Example> Entering “ト” “ㇿ” in single-byte kana input mode and “の携帯電話” in Kanji/hiragana input mode

ト ㇿ の 携 帯 電 話 (9 characters when shown on the screen)

1 1 1 1 2 2 2 2 (count as 14 bytes, equivalent to 14 single-byte characters)

- Single-byte dakuten “ㇿ” and han-dakuten “ㇾ” are each counted as 1 character.

■ Scrolling

On the text entry (edit) screen, use ⏮ to scroll by line, and ⏮ (MEMO/CHECK) and ⏮ (HOME) to scroll by page.

On the conversion candidate list screen, use ⏮ to scroll by line, and ⏮ or ⏮ (MEMO/CHECK) and ⏮ (HOME) to scroll by page.

Selecting the text entry method MENU35

Default setting	Input mode: Mode 1(5-touch)

There are three methods to enter text:

- Mode 1(5-touch) → p.441
Several characters are assigned to a key, and a character being entered changes each time you press the key.
- Mode 2(2-touch) → p.442
Characters are entered using a combination of two number keys.
- Mode 3(T9 input) → p.442
Candidates assigned to a key appear each time you press the key, and you can select any of the candidates.

- 1 → → “Other settings” → “Character input set” → “Input mode” → Select any item

● Changing the text entry method while entering text

When the text entry (edit) screen appears, your preferred text entry method is selected. There are 2 ways to change to another method.

- Switching the text entry method is only a temporary change. Once you end the text entry then display the text entry (edit) screen, your preferred text entry method is reselected.
- The text entry method may not be switched for some specific text entry such as zip code.

■ Using the function menu

“CHG input method” under the text entry (edit) function menu → p.448

■ Pressing (PI·SB) for 1 second or longer

The text entry method changes in “Mode 1(5-touch)” → “Mode 2(2-touch)” → “Mode 3(T9 input)” order each time you press and hold (PI·SB) for 1 second or longer.

Selecting the font size MENU35

Default setting	CHG input size: Standard

- Select “Small”, “Standard”, “Large 1” or “Large 2” for the font size used on the text entry (edit) screen.

- 1 → → “Other settings” → “Character input set” → “CHG input size” → Select any item

Entering text in Mode 1 (5-touch)

- Key Assignment (5-touch input) → p.463

● Changing the input mode

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.440)

The input mode changes in “Alphabetic (single-byte)” → “Numeric (single-byte)” → “Kanji/hiragana (double-byte)” → “Kana (single-byte)” order each time you press (Selecting “Full pitch” from the function menu allows you to use double-byte when changing the input mode).

● Switching between double-byte and single-byte

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.440) → “Half pitch”/“Full pitch”

In the information display area, “” appears for double-byte and “” for single-byte. You cannot switch between double-byte and single-byte in “Kanji/hiragana input mode”.

- To enter “ㄅ”, set “Kanji/hiragana input mode” and press  3 times.
- To enter “B”, set “Alphabetic input mode” and press  twice.

Entering text in Mode 2 (2-touch)

- Key Assignment (2-touch input) → p.464

- Switching the input mode (double-byte/single-byte)

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.440) ▶

"Single-byte" and "Double-byte" are switched each time  is pressed ("Half pitch" and "Full pitch" are also available from the function menu). In the information display area,  appears for double-byte and  for single-byte.

● Text entry example

- To enter “ $\supset$ ”, set “Double-byte input mode” and press  .
- To enter double-byte “B”, set “Double-byte input mode” and press  .
- To enter single-byte “B”, set “Single-byte input mode” and press  .

Entering text in Mode 3 (T9 input)

This mode enables a quick text input with few key operations.

For example, to enter a reading “あした”, you need to press **1** あ once, **3** し twice and **4** た once in Mode 1 (5-touch). In Mode 3 (T9 input), you only need to press **1** あ **3** し **4** た corresponding to the keys of columns to which the characters belong.

A column letter is assigned to one key. Every time you press a key, a list of candidates appears from which you select and enter desired readings.

Mode 3 also features 2 input helper functions: "Yomi edit" and "Fix mode".

"Yomi edit" enables you to edit the entered reading candidates, while you can use "Fix mode" to directly enter desired readings. Linking Mode 3 (T9 input) to the word prediction function (p.443) allows faster and easier text entry.

- Key Assignment (T9 input) → p.465

- **Changing the input mode**

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.440) ▶

The input mode changes in “Alphabetic (single-byte)” → “Numeric (single-byte)” → “Kanji/hiragana (double-byte)” → “Kana (single-byte)” order each time you press  (Selecting “Full pitch” from the

function menu allows you to use double-byte when changing the input mode).

Mode 3 (T9 input) operates in the input modes of "Kanji/hiragana (double-byte)", "Kana (double-byte)", "Kana (single-byte)", "Alphabetic (double-byte)" and "Alphabetic (single-byte)".

- In the input modes of “Numeric (double-byte)” and “Numeric (single-byte)”, Mode 1 (5-touch) is automatically selected.
- Immediately after “Alphabetic (double-byte)” or “Alphabetic (single-byte)” is set, CapsLock mode is activated. The mode changes in “CapsLock mode” → “Released (lowercase mode)” → “Shift mode” order each time you press .
- Entered characters are always uppercase in “CapsLock mode”. In “Shift mode”, only the first character is entered in uppercase, and subsequent characters will be in lowercase. Entered characters are always lowercase when neither mode is selected.
- After a character is confirmed in “Shift mode”, the mode is released.

- **Entering text**

<Example: Entering “春” in T9 Kanji change mode>

1 ▶ “Kanji/hiragana input mode”

2 Enter characters to be converted

$\boxed{6}_{\text{MNO}}$ (は column), $\boxed{9}_{\text{XYZ}}$ (ら column)

Candidates, which are predicted from a combination of “は column” and “る column”, appear.

■ If you press the wrong key

- ▶ Press  to delete the character ▶ Press the key again

■ If there are no recognized candidates for the entered characters

- Characters that cannot be recognized are displayed in gray ► Use  to change the range of characters to be converted

■ To change the conversion candidate display mode (Kanji/Kana/Alphabetic)

-

3 **Use to select a candidate**

The selected conversion candidate appears in the text entry area.

- To return to entering characters to be converted

-

■ To convert directly to characters other than the displayed conversion candidates

- ▶ (CHG) ▶ Use to select a candidate



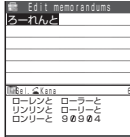
● Editing the conversion candidates

<Example: Entering “らわらわた” and converting it to “爛々と”>

1 Enter characters to be converted

[934] (ら column), [025] (わ column), [934] (ら column), [025] (わ column), [454] (た column)

The conversion candidates predicted from “らわらわた” are displayed. In this case, “らん” does not appear.

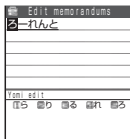


2 (Yomi) or [≡] (Yomi)

The FOMA terminal switches to candidate editing mode and the cursor moves to the first candidate. The “ら” column characters are listed in the conversion candidate display area.

3 Press a corresponding keypad to the number for the character you want to enter

In this case, press [1*] (ら). After you correct the character, the cursor moves to the next character. Use the same procedure to correct the conversion candidates.



■ If you do not want to correct a conversion candidate

▶ Use [C] to move the cursor to the next character to be corrected

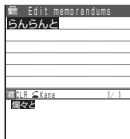
■ To exit edit mode in mid-operation

▶ [Return] (Return)

The characters corrected before exiting edit mode are displayed as the conversion candidates.

4 Use [C] to select “爛々と”

“爛々と” will be listed at the top of conversion candidates when “らわらわた” is input from the next time.

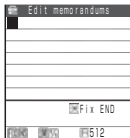


● Using fix mode to enter conversion candidates

<Example: Entering a reading “はためく”>

1 [≡] (Fix mode)

The input mode changes to Fix mode and “[≡]” in the information display area changes to “FIX”.

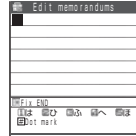


2 Press the key for the column that includes the character you want to enter

In this case, press [1234]. The “は” column characters are listed in the conversion candidate display area.

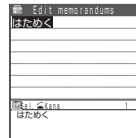
3 Press a corresponding keypad to the number for the character you want to enter

In this case, press [1] (は). Use the same procedure to enter the rest of readings.



4 [≡] (Fix END)

When you press [≡] (Fix END), the conversion candidates appear and you can convert them to kanji or katakana by using [C] then [≡] (CHG).



● Setting T9 change mode MENU35

When you enter characters using the T9 input method, you can specify whether to convert entered characters to Kanji or to Kana.

1 [menu] [Settings] ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Character input set” ▶ “T9 change mode” ▶ Select any item

T9 Kanji change mode (default)	Converts the entered characters into kanji.
T9 Kana change mode	Converts the entered characters into kana.

Using word prediction MENU35

Default setting ON

The FOMA terminal's word prediction function works by automatically storing character strings that you enter so that the stored character string is included in your list of candidates as well as common phrases the next time you enter the same character string.

● Candidates of word prediction are preinstalled at default.

1 [menu] [Settings] ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Character input set” ▶ “Prediction” ▶ “ON”

■ To deactivate the word prediction
▶ “OFF”

Using word prediction to enter text

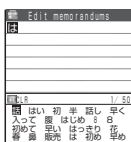
1 Enter the reading

The predictive candidates are listed in the guidance area.
In Mode 3 (T9 input), entering a character displays the candidates in gray, which can be selected.



2

The cursor appears in the guidance area and you can choose from the predictive candidates.



■ To return to reading entry



■ If no predictive candidates appear or there are no predictive candidates for the text you want to enter

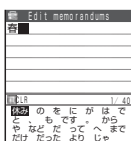
▶ Enter the reading unchanged

■ To delete predictive candidates

▶ (1 second or longer) ▶ "YES"

3 Select a predictive candidate

Once you confirm the text, candidates to follow the text will appear.



4 Select a candidate

■ If no candidates appear or if you do not want to enter any of them

Enter the next section of text unchanged

Displaying guidance MENU35 Default setting ON

Use this procedure to specify whether operation guidance area (p.440) is displayed in the Text entry (edit) screen.

1 "MENU" ▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Character input set" ▶ "Guidance" ▶ "ON"

■ To hide the guidance

▶ "OFF"

Entering text

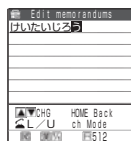
<Example: Entering "携帯二郎">

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.440) ▶

Enter the hiragana

■ If you press the wrong key

▶ Press to delete the character ▶ Press the key again



■ If you press the keys at the wrong number of times

▶ (HOME)

Returns to the previous character assigned to the same key.

■ To continuously enter a character assigned to the same key

▶ Press or the key again for 1 second or longer

Cursor moves and the following character can be entered now.

■ To confirm the hiragana

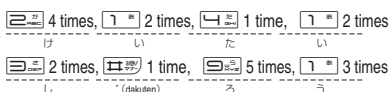


■ To display the conversion candidates for Alphabet and kana in Mode 1 (5-touch)

▶ (ABC123)

The conversion candidates are displayed for alphanumeric characters or katakana of the highlighted phrase. Pressing the same key continuously changes "き" to "22" and the numeric conversion candidates is also displayed according to the press count.

<Mode 1 (5-touch) >



<Mode 2 (2-touch) >



In Mode 2 (2-touch), entering a single digit and then confirming the input deletes the character. Always enter 2 digits.

<Mode 3 (T9-input) >



In Mode 3 (T-9 input), use to highlight sections of text so that the candidates for the desired characters appear and press (Yomi) or to switch to Yomi edit mode.

2 While in Mode 1 (5-touch) or Mode 2 (2-touch), use or (CHG) to convert the reading to kanji

The kanji candidate for the first phrase is highlighted and the kanji candidates for the remaining phrases are underlined (.).



■ If the kanji candidate is the desired kanji



The kanji are confirmed and the next phrase is highlighted.

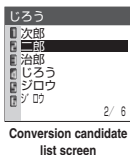
■ To change the conversion range

▶ Use  to change the range of characters to be converted

The kanji candidate changes as the conversion range changes. If there are no kanji to be converted for the selected range, the hiragana are displayed.

③ Use to display the conversion candidates

A list of conversion candidates for the highlighted phrase appears. Hiragana and katakana are included in the conversion candidates.



■ If the readings in the conversion range consists entirely of “あ”-level characters

Numbers are also included in the conversion candidates.

④ Select the kanji you want to enter

NOTE

- ◆ You can convert readings (hiragana) up to 20 characters long to kanji and convert up to 6 phrases at once.
- ◆ If the text is not converted to the desired kanji, changing the character reading to the “on” or “kun” reading may make the desired kanji appear.
- ◆ When 2 or more kanji characters cannot be converted at the same time, convert one character at a time.
- ◆ If a character still cannot be converted, use Kuten code. → p.450
- ◆ Some particularly complex kanji characters may be partly modified or abbreviated.
- ◆ If the converted characters exceed the limit on the number of characters that can be entered, a message appears asking whether to confirm the characters that do not exceed the limit.

● Switching between upper case and lower case

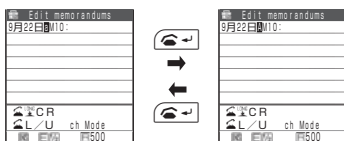
Use either of the following 2 methods to switch between upper case and lower case.

■ Pressing to switch the cases of entered characters

① Text entry (edit) screen (p.440)▶

Move the cursor to the character to be changed and press .

The character switches between upper case and lower case each time you press the key. This method can only be used when “ L/U” is displayed in the operation guidance.



■ Using the function menu before entering

① Text entry (edit) screen (p.440)▶

 (FUNC)▶ “Lower case”/“Upper case”

When you change to “Lower case”, “ Sm” appears in the information display area. No icon appears when “Upper case” is selected.

● Switching between Insert mode and Overwrite mode

When you enter text in “Insert”, the new text is inserted into the existing text. In “Overwrite”, the new text replaces the existing entered text.

① Text entry (edit) screen (p.440)▶

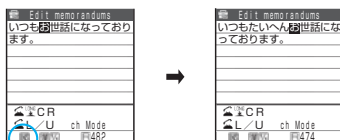
 (FUNC)▶ “Insert”/“Overwrite”

When you change to “Insert”, “ INS” appears in the information display area, and “ OVR” appears when you select “Overwrite”.

When the Text entry (edit) screen first appears, Insert mode is always selected.

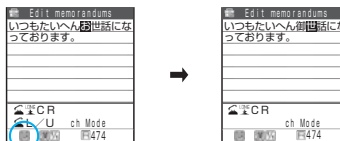
● Inserting text

Select “Insert” and use  to move the cursor the position immediately to the right of the character, where you want to insert text. When you enter text, it is inserted to the left of the cursor.



● Overwriting text

Select “Overwrite” and use  to move the cursor to the text you want to overwrite. When you enter text, it is inserted to the left of the cursor.



● Entering a space (blank)

Use either of the following 2 methods to enter a space (blank).

- Move the cursor to the next right character to which the space (blank) is to be input. A double-byte space is inserted in double-byte input and a single-byte space is input in single-byte input. A space is counted as a character.

■ Pressing  at the end of the sentence

- 1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.440)▶ Move the cursor to the end of the sentence followed by no letters and press 

■ Entering a space (blank) from the function menu

- 1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.440)▶  (FUNC)▶ “Space”

● Inserting a line feed

You can begin a new line by entering a line feed symbol “”. There are the following ways to insert a line feed “”.

■ Pressing  at the end of the sentence

- 1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.440)▶ Move the cursor to the end of the sentence followed by no letters and press 

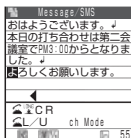
A line feed symbol “” is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

■ Pressing  for 1 second or longer

- 1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.440)▶ Move the cursor to the point where you want to insert the line feed and press  (1 second or longer)

This method can only be used when “ C/R” is displayed in the operation guidance.

A line feed symbol “” is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.



■ Using the function menu

- 1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.440)▶  (FUNC)▶ “Line feed”

A line feed symbol “” is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

NOTE

- ◆ The line feed symbol “” can be deleted and over-written in the same way as normal text.
- ◆ The line feed symbol “” is counted as 1 double-byte character. However the SMS message input is different for counting. → p.288
- ◆ You may not be able to insert a line feed “” in an i-mode text box.

● Inserting symbols

Use this procedure to enter symbols such as brackets, Greek characters and units. Note that you cannot enter double-byte symbols in the e-mail address storage display, i-mode mail address input display or URL input display.

- 1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.440)▶

 (FUNC)▶ “Symbols”▶ Select a symbol to be inserted

“Symbols and Special Characters” → p.465

NOTE

- ◆ Single-byte symbols are displayed when you can only enter single-byte characters.

● Entering face symbols

You can enter the stored face symbols by selecting on the list.

- 1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.440)▶

 (FUNC)▶ “Face Mark”

The “face mark list” screen appears. The meaning appears under the face mark.



- 2 Select a face symbol you want to enter

“Smiley Face Symbols” → p.467

NOTE

- ◆ If you select the download dictionary for face symbols in “Download dictionary”, the face symbols stored in the download dictionary are also displayed.
- ◆ The selected face symbol is displayed first next time the face symbol list is displayed.

● Entering pictographs

You can enter pictographs such as a face, weather or animal in the Text entry (edit) display for items such as i-mode mail messages, text memos and common phrases.

- Up to 12 previously entered pictographs are stored in Pictograph 1 and Pictograph 2 respectively. The stored pictographs are displayed at the start of each row in the respective Pictograph 1 and Pictograph 2 displays. Pictographs entered by pressing  (PI · SB) are also stored.

- 1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.440)▶

 (FUNC)▶ “Pictograph”▶ Select a pictograph

“Pictographs” → p.466

The list changes in “Pictograph 1” → “Pictograph 2” → “Full pitch 1” → “Full pitch 2” → “Half pitch” order each time you press .

■ To set PI · SB input mode

▶  (PI · SB)

● Entering symbols and pictographs continuously

Display symbol and pictograph candidates so that symbols and pictographs can be entered until the candidates display is cleared.

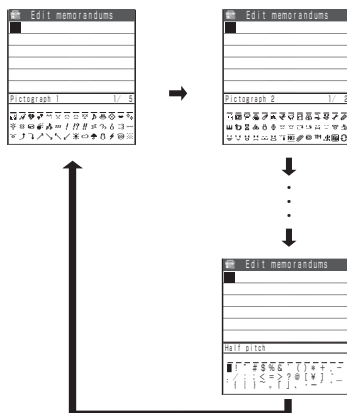
- Entering symbols → p.465
- Pictographs → p.466

1 Text entry (edit) screen ▶ (PI・SB)

The Pictograph 1 candidates appear in the guidance area. The “current page/total pages” figures are displayed in the top-right corner of the guidance area.

2 Press (PI・SB) to switch to a different candidate display

The list changes in “Pictograph 1” → “Pictograph 2” → “Full pitch 1” → “Full pitch 2” → “Half pitch” order each time you press (PI・SB).



■ To set the full screen mode

▶ (Full)

3 Select a symbol or pictograph

The selected symbol or pictograph is entered. You can then continue on directly to enter other symbols or pictographs. Up to 14 symbols and pictographs are displayed on the first line of the symbols and pictographs list.



4 To finish entering, press (CLR)

Continuous pictograph/symbol input ends.

● Using character conversion to enter symbols, face symbols and pictographs

In “Kanji/hiragana input mode”, you can enter symbols, face symbols and pictographs by entering and converting the corresponding readings.

■ Entering symbols

Entering and converting “きこう” in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” displays symbol candidates. You can also enter a symbol by entering and converting a symbol name such as “かつこ” or “さんかく”.

“Symbols in Japanese conversion” → p.466

■ Entering face symbols

Entering and converting “かお” or “かおもじ” in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” displays face symbol candidates. You can also enter a face symbol by entering and converting a face symbol name such as “ありがとう” or “さよなら”.

“Smiley Face Symbols” → p.467

■ Entering pictographs

Entering and converting a meaning of a pictograph such as “はーと” or “おんぶ” in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” displays pictograph candidates.

“Pictographs” → p.466

● Deleting text

Use (←) to move the cursor to the text you want to delete and press (CLR) briefly (less than 1 second). The character in the cursor position is deleted.



■ When there is no character in the cursor position

The character to the left of the cursor is deleted.

■ If you press (CLR) for 1 second or longer

The character in the cursor position and all the characters to the right of the cursor are deleted.

■ If you press (CLR) for 1 second or longer when there are no characters to the right of the cursor

All the text is deleted.

● Data protection during text entry and edit

When you are entering text in the Text entry (edit) screen and the battery fails or your receive a voice call, the entered text is stored and not cleared from the screen.

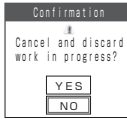
■ If the battery fails

If the low-voltage alarm sounds during text entry, the Text entry (edit) screen is replaced by the "Recharge battery" message screen. When this happens, the entered text is automatically confirmed and saved so that you can continue entering the text when you power the FOMA terminal back up and retrieve the function. However, in some functions the entered data is not saved. Also, unconfirmed text that is being converted is not saved.

Re-editing phonebook entries → p.113

■ If you press

If you press  while entering text, a message appears asking whether to exit text entry. However, this message does not appear if no text is entered.



<To quit without saving text>

Select "YES". The previous screen or standby screen reappears without saving the entered text. You can also exit the text entry display without saving the entered text by pressing .

<To continue entering text>

Select "NO". The text entry (edit) screen reappears with the entered text still displayed. You can also return to the Text entry (edit) screen by pressing .

■ When you receive a voice call

If you receive a voice call while entering text, you can answer the call without disturbing the text being entered. When the call ends, the Text entry (edit) screen reappears. During a voice call, you can return to the Text entry (edit) screen by pressing  (MULTI) to display the Task change screen. → p.400

Function menu (Text entry (edit) screen)

Face Mark	"Entering face symbols" → p.446
Lower case, Upper case	"Switching between upper case and lower case" → p.445
Half pitch, Full pitch	"Switching between double-byte and single-byte" → pp.441, 442
Copy	"Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → p.450
Cut	
Paste	
Common phrases	"Entering common phrases" → p.448
Space	"Entering a space (blank)" → p.445
Line feed	"Inserting a line feed" → p.446
Symbols	"Inserting symbols" → p.446
Pictograph	"Entering pictographs" → p.446
Kuten code	"Kuten Code" → p.450
Overwrite, Insert	Selects whether to insert or replace text at the cursor location during text entry. → p.445
Quote data	
• Phonebook	"Entering text by quoting personal data or phonebook entries" → p.449
• Own data	

• Access reader	Pastes text data scanned by "Access reader". "Scanning Text" → p.203
• Bar code reader	Pastes text data scanned by "Bar code reader". "Using the Bar Code Reader" → p.200
Refer dic.	Starts the dictionary. "Using Dictionaries" → p.416
Prediction OFF, Prediction ON	Specifies whether to turn the word prediction function (displays previously entered words with similar spelling) ON or OFF.
CHG input method	Changes the text entry mode to "Mode 1(5-touch)", "Mode 2(2-touch)" or "Mode 3(T9 input)".
T9 Kana CHG mode, T9 Kanji CHG mode	When you enter characters using the T9 input method, you can specify whether to convert entered characters to Kanji or to Kana. Switching the text entry method is only a temporary change. Once text entry exits and the Text entry (edit) screen reappears, it returns to the setting specified in "T9 change mode" under "Character input set".
Jump	Moves the cursor quickly to the beginning or end of sentence.
UNDO	Restores the status of an entered character to previous.
Change window	Switches between windows when a function operation screen and the Text entry (edit) screen are shown at the same time. "Changing the Active Window" → p.452

● Entering common phrases

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.440) ▶

 (FUNC) ▶ "Common phrases" ▶

Select a folder

"Common Phrases" → p.467

2 Select a common phrase ▶

NOTE

◆ Common phrases can be used in the following Text entry (edit) displays:

- Text memo
- Common phrases
- Common phrases folder name
- Schedule
- To Do list
- Wake-up message
- Edit in i-mode text box
- i-mode mail subject
- i-mode mail message
- i-mode mail header
- i-mode mail signature
- i-mode mail quotation mark
- Auto-sort subject
- Search mail subject
- Text edit with i-øppli
- Dictionary

- ◆ Fixed common phrases are displayed (represented) differently depending on the input mode, as shown below. Original common phrases and fixed common phrases that have been modified are displayed as stored regardless of the input mode.
 - Mode 1 (2-touch) and Mode 3 (T-9 input) :
Displayed as kanji/hiragana in Kanji/hiragana input mode.
Displayed as single-byte katakana in other input modes.
 - Mode 2 (2-touch) :
Displayed as kanji/hiragana in double-byte input mode.
Displayed as single-byte katakana in single-byte input mode.
(In English mode, the fixed common phrases are the same regardless of the input mode.)

● Entering text by quoting personal data or phonebook entries

In the Text entry (edit) screen for an e-mail message or "Text memo", you can use this procedure to enter the name, readings, phone number, e-mail address, street address, birthday or memo stored in the "Phonebook" or in the "Own number".

- Data cannot be quoted from some Text entry (edit) screen.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.440)▶ ☐ (FUNC)▶ "Quote data"▶ "Phonebook" or "Own data"

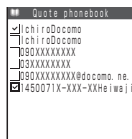
■ When "Phonebook" is selected

▶ Select "Search group", "Search column" or "Search all"▶ Search the phonebook for the entry to be quoted
Searching the phonebook (search method specification)→p.116

■ When "Own data" is selected

▶ Enter your security code

2 Select the item to be quoted



Quoting a phonebook entry

3 ☐ (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆ When you quote a street address, the zip code "〒" symbol and "-" are not quoted.

<Common phrases> MENU38 Editing and Storing Common Phrases

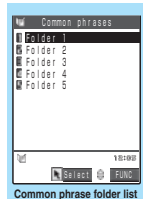
This function allows you to store common phrases in advance so that they can be retrieved from the Text entry (edit) screen later. Common phrases stored at the time of purchase can be edited (changed).

- Common phrases are stored in 5 folders. Folders 1 and 2 each contain 10 preset fixed common phrases. You can modify preset common phrases. Folders 3 to 5 will each hold up to 10 original common phrases. You can also rename the folders to suit the uses of the common phrases they contain.
- Common Phrases→p.467

Composing a new common phrase

1 menu▶ Common phrases▶ "Common phrases"

The "Common phrases folder list" screen appears.



Common phrase folder list
Function menu▶p.450

2 Select a folder

The "Common phrase list" screen appears.



Common phrase list
Function menu▶p.450

3 Highlight "<Not stored>" and press ☐ (Edit)▶ Enter a common phrase

NOTE

- ◆ Common phrases can contain up to 64 double-byte or 128 single-byte characters.
- ◆ You can include pictographs in common phrases for mail. When an i-mode mail that contains pictographs is sent to a mobile phone of other company (au/Vodafone/Tu-Ka), the pictographs are automatically changed to similar ones supported by the receiver's mobile phone. However, pictographs may not be displayed correctly depending on the model or on functions supported by a receiver's mobile phone.
- ◆ Fixed common phrases are retrieved as kanji/hiragana when the text entry method is "Kanji/hiragana input mode" in Mode 1 (5-touch) or Mode 3 (T9 input) or "double-byte character input" in Mode 2 (2-touch), and as "single-byte katakana" when another text entry method is used.
(In English mode, the fixed common phrases are the same regardless of the input mode.)

Function menu (Common phrases folder list screen)

Edit folder name	▶Edit a folder name Changes the selected folder name. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Reset name	Restores the folder name to default.

NOTE

- ◆ If there are no characters entered in the folder name to be changed, it returns to the default folder name.

Function menu (Common phrase list screen)

Edit	▶Edit a common phrase Edits the selected common phrase.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted common phrase.
Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all common phrases.

NOTE

- ◆ Deleting any fixed common phrases that has been changed reverts to the default setting. Unchanged fixed common phrases cannot be deleted.

Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text

- Only one item of copied or cut data can be stored. Copying or cutting a new item overwrites the previously stored text.

Copying (or cutting) text

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.440)▶

☐ (FUNC)▶“Copy” or “Cut”

You can also copy using Function menu (PDF data screen) (p.392).

2 Highlight the beginning of the text to be copied or cut▶●



3 Move the cursor to the end of the text to be copied or cut▶●

The selected range of the characters are stored. You can store up to 5,000 double-byte characters or 10,000 single-byte characters.

■ If the text was cut

The selected range of the characters are deleted, but stored in the FOMA terminal.

■ If you select the blank spaces including no characters

Two single-byte spaces are inserted in double-byte input mode and one single-byte space is inserted in single-byte input mode.

Pasting text

Once you have cut or copied text, you can paste that text as many times as you like until you cut or copy other text or turn the FOMA terminal off.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.440)▶

☐ (FUNC)▶“Paste”

■ If the text to be pasted includes characters that cannot be entered in the intended Text entry (edit) display

A message appears notifying you that the characters will be replaced with spaces when the text is pasted.

Kuten Code

This function provides a way of entering kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbols and alphanumeric characters using 4-digit kuten codes.

- Kuten code and characters that can be entered by using kuten codes→p.468
- Actual characters or symbols on the screen may look different from the ones in the Kuten Code list.

<Example: Entering “慶” (kuten code 2336)>

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.440)▶



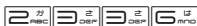
The input mode changes to “Kuten code” and “☐” appears in the information display area.



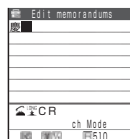
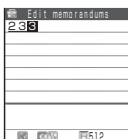
■ When the text entry mode is Mode 3 (T9 input)

▶Text entry (edit) screen▶☐ (FUNC)▶ “Kuten code”

2 Enter the kuten code



The character (“慶” in this example) for the entered code appears and the FOMA terminal reverts to the original input mode.



- If there is no corresponding character for the entered kuten code
A space is entered.

NOTE

- ◆ When the text entry mode is "Mode 1(5-touch)" or "Mode 2(2-touch)", you still switch to kuten code input by selecting "Kuten code" from the function menu.

<Own dictionary>

MENU82

Storing Frequently Used Words

Default setting
Not stored

Using this procedure to store frequently used words in an own dictionary under your preferred reading allows you to recall those words by entering and converting the reading in the Text entry (edit) screen.

- Up to 100 words can be stored in the Own dictionary.
- A word can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters. A reading can contain up to 10 double-byte hiragana characters.

Adding a new word

1 menu → Own dictionary

The "Own dictionary" screen appears.



Function menu → p.451

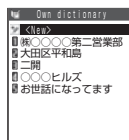
2 "<New>" → Enter a word → Enter the reading

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot enter line feeds or common phrases as words or their readings.
- ◆ Symbols other than dakuten and han-dakuten (ゝ, ー, ！, ？) cannot be stored as readings.
- ◆ Even if you insert a space between readings, it will be automatically deleted at the time of register.

Checking words

1 menu → Own dictionary



2 Select a word you want to check

■ To edit a word

▶ Select a word you want to edit → (Edit)

Function menu (Own dictionary screen)

Edit	Edits a stored word.
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted word.
• Delete selected	▶ Use (Use) to select a checkbox () → (Finish) → "YES" Deletes multiple words.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code → "YES" Deletes all words.

<Clear learned>

MENU35

Resetting the Learning Record

The learning dictionary contains character strings that were entered in the past and automatically stored as candidates for character conversion. This procedure resets the learning dictionary to its default status at the time of purchase.

1 menu → Other settings → Character input set → Clear learned → Enter your security code → Select any item

T9/Expect words/Pic.	Clears the learning records stored for "Mode 3(T9 input)", "Prediction", "Pictographs" and "Symbols".
Kana/Kanji change/face	Clears the learning record stored for kana-kanji conversion and the sorting order of the face mark screen.

<Download dictionary>

Selecting a Dictionary to Use

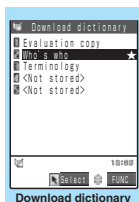
Default setting
Not stored

This function enables you to download dictionaries for Japanese text conversion from the i-mode sites and specify them for use in conversion.

- You can store and activate up to 5 downloaded dictionaries.
- Downloaded dictionaries → p.229

1 menu → "DL dictionary"

The "Download dictionary" screen appears.



Function menu → p.452

2 Select a dictionary you want to set

A star "★" appears next to the selected dictionary.

■ To deselect the selected dictionary

▶ Select a dictionary with a star (★)

The dictionary is deselected and the star "★" disappears.

NOTE

- ◆ If pictographs are registered in the downloaded dictionary, the pictographs can be entered by converting kana-kanji.
- ◆ If you set the download dictionary for face symbols, up to 600 face symbols (including the preinstalled 100 face symbols) can be displayed on the face mark screen when you select "Face Mark" from the function menu during text input.
- ◆ If you add two download dictionaries for face marks and activate both, the face symbols stored in the first-activated download dictionary are displayed as a list.

Function menu (Download dictionary screen)

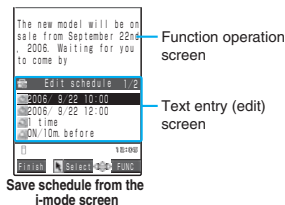
Edit title	▶ Edit a title Changes the title of the selected download dictionary. A title can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Set dictionary	Selects or deselects a downloaded dictionary. A dictionary is set when it is downloaded.
Dictionary info	Displays information on the selected download dictionary.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted download dictionary.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all download dictionaries.

NOTE

- ◆ If you try to edit a dictionary name and try to set the name when it is completely blank, it reverts to the original title.

Changing the Active Window

Some screens, such as saving schedule entries, are split into 2 windows showing the function operation screen and the Text entry (edit) screen.



- The function operation screen and Text entry (edit) screen are shown at the same time in the following situations:
 - Saving schedule entries while referring to an i-mode screen
 - Entering a word to search by activating dictionaries from the i-mode screen
 - Chat screen for Chat mail
 - Editing text while referring to the results of a dictionary search

Changing the active window

When a function operation screen and the Text entry (edit) screen are shown at the same time, you can use any of the 2 methods described below to switch between screens.

■ Using the function menu

Select "Change window" from the function menu to change the active window.

■ Using the Neuropointer

Slide your finger over the Neuropointer key to display the pointer and then use it to select the active window.

NOTE

- ◆ When you switch to the other screen, the entered text or cursor location in the current screen remains unchanged.
- ◆ You cannot switch screens when entering readings. However, if you press [αβγ] in alphabetic input mode to enter "http://", etc., you can switch screens. Characters being entered are automatically fixed.
- ◆ If you switch to i-mode screen while an edit screen is shown, you can only scroll the i-mode screen.
- ◆ You cannot switch screens in the Chat screen for chat mail.

● Appendix/ External Devices/ Troubleshooting

Menu Function List	454
Data Stored at the Time of Purchase	459
Key Assignment (5-touch input)	463
Key Assignment (2-touch input)	464
Key Assignment (T9 input)	465
Symbols and Special Characters	465
Pictographs	466
Smiley Face Symbols	467
Common Phrases	467
Kuten Codes	468
Multi Access Combination Patterns	472
Multitask Combination Patterns	473
Services Available for the FOMA terminal	474
Options and Accessories	474
Data Link Software	475
NEC Mobile PDF	476
Movie Playing Software	476
■ Troubleshooting	
Malfunction Checklist	477
If Any Error Message Appears	481
Warranty and After-Sales Service	487
Updating Software	489
Protecting the FOMA Terminal from Harmful Data	
..... Scanning function	493
Specifications	495
Counts for Storage, Registration and Protection Enabled on FOMA Terminal	496
Specific Absorption Rate of Mobile Phones	497

Menu Function List

Settings with are restored to default by “Reset” (p.420).

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
Mail						p.246
i-mode						p.215
i-oppli			—			p.308
Settings	Incoming call	Ring volume			Level 4	p.69
		Select ring tone		Phone	Pattern 1	p.128
				Videophone	Pattern 4	
				PushTalk	Pattern 1	
				Mail	Pattern 2	
				Chat mail	Pattern 2	
				MessageR	Pattern 3	
				MessageF	Pattern 3	
		Sound effect		Surround	OFF	p.130
				3Dsound	ON	
				SRS_WOW	OFF	
		Vibrator			OFF	p.131
		Illumination		Set color	Phone: Color 5 Videophone: Color 5 PushTalk: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Chat mail: Color 3 MessageR: Color 1 MessageF: Color 1	p.147
				Set pattern	Standard	
				Adjust color	Edit color name: Color 1 to 12 Adjust color tone: Default	
		Manner mode set			Manner mode (Original manner: Default → p.135)	p.135
		Disp. PH-book image	—		ON	p.140
		Answer setting			Any key answer	p.65
		Mail/Msg. ring time			ON (Ring time: 5 seconds)	p.133
		Ring time(sec.)		Set mute seconds	OFF Mute seconds(sec): 1 second (When Set mute seconds is set to “ON”)	p.175
				Missed calls display	Display	
		Info notice setting			Japanese display: ポイス (名前通知: OFF) English display: ON	p.74
		Record message		Record message	OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 (When Record msg. is set to “ON”) Ringing time: 8 sec. (When Record msg. is set to “ON”)	p.75
	Talk	Noise reduction			ON	p.62
		Quality alarm			High tone	p.132
		Reconnect signal			High tone	p.62
		Illumination in talk	—		OFF	p.147
		Set hold tone	—	On hold tone	Tone 1	p.71
				Holding tone	Melody 1	
		Setting when folded			End the call	p.66

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
Settings	Dialing	Pause dial			—	p.60
		Sub-address setting	—		ON	p.62
		Prefix setting	—		"WORLD CALL" (009130010) User setting: Not recorded	p.61
		Auto dial setting	—		OFF	p.419
		Int'l dial settings	—	Auto assist setting	Auto	p.54
				IDD Prefix setting	"WORLD CALL" (009130010) User setting: Not recorded	
				Country Code setting	"アメリカ" (Country Code: 1) User setting: Not recorded	
	Videophone	Visual preference	—		Normal	p.88
		Select image	—	On hold	Pre-installed	p.89
				Holding	Pre-installed	
				Substitute image	Chara-den (ブンブン(Dimo))	
				Record message	Pre-installed	
				Preparing	Pre-installed	
				Voice memo	Pre-installed	
		Auto redial as voice	—		OFF	p.88
		Remote monitoring	—	Other ID	Not recorded	p.93
				Ringing time	5 seconds	
				Set	OFF	
		Display setting	—	Main display	Other side	p.91
				Front camera Reverse	ON	
		Ntfy switch-mode	—		Indication ON	p.92
		Hands-free switch	—		ON	p.90
	Display	Display setting		Stand-by display	HX <STAND-BY>	p.137
				Wake-up display	HX <READY>	
				Dialing	HX <DIALING>	
				Calling	HX <CALLING>	
				V.phone Dialing	HX <DIALING>	
				V.phone Calling	HX <CALLING>	
				Mail sending	HX <SENDING>	
				Mail receiving	HX <RECEIVING>	
				Check new messages	HX <CHECKING>	
		Backlight		Lighting	ON (lighting)+Saver (Light time: 5 minutes)	p.142
				Charging	Standard	
				Area	LCD+Keys	
				Brightness	Level 2	
		Display design		Color pattern	Pattern 5	p.143
				Background 1	OFF	
				Background 2	Pattern 1	
		Image display			ON Stand-by: OFF Clock type: Digital 1 (Pict: ON) Image set: Pre-installed (HX <STAND-BY>) Called: ON (Image + Missed call) Mail: OFF Connection: ON (Backlight: OFF) Background I-appli: OFF	p.141

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
Settings	Display	Font		Type	Font 1	p.148
				Thickness	Medium	
		Desktop icon			Photo mode and Music Channel	p.149
		3D display setting	—		ON	p.151
		Select language			日本語 (Japanese)	p.45
		Original menu			Own number Check new messages Ring volume Vibrator Alarm clock Change security code	p.145
		Menu display set		Guidance	Picture & Text	p.143
				Menu display	List	
				Theme	HX	
				Memory focus	ON	
		Viewer settings	—		Picture	p.346
		Automatic display			OFF	p.124
		Icons			—	p.28
		Icons setting	—		ON	p.152
	Call time/ Charge	Call data			—	p.413
		Notice designate calls	—	Cost limit	Not set	p.414
				Notify cost limit	OFF	
				Alarm tone	Clock Alarm Tone	
				Volume	Level 4	
		Reset total			—	p.413
		Auto reset total cost	—		OFF	p.414
		Call time display			ON	p.148
	Clock	Set time			Auto time set ON	p.46
		Clock display		Display	Japanese display: 日本語 English display: ON	p.148
				Size	Big	
				Display type	World watch OFF	
		World watch	—	Time zone	GMT+00 (City: London)	p.47
				Summer time	OFF	
		Alarm setting	—		Alarm preferred	p.401
	Lock/ Security	Lock all	—		OFF	p.159
		PIM lock	—		OFF	p.166
					Group and item settings: All selected	
		SimpleLock	—		OFF	p.331
		IC card lock	—		OFF	p.330
		Self mode	—		OFF	p.176
		Keypad dial lock	—		OFF	p.170
		Reject unknown	—		Accept	p.175
		Call setting w/o ID			Accept Select ring tone: Same as ring tone Select calling disp.: Same as display	p.174
		Record display set	—	Received calls	ON	p.171
				Redial/Dialed calls	ON	
		Change security code			0000 (4 zeros)	p.157
		PIN setting	—		—	p.157

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
Settings	Lock/Security	Secret mode	   		OFF	p.161
		Secret data only mode	   		OFF	p.162
		Scanning function	—	Set scan	ON	p.493
	Connection setting	Set connection timeout	—		60 seconds	p.231
		Set check new messages	—		All checked	p.281
		Host selection	  		i-mode User defined host: Not recorded	p.231
		SMS center selection	—		DoCoMo User setting: Not set	p.290
		Certificate	—		Valid	p.235
		Certificate host	—		DoCoMo User setting host: Not recorded	p.237
	i-oppli settings	Disp. Software info	—		Not display	p.310
		End stand-by display	—		—	p.319
		i-oppli vol.	—		Level 4	p.312
	ToruCa settings	Receive from R/W	—		Accept	p.330
		Scroll	—		1 line	p.330
	External connection	USB mode setting	—		Communication mode	p.380
		Earphone	  		Earphone(only)	p.133
		Select microphone	—		Internal microphone	p.420
		Automatic answer	  		OFF Ring time: 6 seconds (When Automatic answer is set to "ON")	p.419
	Network setting	NW search mode	—		Manual	p.420
	Other settings	Keypad sound	  		ON	p.132
		Charge sound	—		ON	p.132
		Battery level	  		—	p.44
		External keys guard	   (1 second or longer)		OFF	p.170
		Character input set	  	Input mode	Mode 1(5-touch)	p.441
				Prediction	ON	p.443
				Guidance	ON	p.444
				T9 change mode	T9 Kanji change mode	p.443
				Clear learned	—	p.451
				CHG input size	Standard	p.441
		Neuropointer	—	Pointer	ON	p.146
				Simple	Normal	
		Reset settings	  		—	p.420
		Initialize	—		—	p.421
		Software Update	—		—	p.489
	Data box	My picture	  		—	p.344
		Music	—		—	p.298
		i-motion	—		—	p.355
		Melody	  		—	p.368
		Chara-den	—		—	p.364
		My document	—		—	p.388

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
LifeKit	Music Channel		—		—	p.294
	Bar code reader		—		—	p.200
	Receive Ir data		—		—	pp.386, 387
	ToruCa		—		—	p.327
	IC card content		—		—	p.327
	SD-PIM		—		—	p.376
	Camera		—		—	pp.187, 194
	Schedule		—		—	p.404
	Alarm clock		—	OFF		p.403
	To Do list		—		—	p.408
	Text memo		—		—	p.415
	Calculator		—		—	p.415
	Play/Erase msg.	 (MEMO/CHECK)	—		—	p.77
	Play/Erase VP msg.	—	—		—	p.78
	Voice memo		—		—	p.412
	Voice announce		—		—	p.412
	UIM operation	—	—		—	p.120
	Forwarding image	—		ON		p.382
	Access reader	—	—		—	p.203
	Dictionary	—	—		—	p.416
Network service	Chaku-moji		—	Create message	5 preinstalled	p.55
				MSG display settings	Calls with Caller ID	
				3D message display	ON	
	Caller ID Notification		—		—	p.47
	Voice Mail	—	—		—	p.424
	Call Waiting	—	—		—	p.425
	Call Forwarding	—	—		—	p.427
	Nuisance Call Blk	—	—		—	p.428
	Caller ID Request	—	—		—	p.428
	In-call arrival act	—	—	Answer		p.430
	Set in-call arrival	—	—		—	p.430
	Remote Control	—	—		—	p.431
	Dual Network	—	—		—	p.428
	English Guidance	—	—		—	p.429
	Additional service	—	—		—	p.432
	Service Numbers	—	—		—	p.429
	Multi Number	—	—	Select ring tone	Same as ring tone	p.431
Phone-book	Phonebook	—	—		—	pp.111, 115
	PushTalk	—	—		—	pp.102, 103
Own data	Own number		—		—	pp.48, 410
	Received calls		—		—	p.66
	Dialed calls	—	—		—	p.58
	Mail member		—		—	p.257
	Chat group	—	—		—	p.286
	Common phrases		—	Default common phrases (Folder name: Folder 1, 2)		p.449
	Own dictionary		—		—	p.451
	DL dictionary	—	—		—	p.452

Data Stored at the Time of Purchase

Stand-by display



HX <READY>



HX
<STAND-BY>



DJ-MIX



Illumination
Pipe



Techno
Groove



SOLID SOUND



SPACE RADAR



Music
Starship



COMBINE



Wall Art

Frame



N902IX Original



SOLID SOUND



DJ-MIX



Techno Groove



TARGET

Decomail-picture



Hurry



Love-Love



Bomb



Pun-Pun



Cheers



Erupt



Crying Face



Bell



Gyol



Question



Impression



Bow



Information



Agreed



Clock



Heart



Bacterium



Anger



Lightning



Tears



Sound



Surprise



Question Mark



Chick

OK OK OK OK OK OK OK

OK



No



Draky



Secret Message



ムンクの叫び



海水浴



Note



Geel!



Ichiban!



DOKI-DOKI



Good Idea



N902IX Original



Hip Hop Street



おどろき



ライン 星空



Snow



What!?



Bull's-Eye!



Shock!



Slime



SOLID SOUND



悲しい



おひるね



ライン お誕生日



Balloon 1



So embarrassing!



Banana



Bye-bye!



HoimiSlime



ATTENTION



ラブラブ



花火



ライン サッカー



Balloon 2



Oh, great!



Hiyoko

©BVIG

NOTE

◆ The images of Decomail-pictures shown here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

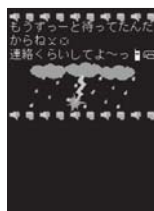
Auto Decomail-pictures

Emotion	Image			
Hurry				
Love				
Hate you				
Happy				
Angry				
Sad				
Fun				
Surprise				
Question				
Advice				
Cheer up				
Join				
Impression				
Please				
Information				
OK				
Reply/ Notice				

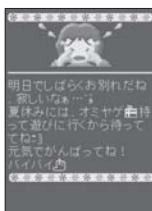
NOTE

◆ The images of Decomail-pictures shown here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

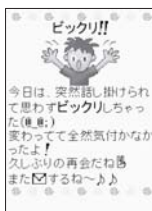
Templates



Irritating



Sad



Surprise!



Thank You!



Urgent



Cheer Up!



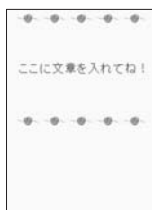
Mm-hm



Arghhh!



Come On



Sounds Nice



Twinkle Twinkle



Happy



N902iX Original



SOLID SOUND



DJ-MIX



SPACE RADAR



Hip Hop Street



ポンプン カフェ



ポンプン おひるね



ポンプン フラワー

©BVIG

NOTE

- The templates shown here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

Marker stamps

Cross	+	Heart1	♥	Heart2	♥	Kiss	💋	Tear	💧	Flame	🔥
Lightning	⚡	Sorry	🙇	Note	🎵	Flower	🌸	Love	LOVE LOVE	Anger	😡
Right	➡	Below	⬇	Left	⬅	Above	⬆	Here	ココ	No. 1	🏆
No. 2	②	No. 3	③	Party	🎉	OK	◯	NG	✗	Person	👤
Car	🚗	Asleep	💤	Question	?	Surprise	!	Shine	☀	Whirlpool	🌀
Punch	👊	Nose	👃								

Key Assignment (5-touch input)

Key	Kanji/hiragana input mode	Kana input mode
	あいうえお	アイウエオ
	かきくけこ	カキクケコ
	さしすせそ	サシスセソ
	たちつてと	タチツテト
	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ
	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ
	まみむめも	マミムメモ
	やゆよ	ヤユヨ
	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ
	わをんー	ワヲンー
	_____ *2	_____
	* ° ` ° ? ! ` ° *3	* ° ` ° ? ! ` ° *3

Key	Alphabetic input mode	Numeric input mode
	? ! - / & # () # ' ' ♥ ☎ *4	1
	A B C a b c	2
	D E F d e f	3
	G H I g h i	4
	J K L j k l	5
	M N O m n o	6
	P Q R S p q r s	7
	T U V t u v	8
	W X Y Z w x y z	9
	_____	0 + *5
	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp *6	* .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp *6
	. @ / ? ! () , _ - ' ~ *7 & ¥	# . @ / ? ! () , _ - ' ~ *7 & ¥

*1 : Lower case “フ” can be entered in double-byte input mode.

*2 : Pressing switches “Kanji/hiragana input mode” to “Kuten code”.

*3 : In “Kanji/hiragana input mode” and double-byte “Kana input mode”, “°” and “°” appear only when they can be attached to the previous character. “,” “°,” “?” “!” and “.” cannot be entered when you enter a reading into the own dictionary or UIM phonebook.

*4 : Valid only when composing SMS messages. You cannot enter “Pictograph” but “♥” and “☎”. Although symbols appear as single-byte characters, “♥” and “☎” always appear as double-byte characters.

*5 : “+” can be entered when you enter an SMS address by holding down the key for 1 second or longer.

6 : These characters do not appear in double-byte mode (except “” in numeric input mode).

*7 : This symbol appears as “~” in double-byte input mode.

■ : Lower case characters can be entered in the following two methods:

- Enter an upper case character then press to convert it to lower case.
- Select “Lower case” from the function menu then enter a character.

Key Assignment (2-touch input)

■ Double-byte input mode

Key		2nd key									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1st key	1	あ ぁ	い ぃ	う ぅ	え ぇ	お ぉ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	か 	き 	く 	け 	こ 	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	さ 	し 	す 	せ 	そ 	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	た 	ち 	つ 	て 	と 	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	な 	に 	ぬ 	ね 	の 	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	は 	ひ 	ふ 	へ 	ほ 	Z z	?	!	—	/
	7	ま 	み 	む 	め 	も 	¥	&			
	8	や 	(	ゆ 	) 	よ 	*	#			¹
	9	ら 	り 	る 	れ 	ろ 	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ 	を 	ん 	³ 	³ 	6	7	8	9	0

■ Single-byte input mode

Key		2nd key									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1st key	1	ア ア	イ イ	ウ ウ	エ エ	オ オ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	カ 	キ 	ク 	ケ 	コ 	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	サ 	シ 	ス 	セ 	ソ 	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	タ 	チ 	ツ 	テ 	ト 	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	ナ 	ニ 	ヌ 	ネ 	ノ 	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	ハ 	ヒ 	フ 	ヘ 	ホ 	Z z	?	!	.	/
	7	マ 	ミ 	ム 	メ 	モ 	¥	&			
	8	ヤ 	(	ユ 	) 	ヨ 	*	#			¹
	9	ラ @	リ /	ル .	レ .	ロ :	1 .ne.jp	2 .co.jp	3 .ac.jp	4 @docomo.ne.jp	5
	0	ワ -	ヲ .	ン .	、 .	、 .	6 www.	7 .com	8 .html	9 http://	0 https://

• A reading entered for a UIM phonebook entry is katakana even in double-byte input mode.

*1 : Upper case input mode (upper) and lower case input mode (lower) are switched each time  is pressed. You can enter an upper case character then press  to convert it to lower case.

*2 : Valid only when "Pictograph" is available, e.g. when you enter "Text memo" or "Common phrases". These are always double-byte characters. You cannot enter "Pictograph" but  and  when composing SMS messages.

*3 : In double-byte input mode, " " and " " appear only when they can be attached to the previous character. In other cases, " " and " " are replaced with spaces.

■ : A space is entered.

Key Assignment (T9 input)

- [illegible]

Symbols and Special Characters

■ Full pitch 1

、 ° , . ' : ; ? ! " °
 , 、 ° ^ _ \ ∇ ∫ ∫ ∫ ∫ ∫
 ♪ ♫ ○ — — — / \ ~ || | ...
 .. ' " " () [] {
 } < > 《 》 「 」 『 』 【 】 +
 - ± × ÷ = ≠ < > ≤ ≥ ∞ ∴
 ♂ ♀ ° ' " °C ¥ \$ £ ¢ % #
 & * @ § ☆ ★ ○ ● ◇ ◆ □
 ■ △ ▲ ▽ ▼ ※ 〒 → ← ↑ ↓ ▬
 ∈ ∋ ⊆ ⊇ ⊂ ⊃ ∪ ∩ ∧ ∨ ⇨ ⇩
 ⇨ ⇩ ∇ ∇ ∇ ∇ ∇ ∇ ∇ ∇ ∇ ∇
 √ ∞ ∞ ∴ ∫ ∫ Å % # b ♪ †
 ‡ ♪ ○ わ ゐ ゑ ゑ ワ 卅 エ ヲ カ ケ

А	В	Г	Д	Е	З	И	Θ	Ι	Κ	Λ	Μ
Ν	Ξ	Ο	Π	Ρ	Σ	Τ	Υ	Φ	Χ	Ψ	Ω
α	β	γ	δ	ε	ζ	η	θ	ι	κ	λ	μ
ν	ξ	ο	π	ρ	σ	τ	υ	φ	χ	ψ	ω
А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ё	Ж	З	И	Й	К
Л	М	Н	О	П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц
Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы	Ь	Э	Ю	Я	а	б	в
г	д	е	ё	ж	з	и	й	к	л	м	н
о	п	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ
ъ	ы	ь	э	ю	я	—		┐	┑	┒	┓
└	┘	┙	┚	┛	├	┤	┥	┦	┧	┨	┩
┪	┫	┬	┭	┮	┯	┰	┱	┲	┳	┴	┵
┶	┷	┸	┹	┺	┻	┼	┽	┾	┿	┺	┻

Full pitch 2

①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	⑩	⑪	⑫
⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	⑲	⑳	I	II	III	IV
V	VI	VII	VIII	IX	X	リ	キ	サ	シ	ス	ン
ル	ネ	ノ	ハ	ヘ	ド	ニ	ホ	フ	ル	セ	mm
cm	km	mg	kg	cc	m	平成	”	”	No.	KK	TEL
⓪	㊦	㊧	㊨	㊩	(株)	(有)	(代)	明治	大正	昭和	≡
∫	ℳ	Σ	√	⊥	∠	∟	△	∴	∩	∪	♥*
☎*											

Half pitch

!	"	#	\$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+
,	-	.	/	:	;	<	=	>	?	@
[	¥	]	^	_	`	{		}	~	。
「	」	、	・	—	*	°				

*: Appears when entering SMS message body.

Symbols in Japanese conversion

You can enter symbols by entering and converting “きこう” to display the symbol candidates then selecting from the symbol candidates. You can also enter the following characters then convert the text into the desired symbol.

Name (characters to enter)	Symbol
あっと、あっとまーく	@
いこーる	=
えん	¥
おす	♂
おなじ	々
おなじく	//
おんぷ	♪
かける	×
かっこ	() [] {} <>
	《 》 「 」 『 』 “ ”
	” ” ” ” ” ” ” ” ” ”

Name (characters to enter)	Symbol
から	～
こめ	※
ころん	:
こんま	,
さんかく	△▲▽▼
しゃせん	/ \
しかく	□■◇◆
しめ	♂
たす	+
どう	ゝ っ っ っ っ 々
ぱーせんと	%

Name (characters to enter)	Symbol
ひく	—
ひしがた	◇◆
ほし	☆★
まる	○●◎
むげん	∞
めす	♀
やじるし	↔ ↗ ↘
ゆうびん	〒
るーと	√
わる	÷

Pictographs

Pictograph 1



Pictograph 2



NOTE

- Some pictographs in a message may not appear correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them. Even if the receiving phone is an i-mode terminal, Pictograph 2 may not be displayed properly if it is not compatible with Pictograph 2.

Smiley Face Symbols

Smiley Face Symbols

Reading	Face symbol	Reading	Face symbol	Reading	Face symbol
ありがと (Thanks)	m(◡)m	はてな (Wait a minute)	(・・?)	なむい (I'm sleepy)	(p_~)/
ばんざい (Hurrah!)	\(^o^)/	きらりん (Twinkle, twinkle)	(☆.☆)	めも (Memo)	φ(。)
わーい (Wow!)	(^o^)	しくしく (Sob, sob)	(T.T)	うん (Yeah)	(^o^)(^o^)
わーい (Wow!)	(^▽^)	さよなら (Good-bye!)	(T.T)/~	かんばい (Cheer up!)	(^)/▽☆▽/(^)
わーい (Wow!)	(*(^□^*)	いたた (Ouch!)	◇<	ども (Well, well)	\(^o^)/
わーい (Wow!)	o(^▽^o)(o^▽^o)	いたた (Ouch!)	(><)	がまん (Patient)	(;^X^)
わーい (Wow!)	(≧▽≦)	えーん (Crying)	(; ;)	こんにちは (Hello!)	^(<▽^<)/
おーい (Hey!)	(^o^)/	えーん (Crying)	(^D)	こんにちは (Hello!)	(・▽・)/
びい (Vvvv!)	(^v)	えーん (Crying)	Ω_A_Ω;	こんにちは (Hello!)	(●▽●)/
ぎやはは (Ha-ha!)	(^q^)/	えーん (Crying)	(/d<。)	いいな (You lucky!)	(o>ω<o)
あは (Ah ha!)	(o^o^o)	えーん (Crying)	。<p>^<q>。	いいな (You lucky!)	(@▽@)
あは (Ah ha!)	^o^ ;	えーん (Crying)	(T ω \)	いいな (You lucky!)	(m^□^m)
にこ (Smile!)	(^~^)	なぜ (Why?)	(?~?)	うーん (Hmm)	(^~~ ;)
にこ (Smile! smile)	(*(^~*)	がーん (Shocked!)	(□)!!	てる (Embarrassed)	(/▽/)
にこ (Smile!)	(o^▽^o)	がーん (Shocked!)	(;)	てる (Embarrassed)	(*/ω*)
にこ (Smile!)	(o^▽^o)	がーん (Shocked!)	Σ(□ ;)	てる (Embarrassed)	(//▽//)
にこ (Smile!)	(^▽^)	えへん (Ahem!)	(^~^)	てる (Embarrassed)	(≧ω≦)
にこ (Smile!)	(●^~●)	む (Sullen)	(- - -)	しあわせ (Happy!)	+。(*/▽^)+。
にこ (Smile!)	(o^▽^o)	む (Sullen)	o(^~^o)	しあわせ (Happy!)	^▽^/
ちゅ (Kiss!)	(^3^)/	いかり (Angry)	(^)	しあわせ (Happy!)	(*/▽*)
ちゅ (Kiss! Kiss!)	(^ε^)-☆Chu!!	むか (Offended)	(;_~+	なかよし (Pal)	^~^)^(^~^)
わくわく (I'm excited!)	o(^~o)	むか (Offended)	(^~^)	ごめん (Sorry)	(*C*)
ういんく (Wink)	(^~)	むか (Offended)	(^~^ ;)	いじいじ (Mopey)	φ(。 ;)
さよなら (Good-bye!)	(^o^)/~	こそこそ (Whisper)	(・・)	いじわる (Wicked)	ψ(^▽^#)
さよなら (Good-bye!)	(^D)/~	じーっ (Gaze)	(- -)	よろしく (Thank you)	☆^(>^*)
かんば (Cheer up!)	p(^o^)q	きこえない (Can't hear)	(- -)	こまった (Good god!)	><
ね (Isn't it?)	(^o^b)	こまったもんだ (My goodness)	(^~^)&	やだ (Not)	(O><O)
ほりほり (Scratch, scratch!)	(^~s)	ぶたー (Pig)	^o^	へこむ (Feel down)	(^~)
ひやあせ (Cold Sweats)	(^p^ ;)	こあら (Koala)	(-Q-)	へこむ (Feel down)	(^ω^)
あせあせ (Sweat! Sweat!)	(;_~A	いっぶく (Take a break)	(^o^)^	びっくら (Ack!)	(o d o)
びくっ (Twitch!)	(*~*)	いっぶく (Take a break)	(^o^)^~	びっくら (Ack!)	w(°o°)w
どき (Shocked!)	(@-@ ;)	ほし (Star)	☆~	だっしゅ (Dash)	ε=┐(・_・)┌
え (What?)	(@ @ ;)	ねてる (Zzzzz...)	(- -)zz		
めがてん (WHA?T?)	(・・ ;)	なむい (I'm sleepy)	\(^o^)/		

NOTE

- ◆ Face symbols can be entered from "Face Mark" under the Text entry (edit) function menu. → p.446

Common Phrases

Folder 1 (fixed common phrases)

No.	Message
1	Sorry
2	Thank you
3	Congratulations!
4	It's time
5	Wait a minute
6	Just arrived
7	Schedule change
8	Where are you?
9	Do your best
0	What are you doing?

Folder 2 (fixed common phrases)

No.	Message
1	All right
2	I hope you are well
3	Well done
4	Emergency
5	How do you think?
6	Please call
7	I will be late
8	Leave a message on voice mail
9	E-mail me via i-mode
0	Thank you for your help

Kuten Codes

<Guide to the kuten code table>

First enter "digits 1-3 of the kuten code" then "digit 4".

● Some kuten codes in the table here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes
010 !	0	075 б	0	191 蟹	0
011 "	1	076 в	1	192 開	1
012 >	2	077 г	2	193 階	2
013 <	3	078 д	3	194 開	3
014 <	4	080 е	4	195 貝	4
015 +	5	081 ж	5	196 貝	5
016 +	6	082 з	6	197 貝	6
017 +	7	083 и	7	198 貝	7
018 +	8	130 ①	8	200 乾	8
019 +	9	131 ②	9	201 乾	9
020 +		132 ③		202 乾	
021 +		133 ④		203 乾	
022 +		134 ⑤		204 乾	
023 +		135 ⑥		205 乾	
024 +		136 ⑦		206 乾	
026 +		137 ⑧		207 乾	
027 +		138 ⑨		208 乾	
028 +		139 ⑩		209 乾	
029 +		160 ⑪		210 乾	
031 4	0	161 ⑫		211 乾	
032 5	1	162 ⑬		212 乾	
033 6	2	163 ⑭		213 乾	
034 7	3	164 ⑮		214 乾	
035 8		165 ⑯		215 乾	
036 9		166 ⑰		216 乾	
037 f		167 ⑱		217 乾	
038 g		168 ⑲		218 乾	
039 h		169 ⑳		219 乾	
040 i		170 ㉑		220 乾	
041 j		171 ㉒		221 乾	
042 k		172 ㉓		222 乾	
043 l		173 ㉔		223 乾	
044 m		174 ㉕		224 乾	
045 n		175 ㉖		225 乾	
046 o		176 ㉗		226 乾	
047 p		177 ㉘		227 乾	
048 q		178 ㉙		228 乾	
050 r		179 ㉚		229 乾	
051 s		180 ㉛		230 乾	
052 t		181 ㉜		231 乾	
053 u		182 ㉝		232 乾	
054 v		183 ㉞		233 乾	
055 w		184 ㉟		234 乾	
056 x		185 ㊱		235 乾	
057 y		186 ㊲		236 乾	
058 z		187 ㊳		237 乾	
060 A		188 ㊴		238 乾	
061 B		189 ㊵		239 乾	
062 C		190 ㊶		240 乾	
063 D		191 ㊷		241 乾	
064 E		192 ㊸		242 乾	
065 F		193 ㊹		243 乾	
066 G		194 ㊺		244 乾	
070 H		195 ㊻		245 乾	
071 I		196 ㊼		246 乾	
072 J		197 ㊽		247 乾	
073 K		198 ㊾		248 乾	
074 L		199 ㊿		249 乾	

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	
245 糊	0	315 雇	0	377 誦	0
246 鼓	1	316 後	1	378 水	1
247 之	2	317 饒	2	379 隨	2
248 御	3	318 功	3	380 杉	3
249 乞	4	319 饒	4	381 推	4
250 効	5	320 饒	5	382 錘	5
251 巧	6	321 工	6	383 錘	6
252 巧	7	322 抗	7	384 錘	7
253 拘	8	323 工	8	385 錘	8
254 拘	9	324 工	9	386 錘	9
255 拘	0	325 工	0	387 錘	0
256 拘	1	326 工	1	388 錘	1
257 拘	2	327 工	2	389 錘	2
258 拘	3	328 工	3	390 錘	3
259 拘	4	329 工	4	391 錘	4
260 拘	5	330 工	5	392 錘	5
261 昏	6	331 工	6	393 錘	6
262 佐	7	332 工	7	394 錘	7
263 詐	8	333 工	8	395 錘	8
264 哉	9	334 工	9	396 錘	9
265 戕	0	335 工	0	397 錘	0
266 戕	1	336 工	1	398 錘	1
267 戕	2	337 工	2	399 錘	2
268 戕	3	338 工	3	400 錘	3
269 戕	4	339 工	4	401 錘	4
270 戕	5	340 工	5	402 錘	5
271 戕	6	341 工	6	403 錘	6
272 戕	7	342 工	7	404 錘	7
273 戕	8	343 工	8	405 錘	8
274 戕	9	344 工	9	406 錘	9
275 戕	0	345 工	0	407 錘	0
276 戕	1	346 工	1	408 錘	1
277 戕	2	347 工	2	409 錘	2
278 戕	3	348 工	3	410 錘	3
279 戕	4	349 工	4	411 錘	4
280 戕	5	350 工	5	412 錘	5
281 戕	6	351 工	6	413 錘	6
282 戕	7	352 工	7	414 錘	7
283 戕	8	353 工	8	415 錘	8
284 戕	9	354 工	9	416 錘	9
285 戕	0	355 工	0	417 錘	0
286 戕	1	356 工	1	418 錘	1
287 戕	2	357 工	2	419 錘	2
288 戕	3	358 工	3	420 錘	3
289 戕	4	359 工	4	421 錘	4
290 戕	5	360 工	5	422 錘	5
291 戕	6	361 工	6	423 錘	6
292 戕	7	362 工	7	424 錘	7
293 戕	8	363 工	8	425 錘	8
294 戕	9	364 工	9	426 錘	9
295 戕	0	365 工	0	427 錘	0
296 戕	1	366 工	1	428 錘	1
297 戕	2	367 工	2	429 錘	2
298 戕	3	368 工	3	430 錘	3
299 戕	4	369 工	4	431 錘	4
300 戕	5	370 工	5	432 錘	5
301 戕	6	371 工	6	433 錘	6
302 戕	7	372 工	7	434 錘	7
303 戕	8	373 工	8	435 錘	8
304 戕	9	374 工	9	436 錘	9
305 戕	0	375 工	0	437 錘	0
306 戕	1	376 工	1	438 錘	1
307 戕	2	377 工	2	439 錘	2
308 戕	3	378 工	3	440 錘	3
309 戕	4	379 工	4	441 錘	4
310 戕	5	380 工	5	442 錘	5
311 戕	6	381 工	6	443 錘	6
312 戕	7	382 工	7	444 錘	7
313 戕	8	383 工	8	445 錘	8
314 戕	9	384 工	9	446 錘	9
315 戕	0	385 工	0	447 錘	0

[illegible]

Multi Access Combination Patterns

Newly established communication Current communication	Voice call		Videophone call		i-mode ^{*7}	i-appli	i-mode mail	
	Making	Receiving	Making	Receiving			Sending	Receiving
During a voice call	△ ^{*1}	△ ^{*2}	×	△ ^{*3}	○	×	○	○
During a videophone call	×	△ ^{*3}	—	△ ^{*3}	×	×	×	×
During i-mode ^{*7}	○	○	△ ^{*5}	×	—	○	○	○
During packet communication with a PC	○	○	×	×	×	△ ^{*6}	×	×
During 64K data communication	×	△ ^{*3}	×	△ ^{*3}	×	×	×	×
During a PTT call	×	△ ^{*10}	×	×	×	×	×	×

Newly established communication Current communication	SMS		Packet communication		64K data communication		Push-to-Talk	
	Sending	Receiving	Outgoing	Incoming	Outgoing	Incoming	Making	Receiving
During a voice call	○	○	○	○	×	△ ^{*3}	×	×
During a videophone call	×	○	×	×	×	△ ^{*3}	×	×
During i-mode ^{*7}	○	○	×	×	×	×	△ ^{*8}	△ ^{*9}
During packet communication with a PC	○	○	—	—	×	×	×	×
During 64K data communication	○	○	×	×	×	△ ^{*3}	×	×
During a PTT call	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated. △: Can be activated depending on situation. —: Functionally incompatible.

*1 : If you have subscribed to "Call Waiting", you can hold the current voice call to make another call.

*2 : If you have subscribed to "Call Waiting", you can hold the current voice call to answer an incoming call. If you have subscribed to "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding", you can end the current communication and then answer a new incoming communication. → p.430

*3 : If you have subscribed to "Call Waiting", "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding", you can end the current communication and then answer a new incoming communication. → p.430

*4 : An i-mode message, MessageR or MessageF is not received, but is stored in the i-mode center. You can receive a stored i-mode message, MessageR or MessageF by performing "Check new messages" after the current communication ends.

*5 : Make a videophone call after disconnecting the current i-mode.

*6 : You cannot communicate via i-appli software.

*7 : Includes i-channel site view and communication via Full Browser or ToruCa.

*8 : Make a PTT call after disconnecting the current i-mode.

*9 : When "PushTalk preferred" is set on the "Set i-mode arrival act" menu under "PushTalk setting" (p.106), receiving an incoming PTT call disconnects i-mode communication.

*10 : If "PushTalk arrival act" is set to "Answer", answering an incoming voice call ends PTT communication.

*11 : It is logged as a missed call.

Multitask Combination Patterns

Function	Mail	i-mode menu/ i-channel list	i-appli	Settings	Data box	LifeKit	Network service	Phone book	Own data	Original menu
Currently										
Launching Mail group	○ ^{*1}	○	○	○ ^{*3}	○	○ ^{*5}	○ ^{*16}	○ ^{*10}	○	○
Launching i-mode group	○	×	○	○ ^{*3}	○	○ ^{*5}	○ ^{*16}	○ ^{*10}	○	○
Launching i-appli group	○	○	×	○ ^{*3}	○ ^{*13}	○ ^{*5}	○ ^{*16}	○ ^{*10}	○	○
Launching Settings group	○	○	○	×	○	○ ^{*5}	×	○ ^{*10}	○	○
Launching LifeKit group ^{*15}	○	○	○ ^{*14}	○ ^{*3}	×	×	○ ^{*16}	×	×	○
During a voice call	○ ^{*2}	○ ^{*2}	×	×	×	×	○ ^{*2*9 *16*17}	○ ^{*2*10}	○ ^{*2*11}	○ ^{*2}
During a videophone call	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
During a PTT call	○	○	×	○ ^{*4}	×	○ ^{*8}	○ ^{*9*16 *17}	○ ^{*10}	○ ^{*11}	○
During packet communication with a PC	○	○	○	○ ^{*3}	○ ^{*13}	○ ^{*5}	○ ^{*16}	○ ^{*10}	○	○
During 64K data communication	○	○	×	×	×	×	○ ^{*9*16}	○ ^{*10}	○ ^{*11}	○

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated.

^{*1} : "Compose message" and "Compose SMS" cannot be used simultaneously.

^{*2} : It is not available while switching between a voice call and a videophone call.

^{*3} : Some functions are unavailable.

^{*4} : Only "Pause dial" and "Keypad sound" are available.

^{*5} : "Received Ir data", "SD-PIM", "Voice announce" and "UIM operation" are unavailable.

^{*6} : "Voice memo(in-call)" is available only when you press and hold  (MEMO/CHECK) for 1 second or longer. However, it is not available while switching between a voice call and a videophone call.

^{*7} : Only "Bar code reader", "ToruCa", "Camera", "Schedule", "To Do list", "Text memo", "Calculator", "Voice memo(in-call)", "Access reader" and "Dictionary" are available. However, while the lists and details of data scanned by the "Access reader" and "Bar code reader" can be displayed, new scans cannot be performed. In addition, only "Photo mode" and "Continuous mode" are available in "Camera".

^{*8} : Only "Bar code reader", "ToruCa", "Camera", "Schedule", "To Do list", "Text memo", "Calculator", "Access reader" and "Dictionary" are available. However, while the lists and details of data scanned by the "Access reader" and "Bar code reader" can be displayed, new scans cannot be performed. In addition, only "Photo mode" and "Continuous mode" are available in "Camera".

^{*9} : "Voice Mail" messages cannot be played. The number (p.432) cannot be dialed (but can be dialed using USSD).

^{*10} : "Restrictions" is unavailable.

^{*11} : "Common phrases", "Own dictionary" and "Download dictionary" are unavailable.

^{*12} : Only "Ntly switch-mode" is available.

^{*13} : "Music player" is unavailable.

^{*14} : i-appli is not available while playing a music using "Music player".

^{*15} : The function is unavailable when "Receive Ir data", "SD-PIM" or "UIM operation" is selected.

^{*16} : "Chaku-moji" is unavailable.

^{*17} : "Caller ID Notification" cannot be used.

Services Available for the FOMA Terminal

Available service		Phone number
Collect call (the receiving party is asked to pay for)		(No area code) 106
Directory assistance for general phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (pay) (A phone number that is not listed in the directory cannot be provided)		(No area code) 104
Telegram (pay)	8:00 am to 10:00 pm	(No area code) 115
Time (pay)		(No area code) 117
Weather (pay)		Area code for weather forecast you want + 177
Police emergency		(No area code) 110
Fire brigade/ambulance emergency		(No area code) 119
Maritime distress call		(No area code) 118
Emergency Message Recording System (pay)		(No area code) 171

NOTE

- ◆ When you use the Collect Call Service (106), the receiver will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge for each call (90 yen (94.5 yen tax included)). (As of August, 2006)
- ◆ When you use the Directory Assistance Service (104), you will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge of 100 yen (105 yen tax included). A free service is available for persons with impaired vision or disability or the arms or hands. For further details call NTT inquiries on 116 from general subscriber phones. (As of August, 2006)
- ◆ When calling 110, 119 or 118 from the FOMA terminal, the location from which the call is sent cannot be established. Therefore, first say you are calling from a mobile phone, give your number, and state your location clearly so that the police or fire department can call you back. Also, do not move around when making the call, so that you are not disconnected. Do not turn off the FOMA terminal immediately after ending the call, but leave it turned on for more ten minutes or so, so that you can receive a call.
- ◆ Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected with the nearest police or fire department. If you cannot reach the police or fire department from your mobile phone, dial from a public or general subscriber phone.
- ◆ If you are using a "Call Forwarding" service from a general phone and if a mobile phone is set as the forwarding number, depending on the settings of a general phone or a mobile phone, the caller may simply hear the ring tone even when the mobile phone is busy with another call, out of range or turned off.
- ◆ Other services such as 116 (NTT inquiries), Dial Q2, message (Dengon) Dial, and Credit Call Service are not available (However, Credit Call Service calls can be made from public or general subscriber phones to the FOMA terminals).

Options and Accessories

By combining various options and accessories sold separately, the FOMA terminal can support a wide range of applications to meet your personal and professional needs. Note that some products may not be available in some areas. For more information, contact the DoCoMo service counter. For details on options and accessories, see each User Guide.

- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001^{*1}/P002^{*1}
- Stereo Earphone Set P001^{*1}
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- FOMA USB Cable
- FOMA AC Adapter 01
- FOMA DC Adapter 01
- Desktop Holder N07
- Battery Pack N11
- Back Cover N14
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01^{*2}
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- Data Communications Adapter N01
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna
- In-Car Holder 01
- FOMA AC adapter for Global Use 01
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- Carry Case L 01

*1 : To connect to FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED, the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 is required.

*2 : To connect to FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED, the FOMA In-car Hands-free Cable 01 is required.

Data Link Software

The “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED Data Link Software” allows you to transfer data such as phonebook entries, schedules, messages, melodies, still images, movies and i-motion. Download the Data Link Software for the FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED from the NEC Internet website:

NEC ワイワイもばいる (WaiWai Mobile)
<http://www.n-keitai.com/>

N902iX HIGH-SPEED Data Link Software is available only in Japanese version.

Visit the website above or see the help of the Data Link Software for more details on downloading method, transferable data, operating environment, operating method and restrictions.

The software cannot be downloaded by the site access function of the FOMA terminal. Use a PC to download. You can use the software free of charge. A communication charge is made for downloading.

■ Operating environment and notes

The “FOMA USB Cable (optional)” is required to connect to a PC. It is unavailable for infrared data exchange. For other environments, see “ソフトウェアのご紹介”【動作環境】 on the download page. Since the Data Link Software uses OBEX (Object Exchange) for data transfer, also see “Transferring Data via Infrared Data Exchange/Cable Connection” (p.382).

Information downloaded using i-mode/i-appli is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal even if you use the Data Link Software, according to the copyright law. In addition, you cannot transfer data that are not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal.

■ Operating System

Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese edition)

* PC/AT compatible model on which one of the Operating Systems above runs

■ Before using the product

- NEC Corporation (hereinafter referred to as “our company”) does not guarantee performance on licensed programs, compatibility, accuracy or reliability for the result of use, or is not liable for defects whatsoever. You will be responsible for any problems or difficulties arising on the licensed programs and will bear any costs arising.
- Our company shall not take any responsibility for your lost profits, any damages arising in special situations (including ones that our company could forecast), or damages you are liable for, claimed by a third party. Moreover, you shall not make any claim against our company.

Inquiries about Data Link Software and Music Player Data Transfer Software
NEC (NEC NTT DoCoMo Terminals Marketing and Sales Division)

 **0120-102-001** (in Japanese only)

Business hours: Weekdays 9:00 am to 12 noon and 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm
(Excludes weekends, public holidays and NEC holidays)

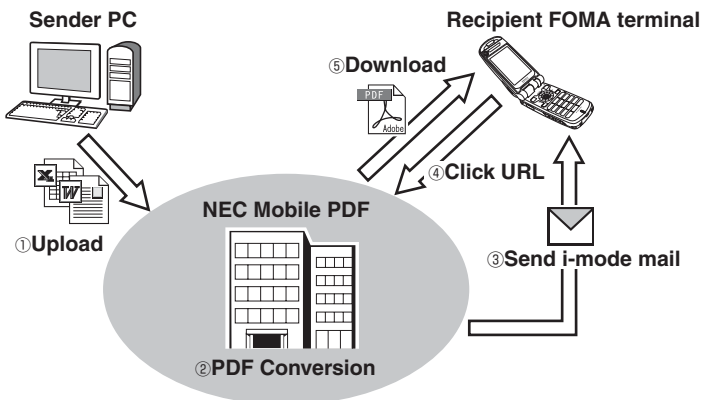
* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

NEC Mobile PDF

NEC Mobile PDF automatically converts uploaded Microsoft® Word or Microsoft® Excel documents to PDF data, and notifies the specified FOMA terminal of the URL for viewing the PDF.
(N901iS, N902i, N902iS supported As of August, 2006)

- Some files cannot be converted to PDF data, depending on the format or content.
- This service may terminate without notice.

NEC Mobile PDF flow



Visit the following site for the service details:

NEC ワイワイもばいる (WaiWai Mobile)

<http://www.n-keitai.com/>

Inquiries about NEC Mobile PDF

NEC (NEC NTT DoCoMo Terminals Marketing and Sales Division)

0120-102-001 (in Japanese only)

Business hours: Weekdays 9:00 am to 12 noon and 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm
(Excludes weekends, public holidays and NEC holidays)

* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

Movie Playing Software

- To play a movie (MP4-formatted file) on a PC, install QuickTime Player (free) ver. 6.4 or above (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP) by Apple Computer, Inc.
- Download QuickTime from the following webpage:
<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>
 - To download, you need a PC to access the Internet. A communication charge is made for downloading.
 - See the webpage above for more details on the environment, how to download or how to operate.

Malfunction Checklist

- Check first whether the software update is required. If it is required, update the software.
“Updating Software”→p.489

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
The FOMA terminal does not turn on (The FOMA terminal cannot be used)	● Is the battery pack properly attached? ● Has the battery run out?	p.40 p.44
The animation shown on the right appears and an alarm tone sounds	● The battery has run out. Charge the battery. 	p.44
The “  ” icon appears and I hear a busy tone	● Are you out of range or is the reception poor? 	p.45
I cannot make a call by pressing the dial keys	● Is Keypad dial lock set? ● Is Restrict dialing set?	p.170 p.172
I dialed a number and initiated a call, but all I hear is a busy tone	● Did you start dialing before hearing the dial tone? ● Did you forget to dial the area code? ● Is “” displayed? ● Is “Please wait” displayed?	p.50 p.50 p.45
I cannot receive calls or I cannot hear the ring tone	● Is any of the following functions set? Restrictions · Call rejection · Call acceptance · Call forwarding · Voice Mail Ring time(sec.) · Set mute seconds Reject unknown · Call setting w/o ID · Unknown: Reject · Payphone: Reject · User unset: Reject ● Is the FOMA terminal in manner mode? ● Is the FOMA terminal in Public mode (Driving mode)? ● Is Self mode set? ● Is the start time of Voice Mail or Call Forwarding service set to “0”? ● Is Caller ID Request set to Activate? ● Is mova valid with the Dual Network service? ● Is the ring volume set to “Silent”?	p.172 p.175 p.175 p.174 p.134 p.71 p.176 p.424 p.427 p.428 p.428 p.69
Mail ring tones and alarm tones sound but no ring tone sounds when receiving a call	● Is “Set mute seconds” under “Ring time(sec.)” set to longer time (e.g. 99 seconds)? Set “Set mute seconds” to shorter time.	p.175
The records of Dialed calls/ Received calls, Redial, Received address/Sent address disappear automatically	● Is “Keypad dial lock” set? ● Is “Restrict dialing” under “Restrictions” set?	p.170 p.172
The neuropointer does not move quickly	● Adjust the slide setting.	p.146
The ring tone sounding when receiving a voice call or videophone call is different from what I selected	● When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned.	p.130
The image appearing when receiving a voice call or videophone call is different from what I selected	● When the image settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned.	p.140

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
When receiving a voice call or videophone call, the color or pattern of the incoming call lamp flashing is different from what I set up	When the illumination settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned.	p.147
In a partly obtained program of Music Channel, the rest of the program cannot be obtained	For the program with a count restriction, does the playback count reach the limit? When the playback count reaches the limit, you could not obtain the rest of the program.	—
Display or playback of movie /i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® takes time	Is the movie /i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® saved to the "Movable contents" folder? In the case of data saved to the "Movable contents" folder, it may take a time to display or play it in some cases.	—
Cannot copy or move movie / i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® to the miniSD memory card	- Is the movie/i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® saved partly? - Is the movie/i-motion or a Chaku-Uta-Full® whose playback limit (playback count, period, or limit) have been expired?	p.299 p.345
A PDF document is not properly displayed	A document may not be properly displayed if it contain formats unsupported by PDF viewer or complicated designs.	—
It takes long to display a PDF document	It may take long to display a large-sized PDF document.	—
Cannot copy a PDF document to the FOMA terminal	Does the file size exceed 2M bytes?	p.388
Cannot copy a PDF document to the miniSD memory card	Was the document downloaded by page?	p.388
The screen or ring tone for an incoming call or message is the default setting	Depending on the combination of receiving screen and ring tone or the priority sequence, either the receiving screen or ring tone may be restored to default.	—
The ring tone sounding when receiving a message is different from what I selected for the mail address	- When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned. - If you have received two or more messages, the tone set for the last received mail address sounds. - If you have received two or more messages including a chat message, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for the chat message. - If the format of the sender's mail address is "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", save only that phone number as a mail address and set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address in Select ring tone under Mail (recv.). - Is the sender's mail address (a mail address shown on the received mail details screen) stored in the phonebook correctly and did you set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address in Select ring tone under Mail (recv.)? - If you receive an SMS, a distinctive ring tone set in Mail (recv.) for the phone number in the phonebook sounds.	p.130 p.123 p.123
A string appears instead of image or i-motion	The following indicate that the image or i-motion cannot be selected for the function. Select an image or i-motion that will not display the following: "Not available", "Expired file", "No preview data"	p.344 p.355
The color of the illumination flashing when receiving a message is different from what I selected for the mail address	- When the incoming lamp settings are duplicated, the priority applies. - If you receive two or more messages, the incoming call lamp flashes following the settings of the illumination under Mail (recv.) that is set to the last received mail address. - If the format of the sender's mail address is "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", save only that phone number as a mail address and set distinctive illumination for that mail address in Illumination under Mail (recv.). - Is the sender's mail address (a mail address shown on the received mail details screen) stored in the phonebook correctly and did you set illumination for that mail address in Illumination under Mail (recv.)? - If you receive an SMS, distinctive illumination set in Illumination under Mail (recv.) for the phone number in the phonebook flashes.	p.147 p.123 p.123

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.371

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
Cannot charge the FOMA terminal (the charge lamp of the FOMA terminal does not light)	● Is the battery pack properly attached to the FOMA terminal? ● Is the adapter firmly plugged into the electrical socket or cigarette lighter socket? ● Are the adapter and the FOMA terminal correctly connected (is the AC adapter firmly connected to the FOMA terminal or the desktop holder)?	p.40 p.42 p.43
The key does not sound when I press it	● Is "Keypad sound" set to "OFF"? ● Is the FOMA terminal in manner mode?	p.132 p.134
I cannot use Any key answer to answer a voice call/video phone call/Push-to-Talk call	● Is "Answer setting" set to "Quick silent" or "OFF"? ● You cannot use Any key answer to answer a videophone call.	p.65
The other party's voice is difficult to hear during a call	● Is the earpiece speaker properly placed against your ear? ● Is anything e.g. a sticker obstructing the earpiece speaker? ● Is anything obstructing the speaker in hands-free mode? ● Did you change the "Volume" setting? Change the setting so that you can hear the other party clearly.	p.24 p.69
The other party's voice is too loud during a call	● Did you change the "Volume" setting? Change the setting so that you can hear the other party clearly.	p.69
Pressing the external keys does not operate the folded FOMA terminal	● Is "External keys guard" set to "ON"?	p.170
Pressing  (ASSIST) does not check missed calls, etc. when the FOMA terminal is folded Music player does not start after pressing  (ASSIST) for 1 second or longer.	● Is "Info notice setting" set to "OFF"? ● Is "External keys guard" set to "ON"?	p.74 p.170
The date is displayed in Japanese	● Is "Japanese" selected as the language?	p.148
The display is dim	● Is the brightness of the backlight set to "Level 1"?	p.142
The backlight of the display, image display or keypad does not turn on	● Is Lighting of the backlight set to "OFF"? ● Press and hold  for 1 second or longer to turn the backlight on or off. Note that pressing and holding  for 1 second or longer will turn off the backlight e.g. while composing a message.	p.142
Receiving an incoming call immediately after turning on the power displays the phone number but does not display the name stored in the phonebook	● The FOMA terminal may be reading the FOMA card (UIM) immediately after turning on the power. The phonebook function may not be available then.	—
It takes some time for the power to turn on after pressing and holding  for 1 second or longer	● Data checking may take time e.g. if the phonebook is full of data.	p.122
Nothing appears on the display, but  and  are flashing	● The FOMA terminal is in power saver mode. Press any key to release the power saver mode.	p.142
Nothing appears on the image display	● Is "Image display" set to "OFF"?	p.141
The FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) when receiving a call	● The FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) until the set time is reached, when receiving a call from a phone number not stored in the phonebook or from a caller who does not notify his/her caller ID and if "Set mute seconds" under "Ring time(sec.)" is set to "ON".	p.175
The figure of the accumulated charge does not increase	● The figure does not increase if it has already reached the limit. Perform "Reset total".	p.413
Receiving an SMS does not display the sender's name stored in the phonebook	● Did you correctly store the sender's phone number on the phone number line () of the phonebook?	p.111
A message is not automatically filtered	● If the sender's mail address is "(Phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", save only the phone number in the Auto-sort settings. ● If the sender's mail address is not "(Phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", save the entire address including the domain in the Auto-sort settings.	p.272
A message is not automatically received	● If you have set "Receive option setting" to "ON", set it to "OFF".	p.260 p.279

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
Cannot install the N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file (driver) or make data communication	● If you have set USB mode setting to "miniSD mode" or "Print mode", set it to "Communication mode".	p.380
i-mode, i-mode mail, i-oppai and i-channel cannot be connected	● Is "Host selection" set to "i-mode"? ● If you had started using the FOMA terminal before you subscribed to i-mode, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.	p.231 —
The FOMA terminal does not perform receiving message operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) when receiving a message	● Is "Mail/Msg. ring time" set to "OFF"? ● Is "Receiving display" set to "Operation preferred"?	p.133 p.279
A sent message is not saved to the Outbox	● Is "Sort all" set to the folder of mail-connected i-oppai? Highlight the folder of mail-connected i-oppai then select "Open folder" from the function menu to confirm the setting.	p.265 p.272
A received message is not saved to the Inbox, and "  " (white) does not disappear	● Does "  " appear on the folder of mail-connected i-oppai in the Inbox? Or is "Sort all" set to the folder of mail-connected i-oppai? Highlight the folder of mail-connected i-oppai then select "Open folder" from the function menu to confirm the setting.	p.265 p.272 p.308
The message "添付ファイル削除" (Attached file deleted) appears on a mail message	● You cannot receive attached files that are not supported by i-mode mail. Such attached files are automatically deleted in the i-mode center and you receive only the message.	p.244
A file attached to a message sent from a PC was deleted	● If the image file is GIF-formatted, which was attached to a message sent from a device other than the FOMA terminal, only up to 10,000 bytes can be received.	—
Images taken with the rear camera are flickered	● When you take pictures indoors, flickering may appear due to the effect of fluorescent lighting, etc. Changing the "Image tuning" setting may suppress flickering.	p.196
Still images or movies shot with the rear camera look too bright	● You may shoot them outside or in a bright place with "Image tuning" set to "Mode 1(50Hz)" or "Mode 2(60Hz)". Restore the tuning to "Auto" if it is not.	p.196
Still images or movies look blurred	● Set a mode suited to the scene being shot.	p.196
Attempting to display an image displays "  " or Attempting to play for demonstration or see a preview displays "  "	● "  " may appear when the image data is corrupted.	—
The terminal operates slowly when any keypads are pressed	● It may occur if a large amount of data is stored on the FOMA terminal or if you exchange large data by using the miniSD reader/writer function.	—
Chance capture shooting shortens the shooting time	● Chance capture shooting saves control data together with movie data, which may shorten the shooting time.	—

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.371

If Any Error Message Appears

- Numbers enclosed in parentheses contained in i-mode error messages are codes used to distinguish errors sent from the i-mode center.

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Activating keypad dial lock"	● This message appears when you attempt to perform a prohibited operation while the keypad dial lock is set.	p.170
"Activating mail security Cannot download"	● You cannot download or upgrade the mail-connected i-appli because the Inbox/Outbox or a folder used for the mail-connected i-appli is protected. To download or upgrade the mail-connected i-appli, release the mail security.	p.171
"Activating mail security Unable to delete"	● You cannot delete mail-connected i-appli or its folder because the Inbox/Outbox or a folder used for the mail-connected i-appli is protected. To delete both the mail-connected i-appli and its folder, release the mail security. To delete a mail-connected i-appli only, select "NO" when you receive a message asking whether to delete a folder used for the mail-connected i-appli.	p.171
"Activating record display OFF"	● You cannot use "Received calls", "Redial/Dialed calls", "Received address" or "Sent address" because "Record display set" is set to "OFF". To access these records, set "Record display set" to "ON".	p.171
"Activating restrict dialing"	● This message appears when you attempt to perform a prohibited operation when the restrict dialing is set.	p.172
"Attached file is deleted"	● This message appears when an i-mode message received that you attempt to quote to send a reply has any file attached. It also appears if it is prohibited to attach the file to a message or output the file from the FOMA terminal when you attempt to forward an i-mode message. Press  to delete the attached file.	—
"Authentication canceled (401)"	● This message appears when you press "Cancel" on the authentication screen.	—
"Authentication type is not supported (401)"	● This message appears when the authentication did not go through. Press  to return to the previous page.	—
"Cannot edit message"	● The text cannot be edited because the size of the attached file is 10,000 bytes or more.	p.255
"Cannot save attached file"	● This message appears when you receive a mail message with an unsavable file attached via infrared data communication, OBEX communication or copy from the miniSD memory card.	—
"Cannot set this schedule"	● This message appears when you execute "Copy & add this" for a schedule with the same data and time as an existing schedule entry or when you receive it via infrared data exchange or cable connection.	—
"Certificate is rejected (tampered)"	● This message appears when an altered SSL certificate has been received. An SSL communication cannot be established with this site.	—
"Certificate is rejected (tampered)"	● This message appears when an altered TLS/SSL certificate has been received. A TLS/SSL communication cannot be established with this site.	—
"Check new messages is set all OFF"	● New messages cannot be checked because none of the items is selected in "Set check new messages". Select items to check in "Set check new messages".	p.281
"Connection failed (403)"	● The attempt to access a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
"Connection failed"	● This message appears when the host setting is not correct. Set the host correctly in "Host selection" under Connection setting. ● The attempt to connect to i-mode has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	p.231 —
"Connection failed"	● Set "Caller ID Notification" to "ON" and retry.	p.47

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Connection interrupted"	● i-mode connection was interrupted due to poor reception. Move to a location where the reception is good before using the i-mode service. ● If this message appears even when the reception is good and "📶" appears, the site you are accessing is busy. Retry later.	p.215 —
"Continue using i-appli and transmit data?"	● This message appears when you select "NO" or "Terminate i-appli" in response to the message "Data transmission is frequent Continue transmission?". Select "YES" to continue i-appli communication. To quit using an i-appli program, select "Terminate i-appli".	—
"Could not read"	● The data cannot be copied due to some error. Exchange with a new miniSD memory card then retry to copy.	—
"Data in IC card is full Replace?"	● This message appears when you attempt to download Osaifu-Keitai i-appli but the space is not enough on the IC card. Select "YES" to display already registered Osaifu-Keitai services and the space (bytes) on the IC card. Check the size required, select services to remove, and launch i-appli to remove them.	—
"Data is too long A part is deleted"	● The size of address, subject or text or more than one data exceeds the maximum, and the Compose message screen appears with the excess part deleted.	—
"Data is too long Please delete message"	● The total length of the message text and quotation mark characters in the i-mode message to be quoted in a reply exceeds 5,000 double-byte characters. Delete some of the text to reduce the character count to 5,000 double-byte characters or fewer.	—
"Data transmission is frequent Continue transmission?"	● This message appears when the number of communications that are using i-appli and have been established in a given time is extremely large. Select "YES" to continue to make i-appli communication, or "NO" to quit the communication. To quit using an i-appli program, select "Terminate i-appli".	—
"Data transmission is frequent Press CLR and confirm data transmission"	● This message appears when the number of communications established from the i-appli standby screen in a given time is extremely large. Press [CLR] to select whether to permit communication from the i-appli standby screen or whether to exit the i-appli standby screen.	p.318
"Download failed"	● This message appears if a communication error occurs or a data contains an error when you attempt to download data such as a melody, Chara-den character or download dictionary.	—
"Editing now Cannot delete"	● This message appears when you attempt to delete a mail message that is stored in the Draft and being edited.	—
"Enter correct Network Security Code"	● This message appears when you need to enter the network security code for a function but a wrong number was entered. Enter the correct network security code.	p.156
"Error in image Does not work correctly"	● This message appears when a Flash movie cannot be played due to an error found in the data.	—
"Error Register forwarding number"	● This message appears when you have subscribed to the Call Forwarding service and attempt to forward an incoming call by selecting "Call Forwarding" from the function menu without setting the forwarding number.	p.427
"Exceeds max number of simultaneous calls"	● You can make a PTT call to a maximum of four people at the same time.	—
"Failed to Copy all"	● The data cannot be copied due to some error. Exchange with a new miniSD memory card then retry to copy.	—
"Failed to Copy this"	● The data cannot be copied due to some error. Exchange with a new miniSD memory card then retry to copy.	—
"Format miniSD for your phone"	● There is an error e.g. the miniSD memory card is not formatted. Reformat the miniSD memory card.	p.379
"Frame number of this page is not supported"	● The webpage cannot be displayed because the frame count exceeds the maximum that can be displayed on Full Browser.	—
"Function cannot operate any more"	● Exit another function before operating.	—

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.371

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"i-opp1i stand-by display terminated due to security error" "Software terminated due to security error"	● This message appears when the i-opp1i or the i-opp1i standby screen (including the i-opp1i DX) terminated because you attempted to perform an unauthorized operation.	p.312 p.319
"i-opp1i To" function is not set"	● When you attempt to launch software from a site, message, the infrared data exchange function, the Bar code reader or the IC card, it does not launch because the specified software is not permitted to be linked.	p.317
"Input error (205)"	● This message appears after you enter data on a website and send the data. Press  to reset the entered text (The setting or entry made is sent. This operation does not cancel sending).	—
"Insert miniSD"	● This message appears when the miniSD memory card is not inserted correctly or may be damaged. Check that the miniSD memory card is properly inserted into the FOMA terminal.	p.372
"Insert UIM"	● This message appears when the FOMA card (UIM) is not correctly inserted or may be damaged. Make sure that the FOMA card (UIM) is correctly inserted.	p.37
"Invalid address"	● The address contains a "," and is invalid. Delete any ",". ● The address of the received message contains more than 50 single-byte characters, and you cannot reply to it. ● SMS cannot be sent because the address contains a space or character other than numbers, "#", and "X". Delete any spaces or characters other than numbers, "#", and "X".	—
"Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay"	● This message appears when you attempt to obtain a streaming-type i-motion while "i-motion type" is set to "Standard type".	p.239
"Invalid UIM Auto start not possible"	● This message appears when you attempt to automatically launch i-opp1i restricted by the FOMA card operational restriction function.	p.38
"Invalid UIM Requested service not available"	● This message appears when you select a desktop icon for data protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function. ● This message appears when you select a screen memo, MessageR or MessageF protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function.	p.38
"Invalid UIM Requested software failed to start"	● This message appears when you attempt to select and launch i-opp1i restricted by the FOMA card operational restriction function.	p.38
"Invalid URL"	● This message appears when you select "OK" without entering a URL, or after you enter a URL incorrectly (a URL that does not start with "http://" or "https://") when setting the Home URL on the "Home URL" screen or entering a URL on the "Enter URL" screen. Enter a URL correctly.	p.221 p.230 p.335
"Memory full Cannot move"	● This message appears when you transfer data to or from the Secret folder and the destination folder is full of data. Delete unnecessary data stored in the destination folder and retry transfer.	p.163
"Memory No. XXX Cannot overwrite"	● This message appears when you attempt to add an entry to the same number as a memory number for the entry added as secret data while the mode is not secret mode or secret data only mode. ● This message appears when you attempt to add an entry to the same number as a memory number for the entry set to Automatic display. Press  to return to the Edit phonebook screen. Select "", and enter an available memory number or use  to select Auto to add it.	p.161 p.119
"Memory shortage Quit"	● The process was interrupted due to memory shortage. When composing an i-mode message, you may be unable to enter up to 5,000 double-byte characters depending on the condition such as the number of tasks running or the combination of character types.	—
"Memory shortage Return and edit again"	● You can insert up to 10 images to a Deco-mail message. However, in some operations, this message may appear even when less than 10 images are inserted. Select "YES" to exit the Compose message screen.	—
"Memory shortage Return to Full Browser menu"	● The process was interrupted due to memory shortage. Press  to return to the Full Browser menu.	—

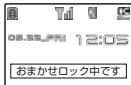
Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Memory shortage Return to i-mode menu"	● The process was interrupted due to memory shortage. Press  to return to the i-mode menu.	—
"Memory shortage"	● This message appears when the software cannot be launched due to memory shortage.	—
"Message too long to add header & signature"	● This message appears if the header/signature cannot be automatically added when you forward an i-mode message because the character count exceeds 5,000 double-byte with the header/signature added.	—
"Message too long to add header"	● This message appears when the character count of the text and header in total exceeds 5,000 double-byte and the header cannot be added.	—
"Message too long to add signature"	● This message appears when the character count of the text and signature in total exceeds 5,000 double-byte and the signature cannot be added.	—
"No content is available (204)"	● This message appears when there is no data to display on the site.	—
"No data"	● This message appears when there is no phonebook entry that matches the search conditions when you perform Phonebook search.	p.115
"No requested software"	● This message appears when you select a desktop icon for already deleted i-appli. ● This message appears if there is no corresponding software when the i-appli is launched from a mail message, the infrared data exchange function, the Bar code reader or the IC card.	—
"No response (408)"	● No response has been received from the site and the communication is interrupted. Retry connection.	—
(During infrared data exchange) "No response Retry?"	● The receiving terminal cannot be found/detected. Place the terminals so that their infrared data ports face each other. Select "YES" and press  to try again.	p.383
"No Switch"	● This message appears when you cannot switch to a videophone call during a voice call because the other party is establishing a packet communication (including i-mode). Check the other party's status and retry.	p.52
"Not correspond contents"	● Information read by the Bar code reader cannot be recognized because there are some contents unsupported by the FOMA terminal.	—
"Other function active Cannot start" "Other function active Cannot operate"	● This message appears when you attempt to perform an unavailable operation but another function is running.	—
"Out of service area"	● This message appears when you attempt to use an i-mode service out of range or in a location where radio waves do not reach you. Move until "  " appears, then use the i-mode service.	p.215
"Page is not found (404)"	● The site is not found. It may not exist.	—
"Password is not correct (401)"	● This message appears when the authentication did not go through on the "Authentication" or "Re-authentication" screen. To re-authenticate, select "YES".	—
"PIN1 code blocked"	● This message appears when the power is turned on during PIN1 code lock. Press  to display the PUK code entry screen, then enter the PUK code correctly to release the lock.	p.158
"Please wait for a while (packet)"	● The packet communication device may be malfunctioning. Otherwise, the packet communication network may be congested. Retry later.	—
"Please wait"	● The voice line or packet communication device may be malfunctioning. Otherwise, the voice line/packet communication network may be congested. Attempt to use a voice call, videophone call or i-mode later. - You can still make an emergency call (110, 119 and 118). However, you may not be connected depending on the condition.	—
"PUK blocked"	● This message appears when you attempt to power on or perform operations related to the FOMA card (UIM) when the PUK code is blocked. Contact the DoCoMo service counter.	p.157

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.371

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Reading UIM Cannot start"	● This message appears when you attempt to perform an operation related to the FOMA card (UIM) while the FOMA card (UIM) is being read. Retry later.	—
"Receiving failed Channel information cannot display"	● This message appears when you display the channel list screen for the first time after purchase or when you attempt to display the channel list screen after changing the i-channel host URL, initializing the FOMA terminal or exchanging the FOMA card (UIM), and then if i-channel information cannot be obtained. Move until "  " appears, then retry to display the channel list screen.	p.323
"Replace with a new one or check the disk"	● Check the miniSD memory card.	p.376
"Replay period has expired Cannot play"	● The i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full[®] cannot be played because the playback period has expired.	—
"Replay period has expired Delete?"	● This message appears when you attempt to play i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full[®] whose playback period has expired. Select "YES" to delete the i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full[®].	—
"Replay period has expired"	● This message appears when you select a desktop icon for i-motion whose playback period has expired.	—
"Root certificate has expired Do you connect?"	● This message appears when an SSL server certificate out of the validity period has been received. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise, select "NO". ● This message appears when you are asked to send a client certificate while accessing an SSL website.	p.235 p.218
"Root certificate is not valid"	● This message appears when you receive an SSL certificate with the "Certificate" set to "Invalid". Check the contents of the certificate, set the certificate to valid and reconnect.	p.235
"Root certificate is not valid"	● This message appears when you receive a TLS/SSL certificate with the "Certificate" set to "Invalid". Check the contents of the certificate, set the certificate to valid and reconnect.	p.235
"Service is not registered"	● The i-mode service is not available because you have not subscribed to the service. A separate subscription is required to use the service. ● If you had started using the FOMA terminal before you subscribed to i-mode, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.	—
"Size of this page is not supported"	● The size of the data downloaded from a website (via i-mode or full browser) or Internet webpage exceeds the maximum of one page. The download is interrupted, and only the downloaded data is displayed. ● This message appears when the limit is exceeded while downloading a melody, download dictionary or Chara-den character.	—
"Software for this folder deleted Refer to Open folder"	● The software cannot be launched because the mail-connected i-appli corresponding to the selected mail folder is deleted. Select a message contained in the folder from the function menu.	p.265 p.271
"Software is stopped because of error"	● This message appears when you are running a program and an error occurs preventing further operation.	—
"Some addresses is invalid"	● This message appears when you attempt to reply to two or more addresses but not all addresses are valid.	—
"Some attached file will be deleted"	● It is prohibited to attach to a message or output from the FOMA terminal the file attached to an i-mode message that you attempt to forward. Press  to delete the file that cannot be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal.	—
"SSL session cannot be established"	● This message appears when a connection to an SSL site or website was not established. Retry connection.	—
"SSL session failed"	● This message appears when an SSL communication is interrupted due to an error occurring during authentication for an SSL connection.	—
"Syntax error" "Syntax error (XXX)"	● The received data contains an error and cannot be displayed. The data is discarded. A number indicating the contents of an error may appear in "XXX".	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Talking now Cannot start" "Talking now Cannot operate"	● This message appears when you attempt to perform an operation that cannot be performed during a call.	p.399 p.472 p.473
"Terminal and UIM ID will be sent"	● This message may appear while you are viewing a site or website. Select "YES" to send your mobile phone manufacturer number. Otherwise, select "NO".	p.218
"The data may not be replayed"	● This message appears when the format of the acquired i-motion is not MP4 (Mobile MP4).	—
"This certificate has expired Do you connect?"	● This message appears when an SSL server certificate out of the validity period has been received. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise, select "NO". ● This message appears when you attempt to access an SSL website but the "Set time" setting is not made. Make the "Set time" setting.	p.235 p.46
"This certificate is not valid for this URL Do you connect?"	● This message appears when the CN (name) of an SSL certificate does not match. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise, select "NO".	p.235
"This data can no longer be replayed Delete?"	● This message appears when you attempt to play i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® with no playback count remaining. Select "YES" to delete the i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full®.	—
"This data can no longer be replayed"	● This message appears when you select a desktop icon for i-motion with no playback count remaining.	—
"This data is not supported by this phone"	● This message appears when you attempt to acquire unsupported i-motion or data other than i-motion.	—
"This site is not certified Do you connect?"	● This message appears when you receive an unsupported SSL certificate. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise, select "NO".	p.235
"This software contains an error" "This software contains an error Unable to download"	● This message appears when the software data contains an error and you cannot download or upgrade the software.	—
"This software is not supported by this phone"	● This message appears when the software you attempt to download is incompatible with the FOMA terminal and cannot be downloaded.	—
"This UIM cannot be recognized"	● This message appears when the inserted FOMA card (UIM) cannot be used on the FOMA terminal. Make sure that the correct FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.	p.37
"Time out"	● Accessing a site or sending a message was interrupted because the time, which is set in "Set connection timeout", has elapsed. Retry later.	p.231
"TLS/SSL session failed"	● This message appears when an SSL communication is interrupted due to an error occurring during authentication for a TLS/SSL connection.	—
"Too much data was entered"	● Too many characters are entered, and the data cannot be sent. Reduce the number of characters before trying to resend.	p.219
"Unable to download Data exceeds maximum size (452)"	● This message appears when the size of the data to be downloaded exceeds the maximum and cannot be downloaded.	—
"Unable to obtain data"	● The playback period or time limit of the partly-obtained i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® is expired, so you could not obtain the rest of data. ● The partly saved data will also be deleted.	—
"Unable to receive"	● This message appears when you attempt to obtain data and a data error or communication error occurs.	—
"Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)"	● The attempt to access a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
"Unable to support this card"	● The FOMA terminal does not support this miniSD memory card. Use a compatible miniSD memory card.	p.371
"URL address changed (301)"	● The site has been moved and the URL has been changed. Reregister if it is bookmarked or registered as a desktop icon or Home URL.	p.149 p.222 p.230 p.335
"URL is too long to register"	● The URL exceeds 256 single-byte characters and cannot be bookmarked or stored as the Home URL.	—

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→p.371

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Usage is currently restricted Try again later"	● This message appears when you have subscribed to i-mode Pake-Houdai flat-rate service and then a large amount of data is exchanged in a given time. You may not be able to access for a while. Use i-mode later.	—
"Wrong password"	● This message appears when you enter a wrong password on the password entry screen in viewing or downloading a PDF document.	p.226 p.388
"Wrong security code" "Security code is 4 to 8 digits"	● This message appears when you need to enter the security code for a function but a wrong number was entered. Enter the correct security code.	p.157
"You have no certificate Do you connect?"	● The user certificate has not been downloaded. Select "YES" to view the site. Some sites cannot be viewed without the certificate.	p.236
"Your certificate has expired Do you connect?"	● The site requests the user certificate, but the validity period has expired. Select "YES", and you may be able to continue. It is recommended to download a new certificate.	p.236
"Your certificate is requested Send your certificate?"	● The site requests the user certificate. Select "YES" to send the certificate, otherwise "NO".	—
"おまかせロック中です"	● Omakase Lock is set. While Omakase Lock is set, all key operations are locked except receiving a voice call/videophone call and turning the power on/off. 	p.160

NOTE

- ◆ Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are used by the IP (information service provider) to identify you and provide you with customized services and to confirm that you can use content provided by the IP.
- ◆ Your Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the IP (information service provider) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party. However, your phone number, address, age and sex are not disclosed to the IP (information service provider), etc.

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- Make sure that the warranty card is included with your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase. Check the contents, the information about "the shop or date of purchase", etc. and keep the card in a safe place. If the card does not contain necessary information, immediately contact the shop and request them to fill in the card. The warranty period is one year from the date of purchase.
- The whole or part of the product, including its accessories, is subject to improvement without notice.
- Stored data such as phonebook entries may be altered or lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. It is recommended to take notes of the stored data just in case. In the course of repairs on your FOMA terminal, data downloaded via i-mode or i-appli are not transferred to a new mobile phone due to copyright law.
 - * You can store data on your FOMA terminal such as a phonebook in the external memory card.
 - * You can move movie or i-motion, Chaku-Uta-Full® to the external memory card from your FOMA terminal.
 - * If you have a PC (Windows 2000, Windows XP), you can transfer the data to your PC by using the dedicated Data Link Software (p.475) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional), then back up the data on the PC.

After-sales service

● If you have problems with your FOMA terminal

Before requesting repairs, see the “Malfunction Checklist” in this manual.

If you still have problems, call at the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

● If, after contacting DoCoMo, you are informed that your FOMA terminal is in need of repairs

Take your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop. The repair shop is only open during business hours. Take your warranty card with you.

■ During the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired free of charge in accordance with our written warranty policy.
- Take the warranty card with you when requesting repairs. Even during the warranty period, charges will apply for repairs if you cannot show the warranty card or if the malfunction or damage has resulted from improper use.
- Even during the warranty period, charges will apply for repairs if the malfunction has resulted from the use of devices or consumable goods that are not specified by NTT DoCoMo.

■ The FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired

The FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired if the water reaction is found on the seal, if corrosion is found to result from water exposure, condensation or perspiration, or if the internal board is damaged or deformed. Even if the FOMA terminal can be repaired, charges will apply as the repair is not under warranty.

■ After the warranty period has expired

You can request repairs although charges will apply.

■ Stock period of parts

Replacement parts (required for maintaining the functionality of the FOMA terminal) will be kept in stock basically for a minimum of six years following the termination of production. However, note that depending on the failure part repairs may not be able to perform owing to lack of repair parts. Repairs may still be able to be performed even after the stock period has expired. Call at the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

■ Important

- Do not attempt to adapt the FOMA terminal or its accessories by yourself.
 - Doing so may cause fire, injury or malfunction.
 - To prevent cross talk or network failure, the technical standard of the FOMA terminal or FOMA card (UIM) is provided by law. You are not allowed to use the FOMA terminal or FOMA card (UIM) that does not comply with the standard.
 - If you have adapted the FOMA terminal (a part has been replaced, adapted, coated, etc.) by yourself, repairs can be accepted only if you restore the FOMA terminal to default (the factory settings). Repairs may be rejected depending on the adaptation.
 - Even during the warranty period, charges will apply for repairs if the malfunction or damage has resulted from adaptation.
- Do not peel off the model name seal put on the FOMA terminal.

The model name seal is used as a certificate verifying that the FOMA terminal complies with the technical standard. If the seal has been peeled off or replaced then cannot be confirmed, the technical standard conformity cannot be verified, and repairs may be rejected.
- The function settings or information about total call time may be cleared (reset) due to malfunction or repair of the FOMA terminal. In this case, make the settings again.
- Magnetic components are used for the following parts of the FOMA terminal. A cash card (ATM card, bank card), etc, which is easily affected by magnetism, may become unusable if it is kept close to the components: Neuropointer key, speaker, earpiece speaker
- If your FOMA terminal gets wet or moist, immediately turn it off, remove the battery pack, and take the FOMA terminal to a repair shop as soon as possible. However, the FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired depending on the condition.

Memory dial (phonebook function) and downloaded information

- It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any deletion, alteration, or loss of data.
- Upgrading the model or repairing your mobile phone may alter or erase data that you have created, copied or downloaded. NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any deletion, alteration, or loss of data. As a matter of convenience, NTT DoCoMo may replace your mobile phone with the substitute instead of repairing, when most of the data cannot be transferred to the substitute. As for your FOMA terminal, images or melodies downloaded from the official i-mode site will be transferred in the course of repairs. (Some contents cannot be transferred. Data may be unable to be transferred depending on the malfunction.)

<Software Update>

Updating Software

Check whether it is required to update software on the FOMA terminal. Download and update the software via packet communication if necessary.

You will be notified of the update in the DoCoMo website or in “お知らせ” (News) of iMenu.

- No charges will be made for packet communication to update software.
- There are two methods to update:
Now update: Updates immediately.
Reserved update: Updates automatically on the set date and time.
- You can update software if the i-mode host is set to the user defined host.
- Updating (downloading and installing) software may take some time.
- When you update software, an SSL connection is established with the server (the software update server managed by DoCoMo). Validate the certificate beforehand (Default setting: Valid. Setting procedure → p.235).
- Ensure that the battery is fully charged before updating software.
- It is recommended to update software without moving in a place where the reception is good (the signal strength indicator shows three bars).
* If the reception becomes poor and then the download is interrupted, attempt to update again in a place where the reception is good.
- Updating software with the “PIN1 code entry set” set to “ON” displays the PIN1 code entry screen in the automatic restart after installing the software. You cannot make or receive calls, or operate communications functions until you enter the correct PIN1 code.
- You cannot update software:
 - When the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted
 - When the FOMA card (UIM) is used incorrectly
 - While PIN lock is set
 - When the PUK code is locked
 - When the date and time are not set
 - When you receive a call
 - When you receive a message or SMS
 - During a voice call
 - During a videophone call
 - During a PTT call
 - During i-mode communication
 - During 64K data communication
 - During packet communication
 - While Lock all or Omakase Lock is set
 - While Self mode is set
 - While PIM lock is set
 - When you are out of range
 - When packet dialing is restricted
 - When you are using mova terminal for the Dual Network service
 - When you are using a miniSD reader/writer
 - While another function is running
- You cannot use another function while updating software. However, you can receive a voice call during download.
- If the software has already been updated, the message “No update is needed Please continue to use as before” appears when you check for new software updates.
- After updating software, the i-mode center storage status icon disappears. In addition, if the receive option is set to “ON” and a message is received while updating software, the message notification screen may not appear after the software has been updated.
- When you update software, the FOMA terminal-specific information (model, product number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for software updates managed by DoCoMo). The information sent to DoCoMo is used only for updating software.
- You can update software without affecting data such as phonebook entries, camera images and downloaded data. However, be aware that depending on the state of your FOMA terminal (malfunction, damage or exposure to water) you may be unable to protect data.
- It is recommended to back up important data (Note that you cannot back up some data, e.g. downloaded data).
- If the software update fails, the message “Rewrite failed” appears and you cannot operate the FOMA terminal. In this case, take your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop.

NOTE

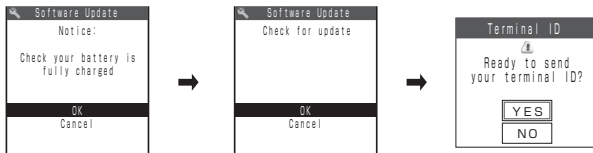
- Do not remove the battery pack while updating software. Doing so may cause the update to fail.
- When the software update is completed but you do not confirm it, the desktop icon “” (Update complete) appears on the standby screen. Select “” and enter the security code to see the detailed results of the update.

Checking whether software update is required

1   **“Other settings”** ▶ **“Software Update”** ▶ Enter your security code

2 Check the notes ▶ Check whether software update is required

Now it is required to send mobile phone-specific information to the server.



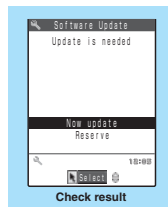
3 The check result appears

■ When “Update is needed” appears

▶ Select “Now update” or “Reserve”

Select “Now update” to update the software immediately. → p.490

Select “Reserve” to update on the set time. → p.491



■ When “No update is needed” appears

▶ 

Continue using the FOMA terminal as there is no need to update the software.

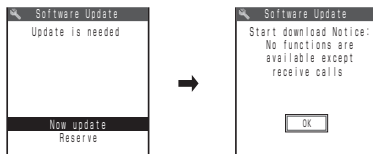


Updating software immediately <Now update>

1 Check result screen (p.490) ▶ “Now update” ▶ Press  when “Start download” appears

Download will start immediately.

Download will start after a while even if you do not press .



2 After download is finished and the message “Download is complete Rewrite software” appears, press

Software update will start.

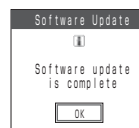
Rewrite will start after a while even if you do not press . It may take long to start rewriting.



All keys are disabled during software rewriting. You cannot stop rewriting.

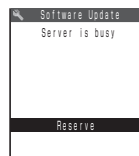
Completing the rewrite will automatically restart the FOMA terminal.

After reloading, the terminal will automatically connect to the server to check that the update has been completed. When the message “Software update is complete” appears, press . Now software update is completed.



NOTE

- ◆ If you interrupt the download, data that has been downloaded until then is deleted.
 - ◆ Once you start downloading, the update starts automatically hereafter without having to select any menus.
 - ◆ The screen on the right may appear if the server is busy.
- In this case, select “Reserve” to perform the reserved update.



Selecting the date and time to update software <Reserved update>

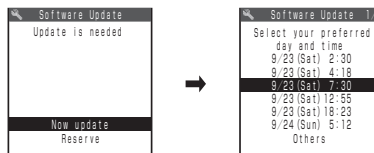
If it takes a long time to download or when the server is busy, you can beforehand select the time to start software update by communicating with the server.

<Example: Reserving 7:30 on September 23 (Saturday)>

1 Check result screen (p.490) ▶ “Reserve” ▶ Select date and time

- If you do not want to reserve any of the times shown

▶ “Others” → p.492



2 Check the selected date and time▶“YES”

Software update is reserved.

■ If you want to change the date and/or time

▶“NO”



The screen on the right appears at the reserved time and the FOMA terminal starts updating software automatically. Charge the battery fully, put the FOMA terminal in a place where the reception is good, and set the FOMA terminal to standby before the reserved time. Hereafter, operate in the same steps as “Updating software immediately <Now update>” (p.490).



NOTE

- ◆ The reserved time for software update will be based on the server's time.
- ◆ When the reserved time for software update is the same as the alarm time, the software update is given priority.
- ◆ Software update may not launch at the scheduled time if another function is running.
- ◆ If the scheduled time is reached during communication or while you are on the phone or receiving a message, software update launches after you finish talking or receiving a message.
- ◆ If you perform “Initialize” (p.421) after the reservation procedure is completed, software update does not launch at the scheduled time. Reschedule the time for update.

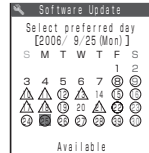
● If you select “Others”

You can select the desired date and time if you select “Others” in Step 1 on p.491.

1 Select a desired date

On the selection screen, it is shown as below how the hours are reserved for each day:

- : Available
- △: Almost full
- None: Full

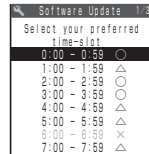


2 Select an hour

On the selection screen, it is shown as below if each hour is available:

- : Available
- △: Almost full
- ×: Full

Selecting an hour communicates with the server again to display the candidates.



3 Confirm the software update time

Checking the selected time and selecting “YES” will communicate with the server again. Software update is reserved.



● Checking the reservation

<Example: Canceling the reservation after checking it>

1 code ▶“Other settings”▶“Software Update”▶Enter your security

2 “Cancel”

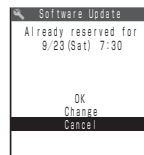
- To accept the reserved date and time

▶“OK”

- To change the date and time

▶“Change”

After sending mobile phone-specific information to the server, follow the steps taken in selecting “Others”. →p.492

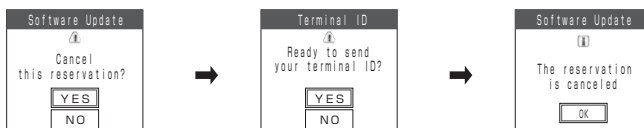


3 When the message “Cancel this reservation?” appears, select “YES”

Now send mobile phone-specific information to the server.

NTT DoCoMo will never disclose or forward your mobile phone-specific information (model and product number) to a third party.

When the message “The reservation is canceled” appears, press . The reservation is canceled.



<Scanning function>

Protecting the FOMA Terminal from Harmful Data

Firstly update the pattern data.

When the FOMA terminal is downloading external files or programs from sites or i-mode messages, this function scans the data and deletes any data or cancels program launch where the data or program could cause a fault.

- Pattern data is used for the check. Update the pattern data when it is upgraded because a problem has been detected. →p.494
- The scanning function prevents data that causes some problems from invading your FOMA terminal when viewing a site or receiving a message. If the pattern data that fixes the error is not installed on your FOMA terminal or if the pattern data does not exist, the scanning function cannot prevent the error from occurring.
- The pattern data varies depending on the model of the FOMA terminal. As a matter of convenience, NTT DoCoMo may discontinue to distribute pattern data for the model if three years have passed since it was first released.
- Ensure that the correct date (year, month and day) is set on the FOMA terminal.
- When you set the auto-update or update the pattern data, the FOMA terminal-specific information (model, manufacturer number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for pattern data updates managed by DoCoMo). The information sent to DoCoMo is used only for the scanning function.
- The pattern data update will be suspended if a voice call is received or if the terminal moves out of range.

Setting the scanning function <Set scan>

Default setting
ON

Setting the scanning function to “ON” will check data and programs automatically when they are executed.

1 ▶“Lock/Security”▶“Scanning function”

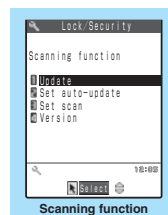
The “Scanning function” screen appears.

2 “Set scan”▶“ON”

- If a message appears asking whether to change the settings

▶“YES”

* If you enable the scanning function and it detects potentially harmful data, the event is displayed at one of the five warning levels. →p.494



Updating pattern data <Update>

1 Scanning function screen (p.493) ▶ “Update” ▶ “YES” ▶ “YES”



* If no pattern data update is required, the message “Pattern definitions are up-to-date” appears.
Continue using the current pattern data.

NOTE

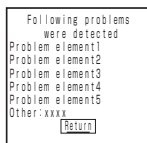
- ◆ Even if the update is informed via the network, the pattern data cannot be automatically updated during i-mode or packet communication, or while another function is running.

Automatically updating pattern data <Set auto-update>

1 Scanning function screen (p.493) ▶ “Set auto-update” ▶ “ON” ▶ “YES”

Viewing the scan results

■ Viewing scanned problems



The scanning function detects up to five problems and displays a list of them, starting with the highest-level problem. If six or more problems were detected, the names of sixth and subsequent problems are omitted.
The rest of the problem elements (sixth and subsequent), whose names are omitted, appear as follows:
1 - 9998 : The remaining count appears as it is.
9999 or more : “Other:9999” appears regardless of the count.

■ Viewing the scan results

Warning level 0	Warning level 1	Warning level 2	Warning level 3	Warning level 4
OK . . . Continues operation.	YES . . . Cancels and ends operation. NO . . . Continues operation.	OK . . . Cancels and ends operation.	YES . . . Deletes data and ends operation. NO . . . Cancels and ends operation.	OK . . . Deletes data and ends operation.

Checking the Pattern Definitions Version <Version>

1 Scanning function screen (p.493) ▶ “Version”

Specifications

Items			FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED	
Size			Height 106mm × Width 51mm × Thickness 25mm (when folded)	
Weight			Approx. 133 g (Battery pack attached)	
Color LCD	Type	Display (Internal): TFT LCD 262,144 colors Image Display (External): TFT LCD 65,536 colors		
	Size	Display (Internal): Approx. 2.5 inches Image Display (External): Approx. 1.0 inch		
	Pixels	Display (Internal): 240 × 345 dots Image Display (External): 120 × 90 dots		
Continuous Standby Time			Stationary: Approx. 560 hrs. In transit: Approx. 440 hrs.	
Continuous Talk Time			Voice communications: Approx. 150 min. Videophone: Approx. 100 min.	
Continuous Playback Time			Approx. 540 min.	
Maximum Output			0.25W	
Battery Type			Lithium-ion	
Battery Voltage			3.8V	
Battery Capacity			850mAh	
Charging Time			AC Adapter/DC Adapter: Approx. 120 min.	
Image Sensor	Type	Front Camera: CMOS Rear Camera: Super CCD Honeycomb		
	Size	Front Camera: Approx. 1/8 inches Rear Camera: Approx. 1/2.7 inches		
Camera	Effective Pixels	Front Camera: Approx. 0.33 mill. pixels Rear Camera: Approx. 2 mill. pixels		
	Maximum Recorded Pixels	Front Camera: Approx. 0.31 mill. pixels Rear Camera: Approx. 4 mill. pixels		
	Digital Zoom	Front Camera: Up to approx. 2X (up to approx. 2X for videophone) Rear Camera: Up to approx. 9X (up to approx. 9X for videophone)		
Record	Still Image	Shooting Size	4M (2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high) QXGA (2,048 dots wide × 1,536 dots high) UXGA (1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high) SXGA (1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high) VGA (640 dots wide × 480 dots high) CIF (352 dots wide × 288 dots high) Screen (240 dots wide × 345 dots high) Stand-by (240 dots wide × 320 dots high) QCIF (176 dots wide × 144 dots high) SubQCIF (128 dots wide × 96 dots high)	
		File Format	JPEG	
	Movie	Movie Shooting Size	QVGA (320 dots wide × 240 dots high) QCIF (176 dots wide × 144 dots high) SubQCIF (128 dots wide × 96 dots high)	
		Movie File Format	MP4	
		Frame Rate	Up to 30 fps	

- Continuous talk time is an estimate of the talk time when radio reception is normal.
- Continuous standby time is an estimate of the standby time when the FOMA terminal is folded and remains within an area where radio reception is normal. In certain circumstances, talk (or communications) and standby times may drop to as low as half the times shown due to the battery charge, function settings, temperature, or radio reception in the area (weak or no reception). Talk (or communications) and standby times will be less when you use i-mode. These times will also be less when you compose an i-mode mail, run downloaded i-appli, launch the i-appli standby display or play music even without making calls or using i-mode.
- Continuous standby time in stationary is an average time for use in stationary condition allowing normal reception of the radio waves when folding the FOMA terminal.
- Continuous standby time in transit is an average time for use in various condition of “stationary”, “moving” within the area allowing normal reception of the radio waves and “out of service area” when folding the FOMA terminal.
- Continuous playback time is a reference time when an SD-Audio data of AAC data format and 96kbps bit rate is played while a FOMA terminal is folded, the attached stereo earphone (sample) is used and the playback volume level is set to 14.
- Talk (or communications) and standby times will be less when you insert the miniSD memory card, run data communications or multi access, or use the camera or light.

Counts for Storage, Registration and Protection Enabled on FOMA Terminal

Item		Storage/Registration	Protection
Phonebook		700 max. ^{*1}	—
Schedule	Schedule	100	—
	Holiday	100	—
	Anniversary	100	—
ToDo		100	—
Mail (SMS + i-mode)	Received mail	1,000 max. ^{*2*3*4}	500 max. ^{*2}
	Sent mail	400 max. ^{*2*3*4}	200 max. ^{*2}
	Draft mail	20	—
Deco-mail template		45 ^{*5}	—
Message	MessageR	100 max. ^{*2}	50 max. ^{*2}
	MessageF	100 max. ^{*2}	50 max. ^{*2}
Bookmark	i-mode	100 ^{*6}	—
	Full browser	100 ^{*6}	—
Screen memo		100 max. ^{*2}	50 max. ^{*2}
i-appli		200 max. ^{*2}	—
	mail-connected i-appli	5	—
ToruCa		100 max. ^{*2}	—
Image (still image)		480 max. ^{*2*4}	—
Movie/i-motion		100 max. ^{*2*6}	—
Chara-den		10 ^{*5}	—
Melody		400 max. ^{*2}	—
PDF data		400 max. ^{*2}	—
Music data		200 max. ^{*2}	—

*1 : Up to 50 items can be stored on the FOMA card (UIM).

*2 : Actual storable or registerable counts may be decreased depending on the data size.

*3 : For SMS, up to 20 mails can be additionally stored on the FOMA card (UIM) combining received mails with sent mails.
→ p.291

*4 : Up to 100 items can be additionally stored on the secret folder.

*5 : Pre-installed data is included.

*6 : Up to 10 items can be additionally stored or registered on the secret folder.

Important

- It is recommended to back up the stored data by taking notes or saving onto the miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using the Data Link Software (p.475) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility for data loss. Take notes, save data to the miniSD memory card or use the Data Link Software to save data to your PC just in case.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones

This model phone FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED meets the MIC's* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves. The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)** averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP***.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0.936 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please visit the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO): <http://www.who.int/peh-emf/>

ICNIRP: <http://www.icnirp.de/>

MIC: <http://www.soumu.go.jp/english/index.html>

TELEC: http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm

NTT DoCoMo: <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/product/> (only Japanese version is available)

NEC: <http://www.n-keitai.com/lineup/> (only Japanese version is available)

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses: <http://www.arib-emf.org/index.html> (only Japanese version is available)

* : Ministry of Internet Affairs and Communications

** : The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

*** : International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

【MEMO】

● Index/Quick Manual

Index	500
Quick Manual	508

Index

Index search

- This Index functions as an alphabetical contents as well. There provides words and terms not only described in this manual, but also summarized for description. If you cannot find the item you looking for, use the other keyword to search.

<Example: To download Chara-den>

Chara-den	88, 364
action	365
control	365
delete	366
display	364
download	228
guide to the Chara-den list	365
Memory info	366
Rec.Chara-den	366

download (retrieve)	
Chaku-Uta-Full®	228
Chara-den	228
data file	229
i-appli	309
image	225
i-motion	238
melody	226
PDF data	226

- “Function” index is included following “Alphabet/Numeric” section. This helps you to learn the function menu (p.35).
- * All menu items of the function menu are not entered in “Alphabet/Numeric” index.

Alphabet/Numeric

A

AC adapter	42
Access reader	203
access site (program)	210
view site	216
accessories	474
Activate notice call	425
add	
Bookmark	222
Original menu	145
PushTalk phonebook	102
Schedule	404
To Do list	408
adding items to the original menu	145
Additional service	432
address list	278
adjust volume	
i-appli vol.	312
Ring volume	69
Volume	69
after-sales service	487
alarm	401
actions	401
check	403
stop	403
Alarm clock	403
Alarm setting	401
Answer hold	70
Answer setting	65
assist key	400
reading out alarm details	401
reading out mails	400

AT command	438
Attached file	279
Auto Deco-mail	253
Auto dial setting	419
Auto focus	187
Auto redial as voice (videophone)	88
Auto reset total cost	414
Auto start set (i-appli)	317
Auto start time (i-appli)	317
Auto timer	200
Automatic answer	419
Automatic display	124

B

Backlight	142
Bar code reader	200
battery	40
charging	42
getting the best out of battery pack	41
life	41
battery level	44
battery pack	40
Bookmark	222
add	222
Delete	223
Edit title	223
folder	222
No. of bookmarks	222, 223
view	222

C

cable connection (data transfer)	383
Calculator	415
Calendar	139
call	

making	50
receiving	64
Call acceptance	172
Call data	413
Call Forwarding	172, 427
Call Forwarding Service	427
Call rejection	172
Call setting w/o ID	174
Call time display	148
Call Waiting	425
Caller ID Notification	47
Caller ID Request	428
camera	180
Access reader	203
Auto timer	200
Bar code reader	200
Brightness	188
Color mode set	196
front camera	180
guide to the shooting screen	184
image shooting	187
image size	181
Image tuning	196
light	200
movie shooting	194
number of images	181
number of movies	182
Photo mode	196
rear camera	180
Shake correction	197
shooting menu	185
White balance	195
zoom	199
cancel	
Mail security	171

Manner mode	134	Copy	148
Public mode (Driving mode)	71	Copy to miniSD	375
Public mode (power off)	73	Copy to phone	378
Restrictions	172	Phonebook	120
Secret data only mode	161	SMS	291
Secret mode	161	Text	450
Certificate	235	copyright	20
Certificate host	237	copy/cut text	450
Chaku-moji	55	create/edit/delete folders	
Chaku-motion/Chaku-Uta®	211	bookmark	222
Chaku-Uta-Full®		data box	381
play	228	mail	271
save	228	miniSD	381
Chance capture	198	ToruCa	329
Change CHR code	217		
change window	452		
changing voice call/			
videophone call	52, 85	data box	342
Character input set	441	data communication	435
Mode 1(5-touch)	441	data link software	475
Mode 2(2-touch)	442	DC adapter	42
Mode 3(T9 input)	442	Deactivate	
Character stamp	355	i-appli standby screen	319
Chara-den	88, 364	deactivate i-appli standby screen	319
action	365	Deco-mail	251
control	365	Decoration	91
delete	366	Delete	
display	364	Bookmark	223
download	228	Chara-den	366
guide to the Chara-den list	365	Desktop icon	150
Memory info	366	Dialed calls	59
Rec.Chara-den	366	Draft mail	257
Set image disp.	366	i-appli	320
charge sound	132	Image	347, 348
charging	42	Melody	370
chat group	286	MessageR/MessageF	235
Chat mail	283	movie	357
Chat group	286	PDF data	392
Chat mail recv.	285	phonebook	119
Chat member	283	PushTalk phonebook	104
Chat settings	287	Received calls	68
Check messages (Voice Mail)	425	received mail	274, 276
check missed calls	74	Redial	59
Check new messages	261	Screen memo	224, 225
Check settings	231	sent mail	275, 277
Check SMS	290	SMS	289
checkbox	34, 219	text	447
CHG input size	441	ToruCa	330
Clear learned	451	URL	222
Clock display	148	description of icon	28
code number		desktop	149
i-mode password	156, 221	desktop holder	43
Network security code	156	Desktop icon	149
PIN1 code and PIN2 code	156	access data or function	150
Security code	156	add	149
Color mode set (camera)	196	check	150
Common phrases	448, 449, 467	notice	150
component names and functions	24	Dialed calls	58
components	22	Dictionary	416
Continuous mode	191	Discern connect	122
continuous standby time	41	Discern group	122
continuous talk time	41	Display	
		Backlight	142
		Call time	148
		changing the menu display	143
		channel List	323
		Clock	148
		Color, background	143
		Display setting	137
		Font	148
		Guide	28
		Image display	141
		image (My picture)	344
		mail	264
		MessageR/MessageF	234
		Own number	48
		PDF	388
		phonebook image	140
		ToruCa	264, 328
		website	216, 221, 334
		Display design	143
		Display home	217
		Display setting	91, 137
		display software info	310
		displaying	
		Mail	264
		ToruCa	264
		Disp. PH-book image	140
		download (retrieve)	
		Chaku-Uta-Full®	228
		Chara-den	228
		data file	229
		i-appli	309
		image	225
		i-motion	238
		melody	226
		PDF data	226
		user certificate	236
		download dictionary	452
		DPOF setting	395
		Draft(mail)	246, 257
		Dual Network	428
		earphone	133
		Earphone/microphone	418
		earphone/microphone with switch	418
		edit	
		Draft mail	257
		image	353
		movie	361
		phonebook	119
		Edit image	353
		Brightness	353
		Change size	354
		Character stamp	353
		Clipping area	350
		Composite image	351
		Correct backlight	354
		Frame	354
		Marker stamp	353
		Positioning	350
		Refresh skin tone	354
		Retouch	353
		Rotate	354

Size for mail	349	scrolling	336	i-appli To function	317
Trim away	355	setting	338	i-appli To setting	317
Edit movie	361	switching from i-mode to		IC card	326
Edit ticker	362	full browser	337	IC card content	327
Rerecord sound	362	TLS/SSL	334	IC card lock	330
Trim for image	362	uploading images	337	setting/releasing	330
Trim for mail	363	function menu	35	SimpleLock	331
Trim i-motion	362			i-channel	322
Edit ticker	362			set	324
emotion-expressing mail	260			View	323
End standby screen (i-appli)	319			Icon	28
English Guidance	429			Desktop icon	149
enter PIN1 code	158			Discern connect	122
erase				Display	28
i-appli vol.	312			emotion-expressing mail	260
record message	77			full browser	335
Ring volume	69			i-appli	312
Voice announce	413			icons on the standby screen	152
voice memo	77			image display	28
VP message	78			image type	345
error messages	481			mail	267, 268
exit standby screen (i-appli)	319			Melody	368
external keys guard	170			MessageR/MessageF	233
external microphone	418			Music	299
				PDF data	388
				Received calls	68
				Rec.Chara-den screen	366
				Redial/Dialed calls	59
				shooting screen	184
				videophone	80
				icon display area	28
				icons setting	152
				Illumination	147
				Illumination in talk	147
				Image	219, 344
				Add folder	381
				delete	347, 348
				Delete folder	381
				display	219, 344
				Edit image → refer to Edit image	
				guide to the picture list	345
				guide to the title list	345
				Memory info	347
				Move	347
				Original animation	351
				Select multiple data	382
				Viewer settings	346
				Image display	30
				icon	28
				Sample images	30
				Setting	141
				Image shooting	
				image size	181
				image shooting	
				AF lock	188
				Auto focus	187
				Auto timer	200
				Continuous mode	191
				Framed photography	193
				Image size	181
				Light	200
				Number of images	181

Shoot folded	190
Shoot open	187
Shooting settings	199
Zoom	199
Image tuning	196
i-melody	226
iMenu	210, 215
i-mode	210
Add to phonebook	220
Exit	216
handle Flash movies	220
Host selection	231
Start	215
i-mode FeliCa	326
i-mode mail → refer to mail	
i-mode menu	215
i-mode password	156, 221
i-mode settings	230
i-motion	237, 355
Automatic replay	239
Details	239
Guide to preview and title list	356
i-motion type	239
Playback	238, 355
Save	239
Sound effects	130
Standard type	237
Streaming type	238
i-motion mail	255, 264
Inbox(mail)	246, 264
In-call arrival act	430
In-car hands-free	63
Incoming call lamp setting (during a call)	147
Incoming call lamp setting (receiving)	147
Info notice setting	74
infrared data exchange	382
data to be transferred	384
infrared data port	383, 387
infrared remote control	387
Receive all	387
Receive one	386
Send all	386
Send one	385
initial setting	46
initialize	421
initialize → refer to Reset	
insert mode	445
intellectual property right	20
international calls	53
Internet	221
Internet access	221
Int'l dial settings	54
ISP connection	231

J

JAN code	200
Jumping forward/back to a page (site)	219

K

key	
key names and functions	24
operation by long press	26
Keypad dial lock	170
Keypad sound	132
Kuten code	450, 468

L

last URL	218
launcher	34
Lock all	160
Release	160
Set	160

M

mail	241
Add folder	271
Add receiver	249
Attach image	255
Attach i-motion	255
Attach melody	255
Attach movie	255
Attach ToruCa	255
Auto-sort	272
broadcast mail	249
Change rcv. type	248
changing the list screen	
display mode	270
changing the mail character size	270
Check settings	279
composing	247
Copy	276, 277
Decomail-picture	459
Delete folder	271
delete received mail	274, 276
Delete receiver	248
delete sent mail	275, 277
Draft	246, 257
Edit	275, 277
Edit folder name	271
emotion-expressing mail	260
Emotion/keyword notice	283
Filter	275
Forward	262
guide to the folder list screens	266
guide to the mail detail screens	268
guide to the mail list screens	267
header	280
Inbox	246, 264
Large image	256
Mail menu	246
Mail security	171
Mail settings	279
Move trash box	274, 276
No. of messages for draft mail	257, 274
No. of messages for sent mail	275
Open folder	271
Outbox	246, 264
Preview	248

protect ON/OFF for received mail	274, 276
protect ON/OFF for sent mail	275, 277
Quotation marks	280
reading mail messages	265
reading out message	265
Receive option	260
receiving	258
receiving image mail	264
receiving ToruCa	264
Reply	262
Reply with quote	262
Resend	277
rules used for reading out	281
save	257
saving address, adding phonebook entry	263
saving images	264
saving i-motion	264
saving melody	263
saving ToruCa	264
Search mail	273, 275
Secret code	119
Secret folder	163
sending	247
Signature	280
Sort	275
Sort folder	271
Speed photo mail	250
Template list	462
Mail list disp.	279
Mail member	257
Mail menu	246
Mail security	171
Mail setting	279
Mail To function	230
Mail/Msg. ring time	133
main components	22
Main menu	31
malfunction checklist	477
Manner mode	134
Manner mode set	135
manufacturer number	218
Marker stamp	354
Melody	368
Add folder	381
Delete	370
Delete folder	381
Download	226
Guide to the melody list	368
Memory info	369
Move	370
Operations during playback	369
Play melody	368
Playlist playback	371
Memory info	
Chara-den list	366
i-øpli list	311
image list	347
image shooting, continuous shooting	188
Melody list	369

Delete	289	Paste	450	Viewer settings	346
forward	290	Pictograph	446	Visual check	90
Preview	289	Pi*SB input mode	447	Visual preference (Videophone)	88
receiving	289	Quote Data	449	Voice announce	412
reply	290	single-byte/double-byte	441, 442	Voice clock	75
Save	289	Space (blank)	445	Voice Mail	172, 424
saving SMS to your FOMA card		Symbols	446	Voice memo	77, 411
(UIM)	291	UNDO	448	Voice memo (in-call)	411
Sending	288	upper case and lower case	445	voice mode	199
SMS report	288	Text memo	415	Volume	69
UIM operation	120, 291	To Do list	408	VP message	78
software key	27	ToruCa	327	Erase	78
Software Update	489	acquire	328	Play	78
Sound effect	130, 231	set	330		
SRS_WOW	130	view	328	W	
Surround	130	trademark	20	Wake-up display	137
3Dsound	130	trimming	355	warranty	487
Sound effect (i-mode)	231	turning a FOMA terminal on/off	44	Web To function	230
Speed photo auto disp.	279	turning on the light	200	website	221
Speed photo mail	250	Two-touch dialing	124	White balance	195
SRS_WOW	130			WORLD CALL	53
SSL certificate	235	U		World watch	47
SSL page	212	UIM operation	120	WORLD WING	39
SSL session	212	update (scanning function)	494		
Standby screen	139	URL	221	Y	
Start attachment(auto)	230, 279	Delete	222	your phone number	48
store		Enter URL	221		
Add to PushTalk	102	URL	217	Z	
bookmark	222	URL history	221	zoom	199
Common phrases	449	USB mode setting	380		
Home	217	Use phone information	230, 232	Numerals, etc.	
Mail member	257	user certificate	236	186(show)/184(hide)	60
Original menu	145	using menus	32	3D animation	
Own data (Own number)	410			Chaku-moji	55
Own dictionary	451	V		desktop icon	151
phonebook (Phone)	111	vibration (vibrator)	131	emotion-expressing mail	260
phonebook (UIM)	112	Vibrator (vibration)	131	3D display setting	151
Schedule	404	videophone	80	3D sound	130
To Do list	408	Auto redial as voice	88	64K data communication	436
storing and showing personal data ..	410	Chara-den	88	みんなNらんど	216
Sub-address setting	62	Connecting to external device	92		
Subtitle	362	Decoration	91		
Super silent	135	hands-free	63		
symbols	446	Hands-free switch	90		
symbols and special characters	465	making a call	81		
T		Petit message	91		
Template	254	receiving a call	86		
text box	219	Remote monitoring	93		
text entry	440, 444	Select image	89		
change window	452	videophone screen	80		
Common phrases	448	Visual check	90		
Copy	450	Visual prefer.	83		
Cut	450	zoom	90		
delete	447	videophone message	78		
face symbols	446	view			
Guidance	444	channel list	323		
insert	445	MessageR/MessageF	234		
Insert/Overwrite	445	PDF data	388		
Kuten code	450	site	216		
Line feed	446	ToruCa	328		
Overwrite	445	website	221		
		view an SSL page	218		

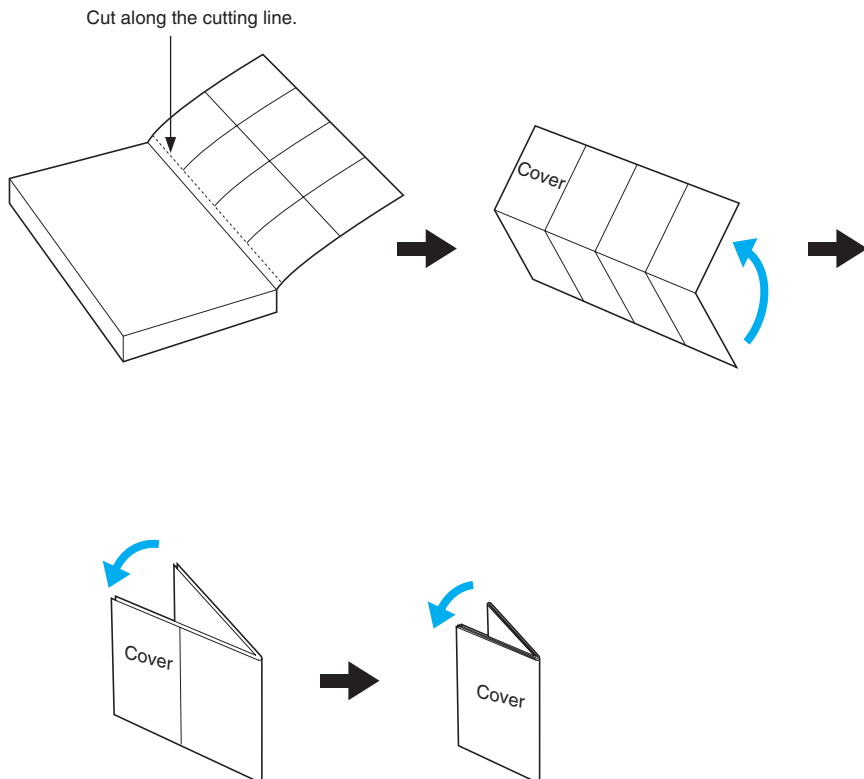
Function	
This section shows the Function index corresponding to the following screens by indexes on the cover page.	
Making/Receiving Phone Calls	
Country Code setting	55
Create message	56
Dialed calls (list/details)	59
IDD Prefix setting	54
In-call	51
Pause dial	61
Phone number entry	51
Play/Erase msg.	77
Play/Erase VP msg.	78
Prefix setting	62
Received calls (list/details)	68
Redial calls (list/details)	59
Ringing	64
Making/Receiving Videophone Calls	
Other ID	93
videophone in-call	82
videophone number entry	82
videophone ringing	87
Push-to-Talk	
PushTalk phonebook	104
Using the Phonebook	
Group setting	114
phonebook	117
phonebook detail	117
UIM operation (copy)	121
UIM operation (delete)	121
Tone/Display/Lighting settings	
Desktop icon	150
Original menu	145
Original theme	145
Security Settings	
group selection	169
item selection	169
Restrictions	173
Camera	
Access reader scanning	205
Continuous mode	188
continuous shooting checking	192
Detail checking	192
image checking	189
movie checking	197
Movie mode	194
Photo mode	188
Reading data detail (Access reader)	206
Reading data detail (Bar code reader)	202
Reading data list (Access reader)	205
Reading data list (Bar code reader)	202
recording start (Picture voice)	198
i-mode/i-motion	
Bookmark	223
Bookmark folder list	222

Enter URL	222	edit movie	362
message detail	235	file list (SD-PIM)	377
message list	234	folder list (i-motion)	381
Screen memo detail	224	folder list (Melody)	381
Screen memo list	224	folder list (Music)	381
sites	216	folder list (My document)	381
Mail		folder list (My picture)	381
Address/Subject	249	i-motion stopped (pause)	359
Address input	249	image list	346
Chat	284	Melody	370
Chat group list	286	Melody list	369
Chat member	283	miniSD folder list	381
Draft mail list	257	movie list	356
Emotion/Keyword	283	multi-selection (data box)	382
group member list	286	My picture	348
Inbox folder list	271	Original animation list	351
Mail member detail	258	Original animation playback	352
Mail member list	258	PDF data	392
Message	249	PDF list	391
New mail	248	Playlist folder (i-motion)	360
New SMS	289	Playlist folder (Melody)	371
Outbox folder list	271	Rec.Chara-den	367
Received address list	278	Other Useful Functions	
received mail detail	276	Alarm clock	404
received mail list	273	Dictionary	417
Sent address	278	Own number	410
sent mail detail	277	Reference history (dictionary)	417
sent mail list	275	Reference result (list/detail)	417
Speed photo mail image	251	Schedule	405
Template	255	Schedule list	408
Template preview	255	Text memo	416
Music		To Do list detail	409
Chapter list	297	To Do list screen	409
Music Channel	297	Voice announce	413
Music Channel Playback	296	Network Services	
Music list	299	Additional service/	
music player	301	Additional guidance	433
playlist	303	Check setting	425
playlist music	303	Multi Number setting	432
i-oppli		Entering Text	
End stand-by info	319	Common phrase list	450
miniSD data list	320	Common phrases folder list	450
Security error history	312	Download dictionary	452
Software list	311	Own dictionary	451
i-channel		Text entry (edit)	448
Channel list	323		
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa			
IC card content	327		
ToruCa display	330		
ToruCa folder list	329		
ToruCa list	329		
Full Browser			
Full Browser	337		
Display/Edit/Organization			
Categories (SD-PIM)	376		
Chara-den list	365		
Chara-den player	366		
data detail (SD-PIM)	377		
data list (SD-PIM)	377		
Edit image	353		

Quick Manual

■ How to use the Quick Manual

- The Quick Manual describes basic operations and displays of the FOMA terminal.
- Use the Quick Manual bound in this manual by detaching it at the cutting line and folding it as follows. Carry both sheets of the Quick Manual with you for your reference.
- Detach one page at a time so that you do not tear other pages. Take care not to hurt yourself.



* Fold the second sheet so that the "Menu list" (p.16) becomes the cover page.

FOMA® N902iX

HIGH-SPEED Quick Manual

○For inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

For a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

[F] (No prefix) 151 (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

[00] 0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

※Can be called from mobile phones and PHS.

○For malfunctions

For a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

[F] (No prefix) 113 (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

[00] 0120-800-000 (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※Can be called from mobile phones and PHS.

※For details, check the "Service station list" provided with a FOMA terminal.

Edit/delete phonebook data

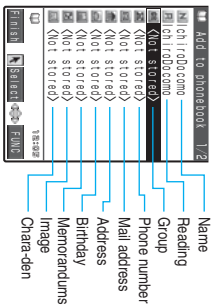
■Edit the phonebook data

Open the phonebook detail screen → **[F] (FUNC) →** "Edit phonebook" → Edit the items if necessary → **[F] (Finish)** → "YES" (for UIM phonebook) → Overwrite → "YES"

■Delete phonebook data

Open the phonebook list screen → **[F] (FUNC) →** "Delete data" → Delete this → "YES" (Select another "YES" depending on the phonebook)

Add to phonebook



1. Standby screen appears → **[F] (FUNC) →** Add to phonebook*

●To add data from the received call record

Standby screen appears → **[F] (FUNC) →** Highlight the received call record → **[F] (FUNC) →** "Add to phonebook"

●To add data from the radial

Standby screen appears → **[F] (FUNC) →** Highlight the radial record → **[F] (FUNC) →** Add to phonebook*

1

Input method and mode

■Character input screen



Text entry area

Operation guidance area
Information display area

■Input mode



2. Select "Phone" or "UIM" → Enter name → Check the reading

3. Select items and enter them

■Group (00 to 19)

■<No stored> → Select group

■Phone number (up to 4)

■<No stored> → Enter phone number → Selection icon

■Mail address (up to 3)

■<No stored> → Enter mail address → Select icon

■Address

■<No stored> → Enter zip code → Enter address

■Birthday

■<No stored> → Enter birthday

2

■Select input method

[F] (FUNC) → (Settings) → Other settings → "Character input set" → Input mode → Select any item

■Switching the text entry method

■<P> SB (press and hold) (several times)

■Switching input mode

■<A> (Several times)

■Enter dakuten, hen-dakuten, comma, dot

■(Several times)

■Switching between upper and lower cases

Before entering, **[F] (FUNC) →** "Upper case" or "Lower case"

Move the cursor to the input text → **[F] (FUNC) →** "Space" (blank)

■Enter space (blank)

Move the cursor to the end of the sentence followed by no letters → **[F] (FUNC) →** "Space"

6

■Memorandums

■<No stored> → Enter memorandums

■Image

■<No stored> → Select photo mode or image

■Chara-den

■<No stored> → Select Chara-den

■Memory number (000 to 699)

■<Enter memory number

4. **[F] (Finish)**

Only name, reading, group, phone number, and mail address can be stored to the FOMA card (UIM).

3

■Text line feed

Move the cursor to the end of the sentence followed by no letters → **[F] (FUNC) →** "Line feed"

■<P> SB (press and hold)

■<P> SB (press and hold)

■Enter face symbol, symbol or pictograph

■<P> SB (several times) → Select symbol or pictograph → **[F] (FUNC) →** to end operation

■<P> SB (several times) → "Face Mark", "Symbols" or "Pictograph" → Select symbols or texts

■Delete texts

Use **[F] (FUNC) →** to move the cursor to the text to be deleted → **[F] (FUNC) →** "Delete"

7

Enter Text

Enter “太郎” on Text memo

Text entry (edit) screen
[Enter] → [Text] → [Text memo] → [Edit] → [Kana] → [Text] → [Kana/ Hiragana input mode]

た once
ろ five times
う three times

Conversion
[Enter] or [CHG] → [Select “太郎” from the conversion candidates]

Camera

Shoot still image
[LifeKey] → [Camera] → [Photo mode] → [Shutter] or [LifeKey] → [Shutter]

i-mode Mail

Compose/send Message



New mail screen
[Mail] → [Compose message] → [Address] → [Select how to enter mail address]

Shoot continuously

[LifeKey] → [Camera] → [Photo mode] → [FUNC] → [CHG camera-mode] → [Continuous mode] → [Auto] or [Manual] → [Shutter] or [FUNC] → [Selected saving method]

Shoot movie
[LifeKey] → [Camera] → [Movie mode] → [Shutter] or [LifeKey] → [Shutter]

Display image/play melody

Display image
[Data box] → [My picture] → [Select folder] → [Select image]

Play movie
[Data box] → [i-motion] → [Select folder] → [Select movie]

9

Subject

[Subject] → [Enter subject]
[Message] → [Enter message]
[Send mail] → [Send] → [after transmission ends]

Attach file

Attach image
New mail screen → [FUNC] → [Attach file] → [Attach image] → [Select folder] → [Select image]

Play melody

[Data box] → [Melody] → [Select folder] → [Select melody]

Using Music Channel

Play program
[LifeKey] → [Music Channel] → [Select program]

Using music player

Play music on Music Player
[Data box] → [Music] → [Select folder] → [Select track]

Operate Music Player with assist key
Press [ASSIST] with the FOMA terminal folded (press and hold)

10

Attach i-motion

New mail screen → [FUNC] → [Attach file] → [Attach i-motion] → [Select folder] → [Select i-motion]

Attach melody
New mail screen → [FUNC] → [Attach file] → [Attach melody] → [Select folder] → [Select melody]

Attach TonoCa
New mail screen → [FUNC] → [Attach file] → [Attach TonoCa] → [Select folder] → [Select TonoCa]

Receive mail
[White] flashes → [Received results] screen appears → [Select] → [New]

Make/receive videophone call

Make a videophone call
Enter the phone number → [Call] → [Videophone] → [Call] after talking

Receive a videophone call

The phone rings and the incoming call lamp flashes.
Press [Call] or [Call] or [Call] after talking
[Call] : Send your shot to the caller
or [Call]
[Subst.] : Send your substitute image to the caller

During a call
[Call] : Switch (ON/OFF) hands-free
[Call] : Switch camera (Front camera/rear camera)

11

Other functions

Reply
Display the mail to reply → [Reply] → [Reply] → [Enter message] → [Send] → [after transmission ends]

Forward
Display the mail to forward → [FUNC] → [Forward] → [Forward] → [Fe] → [Select how to enter mail address] → [Send] → [after transmission ends]

Check new messages
[Mail] → [Check new messages]

Menu list

Menu	Start item	Sub menu	Brand item
Mail	Settings	Sub menu	
		Inbox	
		Outbox	
		Draft	
		Compose message	
		Out mail	
		Compose SMS	
		Out SMS	
		Check new messages	
		Block new SMS	
		Check new SMS	
		Template	
		Mail settings	
I-mode	Settings	Mail settings	
		Menu	
		Bookmark	
		Screen memo	
		Get URL	
		IC card address	
		IC card mail	
		Message	
		Check new messages	
		Client certificate	
		I-mode settings	
		Internet (Full Browser)	
		Services list	
I-portal	Settings	IMSD saved data	
		Mail saved data	
		Mail saved info	
		I-portal info	

16

Menu	Start item	Sub menu	Brand item
Settings	Settings	Sub menu	
		Incoming call	
		Ring volume (→) (5-17C)	
		Selected ring tone (→) (1-11B)	
		Sound effect (→) (5-14-4)	
		Vibrator (→) (5-14-1)	
		Illumination (→) (5-15A)	
		Message mode set (→) (5-15A)	
		Display shut-off mode	
		Answer setting (→) (5-16-2)	
		MailMsg. ring tone (→) (5-16-3)	
		Ring time(sec) (→) (5-15C)	
		Info notice setting (→) (5-15C)	
Talk	Settings	Record message (→) (5-15-2)	
		Noise reduction (→) (2-16-2)	
		Quality alarm (→) (2-15-2)	
		Reconnected signal (→) (2-17-2)	
		Illumination r talk	
		Set rtd type	
		Setting when rtded (→) (1-11B-3)	
		Pause dtd (→) (5-14-1)	
		Dialing	
		Spk-address setting	
		Auto dial setting	
		Info dtd setting	
		Vibrator preference	

17

Menu	Start item	Sub menu	Brand item
Settings	Settings	Sub menu	
		Videophone	
		Speed image	
		Auto redial & voice	
		Remote monitoring	
		Display setting	
		Nty switch-mode	
		Hands-free switch	
		Display setting (→) (5-16-2)	
		Background (→) (2-14C)	
		Display design (→) (5-16-2)	
		Image display (→) (5-16-3)	
		Font (→) (5-16-3)	
Display	Settings	Desktop icon (→) (5-13-2)	
		3D display setting	
		Select language (→) (1-11B-2)	
		Original menu (→) (5-12-2)	
		Menu display set (→) (5-17-2)	
		Viewer settings	
		Automatic display (→) (1-17-2)	
		Icons setting	
		Icons dtd (→) (5-11-1)	
		Icons dtd setting	
		Call time	
		Call time change	
		Reset time (→) (5-14C)	

18

Menu	Start item	Sub menu	Brand item
Settings	Settings	Sub menu	
		Call time	
		Auto reset rtd cost	
		Call time change	
		Call time (→) (5-11-1)	
		Clock display (→) (5-15-2)	
		Word watch	
		Alarm setting	
		Lock all	
		Lock/Security	
		Simplex lock	
		IC card lock	
		Self mode	
Connection	Settings	Keypad dial lock	
		Repeat unknown	
		Call setting who ID (→) (1-17C)	
		Record display set	
		Change security code (→) (5-21-2)	
		PIN setting	
		Secure mode (→) (1-21C)	
		Secure data only mode (→) (1-11-1)	
		Scanning function	
		Call connection (reset)	
		Set call mode (→) (1-11-1)	
		Hot selection (→) (5-11-1)	

19

Menu

Menu	Start item	Sub menu	Brand item
Settings	Settings	Sub menu	
		Connection	
		Setting	
		Certificate	
		Certificate host	
		Disp. Scheme mto	
		End stand-by display	
		I-portal vol.	
		Tonka	
		Receive ton R/W	
		Scroll	
		USB mode setting	
		Esprphone (→) (5-11-1)	
Network	Settings	External connection	
		Automatic answer (→) (5-11-2)	
		Select microphone	
		NW search mode	
		Network setting	
		Keypad sound (→) (3-10-2)	
		Change sound	
		Battery level (→) (2-11-1)	
		External keys guard (→) (5-2) (Press and hold)	
		Character input set (→) (3-15-2)	
		Neuroopter	
		Reset settings (→) (2-13-1)	
		Initialze	
		Software update	

20

Menu

Menu	Start item	Sub menu	Brand item
Data box	Settings	Sub menu	
		My picture (→) (1-16-2)	
		Music	
		I-modon	
		Melody (→) (1-16-2)	
		Chord-den	
		My document	
		Music Channel	
		Bar code reader	
		Receive r data (→) (2-15-2)	
		Tonka	
		IC card content	
		SP-MK	
LinkIt	Settings	Camera	
		Schedule (→) (1-15-2)	
		Alarm dock (→) (1-14-2)	
		T to DS (→) (5-11-2)	
		T to DS (→) (5-11-2)	
		Text memo (→) (1-15-2)	
		Calculator (→) (5-15-2)	
		Play/Erase msg. (MEMO-CHECK)	
		Play/Erase VP msg.	
		Voice memo (→) (1-13-2)	
		Voice announce (→) (5-11-1)	
		UM operation	
		Forwarding image	

21

Menu

Menu	Start item	Sub menu	Brand item
LinkIt	Settings	Sub menu	
		Access reader	
		Dictionary	
		Network	
		Online-mto	
		Call-ID Notification (→) (1-17-2)	
		Voice Mail	
		Call Waiting	
		Call Forwarding	
		Nuisance Call Bk	
		Caller ID Request	
		In-call screen set	
		Set local email	
Phonebook	Settings	Remote Control	
		Dual Network	
		Additional service	
		Service Numbers	
		Multi Number	
		Phonebook	
		PushTalk	
		Own number (→) (1-15-1)	
		Own data	
		Received calls (→) (2-11-2)	

22

Menu

Menu	Start item	Sub menu	Brand item
Own data	Settings	Sub menu	
		Diald calls	
		Mail member (→) (5-17-2)	
		Out group	
		Common phrases (→) (3-18-2)	
		Own dictionary (→) (5-18-2)	
		Dt dictionary	

<Other features>

● (Press and hold) (Set/release every pressing)

● (Push and hold) (Set/release every pressing)

(Press and hold) (Set/release every pressing)

23

Network Services

Voice Mail service

- Activate
[Service] → "Voice Mail" → "Activate" → "YES"
→ "YES" → Enter Ring time (seconds)
- Deactivate
[Service] → "Voice Mail" → "Deactivate" → "YES"
- Play messages
[Service] → "Voice Mail" → "Play messages"
→ "YES" → Follow the voice prompts

24

Icon



Icon display area

- [Battery icon] : Battery level
- [Lock icon] : Lock all is set
- [Envelope icon] (White): Unread message
- [Phone icon] (White): Unread MessageR

28

Call Waiting

- Activate
[Service] → "Call Waiting" → "Activate" → "YES"
- Deactivate
[Service] → "Call Waiting" → "Deactivate" → "YES"
- Receive another incoming call
Press [End Call] or [Call Forwarding] to switch to incoming call.
To switch the calls, press [Call Forwarding].

25

- [Envelope icon] (White): Unread MessageF
- [Envelope icon] (White): i-mode mail stored in i-mode Center
- [Signal strength icon] : Signal strength
- [i-mode icon] : Using i-mode
- [SSL icon] : SSL page
- [Communication icon] : During Communication mode, USB cable unconnected, hands-free device unconnected
- [Infrared icon] : Exchanging infrared data
- [Memory icon] : miniSD memory card inserted
- [Voice call icon] : During voice call
- [IC lock icon] : IC card lock is set

29

Call Forwarding service

- Activate
[Service] → "Call Forwarding" → "Activate" → Set a forwarding number or the ring time, and then select "Activate" → "YES"
- Deactivate
[Service] → "Call Forwarding" → "Deactivate" → "YES"
- Caller ID Request service
Activate Caller ID Request service
[Service] → "Caller ID Request" → "Activate" → "YES" → OK
- Deactivate Caller ID Request service
[Service] → "Caller ID Request" → "Deactivate" → "YES" → OK

26

- [Vibrator icon] : Vibrator set
- [Ring volume icon] : Ring volume is set to "Silent"
- [Manner mode icon] : Manner mode set
- [Driving mode icon] : Public mode (Driving mode) set
- [Automatic downloads icon] : Music Channel automatic downloads set
- [Alarm icon] : Alarm function set
- [Record message icon] to [Voice Mail icon] : Record message set
- [Voice Mail icon] to [Voice Mail icon] : Voice Mail message
- [Backlight icon] : Backlight is "OFF"
- [External keys icon] : External keys guard is "ON"
- [VP message icon] to [VP message icon] : Record VP message is set

30

Service available on FOMA Terminal

Collect call (the receiving party is asked to pay for)	(No area code) 106
Directory assistance for general phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (pay)*1	(No area code) 104
Telegram (pay) 8:00 am to 10:00 pm	(No area code) 115
Time (pay)	(No area code) 117
Weather forecast (pay)	Area code + 177
Police emergency ²	(No area code) 119
Fire brigade/ambulance emergency ²	(No area code) 119
Maritime distress call	(No area code) 118
Emergency Message Recording System	(No area code) 171

*1: The phone number cannot be provided if the number is not listed in the directory.
*2: Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected with the nearest police or fire department. If you cannot reach the police or fire department from your mobile phone, dial from a public or general subscriber phone.

27

<Emergency contact numbers (in case of loss of your terminal, etc.)>

Omakase Lock

Call Center (for setting/releasing Omakase Lock)

0120-524-360

Operating time: 24 hours a day (in Japanese only)
* My DoCoMo is also available to set/release Omakase Lock via a PC, etc.

Other emergency contact numbers

- <Number 1 : >
- <Number 2 : >
- <Number 3 : >

* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

31

Using your FOMA Terminal Politely

When using your FOMA terminal in public, consider the feelings of others.

Turn off your FOMA terminal when you are:

- In a place where it is prohibited to use a mobile phone
It is prohibited to use a mobile phone in some places. Turn off your FOMA terminal in:
 - An airplane • A hospital
 - * Turn off your FOMA terminal in a lobby or waiting room as well as in a hospital ward in case that electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
- Driving
Using the FOMA terminal prevents you from driving safely.
 - * Stop the car in a safe place before using the phone, or set the Public mode (Driving mode).
- In a crowded place such as rush-hour train, where somebody nearby may be using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator
Radio waves may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.
- In a public place such as theater, cinema, or museum
Using the FOMA terminal in a public place, where you need to be quiet, annoys people around you.

Mind where you use your FOMA terminal and how loud your voice or the ring tone is

- If you use your FOMA terminal in a quiet place such as a restaurant or hotel lobby, mind how loud your voice is, etc.
- Take care not to disturb other people when you use your FOMA terminal in a public place.

Respect privacy



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

These functions enable you to be well-mannered

Your FOMA terminal is equipped with useful functions not to answer an incoming call or to mute all the sounds of the FOMA terminal.

[Manner mode/Original manner mode] → pp.134, 135

Manner mode mutes sounds emitting from the FOMA terminal such as keypad sounds and ring tones. You can customize Manner mode by changing the settings of the Record message function, vibrator or ring tone (Original manner mode). However, neither Manner mode nor Original manner mode can mute the shutter sound of the camera.

[Public mode (Driving mode/Power off)] → pp.71, 73

The caller hears an announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place where you need to refrain from talking or turn the power off.

[Vibrator] → p.131

The FOMA terminal vibrates to notify you of an incoming call.

[Record message function] → p.75

When you cannot answer a call, the caller leaves a message.

You can also use optional services such as the Voice Mail service (p.424) and Call Forwarding service (p.427).

DoCoMo e-site welcomes requests for brochures as well as various procedures such as change of your address or billing plan.

i-mode:

i Menu ⇒ 料金&お申込・設定 ⇒ ドコモeサイト

Packet communication free

PC:

My DoCoMo (<http://www.mydocomo.com/>) ⇒ 各種手続き (ドコモeサイト)

※ To access e-site via i-mode, your "Network security code" is required.

※ The packet communication fee is free when accessing e-site via i-mode. However, accessing from overseas will be charged.

※ To access e-site via PC, "My DoCoMo ID" and "Password" are required.

※ If you have no "Network security code", "My DoCoMo ID" and "Password" with you or unfortunately forgot them, please feel free to contact inquiries shown below.

※ Some contracts may not be available for accessing e-site.

※ You may not be able to access e-site due to system maintenance, etc.

For inquiries < DoCoMo Information Center >

■ From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:



(No prefix) **151** (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

■ From an ordinary (landline) phone:



0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

※ Can be called from mobile phones or PHSs

● Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

For technical inquiries

■ From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:



(No prefix) **113** (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

■ From an ordinary (landline) phone:



0120-800-000 (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※ Can be called from mobile phones or PHSs

● Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

● For details, check the "Service station list" provided with a FOMA terminal.



Don't forget your cellular phone ... or your manners!

○ When using your mobile phone in public, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration to others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: NEC Corporation



To protect the environment, return used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, any NTT DoCoMo retailers, or a recycling agency.



This manual is made from 100% recycled paper.



This manual is printed with soy based ink.

'06.8 (1.1 Edition)
MDT-000065-EAA0

FOMA[®] N902iX

HIGH-SPEED

Manual for Data Communication

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal	1
Before Using	3
Checking the Procedure	4
Setting the PC	7
About the FOMA PC Setting Software	12
How to Set Various Settings	17
Executing Set Data Communication	23
W-TCP Settings	26
Access Point Name (APN) Settings	28
Setting up Dial-up Network	29
Setting up Dial-up	36
AT Command List	44

About Manual for Data Communication

This manual describes necessary information for data communication using the FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED and how to install "N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file (drivers)" and "FOMA PC setting software" provided in the CD-ROM.

Operations on Windows XP

The contents of this manual are based on Windows XP with Service Pack 2. The procedures or screens may vary depending on your environment.

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal

Packet communication and 64K data communication

Data communication that can be used between the FOMA terminal and PCs is classified in 2 categories: packet communication and 64K data communication.

● Packet communication

The data is received at the maximum speed of 3.6Mbps and sent at the maximum speed of 384kbps*. Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received, regardless of the time it takes or the distance. Note that the communication charge can become expensive when large files are sent and received. It is also possible to access a corporate LAN connected to a FOMA network and exchange data.

* : The data is received and sent at the maximum speed of 384kbps outside the FOMA HIGH-SPEED area.

● 64K data communication

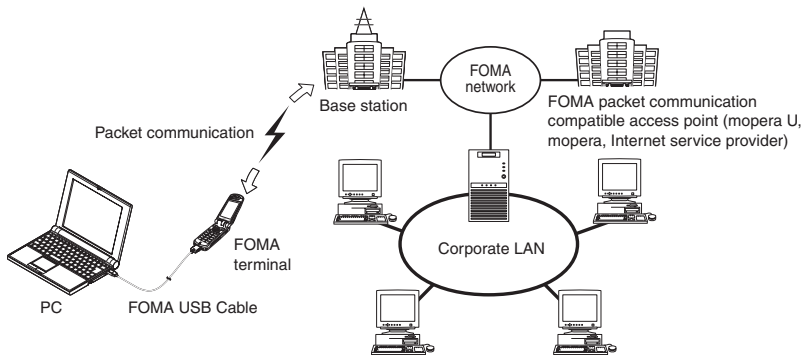
Data can be sent or received at the stable speed of 64kbps. This type of communication is charged according to the length of time the line is connected regardless of the amount of data. Note that the communication charge can become expensive when the line is connected for a long time.

■ For packet communication

Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

Use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U”.

- DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera” is also available. Note that the communication speed for both sending and receiving is up to 384kbps when using the access point for “mopera”.

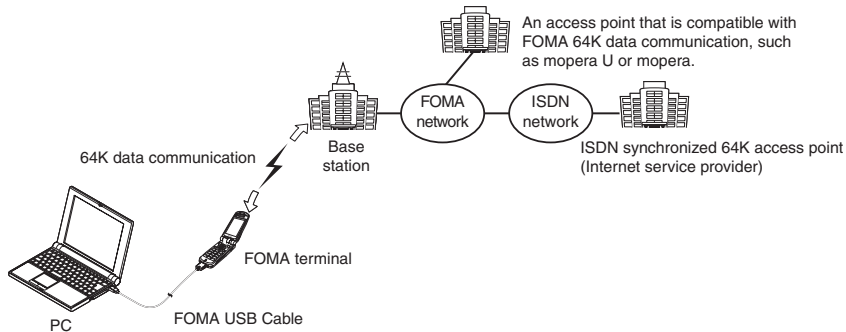


■ For 64K data communication

64K data communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

Use an access point that supports FOMA 64K data communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U”.

- DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera” is also available.



Notice before using

Internet service provider fees

In addition to FOMA service charges, you may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the Internet service provider in addition to service fees of FOMA service. Contact your Internet service provider for details.

DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” is available. “mopera U” is a pay service for which you need to apply. “mopera” is a free service for which you do not need to apply.

Setting an access point (e.g. Internet service provider)

Packet communication and 64K data communication use different access points. If you are using packet communication, use an applicable access point for it; if 64K data communication, use an access point for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K.

- You cannot use DoPa access points.
- You cannot use access points for PHS64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authorization when accessing network

Some access points may require your user authorization (ID and password) when connecting. Use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. ID and password will be provided by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for details.

Access authorization when using the browser

To view FirstPass compliant sites on your PC's browser, FirstPass (user certification) for access authorization is needed. Install the FirstPass PC software from the CD-ROM and conduct the setting. For details, refer to “FirstPassManual” (PDF format) stored in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder included on the CD-ROM. (The “FirstPassManual” is in Japanese only.)

Before Using

Operational environment

The PC operation environment to use data communication is as shown below:

PC unit	• PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive • USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1) • Display resolution of 800 dots wide x 600 dots high, High Color (65,536 colors) is recommended
OS*2	• Windows 2000 (Japanese version) • Windows XP (Japanese version)
Required memory	• Windows 2000: 64M bytes or more**1 • Windows XP: 128M bytes or more**1
Hard disk space	• 5M bytes or more**1

*1 : The required memory and necessary hard disk space may differ depending on the PC's system configuration.

*2 : The proper operations on the upgraded OS are not guaranteed.

NOTE

- To transmit data with the FOMA terminal connected to the DoCoMo PDA "musea" or "sigmarion II", update "musea" or "sigmarion II". For how to update it and other details, visit the DoCoMo website.
- This FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup function.
- This FOMA terminal is not compatible with the FAX communication.

Required devices

The following hardware and software, in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC, are required.

- FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- CD- ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED"

NOTE

- Purchase the specified "FOMA USB Cable". The USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.

Checking the Procedure

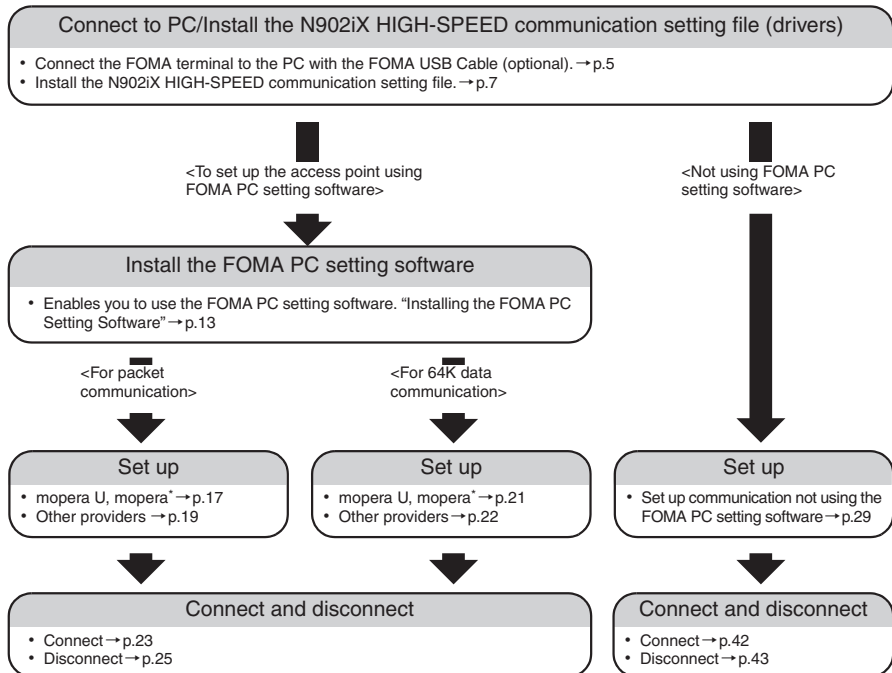
In data communication, the connection is made through a dial-up connection with Internet service providers or LANs that support FOMA data communication.

■ About the “CD-ROM for FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED”

- The CD-ROM contains the N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file (drivers), FOMA PC setting software and FirstPass PC software.
- The N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file is software (driver) needed for connecting the FOMA terminal with a PC via a FOMA USB Cable (optional) to carry out packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer (OBEX). Installing the N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file embeds each driver into Windows.
Using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up packet communication and 64K data communication and create a dial-up connection.

Flow chart for completing the data communication setup

This section describes preparation to use packet communication and 64K data communication.



* : To use Internet with the FOMA terminal and PC connected, “mopera U” (you need to apply for) is useful, which supports broadband connection, etc. Consider the plan in which you are charged only in a month when you use the service. If you use “mopera” for which you do not need to apply, you can access Internet immediately.
For more information, visit the DoCoMo website.

Setting the USB mode setting to “Communication mode”

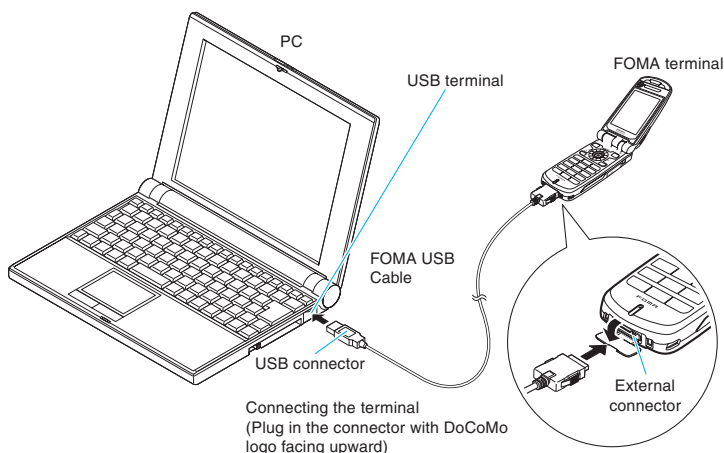
Set the external connector to be used for the packet communication and 64K data communication.

- Before connecting to PC, set “USB mode setting” to “Communication mode”.

- 1   “External connection”
- 2 “USB mode setting” ▶ “Communication mode”

Connecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional).



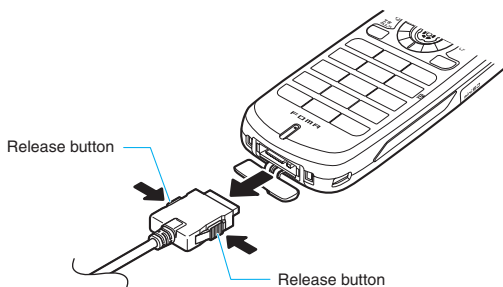
- 1 Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal
 - 2 Check the orientation of the external connector of the FOMA terminal, then insert the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable horizontally until you hear a click
 - 3 Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of your PC
- “” changes to “” on the FOMA terminal when the FOMA USB Cable is connected.

NOTE

- “” appears on the FOMA terminal display when the N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file is installed and the connection with a PC is recognized. Before the N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file is installed, the connection is not recognized and “” appears.

Disconnecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to disconnect the FOMA USB Cable (optional).



- 1 Remove the FOMA USB Cable from the USB terminal of the PC**
- 2 Pull the FOMA USB Cable out horizontally while pressing the release buttons of the external connector of FOMA USB Cable**
- 3 Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal**

NOTE

- When you connect and disconnect the FOMA USB Cable repeatedly, wait for a while in each step because the FOMA terminal may not recognize the PC correctly.
- Do not disconnect the FOMA USB Cable during data communication because this may cause the disconnection of communication, malfunction or loss of data.
- Keep pressing the release buttons of the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable when pulling it out of the external connector of the FOMA terminal. Using excessive force to pull the cable may cause malfunction.

Setting the PC

The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA terminal to PC and how to install the N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file (drivers).

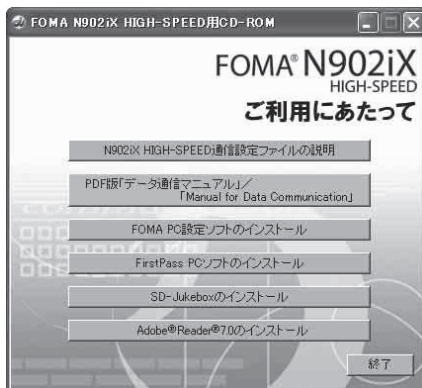
Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC

1 Start up Windows and insert the “CD-ROM for FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED” in the CD-ROM drive of your PC

2 Click “終了” (Exit) to exit from the “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED ご利用にあたって” (To use FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED) screen

This screen usually appears automatically when the “CD-ROM for FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED” is inserted in the drive. If it does not appear, simply proceed to Step 4.

If this screen appears while you are installing the N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file, click “終了” (Exit) as well.



3 Click “終了” (Exit) to close “お問い合わせ先” (Inquiries) screen

4 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to your FOMA terminal

5 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of the PC
“新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen appears.

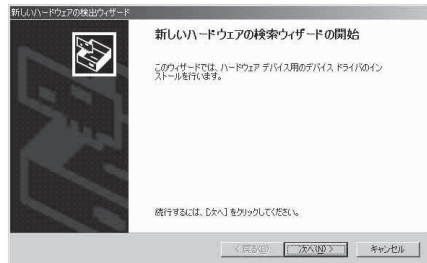
Installing the N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file (drivers)

- When installing N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to install the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.
- The installation procedure for the N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file differs depending on the OS. Refer to the description for the OS on your PC.
For Windows 2000 refer to the following.
For Windows XP, proceed to p.9.

● For Windows 2000

1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

When the FOMA USB Cable has been connected to the PC in Step 5 of "Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC" (p.7), this screen is automatically displayed.



2 Click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する（推奨）” (Search for the optimal driver for the device (Recommended)) and click “次へ” (Next)

4 Check the “場所を指定” (Specify the search location) box and click “次へ” (Next)

5 Specify the folder to search and click “OK”

The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive>:\¥USB Driver¥Win2000”.

The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC.

6 Confirm the driver name and click “次へ” (Next)

In this case, the driver's name appears as “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED”.

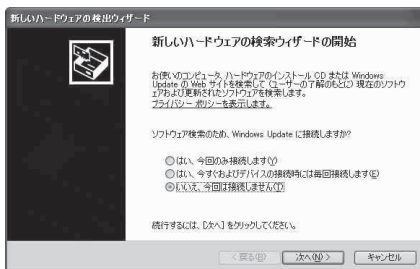
7 When the message “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザードの完了” (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click “完了” (Finish)

8 Install other drivers

See Step 1 to 7 and install all other 3 drivers (p.10). If the “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen does not appear after the completion of Step 7, installation of the drivers is completed. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (p.10).

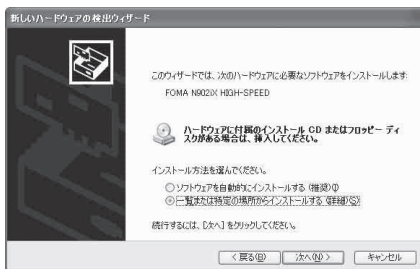
1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

When the FOMA USB Cable has been connected to the PC in Step 5 of “Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC” (p.7), this screen is automatically displayed.



2 Select “いいえ、今回は接続しません” (No, I will access Windows Update later on) and click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “一覧または特定の場所からインストールする (詳細)” (Install from the list or a certain location (Advanced)) and click “次へ” (Next)

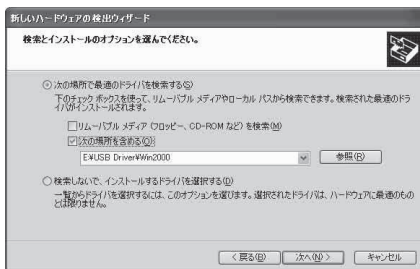


4 Select “次の場所で最適のドライバを検索する” (Search for the optimal driver in the next location), uncheck the “リムーバブルメディア (フロッピー、CD-ROMなど) を検索” (Search a removable media such as floppy disk or CD-ROM) box, check the “次の場所を含める” (include the next location) box to specify a folder to search, then click “次へ” (Next)

The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive>:¥USB Driver¥Win2000”.

The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC. In this example, the CD-ROM drive name is “E”.

The driver is common with Windows 2000.



5 When the message “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザードの完了” (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click “完了” (Finish)

6 Install other drivers

See Step 1 to 5 and install all other 3 drivers (p.10). If the “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen does not appear after the completion of Step 5, installation of the drivers is completed.

When all the drivers have been installed, the task bar indicator displays the message “新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました。” (New hardware is installed and ready for use) for several seconds. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (p.10).

Checking the installed driver

Check that the N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file (drivers) has been correctly installed.

1 Open the Control Panel of Windows

For Windows 2000

Select “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

For Windows XP

Select “スタート” (Start) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

2 Open “システム” (System) in the “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

For Windows XP

Click the “システム” (System) icon in “パフォーマンスとメンテナンス” (Performance and maintenance)

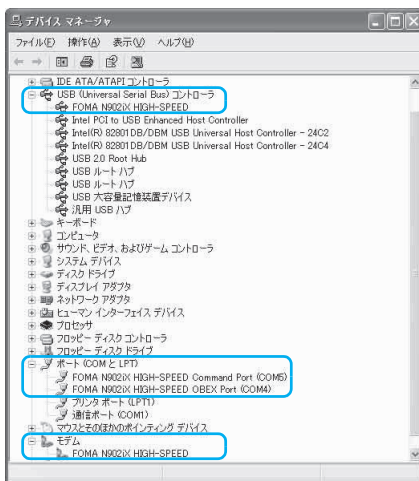
3 Open the device manager

Click the “ハードウェア” (Hardware) tab and click “デバイスマネージャ” (Device manager)

4 Click each device to check the installed driver name

Check that all the driver names are displayed under “USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ” (USB (Universal Serial Bus) controller), “ポート (COMとLPT)” (Ports (COM& LPT)) and “モデム” (Modems).

Check the driver name and proceed to “About the FOMA PC Setting Software” (p.12).



Device name	Driver name
USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ	• FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED
ポート (COMとLPT)	• FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED Command Port • FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED OBEX Port
モデム	• FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED

NOTE

- When you check the above, if not all the driver names appear, follow the uninstall instructions (p.11) to delete the N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file and install the proper file.

Uninstalling the N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file (drivers)

If necessary (when updating the drivers, etc.), uninstall the drivers as follows. The procedure for uninstalling from a Windows XP machine is described as an example.

- If you attempt to execute “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications) while connecting to the FOMA terminal, the uninstall program does not run.
- When uninstalling N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to uninstall the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 If the FOMA terminal and the PC are connected by the FOMA USB Cable (optional), remove the FOMA USB Cable

2 Start “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications) on the Windows

Click “スタート” (Start) → “コントロールパネル” (Control panel) → “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications)

3 Select “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED USB” and click “変更と削除” (Change and delete)

4 Click “OK” to uninstall

To cancel uninstallation, click “キャンセル” (Cancel).

5 Click “はい” (Yes) to restart Windows

Now the uninstallation is completed.

If you click “いいえ” (No), restart Windows manually.

NOTE

- When “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED USB” is not displayed in the “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications) on the Windows, perform the following procedure:

- ① Insert the “CD-ROM for FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED” in the CD-ROM drive of your PC
- ② Open “スタート” (Start) → “マイコンピュータ” (My computer)
- ③ Right-click CD-ROM icon and select “開く” (Open)
- ④ Open “USB Driver” in the CD-ROM → “Win2000” folder
- ⑤ Double-click “n902ixun.exe” *

* : It is displayed as “n902ixun” depending on the setting of your PC.

About the FOMA PC Setting Software

By using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up the followings:

- You can also set up packet communication and 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. → p.29



See p.5 for the connection between the FOMA terminal and PC.

かんたん設定 (Easy settings)

The guide walks you through the procedures for “FOMAデータ通信ダイヤルアップの作成” (Making a new dial-up connection for FOMA data communication) and “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) together.

W-TCP設定 (W-TCP settings)

This settings optimize the communication settings of a PC before using “FOMA packet communication”.

To get the most out of communication performance, it is necessary to optimize communication settings by making W-TCP settings.

接続先 (APN) の設定 (Access Point Name (APN) settings)

Sets the access point name (APN) required for packet communication.

Unlike 64K data communication, a normal phone number is not used for FOMA packet communication access point. Before you connect, register the APN (Access Point Name) of each access point in the FOMA terminal and assign its registration number (cid) to the connection point phone number field.

As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.

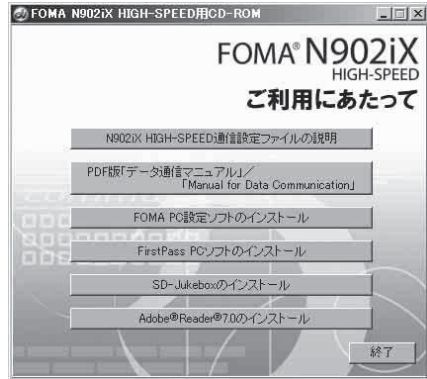
cid [Context Identifier] … a number used to manage the Access Point Name (APN) for the packet communication registered in the FOMA terminal. It is set when registering the APN in the FOMA terminal.

Installing the FOMA PC Setting Software

- Check the operating environment prior to the installation of the FOMA PC setting software. → p.3
- When installing the “FOMA PC setting software”, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to install the software with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.
- If you have installed “FOMA PC setting software” provided with the FOMA terminals released before 902i series, uninstall the software before operating.

1 Insert the CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of the PC

The “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEEDご利用にあたって” (To use FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED) screen will automatically appear. If for some reason the CD-ROM is not automatically started, right-click the CD-ROM icon in “マイコンピュータ” (My Computer), select “開く” (Open) and double-click “start.exe”.



2 Click “FOMA PC 設定ソフトのインストール” (Installation of the FOMA PC setting software)

3 Click “次へ” (Next)

Before starting the setup process, make sure that no other program is currently running or resident. If there is any program running, click “キャンセル” (Cancel) to exit the program and resume installation. If a message appears indicating that Previous W-TCP setting software or Previous APN setting software is installed, proceed to p.14.

4 Upon confirming the user agreement of “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), click “はい” (Yes) to agree to it

If you click “いいえ” (No) and then click “はい” (Yes), the installation is canceled.

5 Click “次へ” (Next)

Select whether or not you want “W-TCP settings” to reside in the task-tray. This is a function to set up / cancel the optimization of “W-TCP communication”, and we recommend you to let it reside in the task-tray.

If there is no problem in particular, click “次へ” (Next) with “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the task-tray) checked ☒ to continue with the installation. Even if you do not check “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the task-tray) here, you can change the settings by selecting “メニュー” (Menu), “W-TCP 設定をタスクトレイに常駐させる” (Let W-TCP settings reside in the task-tray) on the FOMA PC setting software.

(Note): This option is disabled when the “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the task-tray) setting is in effect.



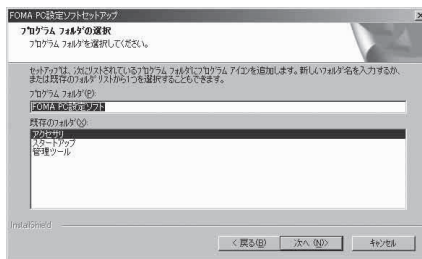
The W-TCP settings icon appears in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop.

6 Select the installation location and click “次へ” (Next)

If you want to change the location, click “参照” (Reference), specify the location and click “次へ” (Next).

7 Check the name of program folder and click “次へ” (Next)

If you want to change it, enter a new folder name and click “次へ” (Next).



8 Click “完了” (Finish)

When the setup process is completed, the “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) operation screen appears. You can specify various settings at this point.

Notes on installation of the FOMA PC setting software

<If the Previous W-TCP setting software is installed>



- Open “アプリケーション（プログラム）の追加と削除” (Add/Remove programs) and delete the old W-TCP setting software.

<If the Previous APN setting software is installed>



- When you click “OK”, the previous APN setting software is automatically uninstalled, and the FOMA PC setting software will be installed.

<If the FOMA PC setting software is already installed>



- Click “OK”, and the install is interrupted. Open “アプリケーション（プログラム）の追加と削除” (Add/Remove programs), uninstall the already installed “FOMA PC 認定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), and then reinstall the software.
- Perform the same procedure when an old version of “FOMA PC setting software” is installed.

<If the “キャンセル” (Cancel) button is clicked during installation>



- When you want to continue the installation, click “いいえ” (No). When you want to stop the procedure, click “はい” (Yes).

Uninstalling the FOMA PC Setting Software

If necessary (when upgrading the FOMA PC setting software, etc.), uninstall the software as follows. The procedure for uninstalling from a Windows 2000 machine is described as an example.

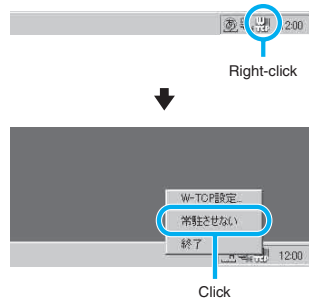
- When uninstalling the “FOMA PC setting software”, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to uninstall the software with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC’s manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 Before uninstalling

Before starting the uninstallation process of the “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), the various changes made for FOMA must be returned to their default settings.

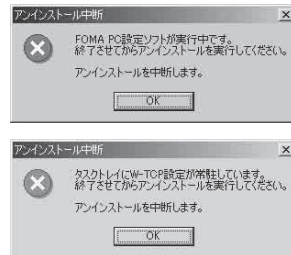
(1) Disable the “W-TCP settings” in the task-tray

Right-click the “W-TCP icon” in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop and select “常駐させない” (Disable resident).



(2) Exit any running program

If you try to begin uninstallation while the “FOMA PC setting software” or “W-TCP settings” is in operation, this screen appears. Cancel the uninstallation program and exit the respective programs.



2 Start “アプリケーションの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications) on the Windows

For Windows 2000

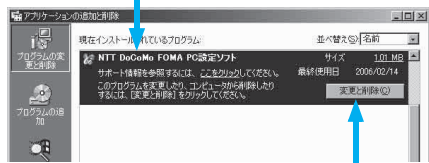
Click “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel) → “アプリケーションの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications)

For Windows XP

Click “スタート” (Start) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel) → “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove programs)

- 3** Select “NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setting software) and click “変更と削除” (Change and delete)

Select “NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)



Click here

- 4** Check the program name to be deleted and click “はい” (Yes)
Uninstallation starts.



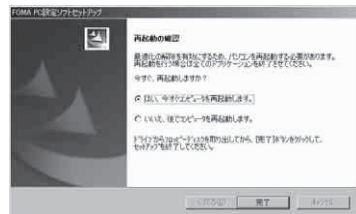
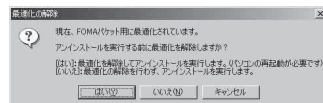
- 5** Click “OK”
Uninstallation of the “FOMA PC setting software” is completed.



NOTE

- Cancelling “W-TCP最適化” (Optimize W-TCP).
This screen appears when “W-TCP最適化” (Optimize W-TCP) is performed. Usually, click “はい” (Yes) to uninstall and cancel the optimization.

The cancellation of W-TCP optimization is valid after the restart.



How to Set Various Settings

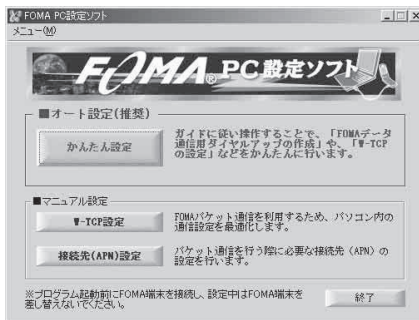
The FOMA terminal needs to be connected to your PC via FOMA USB Cable (optional), and the N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file (drivers) needs to be properly recognized on the device of your PC to specify various settings.

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Program) → “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)

This operation screen appears when the FOMA PC setting software is started.

For Windows XP

Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)



Easy settings: “Packet communication setting by using mopera U or mopera”

- This section explains how to make settings for a packet communication of 3.6Mbps maximum. The DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” will be used as a provider. (The communication speed for both sending and receiving is up to 384kbps for mopera connection.) Packet communication: Enables high-speed packet communication of up to 3.6Mbps for receiving and up to 384kbps for sending*. Since you will be charged according to the amount of data transferred, you can enjoy data communication without worrying about time.
* : The data is received and sent at the maximum speed of 384kbps outside the FOMA HIGH-SPEED area.
- Note that the communication charge can become expensive if packet communication is used to communicate large volumes of data such as to view sites and websites containing images or to download files.

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)

2 Select “パケット通信 (HIGH-SPEED対応端末)” (Packet communication (HIGH-SPEED compatible terminal)) and click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “『mopera U』への接続” (mopera U access) or “『mopera』への接続” (mopera access) and click “次へ” (Next)

See p.19 if you use a provider other than mopera U or mopera.

4 Click “OK”

The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal which is connected to the PC. Wait for a while.

5 Enter the connection name, select the connection method and click “次へ” (Next)

You can specify the name of the connection. Enter a name easy to recognize in the “接続名” (Connection name) column.

You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: * ? ! < > | " (half-pitch only). Select “PPP接続” (PPP connection) for “接続方式” (Connection method). Select “発信者番号通知を行う” (Notify caller ID) for the caller ID settings.

6 Specify a user name and password, select the accessible user and click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection. When “すべてのユーザー” (All users) is selected in the “使用可能ユーザーの選択” (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

7 Check “最適化を行う” (Optimize the setting) and click “次へ” (Next)

Optimize “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) required for “Packet communication”. If they are already optimized, this screen does not appear.

8 Click “はい” (Yes)

9 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct. Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.

To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).

確認項目	内容
接続方法	パケット通信(HIGH-SPEED対応端末)
接続先	mopera U
接続名	foma
モデム名	FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED
発信者番号の通知	発信者番号通知を行う
使用可能ユーザー	すべてのユーザー
ユーザー名	する
パスワードの保存	する
現在のW-TCP設定	非最適化
W-TCP設定	38Mbpsで最適化を設定する
接続方式	PPP接続

10 Click “OK”

You need to restart the PC to enable the changes in the settings. If the restart selection screen appears, click “はい” (Yes).

Execute communication. → p.23

Easy settings: “Specifying Packet communication settings using other providers”

- 1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)
- 2 Select “パケット通信 (HIGH-SPEED対応端末)” (Packet communication (HIGH-SPEED compatible terminal)) and click “次へ” (Next)
- 3 Select “その他” (Other) and click “次へ” (Next)
- 4 Click “OK”
The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal which is connected to the PC.
Wait for a while.

5 Specify the packet communication settings

After the terminal setting is completely acquired, the screen “パケット通信設定” (Packet communication setting) appears. Enter any name in “接続名” (Connection name). You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥: * ? ! < > | ” (half-pitch only). Select whether to notify the caller ID for dial-up connection.

APN:mopera.net is specified for the mopera U connection and APN:mopera.ne.jp for the mopera connection by default in “接続先 (APN) の選択” (Select the access point (APN)).

6 Click “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Specify the access point (APN))

As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.

Open the “接続先 (APN) の追加” (Add the access point (APN)) screen by clicking the “追加” (Add) button, select the connection method, specify an access point name that supports FOMA packet communication and click “OK”.

The “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Specify the access point (APN)) screen reappears.

Half-pitch alphanumeric characters, hyphen (-) and dots (.) can only be entered for the access point.

7 Select the Access point (APN) and click “OK”

The screen of Step 5 reappears.

The access point (APN) entered in Step 6 is displayed on “接続先 (APN) の選択” (Select the access point (APN)).

8 Confirm the Access point (APN) on “接続先 (APN) の選択” (Select the access point (APN)) and click “次へ” (Next)

To specify advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

Clicking “詳細情報の設定” (Detailed settings) displays the setup screen for “IP address” and “Name server”. If they must be input as the provider or corporate LAN information, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.

9 Specify a user name and password, select the accessible user and click “次へ” (Next)

When “すべてのユーザー” (All users) is selected in the “使用可能ユーザーの選択” (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

かんたん設定

使用可能ユーザーの選択

この接続を利用できるユーザーを指定してください。

☒ 全てのユーザー

☐ 自分のみ

ユーザー名・パスワード設定

アカウントをお持ちの方は入力して下さい。
(お持ちでない場合は入力不要です。)

ユーザー名:

パスワード:

☒ パスワードを保存する

< 戻る(B) 次へ(N) > キャンセル

10 Check “最適化を行う” (Optimize the setting) and click “次へ” (Next)

Optimize “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) required for “Packet communication”. If they are already optimized, this screen does not appear. Proceed to Step 11.

11 Click “はい” (Yes)

12 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.

To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).

かんたん設定

設定情報

この内容でよろしければ、完了ボタンを押してください。

確認項目	内容
接続方法	パケット通信(HIGH-SPEED対応端末)
接続先	その他
接続名	foma
モデム名	FOMA N902Dx HIGH-SPEED
接続先(APN)名	XXXabc
発信番号の通知	発信番号通知を行う
使用可能ユーザー	すべてのユーザー
ユーザー名	
パスワードの保存	する
現在のW-TCP設定	非最適化
W-TCP設定	3.6Mbpsで最適化を設定する
接続方式	PPP接続

☒ デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する

< 戻る(B) 完了(F) キャンセル

13 Click “OK”

You need to restart the PC to enable the changes in the settings. If the restart selection screen appears, click “はい” (Yes).

Execute communication. → p.23

Easy settings: “64K communication setting by using mopera U or mopera”

- This section explains how to specify settings for 64K data communication at 64kbps. The DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” will be used as a provider.
- 64K Data Communication: The charges are based on the amount of time you connected. With stable 64kbps communication speed, comfortable Internet access can be realized.
- Note that the communication charge can become expensive if 64K data communication is used for a long time.

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)

2 Select “64K データ通信” (64K data communication) and click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “『mopera U』への接続” (mopera U access) or “『mopera』への接続” (mopera access) and click “次へ” (Next)

See p.22 if you use a provider other than mopera U or mopera.

4 Enter the access point name and select the modem, and click “次へ” (Next)

The “64K データ通信設定” (64K data communication setting) screen appears. You can specify the name of the connection. Enter a name easy to recognize in the “接続名” (Connection name) column.

You cannot use the following reserved

characters: ¥: * ? ! < > | " (half-pitch only).

When using the FOMA USB Cable (optional), confirm that modem name is set to “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED”.

Select “発信者番号通知を行う” (Notify caller ID) for the caller ID settings.

5 Specify a user name and password, select the accessible user and click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection.

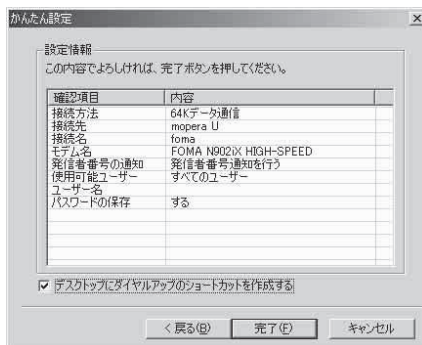
When “すべてのユーザー” (All users) is selected in the “使用可能ユーザーの選択” (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

6 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.

To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



7 Click “OK”

Execute communication. → p.23

Easy settings: “Specifying 64K communication settings using other providers”

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)

2 Select “64Kデータ通信” (64K data communication) and click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “その他” (Other) and click “次へ” (Next)

4 Enter the dial-up information and click “次へ” (Next)

Register the following items in order to connect to a service provider with ISDN synchronous 64K access points other than mopera U or mopera when creating a dial-up;

- “接続名” (Connection name) (optional)
- “モデムの選択” (Modem Selection) (FOMA N902IX HIGH-SPEED)
- “電話番号” (Phone number)
- Notifying or not notifying the caller ID for dial-up connection

You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: * ?!<> | ” (half-pitch only).

Enter the correct information according to the provider information. Enter the correct, case-sensitive phone number in half-pitch.



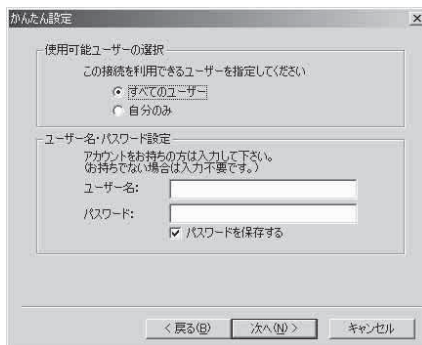
To specify advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

Clicking “詳細情報の設定” (Detailed settings) displays the setup screen for “IP address” and “Name server”. If they must be input as the provider or corporate LAN information, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.

5 Specify a user name and password, select the accessible user and click “次へ” (Next)

When “すべてのユーザー” (All users) is selected in the “使用可能ユーザーの選択” (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

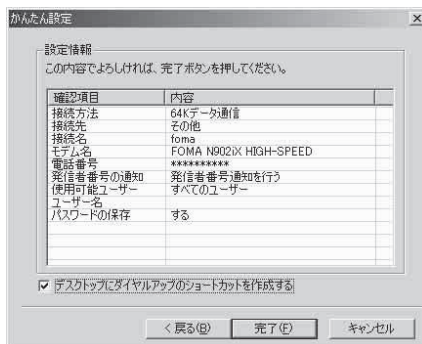


6 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.

To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



7 Click “OK”

Execute communication. → p.23

Executing Set Data Communication

1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop



If the connection icon does not appear on the desktop, use the following procedure:

Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続” (Network and dialup connection) → Open the access point

Windows XP

Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connection) → Open the access point

2 Click “ダイヤル” (Dial) and execute access operation

You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection. If you select an Internet service provider other than mopera U, mopera or you use dial-up connection, enter the “ユーザー名” (User name) and “パスワード” (Password) and click “ダイヤル” (Dial).

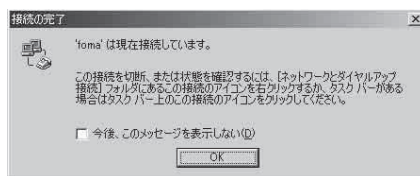
Check “パスワードを保存する” (Save the password) to skip entry of the password at subsequent connections.



3 Check that the line is connected properly, and click “OK”

Normally, this screen appears when the dial-up connection is made.

This “接続” (Connection) message does not appear if it has been set to be disabled.



- During packet communication, a different icon appears on the FOMA terminal depending on the communication conditions.



- (Communicating, sending data)
- (Communicating, receiving data)
- (Communicating, no data transfer)
- (Sending, or disconnecting)
- (Receiving, or disconnecting)

- ➤ appears on the FOMA terminal during 64K data communication.

NOTE

- When executing data communication by using the FOMA USB Cable (optional), dialing from the dial-up icon is only valid for the FOMA terminal used when the icon is created.
Therefore, to connect to another FOMA terminal, the communication setting file (drivers) must be installed again.

How to disconnect

Since just closing the browser on your PC may not disconnect, be sure to disconnect by the following procedure:

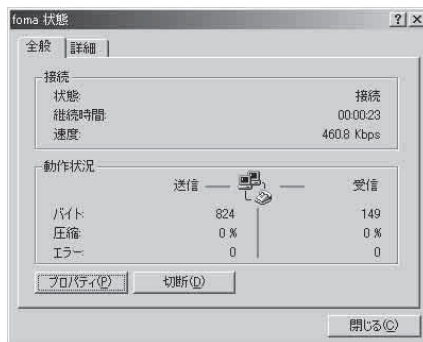
1 Double-click the dial-up icon in the task-tray

The connecting screen appears.



Dial-up icon

2 Click “切断” (Disconnect)



NOTE

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

When this happens

- Check the followings if you cannot connect to the network or dial-up successfully.

Problem	Points to check
"FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED" is not recognized by the PC.	· Check if your PC satisfies the required operational environment (p.3). · Check if the N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file (drivers) is installed. · Check if the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and the power is turned on. · Check if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is firmly connected. · Check if the USB mode setting (p.5) is set to "Communication mode".
Unable to connect with the access point.	· Check if the settings for the ID (user name) and password are correct. · Check if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is firmly connected. · If the access point requires the Caller ID, make sure that "184" is not added to the phone number. · Check if the box of "フロー制御を使う" (Use the flow control) of the modem property is checked. · Check if the APN is set correctly. · If you still cannot connect to the other end after checking the above, consult with the Internet service provider or network administrator about the setting method.

W-TCP Settings

“W-TCP settings” is a “TCP parameter setup tool” to optimize the transmission capability of TCP/IP when “Packet communication” is carried out on the FOMA network. The communication settings by this software are required to make the most of communication performance of the FOMA terminal.

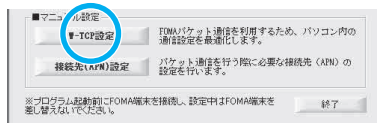
Setting up and canceling optimization

<For Windows XP>

Optimization settings for each dial-up are possible for Windows XP.

1 Start the program

- (1) If you are operating from “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)
Click “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) of “マニュアル設定” (Manual setup) after starting the program.



- (2) If you are operating from the task-tray
Click the “W-TCP icon” in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop to start the program.



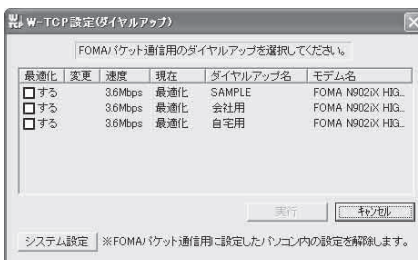
2 Proceed with the following

Close all the programs open and follow the screen instructions to restart the PC. The optimized system settings become valid after the restart.

- (1) If the system settings have not been optimized
Select “3.6Mbps” and click “最適化を行う” (Optimize).
“W-TCP 設定 (ダイヤルアップ)” (W-TCP settings (dial-up)) screen appears. If you select the dial-up to be optimized and click “実行” (Execute), system and dial-up settings will each be optimized.



- (2) If the system settings have been optimized
“W-TCP 設定 (ダイヤルアップ)” (W-TCP settings (dial-up)) screen appears.



(3) To cancel optimization

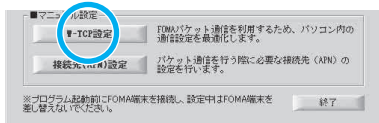
Click “システム設定” (System settings).
“W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) screen appears.
Click “最適化を解除する” (Cancel optimization).



<For Windows 2000>

1 Start the program

- (1) If you are operating from “FOMA PC 設定ソフト”(FOMA PC setting software)
Click “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) of “マニュアル設定” (Manual setup) after starting the program.



- (2) If you are operating from the task-tray
Click the “W-TCP icon” in the task-tray located on the bottom-right of the desktop to start the program.



2 Proceed with the following

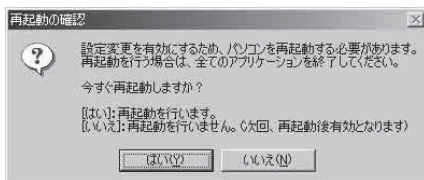
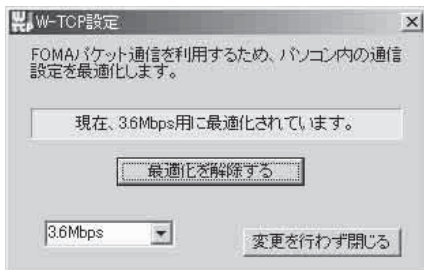
- (1) If the system settings have not been optimized

Select “3.6Mbps” and click “最適化を行う” (Optimize) on the “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) screen. Close all the programs open and restart the PC to enable the optimized settings.

- (2) If the system settings have been optimized

A message saying “現在、3.6Mbps用に最適化されています。” (Already optimized for 3.6Mbps) appears on the “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) screen.

When canceling the optimization settings to execute communication via a device other than a FOMA terminal, click “最適化を解除する” (Cancel optimization). Close all the programs open and restart the PC to enable the cancellation of the optimization.

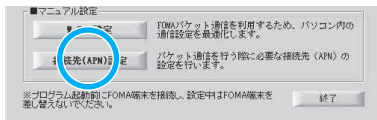


Access Point Name (APN) Settings

Set up the access point (APN) for packet communication. You can set up to 10 destinations and administer them by registering them into cid (Registration Numbers) 1 through 10.

- As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.

1 After starting “FOMA PC setting software”, click “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN))

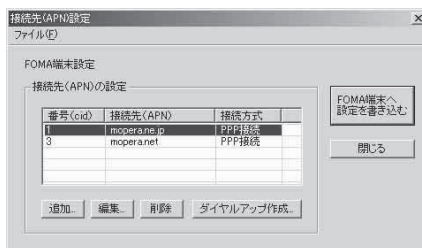


2 Click “OK” on the FOMA terminal settings acquisition screen

Automatically accesses the connected FOMA terminal and reads the registered Access point (APN) information.

It does not start if no FOMA terminal is connected.

3 Set up the access point (APN)



Adding/Editing/Deleting the Access point (APN)

• To add an access point (APN)

Click “追加” (Add) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.

• To edit a registered access point (APN)

Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click “編集” (Edit) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.

• To delete a registered access point (APN)

Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click “削除” (Delete) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.

You cannot delete the access point assigned to cid1 and cid3 (Even if you select cid3 and click “削除” (Delete), the access point is not deleted and remains “mopera.net”).

Saving in File

If you want to back up the access point (APN) settings registered on the FOMA terminal and/or save the access point (APN) settings being edited, you can save the access point (APN) settings by setting from the “ファイル” (File) menu of the toolbar.

Reading from File

If you want to edit the saved access point (APN) settings and/or write into the FOMA terminal, you can read the access point (APN) settings saved on the PC by operating from the “ファイル” (File) menu of the toolbar.

Writing Access point (APN) information into FOMA terminal

Clicking “FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む” (Write settings into FOMA terminal) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen allows you to write the displayed access point (APN) settings into the FOMA terminal.

Dial-up creating function

Select the added/edited access point (APN) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen and click “ダイヤルアップ作成” (Create dial-up).

When the screen for writing into the FOMA terminal appears, click “はい” (Yes). After finishing writing into the access point (APN), the “パケット通信ダイヤルアップの作成” (Create dial-up for packet communication) appears.

Enter any connection name you want and click “アカウント・パスワードの設定” (Set up Account/Password). Enter the user name and password, select an accessible user, then click “OK”. You can leave the user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera.

If your provider has given you instructions for setting IP and DNS information, click “詳細情報の設定” (Detailed settings) on the “パケット通信ダイヤルアップの作成” (Create dial-up for packet communication) screen, register necessary information and click “OK”.

After entering the settings, click “FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む” (Write settings into FOMA terminal), confirm overwriting and start writing.

NOTE

- The APN settings (the access point for FOMA packet communication) are stored in the FOMA terminal. Therefore, the APN must be registered again if you connect to another FOMA terminal.
- When continuously using the dial-up setting created on the PC, register the same APN setting (cid setting) number with the FOMA terminal.

Setting up Dial-up Network

This section describes how to set up a dial-up connection for packet communication / 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. The flow of operation is described below.

- It is unnecessary to set up the dial-up network for 64K data communication. Go on to “Setting up Dial-up” (p.36).

About AT commands

- AT commands are commands for modem control. The FOMA terminal complies AT commands and supports some enhanced commands and its own AT commands.
- Entering an AT command allows you to set or confirm (display) the detail settings and the contents of the settings for the “Data communication” and FOMA terminal.

Checking the COM port

- To set up the access point (APN), you need to specify the COM port number assigned to “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED” (Modem) built in after installing the N902iX HIGH-SPEED communication setting file (drivers). This section describes how to confirm the COM port number. The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.32).

● Preparation

- 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal**
- 2 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable connected to the FOMA terminal to your PC**

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

2 Open “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and modem options) in Control Panel

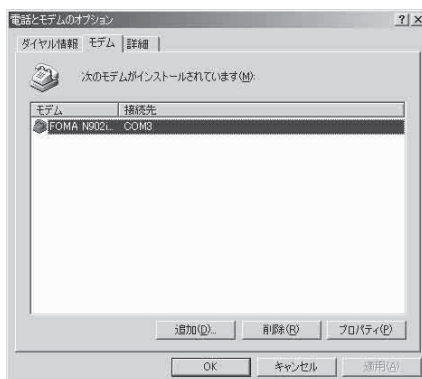


3 If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen appears, enter “市外局番” (Area Code) and click “OK”

4 Click the “モデム” (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先” (Access point) column of “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED” and click “OK”

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.32).

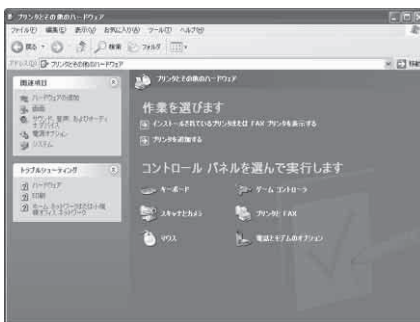
The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC.



1 Open “スタート”(Start)→“コントロールパネル”(Control Panel)



2 Open “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and modem options) from “プリンタとその他のハードウェア” (Printers and other hardware) in Control Panel

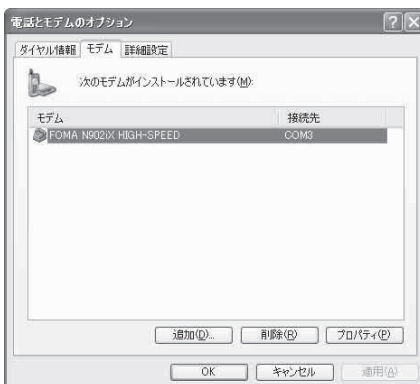


3 If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen is displayed, enter “市外局番／エリアコード” (Area code) and click “OK”

4 Click the “モデム” (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先” (Access point) column of “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED” and click “OK”

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.32).

The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC.



Setting up the access point (APN)

Default setting	cid1 : mopera.ne.jp cid3 : mopera.net cid2, 4 to 10 : not set

Communication software to enter AT commands is required for the settings. This section describes how to set it up using “Hyper terminal” that comes with Windows.

Access points <APN/cid>

- Normal telephone numbers are not used for access points for packet communication unlike 64K data communication. Set up APN instead of a telephone number for connection.
- The APN setting is just like registering a Phonebook for packet communication from a PC. Assign registration number (cid) 1 through 10 to register, which is used as a part of the access point number. As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.^{*1}
- APN is administered by “cid (administration numbers 1 through 10)”. Specifying “*99**<cid number>#” as the access point number enables the connection to the access point with the cid number.
- Specifying “*99**1#” as the access point number for the mopera connection or “*99**3#” for the mopera U connection enables you to use mopera or mopera U easily.^{*2}
- The APN setting registers the access point to the FOMA terminal just like registering other parties’ information (telephone number, etc.) on a mobile phone. The following are comparisons with the Phonebook of the mobile phone:

		APN setting	Phonebook of mobile phone
Data to be registered		APN	Phone number
		cid	Memory number of Phonebook
		—	Other party’s name
How to register	Register using PC	○ (FOMA PC setting software, etc.)	○ (Dedicated software required)
	Register using Mobile phone	× (Cannot even confirm)	○
How to use		Specify cid to connect	Look up Phonebook to call
		—	Enter the telephone number directly from the dial key on the FOMA terminal to call.

- Registered cid will be connection numbers in the dialup connection settings.
- Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for an access point (APN) other than mopera U or mopera.

^{*1} : Set up the APN setting for the access point (Internet service provider) on the FOMA terminal in advance instead of entering APN in the Telephone Number column of “ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dial-up Network) for connection.

^{*2} : To connect to other Internet service providers, set the APN and assign it to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.

<Example: For Windows XP>

- 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal**
- 2 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable connected to the FOMA terminal to the PC**
- 3 Click “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ハイパーターミナル” (Hyper terminal) to start Hyper terminal**

For Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ハイパーターミナル” (Hyper terminal).

4 Select the “今後、このメッセージを表示しない” (Do not display this message again) checkbox and then click “はい” (Yes)

5 Enter any name in the “名前” (Name) column and click “OK”
“sample” is entered here as an example.



6 Select “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED” from “接続方法” (Connection method), and click “OK”

Click “キャンセル” (Cancel) after the connection screen appears.

If a COM port of “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED” can be selected

When Properties of the COM port is displayed, click “OK”.

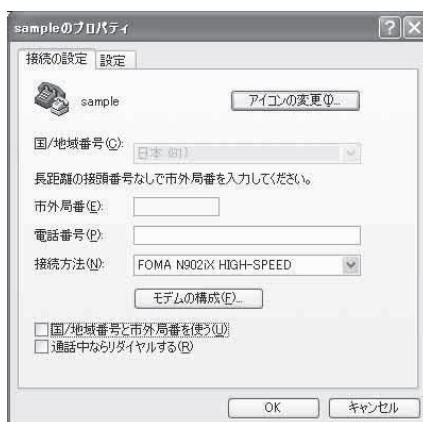
In this example, “COM3” is selected. See “Checking the COM port” (p.29) to confirm the actual COM port number of “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED” to be selected in “接続方法” (Connection method).



If a COM port of “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED” cannot be selected

Click “キャンセル” (Cancel) to close the “接続の設定” (Connection Settings) screen and then follow the steps below:

- (1) Select “ファイル” (File) menu → “プロパティ” (Properties)
- (2) Select “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED” in the “接続方法” (Connection method) column of the “接続の設定” (Connection Settings) tab on the “sampleのプロパティ” (sample Properties) screen
- (3) Uncheck “国/地域番号と市外局番を使う” (Use the Country/Region Code and Area Code)
- (4) Click “OK”



7 Enter the access point (APN) and press

Enter in the format of AT+CGDCONT=<cid>,"PPP","APN"

<cid> : Enter any number from 2 or between 4 and 10.

Please be cautious because if cid has been already set, the setting will be overwritten.

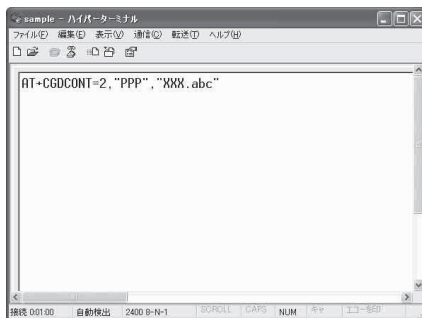
"PPP" : Enter "PPP" as it is.

"APN" : Put " " around the access point (APN) to enter.

If "OK" is displayed, the settings for the access point (APN) are completed.

Example: To enter APN named XXX.abc in cid Number2

Enter AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","XXX.abc" .



8 Confirm that "OK" appears and click "ハイパーターミナルの終了" (Close Hyper terminal) in the "ファイル" (File) menu

"sample"と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか?" (Are you going to save the connection "sample"?), appears, but it is not necessary to save.

NOTE

- The AT commands entered in "Hyper terminal" may not be displayed after Step 7 on p.34. In this case, if you enter ATE1 , AT commands you enter from then on are displayed.
- To reset the access point (APN) settings using the AT command
 - If reset, the access point (APN) setting with cid=1 will return to "mopera.ne.jp" (Default value) and cid=3 to "mopera.net" (Default value), and cid=2, 4 through 10 will be unregistered.
 - <How to enter>
 - AT+CGDCONT=  (to reset all cid)
 - AT+CGDCONT= <cid>  (to reset a certain cid only)
- To confirm the access point (APN) settings using the AT command
 - Display the current settings.
 - <How to enter>
 - AT+CGDCONT? 

Notifying or Not notifying the Caller ID

- You can set whether to notify the other person of your caller ID when packet communication is carried out. Since the caller ID is important information, please take care when you send your caller ID.
- You can set up the Notify or not notify Caller ID setting using the AT command prior to a dial-up connection.
- Use the * DGPIR command (p.45) to notify or not notify the caller ID or change back to "Not set" (Default value).

1 Start "Hyper terminal"

2 Set up Notify (186) or Not notify (184) Caller ID for packet communication

Enter in the format of "AT * DGPIR=<n>".

To automatically attach 184 (Not notify) for dialing an outgoing call/answering an incoming call

Enter the following:

AT * DGPIR=1 

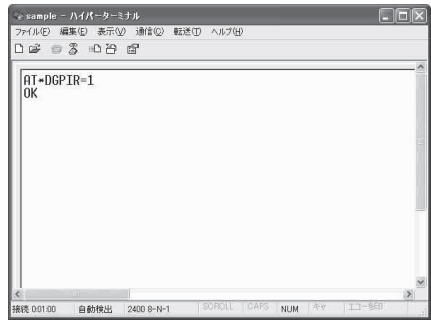
To automatically attach 186 (Notify) for dialing an outgoing call/answering an incoming call

Enter the following:

AT * DGPIR=2 



3 Confirm that “OK” appears and click “ハイパーターミナルの終了” (Close Hyper terminal) in the “ファイル” (File) menu



NOTE

- The Caller ID needs to be set to “Notify” to use DoCoMo’s internet connection service mopera U or mopera.

About 186 (Notify)/184 (Not notify) in Dial-up Network

You can attach 186/184 to the access point number in the Dial-up network settings as well.

The following table shows what happens if you set 186/184 both for the * DGPIR command and the Dial-up network setting.

Dial-up network setting (for cid=1)	Notify/Not notify setting by * DGPIR command	Notify/Not notify Caller ID
* 99 * * * 1#	Not set	Notify
	Not notify	Not notify
	Notify	Notify
184 * 99 * * * 1#	Not set	Not notify (Dial-up network notification 184 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	
186 * 99 * * * 1#	Not set	Notify (Dial-up network notification 186 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	

Setting up Dial-up

- This section takes accessing mopera U by packet communication for example.
- To connect using packet communication, enter “* 99 * * * 3#” as the number of access point for mopera U or “* 99 * * * 1#” for mopera. To connect using 64K data communication, enter “* 8701” as the number of access point for mopera U or “* 9601” for mopera.

Setting up dial-up on Windows 2000

- 1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続” (Network and Dial-up connections)

- 2 Double-click “新しい接続の作成” (Create a new connection) in Network and Dial-up Connections



- 3 If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen appears, enter “市外局番” (Area Code) and click “OK”

The “所在地情報” (Address Information) screen appears only when “新しい接続の作成” (Create a new connection) is started for the first time in Step 2.

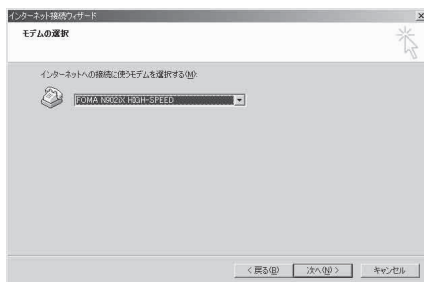
This screen does not appear from the second time on, but the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード” (Network Connection Wizard) screen does instead, proceed to Step 5.

- 4 When the “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and Modem options) screen appears, click “OK”
- 5 When the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード” (Network Connection Wizard) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next)
- 6 Select “インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する” (Connect to the Internet via dial-up) and click “次へ” (Next)
- 7 Select “インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します” (Set up an internet connection manually or connect using Local Area Network (LAN)) and click “次へ” (Next)
- 8 Select “電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します” (Connect to the internet using a telephone line and a modem) and click “次へ” (Next)

9 Confirm that the “インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する” (Select the modem used to connect to the internet) has “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED” and click “次へ” (Next)

If “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED” is not selected, select “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED”.

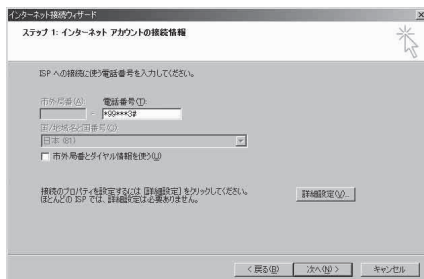
If no other modem than “FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED” has been installed, this screen does not appear.



10 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone number) column and click “詳細設定” (Advanced settings)

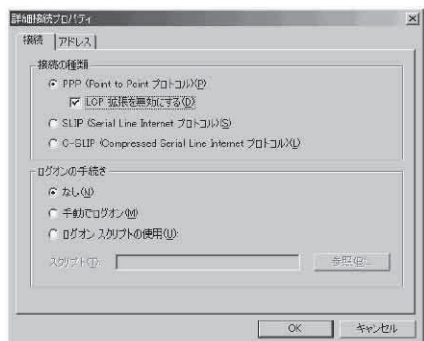
Uncheck “市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Area Code and Dial information).

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



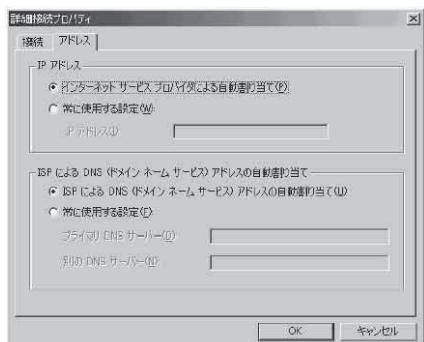
11 Set up the “接続” (Connection) tab as shown on the right and click the “アドレス” (Address) tab

To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in “接続の種類” (Connection Type) and “ログオンの手続き” (Logon Procedure).



12 Set up the IP address and DNS (Domain Name Service) address on the “アドレス” (Address) tab as shown on the right and click “OK”

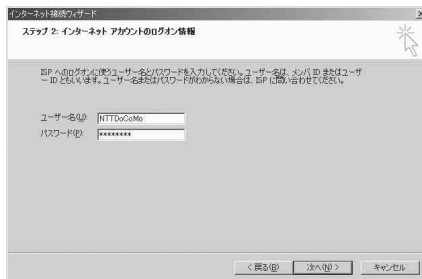
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in “IP アドレス” (IP address) and “ISP による DNS (ドメインネームサービス) アドレスの自動割り当て” (Automatically assign DNS (Domain Name Service) by ISP).



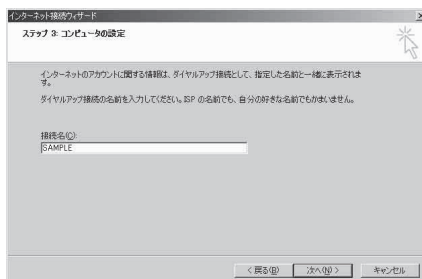
13 When the screen returns to Step 10, click “次へ” (Next)

14 Click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns as this screen.



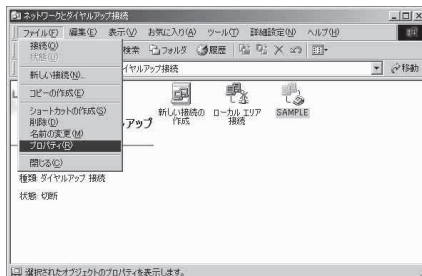
15 Enter any name you want in the “接続名” (Connection name) and click “次へ” (Next)



16 Select “いいえ” (No) and click “次へ” (Next)

17 Click “完了” (Finish)

18 Select the icon created for the dial-up and open “プロパティ” (Properties) in the “ファイル” (File) menu

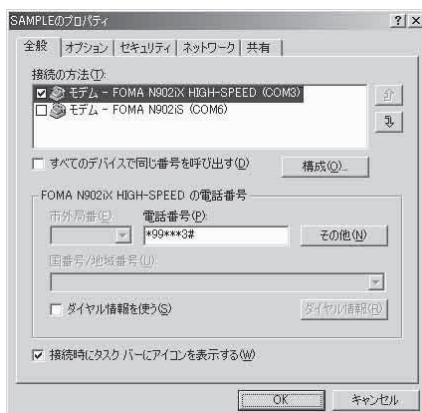


19 Confirm the settings on the “全般” (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that only “モデム - FOMA N902IX HIGH-SPEED” (Modem - FOMA N902IX HIGH-SPEED) is checked in the “接続の方法” (Connection method) column. If not, check it.

Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If not, uncheck it.

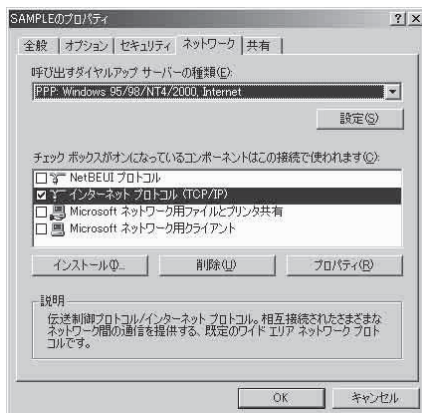
This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



20 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting

Select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet” in the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Check only “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) for components.



21 Click “設定” (Settings)

22 Clear all the boxes and click “OK”

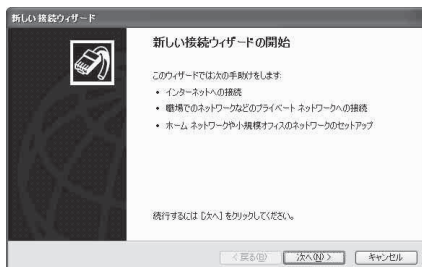


23 When the Step 20 screen reappears, click “OK”

Setting up dial-up on Windows XP

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “新しい接続ウィザード” (New connection wizard)

2 When the “新しい接続ウィザード” (New Connection Wizard) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next)



3 Select “インターネットに接続する” (Connect to the Internet) and click “次へ” (Next)

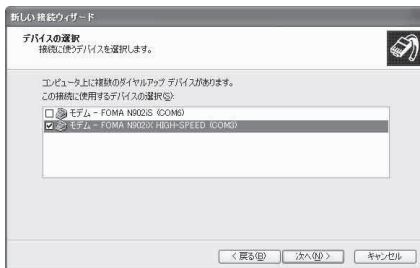
4 Select “接続を手動でセットアップする” (Set up the connection manually) and click “次へ” (Next)

5 Select “ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する” (Connect using a dial-up modem) and click “次へ” (Next)

6 If the “デバイスの選択” (Select the device) screen appears, select only “モデム – FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED (COMx)” (Modem – FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED (COMx)), and click “次へ” (Next)

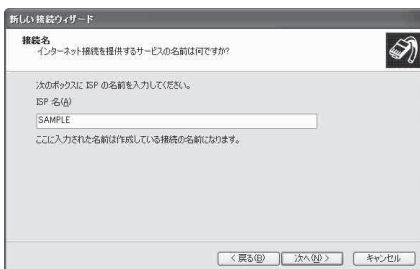
The “デバイスの選択” (Select the device) screen appears only if there are multiple modems.
(COMx) is a number of COM port displayed in “Checking the COM port” (p.29).

7 Enter any name you want in the “ISP名” (ISP Name) and click “次へ” (Next)



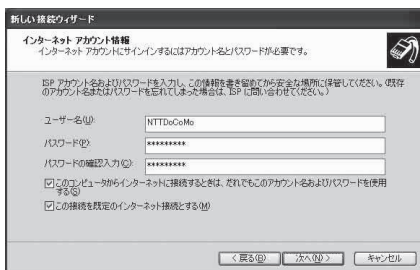
8 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone Number) column and click “次へ” (Next)

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



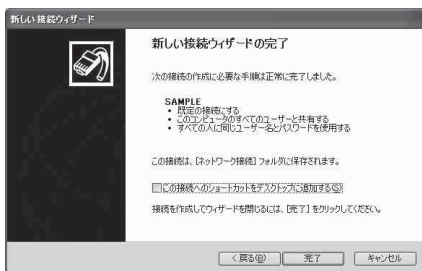
9 Click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名” (User Name), “パスワード” (Password) and “パスワードの確認入力” (Confirm Password) columns as this screen.



10 Click “完了” (Finish)

The newly created connection wizard appears.



11 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connections)

12 Select the icon created for the dial-up and open “プロパティ” (Properties) in the “ファイル” (File) menu



13 Confirm the settings on the “全般” (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that only “モデム - FOMA N902IX HIGH-SPEED” (Modem - FOMA N902IX HIGH-SPEED) is checked in the “接続方法” (Connection method) column. If not, check it. Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If it is checked, uncheck it.

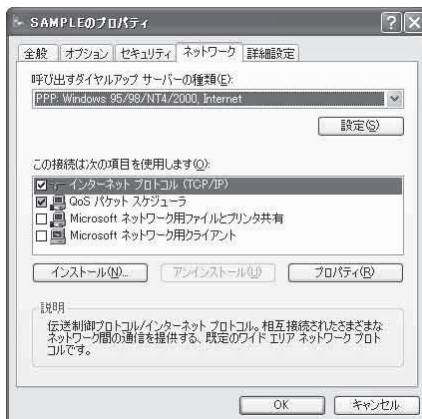
This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



14 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting

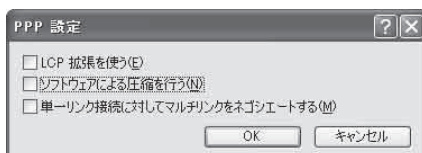
Select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet” in the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Select “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) in the “この接続は次の項目を使用します” (Use the following items for this connection). Since the setting of “QoS/パケットスケジューラ” (QoS Packet Scheduler) cannot be changed, leave it as it is.



15 Click “設定” (Settings)

16 Clear all the boxes and click “OK”



17 When the Step 14 screen reappears, click “OK”

Running dial-up connection

This section describes how to make a dial-up connection for packet communication by using the dial-up setting.

<Example: For Windows XP>

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC with the FOMA USB Cable (optional)

“Connecting the devices”→p.5

2 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connections)

3 Open Access point

Select the dial-up access point icon with the ISP name set in Step 7 on p.40 to select “ネットワークタスク” (Network task) → “この接続を開始する” (Start this connection) or double-click the icon of the access point.



4 Confirm the settings and click “ダイヤル” (Dial)

This screen is an example for mopera U connection. You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.



<The Connecting screen appears>

While this screen appears, the log-on process such as confirmation of the user name and password is performed.



<Completion of the connection>

When the connection is complete, a message appears from the indicator of the taskbar located on the bottom-right of the desktop for a few seconds. You can start browser software to view sites and websites or to use e-mail. If this message does not appear, check “Setting up Dial-up Network” (p.29) and “Setting up Dial-up” (p.36). See p.24 for communication conditions.



How to disconnect

Just closing the Internet browser may not disconnect the communication line. Follow the instructions below to disconnect for sure. This section describes an example using Windows XP.

1 Click the dial-up icon in the task-tray

The connection condition screen for Internet will be displayed.



Dial-up icon

2 Click “切断” (Disconnect)

NOTE

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

AT Command List

AT commands available on FOMA terminal

- The following abbreviations are used in the AT command list;
 [&F] : Command of which setting is initialized by AT&F command.
 [&W] : Command of which setting is saved by AT&W command. The setting can be retrieved by ATZ command.

Modem port command list

The followings are the usable commands for "FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED (モデム)" (modem):

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
A/	Executes the last executed command again. No carriage return is necessary.	—	A/ OK
AT	—	The modem function of a FOMA terminal is controllable by adding the command of this table after this command. * OK is answered even when only AT is entered.	AT OK
AT%V	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT%V Ver1.00 OK
AT&C <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects the operating condition of the circuit CD signal to DTE.	<i>n</i> = 0 : CD is always ON. <i>n</i> = 1 : CD changes according to the carrier of the other party's modem (initial value).	AT&C1 OK
AT&D <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects the operation to take place when the circuit ER signal received from DTE transits between ON and OFF.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Ignores ER status (always assumed to be ON). <i>n</i> = 1 : When ER changes from ON to OFF, it becomes an on-line command status. <i>n</i> = 2 : If ER changes from ON to OFF, a connection is disconnected and it will be in an off-line command status (initial value).	AT&D1 OK
AT&E <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects how to display the connection speed.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Displays the wireless network transmission speed. <i>n</i> = 1 : Displays the DTE serial transmission speed (initial value).	AT&E0 OK
AT&F <i>n</i>	Restores all of registers to their defaults. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	Only <i>n</i> = 0 can be specified (can be omitted).	(At the time of off-line mode) AT&F OK AT&F? ERROR AT&F = ? ERROR (At the time of on-line command mode) AT&F NO CARRIER (Change to off-line mode)
AT&S <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Sets the Data Set Ready signal to be output to DTE.	<i>n</i> = 0 : DR is always ON (initial value). <i>n</i> = 1 : DR signal is ON when the line is connected (when the communication call is established).	AT&S0 OK
AT&W <i>n</i>	Stores the current settings.	Only <i>n</i> = 0 can be specified (can be omitted).	AT&W0 OK AT&W OK AT&W? ERROR AT&W = ? ERROR

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT * DANTE	Displays the FOMA terminal signal reception level.	0 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is displayed as out of area. 1 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is 0 or 1 bar. 2 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is 2 bars. 3 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is 3 bars.	AT * DANTE * DANTE:3 OK AT * DANTE = ? * DANTE:(0-3) OK
AT * DGANSM= <i>n</i>	Sets the reject/permit mode setting for the packet incoming call. This command is effective for those incoming packet calls after the setting command is input.	<i>n</i> =0 : Disables the incoming call reject (AT * DGARL)/permit setting (AT * DGAPL) (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Enables the incoming call reject setting. <i>n</i> =2 : Enables the incoming call permit setting. AT * DGANSM? : Displays the current setting.	AT * DGANSM=0 OK AT * DGANSM? * DGANSM:0 OK
AT * DGAPL= <i>n</i> [, <i>cid</i>]	Sets APN, which permits incoming packet calls, by using < <i>cid</i> > parameter defined by +CGDCONT	<i>n</i> =0 : Adds the APN defined by < <i>cid</i> > to incoming call permission list. <i>n</i> =1 : Deletes the APN defined by < <i>cid</i> > from incoming call permission list. If < <i>cid</i> > is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT * DGAPL? : Displays incoming call permission list.	AT * DGAPL =0,1 OK AT * DGAPL? * DGAPL:1 OK AT * DGAPL =1 OK AT * DGAPL? OK
AT * DGARL= <i>n</i> [, <i>cid</i>]	Sets APN, which rejects incoming packet calls, by using < <i>cid</i> > parameter defined by +CGDCONT	<i>n</i> =0 : Adds the APN defined by < <i>cid</i> > to incoming call rejection list. <i>n</i> =1 : Deletes the APN defined by < <i>cid</i> > from incoming call rejection list. If < <i>cid</i> > is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT * DGARL? : Displays incoming call rejection list.	AT * DGARL =0,1 OK AT * DGARL? * DGARL:1 OK AT * DGARL =1 OK AT * DGARL? OK
AT * DGPIR= <i>n</i>	This command validates the setting for notifying Caller ID when sending/receiving packet communication. Even in the dial up network setting, you can also add 186 (notify) or 184 (not notify) to the access point number. (p.34)	<i>n</i> =0 : Uses APN as it is (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Uses APN by adding "184". (Caller ID is always not sent.) <i>n</i> =2 : Uses APN by adding "186". (Caller ID is always sent.) AT * DGPIR? : Displays the current setting.	AT * DGPIR =0 OK AT * DGPIR? * DGPIR:0 OK
AT * DRPW	Displays the indicator value of the receiving power of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT * DRPW * DRPW:0 OK AT * DRPW=? * DRPW:(0-75) OK
AT+CAOC	Inquires for the current charge.	—	AT+CAOC +CAOC:"000014" OK
AT+CBC	Displays the battery status of the FOMA terminal.	Result: +CBC:< <i>bcs</i> >,< <i>bcl</i> > <i>bcs</i> : 0 : FOMA terminal is powered by the battery. 1 : FOMA terminal is not powered by the battery. 2 : FOMA terminal is not connected to the battery. 3 : FOMA terminal is out of transmission due to the power-supply error. <i>bcl</i> : 0 : Battery has run out, or battery is not connected. 1-100 : Battery remained	AT+CBC +CBC:0,70 OK AT+CBC? ERROR AT+CBC=? +CBC:(0-3),(0-100) OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CBST [&F] [&W]	Changes the bearer service type.	Format: AT+CBST=<n>,1,0 n=116 : 64,000bps (bit transparent) (initial value) n=131 : 32,000bps (multimedia) n=134 : 64,000bps (multimedia)	AT+CBST=134,1,0 OK AT+CBST? +CBST:134,1,0 OK AT+CBST=? +CBST:(116,131,134), (1),(0) OK
AT+CEER	Displays the reason for disconnection of the previous call.	Result: +CEER:<report> report: List of disconnection reasons (p.57).	AT+CEER +CEER:36 OK
AT+CGDCONT	Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination.	p.53	p.53
AT+CGEQMIN	Registers a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.	p.53	p.53
AT+CGEQREQ	Sets the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.	p.54	p.54
AT+CGMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGMR 12345xxxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CGREG= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether to notify the network registration condition. The returned notification displays whether you are inside or out of service.	n=0 : Not informed (initial value). n=1 : Informed. Informed when switching between "Inside the service area" and "Outside the service area" is completed. AT+CGREG? : Displays the current setting. +CGREG: <n>, <stat> n: Set value stat : 0: Out of packet area 1: Within packet area 4: Unknown 5: Within packet area	AT+CGREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CGREG? +CGREG: 1,0 OK AT+CGREG=? +CGREG: (0,1) OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from "outside the service area" to "inside the service area".) +CGREG:1
AT+CGSN	Displays the product number of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGSN 12345xxxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CLIP= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Displays the other party's Caller ID on a PC when a 64K data communication call is received.	n=0 : Not display the result (initial value) n=1 : Display the result AT+CLIP? : Displays the current setting. +CLIP:n,m m=0 : NW setting not notifying the other party of the Caller ID in outgoing call. m=1 : NW setting notifying the other party of the Caller ID in outgoing call. m=2 : Unknown	AT+CLIP=0 OK AT+CLIP=? +CLIP:(0,1) OK (A call is received when +CLIP=1 is set) RING +CLIP: "090XXXXXXXX",177, "123",136

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CLIR= <i>n</i>	Sets whether or not to notify the other party of the phone number when originating a 64K data communication call.	<i>n</i> =0 : Complies to the CLIR service contract. <i>n</i> =1 : Not notify the other party of the caller's phone number. <i>n</i> =2 : Notify the other party of the caller's phone number (initial value). AT+CLIR? : Displays the current setting. +CLIR: <i>n,m</i> <i>m</i> =0 : CLIR is not started (Caller ID is always sent) <i>m</i> =1 : CLIR is started (Caller ID is always not sent) <i>m</i> =2 : Unknown <i>m</i> =3 : CLIR temporary mode (default is not notify) <i>m</i> =4 : CLIR temporary mode (default is notify)	AT+CLIR=0 OK AT+CLIR? +CLIR:0,1 OK AT+CLIR=? +CLIR:(0-2) OK
AT+CMEE= <i>n</i>	Sets whether the error report of the FOMA terminal is present.	<i>n</i> =0 : Use the ERROR result (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and a numeral value is used for <err>. <i>n</i> =2 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and characters are used for <err>. AT+CMEE? : Displays the current setting. The command displayed on the right is the execution example for cases when there is a FOMA terminal problem or a connection error. +CME ERROR result code is as follows. 1 : no connection to phone 10 : SIM not inserted 15 : SIM wrong 16 : incorrect password 100 : unknown	AT+CMEE=0 OK AT+CNUM ERROR AT+CMEE=1 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:10 AT+CMEE=2 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:SIM not inserted
[&F] [&W]			
AT+CNUM	Displays the own number of the FOMA terminal.	Result: +CNUM:,<number>,<type> number: phone number type : 129 or 145 129 : International access code (+) is not included. 145 : International access code (+) is included.	AT+CNUM +CNUM:,"+8190XXXX XXXX",145 OK
AT+COPS	Selects the network operator to connect.	Format : AT+COPS=<mode>,2,<oper> mode=0 : automatic (searches the network and switches the network operator automatically) mode=1 : manual (connects to the network operator specified in <oper>) mode=2 : Disconnects the connection to the network operator mode=3 : Mapping is not performed. mode=4 : manual/automatic (if the connection to the network operator specified in <oper> fails, works as automatic mode.) <oper> is a hexadecimal value which consists of Country code (MCC) and Network code (MNC). The format is as follows: Digit 1 of MCC ··· octet 1 bits 1 to 4 Digit 2 of MCC ··· octet 1 bits 5 to 8 Digit 3 of MCC ··· octet 2 bits 1 to 4 Digit 3 of MNC ··· octet 2 bits 5 to 8 Digit 2 of MNC ··· octet 3 bits 5 to 8	AT+COPS=0 OK AT+COPS? +COPS:0 OK AT+COPS=? +COPS:(2,,,"44F001"),, (0,1),(2) OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CPAS	Displays whether the control signal to the FOMA terminal is available or not.	Result: +CPAS: <pas> pas: 0 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal. 1 : FOMA terminal can not send/receive control signal. 2 : Unknown (control signal sending/receiving is not assured). 3 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal and it is currently receiving. 4 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal and it is currently communicating.	AT+CPAS +CPAS:0 OK AT+CPAS? ERROR AT+CPAS=? +CPAS:(0-4)
AT+CPIN	Enters the PIN code in the FOMA terminal.	Format: AT+CPIN=<pin>"<newpin>" This command is to enter the PIN1, PIN2, or PUK code - depending on the state of the result code returned when AT+CPIN? is entered - of the FOMA terminal. Even if PIN code entry or the PUK code is requested on the screen, depending on the state of the result code when AT+CPIN? is entered, you may not be able to use this command to enter the PIN. Do not use this command to change PIN code. Put <pin> and <newpin> in ". AT+CPIN? result +CPIN : READY : PIN1 code, PIN2 code Cannot enter the PUK1 or PUK2 code +CPIN : SIM PIN : PIN1 entry standby +CPIN : SIM PIN2 : PIN2 entry standby +CPIN : SIM PUK : PIN1 blocked (Can enter PUK1 code) +CPIN : SIM PUK2 : PIN2 blocked (Can enter PUK2 code) The command displayed on the right is an entry sample of PIN code "1234" and PUK code "12345678".	(The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PIN is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN1 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK2 is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN2 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK AT+CPIN? +CPIN:READY OK AT+CPIN=? OK
AT+CR= <i>n</i>	When the line is connected, displays the bearer service type before the CONNECT result code is displayed.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Not display (initial value). <i>n</i> = 1 : Display. <serv> : Displays only "GPRS", which means packet communication. (Displaying "SYNC", "AV32K" or "AV64K" depending on the line type.) AT+CR?: : Displays the current setting.	AT+CR = 1 OK ATD * 99 * * * 1 # +CR : GPRS CONNECT
[&F] [&W]			

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CRC= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Sets whether to use the extended result code for the incoming call. [&F] [&W]	<i>n</i> = 0 : Not use +CRING (initial value). <i>n</i> = 1 : Use +CRING.<type>. Format of +CRING: +CRING : SYNC +CRING : AV64K : GPRS "PPP" ,,, "<APN>" AT+CRC? : Displays the current setting.	AT+CRC=0 OK AT+CRC? +CRC : 0 OK (PPPOverUD received) +CRING : SYNC (AV64K received) +CRING : AV64K (PPP packet received) +CRING : GPRS "PPP" ,,, <APN>"
AT+CREG= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the result screen is present regarding the inside/outside the service area information display. ● This setting may not be available depending on the Operating System. [&F] [&W]	<i>n</i> = 0 : Not informed (initial value). <i>n</i> = 1 : Informed. Informed when switching between "Inside the service area" and "Outside the service area" is complete. AT+CREG? : Displays the current setting. +CREG : < <i>n</i> >,<stat> <i>n</i> : Set value stat: 0: Outside voice call area 1: Inside voice call area 4: Unknown 5: Inside voice call area	AT+CREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CREG? +CREG : 1,0 OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from outside the service area to inside the service area.) +CREG : 1
AT+CUSD [&F] [&W]	Specifies or inquires for the network setting regarding the additional services. [&F] [&W]	Format: AT+CUSD=< <i>n</i> >,"<str>"[,<0>] <i>n</i> = 0 : Does not send mid result < <i>m</i> >[<str>,<dc>] (initial value) <i>n</i> = 1 : Sends mid result < <i>m</i> >[<str>,<dc>] Mid result: <i>m</i> = 0 : The settings completed <i>m</i> = 1 : The network requires the information. str : Only 0-9, #, * can be entered. Enclose <str> with "" (double quotation mark).	AT+CUSD=0, "xxxxxxxx" OK AT+CUSD=1, " * 148 * 1 * 0000#",0 +CUSD:0,"148 * 7#",0 OK AT+CUSD? +CUSD:0 OK AT+CUSD=? +CUSD:(0,1) OK
AT+FCLASS= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Sets the communication class supported by the FOMA terminal. [&F] [&W]	<i>n</i> = 0 : data is only supported. (initial value)	AT+FCLASS=0 OK
AT+GCAP	Displays the supported area for the AT commands available for the FOMA terminal.	Result: +GCAP:<area>,<area>,<area> area : +CGSM : Some or all GSM commands are supported. +FCLASS : +FCLASS command is supported. +W : +W command is supported.	AT+GCAP +GCAP: +CGSM, +FCLASS, +W OK
AT+GMI	Displays the manufacturer name (NEC).	—	AT+GMI NEC OK
AT+GMM	Displays the FOMA terminal product name (FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED).	—	AT+GMM FOMA N902iX HIGH-SPEED OK
AT+GMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+GMR Ver1.00 OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+IFC= <i>n,m</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects the flow control method.	<i>n</i> : DCE by DTE <i>m</i> : DTE by DCE 0 : No flow control 1 : XON/XOFF flow control. 2 : RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. initial value: <i>n,m</i> =2, 2 AT+IFC?: Displays the current setting.	AT+IFC=2,2 OK AT+IFC? +IFC : 2,2 OK AT+IFC=? +IFC : (0,1,2) ,(0,1,2) OK
AT+WS46= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Displays the wireless communication network of the FOMA terminal.	<i>n</i> =22 : Only W-CDMA (Wideband CDMA) can be specified (initial value).	AT+WS46=22 OK
AT¥S	Displays the contents of commands and S registers currently set.	—	AT¥S E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 &E1 ¥V0 S000=000 S002=043 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S030=000 S103=001 S104=001 OK
AT¥V <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects the response code specification for connecting the line.	<i>n</i> =0 : Not use extended result code (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Use extended result code.	AT¥V0 OK
ATA	Handles the incoming call process according to the mode received by the FOMA terminal.	—	RING ATA CONNECT
ATD	Handles the automatic calling process for the FOMA terminal according to the specified parameters and dial parameters.	ATD * 99 * * * <cid># : Packet communication <cid> 1 to 10: displays APN with +CGDCONT setting. AT+CBST=116,1,0 ATD<phone number> : 64K communication AT+CBST=131,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV32K communication AT+CBST=134,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV64K communication	<Packet communication> ATD * 99 * * * 1# CONNECT <64K communication> AT+CBST=116,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxx CONNECT <AV32K communication> AT+CBST=131,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxx CONNECT <AV64K communication> AT+CBST=134,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxx CONNECT
ATE <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects whether the echo back is present for DTE in the command mode.	<i>n</i> =0 : Echo back absent. <i>n</i> =1 : Echo back present (initial value).	ATE1 OK
ATH <i>n</i>	Performs on-hook operation for the FOMA terminal.	<i>n</i> =0 : Disconnect the line (can be omitted).	(During packet communication) +++ OK ATH NO CARRIER

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
ATI n	Displays the ID code.	$n=0$: Displays "NTT DoCoMo". $n=1$: Displays the product name (same with +GMM). $n=2$: Displays the version of the FOMA terminal (same with +GMR). $n=3$: Displays the each element of ACMP signal. $n=4$: Displays the details of communication functions of the FOMA terminal.	ATI0 NTT DoCoMo OK ATI1 FOMAN902iX HIGH-SPEED OK
ATO n	Returns from the online command mode to the online data mode during communication.	$n=0$: Returns from online command mode to online data mode (can be omitted).	ATO CONNECT
ATQ n	Specifies whether or not to display the result code for DTE.	$n=0$: Displays the result code (initial value). $n=1$: Not display the result code.	ATQ0 OK ATQ1 (At that time, OK is not returned.)
[&F] [&W]			
ATS0= n	Specifies how many times the FOMA terminal rings before it automatically receives a call.	$n=0$: No automatic answer (initial value). $n=1-255$: A call is automatically answered after the specified number of rings. ATS0?: Displays the current setting.	ATS0=0 OK ATS0? 000 OK
[&F] [&W]			
ATS2= n	Sets an escape character.	$n=43$: Initial value. $n=127$: Escapes processing is invalid. ATS2? : Displays the current setting.	ATS2=43 OK ATS2? 043 OK
[&F]			
ATS3= n	Sets a carriage return (CR) character.	$n=13$: Initial value (Only $n=13$ can be specified). ATS3? : Displays the current setting.	ATS3=13 OK ATS3? 013 OK
[&F]			
ATS4= n	Sets a line feed (LF) character.	$n=10$: Initial value (Only $n=10$ can be specified). ATS4? : Displays the current setting.	ATS4=10 OK ATS4? 010 OK
[&F]			
ATS5= n	Sets a backspace (BS) character.	$n=8$: Initial value (Only $n=8$ can be specified). ATS5? : Displays the current setting.	ATS5=8 OK ATS5? 008 OK
[&F]			
ATS6= n	Sets the pause time (second) until a dial starting.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS6=5 OK ATS6? 005 OK ATS6=? ERROR
[&F]			
ATS8= n	Sets the pause time (second) by using the comma dial.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS8=3 OK ATS8? 003 OK ATS8=? ERROR
[&F]			

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
ATS10= <i>n</i> [&F][&W]	Automatic disconnection delay time setting. (1/10 second)	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS10=1 OK ATS10? 001 OK ATS10=? ERROR
ATS30= <i>n</i> [&F]	Disconnects the line when there is no user data exchange for the time set in this command.	<i>n</i> =0 : Inactive timer off (initial value) <i>n</i> =0 - 255 Where <i>n</i> is the number of minutes.	ATS30=0 OK ATS30? 000 OK ATS30=? ERROR
ATS103= <i>n</i> [&F]	Sets the called subaddress character.	<i>n</i> =0 : * <i>n</i> =1 : / (initial value) <i>n</i> =2 : ¥ (¥ mark or back slash)	ATS103=0 OK ATS103? 000 OK ATS103=? ERROR
ATS104= <i>n</i> [&F]	Sets the calling subaddress character.	<i>n</i> =0 : # <i>n</i> =1 : % (initial value) <i>n</i> =2 : &	ATS104=0 OK ATS104? 000 OK ATS104=? ERROR
ATV <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the result code is returned in numerals or alphabets.	<i>n</i> =0 : Returns the result code in numeral value. <i>n</i> =1 : Returns the result code in characters (initial value).	ATV1 OK
ATX <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the speed indication is present in the CONNECT display when connecting the line. Also detects a busy tone or a dial tone.	<i>n</i> =0 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; without speed display. <i>n</i> =1 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. <i>n</i> =2 : With dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. <i>n</i> =3 : Without dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. <i>n</i> =4 : With dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. (initial value)	ATX1 OK
ATZ	Resets the current setting to the contents of the non-volatile memory. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	—	(Online command mode) ATZ NO CARRIER (Offline command mode) ATZ OK
+++	In response to the escape sequence, the online data mode changes to the online command mode while maintaining the line connection.	—	(Online data mode) +++ (No display) OK

● Supplementary explanation of AT command

■ Commands which do not function

The following commands do not generate errors but will not function as a command:

- ATT (Tone setting)
- ATP (Pulse setting)

■ Command name: +CGDCONT

• Outline

Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination.

Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

• Format

+CGDCONT=[<cid>[,“PPP”[,“<APN>”]]]

• Explanation of the parameters

Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination. See the following command execution example:

<cid>* : 1 ~ 10

<APN>* : Any value

- * : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to <cid>=1 and “mopera.net” is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.
<APN> is an arbitrary character string indicating each access point name.

• Operation performed when the parameter is omitted

+CGDCONT= : Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

+CGDCONT=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

+CGDCONT=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

+CGDCONT? : Displays the current setting.

• Command execution example

Command for registering an APN name of abc (when cid is 2).

AT+CGDCONT=2,“PPP”,“abc”

OK

■ Command name: +CGEQMIN=[parameter]

• Outline

Registers a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.

There are 4 setting patterns as described in the following command execution example.

Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

• Format

+CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

• Explanation of the parameters

<cid>* : 1 ~ 10

<Maximum bitrate UL>* : None (initial value) or 384

<Maximum bitrate DL>* : None (initial value) or 3,648

- * : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to <cid>=1 and “mopera.net” is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10. <Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL> set the minimum communication speed (kbps) of uplink and downlink between the FOMA terminal and base station. When it is set to “None” (initial value), all speeds will be permitted, but when set to 384 or 3,648, a connection at a speed of other values will not be permitted, and a packet communication may not be connected.

• Operation performed when the parameter is omitted

+CGEQMIN= : Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

+CGEQMIN=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

+CGEQMIN=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

+CGEQMIN? : Displays the current setting.

• Command execution example

Only the following 4 patterns can be set. (1) is set as an initial value to each cid.

- (1) Command for permitting all speeds of both uplink and downlink (when cid is 2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2
OK
- (2) Command for permitting only the speed of uplink 384kbps and downlink 3,648kbps (when cid is 4)
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,384,3648
OK
- (3) Command for permitting uplink 384kbps and all speeds of downlink (when cid is 5).
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,384
OK
- (4) Command for permitting all speeds of uplink and only 3,648kbps of downlink (when cid is 6)
AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,3648
OK

■ Command name: +CGEQREQ=[parameter]

• Outline

Sets the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.

For setting, only the following pattern in the command execution example can be set, which is also set as an initial value.

Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

• Format

+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

• Explanation of the parameters

<cid>* : 1 to 10

* : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As "mopera.ne.jp" is assigned to <cid>=1 and "mopera.net" is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.

• Operation performed when the parameter is omitted

+CGEQREQ= : Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

+CGEQREQ=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

+CGEQREQ=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

+CGEQREQ? : Displays the current setting.

• Command execution example

Only the following 1 pattern can be set. This is set to each cid as an initial value.

Command for requesting a connection at a speed of uplink 384kbps and downlink 3,648kbps (when cid is 2).

AT+CGEQREQ=2
OK

Saving modem port command setting value

The values set by AT commands are initialized every time the power of FOMA terminal is turned on or off, except the access point name (APN) set by AT+CGDCONT command (p.32), QoS setting by AT+CGEQMIN/AT+CGEQREQ command, permit or reject incoming call setting by AT * DGAPL/AT * DGARL/AT * DGANSM command and the setting for specifying sending/not sending caller ID of packet communication set by AT * DGPIR command. However, you can save the values set by commands with [&W] if you enter

AT&W 

after the setting. In this case, other set values with [&W] will also be saved. These values can be retrieved by entering

ATZ 

even after the power is turned on or off.

Result codes

■ Result codes related with data communication

Number indication	Character indication	Description
0	OK	Successfully executed.
1	CONNECT	Connected.
2	RING	Incoming call.
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected.
4	ERROR	Command not acceptable.
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dialing tone.
7	BUSY	Busy tone detected.
8	NO ANSWER	Time out in connection completing.
100	RESTRICTION	Network restricted.
101	DELAYED	Redialing restricted.

■ Extended result codes

• &E0

Number indication	Character indication	Description
121	CONNECT 32000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 32,000bps.
122	CONNECT 64000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 64,000bps.
125	CONNECT 384000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 384,000bps.
133	CONNECT 3648000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 3,648,000bps.

• &E1

Number indication	Character indication	Description
5	CONNECT 1200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 1,200bps.
10	CONNECT 2400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 2,400bps.
11	CONNECT 4800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 4,800bps.
13	CONNECT 7200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 7,200bps.
12	CONNECT 9600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 9,600bps.
15	CONNECT 14400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 14,400bps.
16	CONNECT 19200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 19,200bps.
17	CONNECT 38400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 38,400bps.
18	CONNECT 57600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 57,600bps.
19	CONNECT 115200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 115,200bps.
20	CONNECT 230400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 230,400bps.
21	CONNECT 460800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 460,800bps.

■ Communication protocol result codes

Number indication	Character indication	Description
1	PPPOverUD	Connected by PPPoverUD (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
2	AV32K	Connected by AV (Videophone) [32K]
3	AV64K	Connected by AV (Videophone) [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected by Packet

NOTE

- The result code appears as character indication (default value) when AT $\forall n$ command (p.52) is set to $n=1$, and as number indication when the command is set to $n=0$.
- Though the communication speed appears in order to maintain a compatibility with the modem connected by traditional RS-232C, it differs from the actual connection speed because the FOMA terminal and PC are connected via FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- "RESTRICTION" (Number indication: 100) indicates that the network is congested. If this is displayed, wait for a while and then try again.

Result code display example

■ When ATX0 is set

Regardless of the AT $\forall n$ command (p.50) setting, only CONNECT appears when the connection is completed.

Character indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT

Number indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
1

■ When ATX1 is set

- ATX1, AT $\forall V0$ are set (default)

Displayed in CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> PACKET <Connecting party's APN>/ <Upstream (the

Character indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT 460800

Number indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
1 21

- ATX1, AT $\forall V1$ are set *

The following format appears when the connection is completed:

CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> PACKET <Connecting party's APN>/ <Upstream (the FOMA terminal → Wireless base station) maximum rate>/<Downstream (the FOMA terminal ← Wireless base station) maximum rate >

The following sample indicates that a connection is made to mopera.ne.jp at maximum 384kbps for sending, and maximum 3,648kbps for receiving.

Character indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.ne.jp /384/3648

Number indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
1 21 5

* : If both ATX1 and AT $\forall V1$ are set simultaneously, a dial-up connection may not be correctly made. The single setting of AT $\forall V0$ is recommended.

List of disconnection reasons

Disconnection reasons regarding the content of requests are as follows:

■ Packet communication

Value	Reason
26 27	Missing or incorrect APN.
30	Activation rejected by the network.
33	Requested service option not subscribed.
36	Disconnected successfully.

■ 64K data communication

Value	Reason
1	The specified number does not exist.
16	Disconnected successfully.
17	Cannot communicate because the other party's line is busy.
18	Dialed, but no response within the specified time.
19	Cannot communicate because the other party is ringing.
21	The other party has rejected the communication.
63	The service or option of the network is not valid.
65	A transmission capacity not provided has been specified.
88	Sent to a terminal with different terminal attributes or received call.